English Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book for intermediate students of English

with answers

THIRD EDITION

Raymond Murphy

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
Contents

Thanks vii
To the student viii
To the teacher ix

Present and past
1 Present continuous (I am doing)
2 Present simple (I do)
3 Present continuous and present simple 1 (I am doing and I do)
4 Present continuous and present simple 2 (I am doing and I do)
5 Past simple (I did)
6 Past continuous (I was doing)

Present perfect and past
7 Present perfect 1 (I have done)
8 Present perfect 2 (I have done)
9 Present perfect continuous (I have been doing)
10 Present perfect continuous and simple (I have been doing and I have done)
11 How long have you (been) ... ?
12 For and since When ... ? and How long ... ?
13 Present perfect and past 1 (I have done and I did)
14 Present perfect and past 2 (I have done and I did)
15 Past perfect (I had done)
16 Past perfect continuous (I had been doing)
17 Have got and have
18 Used to (do)

Future
19 Present tenses (I am doing / I do) for the future
20 (I'm) going to (do)
21 Will/shall 1
22 Will/shall 2
23 I will and I'm going to
24 Will be doing and will have done
25 When I do / When I've done When and if

Modals
26 Can, could and (be) able to
27 Could (do) and could have (done)
28 Must and can't
29 May and might 1
30 May and might 2
31 Have to and must
32 Mustn't mustn't needn't
33 Should 1
34 Should 2
35 Had better It's time ...
36 Would
37 Can/Could/Would you ... ? etc. (Requests, offers, permission and invitations)

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the study guide on page 326.
If and wish
38 If I do ... and If I did ...
39 If I knew ... I wish I knew ...
40 If I had known ... I wish I had known ...
41 Wish

Passive
42 Passive 1 (is done / was done)
43 Passive 2 (be done / been done / being done)
44 Passive 3
45 It is said that ... He is said to ... He is supposed to ...
46 Have something done

Reported speech
47 Reported speech 1 (He said that ...)
48 Reported speech 2

Questions and auxiliary verbs
49 Questions 1
50 Questions 2 (Do you know where ... ? / He asked me where ...)
51 Auxiliary verbs (have/do/can etc.) I think so / I hope so etc.
52 Question tags (do you? isn't it? etc.)

-ing and the infinitive
53 Verb + -ing (enjoy doing / stop doing etc.)
54 Verb + to ... (decide to ... / forget to ... etc.)
55 Verb (+ object) + to ... (I want you to ... etc.)
56 Verb + -ing or to ... 1 (remember/regret etc.)
57 Verb + -ing or to ... 2 (try/need/help)
58 Verb + -ing or to ... 3 (like / would like etc.)
59 Prefer and would rather
60 Preposition (in/for/about etc.) + -ing
61 Be/get used to something (I'm used to ...)
62 Verb + preposition + -ing (succeed in -ing / accuse somebody of -ing etc.)
63 Expressions + -ing
64 To ... , for ... and so that ... (purpose)
65 Adjective + to ...
66 To ... (afraid to do) and preposition + -ing (afraid of -ing)
67 See somebody do and see somebody doing
68 -ing clauses (Feeling tired, I went to bed early.)

Articles and nouns
69 Countable and uncountable 1
70 Countable and uncountable 2
71 Countable nouns with a/an and some
72 A/an and the
73 The 1
74 The 2 (school / the school etc.)
75 The 3 (children / the children)
76 The 4 (the giraffe / the telephone / the piano etc., the + adjective)
77 Names with and without the 1
78 Names with and without the 2
Singular and plural
Noun + noun (a tennis ball / a headache)
's (your sister's name) and of ... (the name of the book)

Pronouns and determiners
Myself/yourself/themselves etc.
A friend of mine My own house On my own / by myself
There ... and it ...
Some and any
No/none/any Nothing/nobody etc.
Much, many, little, few, a lot, plenty
All / all of most / most of no / none of etc.
Both / both of neither / neither of either / either of
All, every and whole
Each and every

Relative clauses
Relative clauses 1: clauses with who/that/which
Relative clauses 2: clauses with and without who/that/which
Relative clauses 3: whose/whom/where
Relative clauses 4: extra information clauses (1)
Relative clauses 5: extra information clauses (2)
-ing and -ed clauses (the woman talking to Tom, the boy injured in the accident)

Adjectives and adverbs
Adjectives ending in -ing and -ed (boring/bored etc.)
Adjectives: a nice new house, you look tired
Adjectives and adverbs 1 (quick/quickly)
Adjectives and adverbs 2 (well/fast/late, hard/hardly)
So and such
Enough and too
Quite, pretty, rather and fairly
Comparison 1 (cheaper, more expensive etc.)
Comparison 2 (much better / any better / better and better / the sooner the better)
Comparison 3 (as ... as / than)
Superlatives (the longest, the most enjoyable etc.)
Word order 1: verb + object; place and time
Word order 2: adverbs with the verb
Still, yet and already Any more / any longer / no longer
Even

Conjunctions and prepositions
Although / though / even though In spite of / despite
In case
Unless As long as Provided/providing
As (As I walked along the street ... / As I was hungry ...)
Like and as
As if / as though / like

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the study guide on page 326.
Prepositions
121 At/on/in (time)
122 On time and in time At the end and in the end
123 In/at/on (position) 1
124 In/at/on (position) 2
125 In/at/on (position) 3
126 To/at/in/into
127 In/at/on (other uses)
128 By
129 Noun + preposition (reason for, cause of etc.)
130 Adjective + preposition 1
131 Adjective + preposition 2
132 Verb + preposition 1 to and at
133 Verb + preposition 2 about/for/of/after
134 Verb + preposition 3 about and of
135 Verb + preposition 4 of/for/from/on
136 Verb + preposition 5 in/into/with/to/on

Phrasal verbs
137 Phrasal verbs 1 Introduction
138 Phrasal verbs 2 in/out
139 Phrasal verbs 3 out
140 Phrasal verbs 4 on/off (1)
141 Phrasal verbs 5 on/off (2)
142 Phrasal verbs 6 up/down
143 Phrasal verbs 7 up (1)
144 Phrasal verbs 8 up (2)
145 Phrasal verbs 9 away/back

Appendix 1 Regular and irregular verbs 292
Appendix 2 Present and past tenses 294
Appendix 3 The future 295
Appendix 4 Modal verbs (can/could/will/would etc.) 296
Appendix 5 Short forms (I'm / you've / didn't etc.) 297
Appendix 6 Spelling 298
Appendix 7 American English 300

Additional exercises 302

Study guide 326

Key to Exercises 336
Key to Additional exercises 368
Key to Study guide 372

Index 373

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS YOU NEED TO STUDY, USE THE STUDY GUIDE ON PAGE 326.
Thanks

I wrote the original edition of English Grammar in Use when I was a teacher at the Swan School of English, Oxford. I would like to repeat my thanks to my colleagues and students at the school for their help, encouragement and interest at that time.

More recently I would like to thank all the teachers and students I met and who offered their thoughts on the previous edition. It was fun to meet you all and extremely helpful for me.

Regarding the production of this third edition, I am grateful to Alison Sharpe, Liz Driscoll, Jane Mairs and Kamae Design. I would also like to thank Cambridge University Press for permission to access the Cambridge International Corpus.

Thank you also to the following illustrators: Paul Fellows, Gillian Martin, Roger Penwill, Lisa Smith and Simon Williams.
To the student

This book is for students who want help with English grammar. It is written for you to use without a teacher.

The book will be useful for you if you are not sure of the answers to questions like these:
- What is the difference between *I did* and *I have done*?
- When do we use *will* for the future?
- What is the structure after *I wish*?
- When do we say *used to do* and when do we say *used to doing*?
- When do we use *the*?
- What is the difference between *like* and *as*?

These and many other points of English grammar are explained in the book and there are exercises on each point.

**Level**

The book is intended mainly for *intermediate* students (students who have already studied the basic grammar of English). It concentrates on those structures which intermediate students want to use, but which often cause difficulty. Some advanced students who have problems with grammar will also find the book useful.

The book is *not* suitable for elementary learners.

**How the book is organised**

There are 145 units in the book. Each unit concentrates on a particular point of grammar. Some problems (*for example, the present perfect or the use of the*) are covered in more than one unit. For a list of units, see the *Contents* at the beginning of the book.

Each unit consists of two facing pages. On the left there are explanations and examples; on the right there are exercises. At the back of the book there is a *Key* for you to check your answers to the exercises (page 336).

There are also seven *Appendices* at the back of the book (pages 292–301). These include irregular verbs, summaries of verb forms, spelling and American English.

Finally, there is a detailed *Index* at the back of the book (page 373).

**How to use the book**

The units are *not* in order of difficulty, so it is *not* intended that you work through the book from beginning to end. Every learner has different problems and you should use this book to help you with the grammar that you find difficult.

It is suggested that you work in this way:
- Use the *Contents* and/or *Index* to find which unit deals with the point you are interested in.
- If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the *Study guide* on page 326.
- Study the explanations and examples on the left-hand page of the unit you have chosen.
- Do the exercises on the right-hand page.
- Check your answers with the *Key*.
- If your answers are not correct, study the left-hand page again to see what went wrong.

You can of course use the book simply as a reference book without doing the exercises.
Additional exercises
At the back of the book there are Additional exercises (pages 302–325). These exercises bring together some of the grammar points from a number of different units. For example, Exercise 16 brings together grammar points from Units 26–36. You can use these exercises for extra practice after you have studied and practised the grammar in the units concerned.

CD Rom
The book is sold with or without a CD Rom. On the CD Rom you will find more exercises on all the units (different from those in the book). There are also 1,700 test questions, and you can use these to make your own tests. The CD Rom can also be bought separately.
To the teacher

*English Grammar in Use* was written as a self-study grammar book, but teachers may also find it useful as additional course material in cases where further work on grammar is necessary.

The book will probably be most useful at middle- and upper-intermediate levels (where all or nearly all of the material will be relevant), and can serve both as a basis for revision and as a means for practising new structures. It will also be useful for some more advanced students who have problems with grammar and need a book for reference and practice. The book is not intended to be used by elementary learners.

The units are organised in grammatical categories (*Present and past, Articles and nouns, Prepositions* etc.). They are not ordered according to level of difficulty, so the book should not be worked through from beginning to end. It should be used selectively and flexibly in accordance with the grammar syllabus being used and the difficulties students are having.

The book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help. The left-hand pages (explanations and examples) are written for the student to use individually, but they may of course be used by the teacher as a source of ideas and information on which to base a lesson. The student then has the left-hand page as a record of what has been taught and can refer to it in the future. The exercises can be done individually, in class or as homework. Alternatively (and additionally), individual students can be directed to study certain units of the book by themselves if they have particular difficulties not shared by other students in their class. Don’t forget the *Additional exercises* at the back of the book (see To the student).

The book is sold with or without a CD Rom. This contains further exercises on all the units in the book, as well as a bank of 1,700 test questions from which users can select to compile their own tests. The CD Rom is also available separately.

An edition of *English Grammar in Use* without the Key is also available. Some teachers may prefer this for use with their students.

---

**English Grammar in Use Third Edition**

This is a new edition of *English Grammar in Use*. The differences between this edition and the second edition are:

- There are eight new units on phrasal verbs (Units 138–145). There is also a new unit on *wish* (Unit 41). Units 42–81 and 83–137 all have different numbers from the second edition.
- Some of the material has been revised or reorganised, and in most units there are minor changes in the examples, explanations and exercises.
- The *Additional exercises* have been extended. The new exercises are 14–16, 25, 30–31, and 37–41.
- The book has been redesigned with new colour illustrations.
- There is a new CD Rom with further exercises to accompany the book.
English Grammar in Use
Present continuous (I am doing)

Study this example situation:

Sarah is in her car. She is on her way to work.
She is driving to work.

This means: she is driving **now**, at the time of speaking.
The action is not finished.

**Am/is/are + -ing** is the **present continuous**:

| I am (= I'm) | driving          |
| he/she/it is (= he's etc.) | working   |
| we/you/they are (= we're etc.) | doing etc. |

**I am doing** something = I'm in the middle of doing it; I've started doing it and I haven't finished yet:

- Please don't make so much noise. I'm trying to work. (*not I try*)
- 'Where's Mark?' 'He's having a shower.' (*not He has a shower*)
- Let's go out now. It isn't raining any more. (*not It doesn't rain*)
- (at a party) Hello, Jane. Are you enjoying the party? (*not Do you enjoy*)
- What's all that noise? What's going on? (= What's happening?)

The action is not necessarily happening at the time of speaking. For example:

Steve is talking to a friend on the phone. He says:

![Steve speaking on the phone]

'I'm reading a really good book at the moment.
It's about a man who ...'

Steve is not reading the book at the time of speaking.
He means that he has started it, but has not finished it yet.
He is in the middle of reading it.

Some more examples:

- Kate wants to work in Italy, so she's learning Italian. (*but perhaps she isn't learning Italian at the time of speaking*)
- Some friends of mine are building their own house. They hope to finish it next summer.

You can use the present continuous with **today / this week / this year** etc. (periods around now):

- A: You're working hard today. (*not You work hard today*)
- B: Yes, I have a lot to do.
- The company I work for isn't doing so well this year.

We use the present continuous when we talk about changes happening around now, especially with these verbs:

- get
- change
- become
- increase
- rise
- fall
- grow
- improve
- begin
- start

- Is your English getting better? (*not Does your English get better*)
- The population of the world is increasing very fast. (*not increases*)
- At first I didn't like my job, but I'm beginning to enjoy it now. (*not I begin*)
Exercises

Unit 1

1.1 Complete the sentences with the following verbs in the correct form:
get happen look lose make start stay try work
1. ‘You’re working hard today.’ ‘Yes, I have a lot to do.’
2. I _____________ for Christine. Do you know where she is?
3. It _____________ dark. Shall I turn on the light?
4. They don’t have anywhere to live at the moment. They _____________ with friends until they find somewhere.
5. Things are not so good at work. The company _____________ money.
6. Have you got an umbrella? It _____________ to rain.
8. Why are all these people here? What _____________ happen?

1.2 Put the verb into the correct form. Sometimes you need the negative (I’m not doing etc.).
1. Please don’t make so much noise. I _____________ (try) to work.
2. Let’s go out now. It _____________ (rain) any more.
3. You can turn off the radio. I _____________ (listen) to it.
4. Kate phoned me last night. She’s on holiday in France. She _____________ (have) a great time and doesn’t want to come back.
5. I want to lose weight, so this week I _____________ (eat) lunch.
6. Andrew has just started evening classes. He _____________ (learn) German.
7. Paul and Sally have had an argument. They _____________ (speak) to each other.
8. I _____________ (get) tired. I need a rest.
9. Tim _____________ (work) this week. He’s on holiday.

1.3 Complete the conversations.
1. A: I saw Brian a few days ago.
   B: Oh, did you? _____________ these days? (what / he / do)
   A: He’s at university.
   B: _____________ (what / he / study)
   A: Psychology.
   B: _____________ it? (he / enjoy)
   A: Yes, he says it’s a very good course.

   B: Not bad. It wasn’t so good at first, but _____________ better now. (things / get)
   A: What about Jonathan? Is he OK?
   B: Yes, but _____________ his work at the moment. (he / not / enjoy)
   _____________ to get bored with it. (he / begin)

1.4 Complete the sentences using the following verbs:
begin change get increase rise
1. The population of the world _____________ very fast.
2. The world _____________ . Things never stay the same.
3. The situation is already bad and it _____________ worse.
4. The cost of living _____________ . Every year things are more expensive.
5. The weather _____________ to improve. The rain has stopped, and the wind isn’t as strong.
Present simple (I do)

Study this example situation:

Alex is a bus driver, but now he is in bed asleep.
He is not driving a bus. (He is asleep.)

but He drives a bus. (He is a bus driver.)

Drive(s)/work(s)/do(es) etc. is the **present simple**:

- **I/we/you/they** drive/work/do etc.
- **he/she/it** drives/works/does etc.

We use the **present simple** to talk about things in general. We use it to say that something happens all the time or repeatedly, or that something is true in general:

- Nurses look after patients in hospitals.
- I usually go away at weekends.
- The earth goes round the sun.
- The café opens at 7.30 in the morning.

Remember:

- I work ... but He works ... They teach ... but My sister teaches ...

For spelling (-s or -es), see Appendix 6.

We use **do**/**does** to make questions and negative sentences:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do</th>
<th>I/we/you/they drive?</th>
<th>work?</th>
<th>don't</th>
<th>I/we/you/they drive?</th>
<th>work?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>does</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>doesn't</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I come from Canada. Where do you come from?
- I don't go away very often.
- What does this word mean? (not What means this word?)
- Rice doesn't grow in cold climates.

In the following examples, do is also the main verb (do you do / doesn't do etc.):

- 'What do you do?'  'I work in a shop.'
- He's always so lazy. He doesn't do anything to help.

We use the **present simple** to say how often we do things:

- I get up at 8 o'clock every morning.
- How often do you go to the dentist?
- Julie doesn't drink tea very often.
- Robert usually goes away two or three times a year.

**I promise / I apologise etc.**

Sometimes we do things by saying something. For example, when you **promise** to do something, you can say 'I promise ...'; when you **suggest** something, you can say 'I suggest ...':

- I promise I won't be late. (not I'm promising)
- 'What do you suggest I do?'  'I suggest that you ...'

In the same way we say: I apologise ... / I advise ... / I insist ... / I agree ... / I refuse ... etc.
Exercises

2.1 Complete the sentences using the following verbs:
cause(s) connect(s) drink(s) live(s) open(s) speak(s) take(s)
1 Tanya speaks German very well.
2 I don't often drink coffee.
3 The swimming pool closed at 7:30 every morning.
4 Bad driving causes many accidents.
5 My parents live in a very small flat.
6 The Olympic Games take place every four years.
7 The Panama Canal connects the Atlantic and Pacific oceans.

2.2 Put the verb into the correct form.
1 Julie doesn't drink (not / drink) tea very often.
2 What time do you usually (the banks / close) here?
3 I've got a computer, but I don't use it much.
4 'Where does Martin come from?' 'He's Scottish.'
5 'What do you do?' 'I'm an electrician.'
6 It takes me an hour to get to work. How long does it take (it / take) you?
7 Look at this sentence. What does it mean (this word / mean)?
8 David isn't very fit. He doesn't do (not / do) any sport.

2.3 Use the following verbs to complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the negative:
believe eat flow go grow make rise tell translate
1 The earth goes round the sun.
2 Rice doesn't grow in Britain.
3 The sun rises in the east.
4 Bees make honey.
5 Vegetarians don't eat meat.
6 An atheist doesn't believe in God.
7 An interpreter translates from one language into another.
8 Liars are people who don't tell the truth.
9 The River Amazon flows into the Atlantic Ocean.

2.4 You ask Liz questions about herself and her family. Write the questions.
1 You know that Liz plays tennis. You want to know how often. Ask her.
How often do you play tennis?
How often does your sister play tennis?
3 You know that Liz reads a newspaper every day. You want to know which one. Ask her.
Which newspaper do you read?
4 You know that Liz's brother works. You want to know what he does. Ask Liz.
What does your brother do?
5 You know that Liz goes to the cinema a lot. You want to know how often. Ask her.
How often do you go to the cinema?
6 You don't know where Liz's grandparents live. You want to know. Ask Liz.
Where do your grandparents live?

2.5 Complete using the following:
I apologise I insist I promise I recommend I suggest
1 It's a nice day. I suggest we go out for a walk.
2 I won't tell anybody what you said.
3 (in a restaurant) You must let me pay for the meal.
4 I suggest for what I did. It won't happen again.
5 The new restaurant in Hill Street is very good.
Present continuous and present simple 1 (I am doing and I do)

Compare:

Present continuous (I am doing)
We use the continuous for things happening at or around the time of speaking. The action is not complete.

Present simple (I do)
We use the simple for things in general or things that happen repeatedly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am doing</th>
<th>I do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>past</strong></td>
<td><strong>now</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ The water is boiling. Can you turn it off?</td>
<td>☐ Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Listen to those people. What language are they speaking?</td>
<td>☐ Excuse me, do you speak English?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Let's go out. It isn't raining now.</td>
<td>☐ It doesn't rain very much in summer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ 'I'm busy.' 'What are you doing?'</td>
<td>☐ What do you usually do at weekends?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ I'm getting hungry. Let's go and eat.</td>
<td>☐ I always get hungry in the afternoon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ Kate wants to work in Italy, so she's learning Italian.</td>
<td>☐ Most people learn to swim when they are children.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ The population of the world is increasing very fast.</td>
<td>☐ Every day the population of the world increases by about 200,000 people.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use the continuous for temporary situations:

☐ I'm living with some friends until I find a place of my own.

☐ A: You're working hard today.
   B: Yes, I have a lot to do.

See Unit 1 for more information.

We use the simple for permanent situations:

☐ My parents live in London. They have lived there all their lives.

☐ John isn't lazy. He works hard most of the time.

See Unit 2 for more information.

I always do and I'm always doing

I always do (something) = I do it every time:

☐ I always go to work by car. (not I'm always going)

'I'm always doing something' has a different meaning. For example:

I've lost my pen again. I'm always losing things.

I'm always losing things = I lose things very often, perhaps too often, or more often than normal.

Two more examples:

☐ You're always watching television. You should do something more active. (= You watch television too often)

☐ Tim is never satisfied. He's always complaining. (= He complains too much)
3.1 Are the underlined verbs right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.
1 Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.  OK
2 The water boils. Can you turn it off?  is boiling
3 Look! That man tries to open the door of your car.  try
4 Can you hear those people? What do they talk about?
5 The moon goes round the earth in about 27 days.
6 I must go now. It gets late.
7 I usually go to work by car.
8 ‘Hurry up! It’s time to leave.’ ‘OK, I come.’
9 I hear you’ve got a new job. How do you get on?
10 Paul is never late. He’s always getting to work on time.
11 They don’t get on well. They’re always arguing.

3.2 Put the verb into the correct form, present continuous or present simple.
1 Let’s go out. It isn’t raining (not / rain) now.
2 Julia is very good at languages. She speaks (speak) four languages very well.
3 Hurry up! Everybody waits (wait) for you.
4 ‘Are you listening to the radio?’ ‘No, you can turn it off.’
5 ‘Are you listening to the radio every day?’ ‘No, just occasionally.’
6 The River Nile flows (flow) into the Mediterranean.
7 The river flows (flow) very fast today – much faster than usual.
8 We usually grow (grow) vegetables in our garden, but this year we
   haven’t (not / grow) any.
9 A: How’s your English?
   B: Not bad. I think it improves (improve) slowly.
10 Rachel is in London at the moment. She stays (stay) at the Park Hotel.
    She always stays (stay) there when she’s in London.
11 Can we stop walking so soon? I start (start) to feel tired.
12 A: Can you drive?
   B: I learn (learn). My father teaches (teach) me.
13 Normally I finish (finish) work at five, but this week I
   work (work) until six to earn a little more money.
14 My parents live (live) in Manchester. They were born there and have never
   lived anywhere else. Where do (do) your parents live?
15 Sonia looks (look) for a place to live. She stays (stay) with
   her sister until she finds somewhere.
16 A: What do (do) your brother do?
   B: He’s an architect, but he doesn’t work (not / work) at the moment.
17 (at a party) I usually enjoy (enjoy) parties, but I don’t enjoy (not / enjoy) this one very much.

3.3 Finish B’s sentences. Use always -ing.
1 A: I’ve lost my pen again.
   B: Not again! You’re always losing your pen.
2 A: The car has broken down again.
   B: That car is useless. It keeps breaking down.
3 A: Look! You’ve made the same mistake again.
   B: Oh no, not again! I always make the same mistake.
4 A: Oh, I’ve forgotten my glasses again.
   B: Typical!
Present continuous and present simple 2
(I am doing and I do)

We use continuous forms for actions and happenings that have started but not finished (they are eating / it is raining etc.). Some verbs (for example, know and like) are not normally used in this way. We don’t say ‘I am knowing’ or ‘they are liking’; we say ‘I know’, ‘they like’.

The following verbs are not normally used in the present continuous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>like</th>
<th>love</th>
<th>hate</th>
<th>want</th>
<th>need</th>
<th>prefer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>realise</td>
<td>suppose</td>
<td>mean</td>
<td>understand</td>
<td>believe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belong</td>
<td>fit</td>
<td>contain</td>
<td>consist</td>
<td>seem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I’m hungry. I want something to eat. (not I’m wanting)
- Do you understand what I mean?
- Ann doesn’t seem very happy at the moment.

Think

When think means ‘believe’ or ‘have an opinion’, we do not use the continuous:
- I think Mary is Canadian, but I’m not sure. (not I’m thinking)
- What do you think about my plan? (= What is your opinion?)

When think means ‘consider’, the continuous is possible:
- I’m thinking about what happened. I often think about it.
- Nicky is thinking of giving up her job. (= she is considering it)

He is selfish and He is being selfish

He’s being = He’s behaving / He’s acting. Compare:
- I can’t understand why he’s being so selfish. He isn’t usually like that.
  (being selfish = behaving selfishly at the moment)
- He never thinks about other people. He is very selfish. (not He is being)
  (= He is selfish generally, not only at the moment)

We use am/is/are being to say how somebody is behaving. It is not usually possible in other sentences:
- It’s hot today. (not It is being hot)
- Sarah is very tired. (not is being tired)

See hear smell taste

We normally use the present simple (not continuous) with these verbs:
- Do you see that man over there? (not Are you seeing)
- This room smells. Let’s open a window.

We often use can + see/hear/smell/taste:
- I can hear a strange noise. Can you hear it?

Look feel

You can use the present simple or continuous to say how somebody looks or feels now:
- You look well today. or You’re looking well today.
- How do you feel now? or How are you feeling now?
  but
- I usually feel tired in the morning. (not I’m usually feeling)
Exercises

Unit 4

4.1 Are the underlined verbs right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.
1 Nicky is thinking of giving up her job.  OK
2 Are you believing in God?
3 I'm feeling hungry. Is there anything to eat?
4 This sauce is great. It's tasting really good.
5 I'm thinking this is your key. Am I right?

4.2 Use the words in brackets to make sentences. (You should also study Unit 3 before you do this exercise.)

1 (you / not / seem / very happy today)
   You don't seem very happy today.

2 (what / you / do?)

3 (who / this umbrella / belong to?)
   I have no idea.

4 (the dinner / smell / good)

5 Excuse me. (anybody / sit / there?)
   No, it's free.

6 (these gloves / not / fit / me)
   They're too small.

4.3 Put the verb into the correct form, present continuous or present simple.
1 Are you hungry? Do you want (you / want) something to eat?
2 Don't put the dictionary away. I (use) it.
3 Don't put the dictionary away. I (need) it.
4 Who is that man? What (he / want)?
5 Who is that man? Why (he / look) at us?
6 Alan says he's 80 years old, but nobody (believe) him.
7 She told me her name, but I (not / remember) it now.
8 I (think) of selling my car. Would you be interested in buying it?
9 I (think) you should sell your car. You (not / use) it very often.
10 Air (consist) mainly of nitrogen and oxygen.

4.4 Complete the sentences using the most suitable form of be. Sometimes you must use the simple (am/is/are) and sometimes the continuous is more suitable (am/is/are being).
1 I can't understand why he's being so selfish. He isn't usually like that.
2 Sarah very nice to me at the moment. I wonder why.
3 You'll like Debbie when you meet her. She very nice.
4 You're usually very patient, so why do you about waiting ten more minutes?
5 Why isn't Steve at work today? ill?
Past simple (I did)

Study this example:

Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart was an Austrian musician and composer. He lived from 1756 to 1791. He started composing at the age of five and wrote more than 600 pieces of music.

He was only 35 years old when he died.

Lived/started/wrote/was/died are all past simple.

Very often the past simple ends in -ed (regular verbs):

- I work in a travel agency now. Before that I worked in a department store.
- We invited them to our party, but they decided not to come.
- The police stopped me on my way home last night.
- Laura passed her examination because she studied very hard.

For spelling (stopped, studied etc.), see Appendix 6.

But many verbs are irregular. The past simple does not end in -ed. For example:

- write → wrote
- see → saw
- go → went
- shut → shut

Mozart wrote more than 600 pieces of music.

We saw Rose in town a few days ago.

I went to the cinema three times last week.

It was cold, so I shut the window.

For a list of irregular verbs, see Appendix 1.

In questions and negatives we use did/didn’t + infinitive (enjoy/see/go etc.):

- A: Did you go out last night?
  - B: Yes, I went to the cinema, but I didn’t enjoy the film much.
- ‘When did Mr Thomas die?’ ‘About ten years ago.’
- They didn’t invite her to the party, so she didn’t go.
- ‘Did you have time to write the letter?’ ‘No, I didn’t.’

In the following examples, do is the main verb in the sentence (did … do / didn’t do):

- What did you do at the weekend? (not What did you at the weekend?)
- I didn’t do anything. (not I didn’t anything)

The past of be (am/is/are) is was/were:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/he/she/it</th>
<th>was/wasn’t</th>
<th>was</th>
<th>I/he/she/it?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we/you/they</td>
<td>were/weren’t</td>
<td>were</td>
<td>we/you/they?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that we do not use did in negatives and questions with was/were:

- I was angry because they were late.
- Was the weather good when you were on holiday?
- They weren’t able to come because they were so busy.
- Did you go out last night or were you too tired?
5.1 Read what Laura says about a typical working day:

I usually get up at 7 o'clock and have a big breakfast. I walk to work, which takes me about half an hour. I start work at 8.45. I never have lunch. I finish work at 5 o'clock. I'm always tired when I get home. I usually cook a meal in the evening. I don't usually go out. I go to bed at about 11 o'clock, and I always sleep well.

Laura

Yesterday was a typical working day for Laura. Write what she did or didn't do yesterday.

1. She got up at 7 o'clock.
2. She had a big breakfast.
3. She left at 8.45.
4. It took to get to work.
5. She had lunch.

5.2 Complete the sentences using the following verbs in the correct form:

buy  catch  cost  fall  hurt  sell  spend  teach  throw  write

1. Mozart wrote more than 600 pieces of music.
2. 'How did you learn to drive?' 'My father taught me.'
3. We couldn't afford to keep our car, so we sold it.
4. Dave fell down the stairs this morning and hurt his leg.
5. Jim taught the ball to Sue, who caught it.
6. Ann spent a lot of money yesterday. She bought a dress which cost £100.

5.3 You ask James about his holiday. Write your questions.

Hi. How are things?

Fine, thanks. I've just had a great holiday.

1. Where did you go?
   To the U.S. We went on a trip from San Francisco to Denver.
2. How long was it?
   By car?
   Yes, we hired a car in San Francisco.
3. How long did it take?
   Two weeks.
4. Where did you stay?
   In hotels?
   Yes, small hotels or motels.
5. How about you?
   Yes, but it was very hot - sometimes too hot.
6. Did you visit the Grand Canyon?
   Of course, it was wonderful.

5.4 Complete the sentences. Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.

1. It was warm, so I took off my coat. (take)
2. The film wasn't very good. I didn't enjoy it much. (enjoy)
3. I knew Sarah was very busy, so I disturbed her. (disturb)
4. I was very tired, so I left the party early. (leave)
5. The bed was very uncomfortable. I slept very well. (sleep)
6. The window was open and a bird flew into the room. (fly)
7. The hotel wasn't very expensive. It didn't cost very much. (cost)
8. I was in a hurry, so I didn't have time to phone you. (have)
9. It was hard carrying the bags. They were very heavy. (be)
Past continuous (I was doing)

Study this example situation:

Yesterday Karen and Jim played tennis. They began at 10 o'clock and finished at 11.30. So, at 10.30 they were playing tennis. They were playing = they were in the middle of playing. They had not finished playing.

Was/were -ing is the past continuous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/he/she/it was</th>
<th>playing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we/you/they were</td>
<td>doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>working etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I was doing something = I was in the middle of doing something at a certain time. The action or situation had already started before this time, but had not finished:

I started doing  
I was doing  
I finished doing

- This time last year I was living in Brazil.
- What were you doing at 10 o'clock last night?
- I waved to Helen, but she wasn't looking.

Compare the past continuous (I was doing) and past simple (I did):

**Past continuous (in the middle of an action)**

- I was walking home when I met Dave.
  (in the middle of an action)
- Kate was watching television when we arrived.

**Past simple (complete action)**

- I walked home after the party last night.
  (= all the way, completely)
- Kate watched television a lot when she was ill last year.

We often use the past simple and the past continuous together to say that something happened in the middle of something else:

- Matt phoned while we were having dinner.
- It was raining when I got up.
- I saw you in the park yesterday. You were sitting on the grass and reading a book.
- I hurt my back while I was working in the garden.

But we use the past simple to say that one thing happened after another:

- I was walking along the road when I saw Dave. So I stopped, and we had a chat.

Compare:

- When Karen arrived, we were having dinner. (= we had already started before she arrived)
- When Karen arrived, we had dinner. (= Karen arrived, and then we had dinner)

Some verbs (for example, know and want) are not normally used in the continuous (see Unit 4A):

- We were good friends. We knew each other well. (not We were knowing)
- I was enjoying the party, but Chris wanted to go home. (not was wanting)
Exercises

6.1 What were you doing at these times? Write sentences as in the examples. The past continuous is not always necessary (see the second example).
1 (at 8 o'clock yesterday evening) I was having dinner.
2 (at 5 o'clock last Monday) I was on a bus on my way home.
3 (at 10.15 yesterday morning) 
4 (at 4.30 this morning) 
5 (at 7.45 yesterday evening) 
6 (half an hour ago) 

6.2 Use your own ideas to complete the sentences. Use the past continuous.
1 Matt phoned while we were having dinner.
2 The doorbell rang while I was listening to the radio.
3 We saw an accident while we were driving home.
4 Ann fell asleep while she was reading a book.
5 The television was on, but nobody was watching.

6.3 Put the verb into the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1 I saw (see) Sue in town yesterday, but she didn't (not / see) me. She (look) the other way.
2 I met (meet) Tom and Jane at the airport a few weeks ago. They (go) to Paris and I (go) to Rome. We (have) a chat while we (wait) for our flights.
3 I (cycle) home yesterday when a man (step) out into the road in front of me. I (go) quite fast, but Luckily I (manage) to stop in time and (not / hit) him.

6.4 Put the verb into the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1 Jenny was waiting (wait) for me when I arrived (arrive).
2 What did you do (you / do) at this time yesterday? I was asleep.
3 What did you do (you / go) out last night? No, I was too tired.
4 How fast did you drive (you / drive) when the accident happened?
5 Sam took (take) a photograph of me while I didn't (not / look).
6 We were in a very difficult position. We didn't know (not / know) what to do.
7 I haven't seen Alan for ages. When I last saw him, he tried (try) to find a job.
8 I heard (hear) footsteps behind me. Somebody followed me. I was scared and I started (start) to run.
9 When I was young, I wanted (want) to be a pilot.
10 Last night I dropped (drop) a plate when I started (start) to wash the washing up. Fortunately it didn't break (not / break).

→ Additional exercise 1 (page 302)
Present perfect 1 (I have done)

A Study this example situation:

Tom is looking for his key. He can’t find it.
He has lost his key.
He has lost his key = He lost it recently, and he still doesn’t have it.

Have/has lost is the present perfect simple:

| I/we/they/you have (= I’ve etc.) | finished |
| he/she/it has (= he’s etc.)     | lost     |
|                                | done     |
|                                | been etc.|

The present perfect simple is have/has + past participle. The past participle often ends in -ed (finished/decided etc.), but many important verbs are irregular (lost/done/written etc.).

For a list of irregular verbs, see Appendix 1.

B When we say that ‘something has happened’, this is usually new information:

- Ow! I’ve cut my finger.
- The road is closed. There’s been (there has been) an accident.
- (from the news) Police have arrested two men in connection with the robbery.

When we use the present perfect, there is a connection with now. The action in the past has a result now:

- ‘Where’s your key?’ ‘I don’t know. I’ve lost it.’ (= I don’t have it now)
- He told me his name, but I’ve forgotten it. (= I can’t remember it now)
- ‘Is Sally here?’ ‘No, she’s gone out.’ (= she is out now)
- I can’t find my bag. Have you seen it? (= Do you know where it is now?)

You can use the present perfect with just, already and yet.

Just = a short time ago:

- ‘Are you hungry?’ ‘No, I’ve just had lunch.’
- Hello. Have you just arrived?

We use already to say that something happened sooner than expected:

- ‘Don’t forget to send the letter.’ ‘I’ve already sent it.’
- ‘What time is Mark leaving?’ ‘He’s already gone.’

Yet = until now. Yet shows that the speaker is expecting something to happen. Use yet only in questions and negative sentences:

- Has it stopped raining yet?
- I’ve written the letter, but I haven’t sent it yet.

Note the difference between gone (to) and been (to):

- Jim is on holiday. He has gone to Italy. (= he is there now or on his way there)
- Jane is back home now. She has been to Italy. (= she has now come back)

Present perfect → Units 8, 11  Been to → Units 8A, 126B  Present perfect continuous → Units 9–10
Present perfect and past → Units 12–14  Yet and already → Unit 111  American English → Appendix 7
Exercises

7.1 Read the situations and write sentences. Use the following verbs:

arrive  break  fall  go up  grow  improve  lose

1 Tom is looking for his key. He can't find it.
   He has lost his key.

2 Margaret can't walk and her leg is in plaster.
   She ........................................

3 Last week the bus fare was 80 pence. Now it is 90.
   The bus fare ................................

4 Maria's English wasn't very good. Now it is better.
   Her English ................................

5 Dan didn't have a beard before. Now he has a beard.
   He ...........................................

6 This morning I was expecting a letter. Now I have it.
   The letter ...................................

7 The temperature was 20 degrees. Now it is only 12.
   The ...........................................

7.2 Complete B's sentences. Use the verb in brackets + just/already/yet.

A

1 Would you like something to eat?
   Would you like something to eat?

2 Do you know where Julia is?
   Do you know where Julia is?

3 What time is David leaving?
   What time is David leaving?

4 What's in the newspaper today?
   What's in the newspaper today?

5 Is Sue coming to the cinema with us?
   Is Sue coming to the cinema with us?

6 Are your friends here yet?
   Are your friends here yet?

7 What does Tim think about your plan?
   What does Tim think about your plan?

B

No, thanks. I've just had lunch.

I've just had lunch.

(1 / just / have / lunch)

Yes, ...........................................

(1 / just / see / her)

(he / already / leave)

I don't know.

I don't know.

(1 / not / read / it yet)

No, ...........................................

(she / already / see / the film)

Yes, .........................................

(they / just / arrive)

(we / not / tell / him yet)

7.3 Read the situations and write sentences with just, already or yet.

1 After lunch you go to see a friend at her house. She says, 'Would you like something to eat?'
   You say: No thank you. I've just had lunch. (have lunch)

2 Joe goes out. Five minutes later, the phone rings and the caller says, 'Can I speak to Joe?'
   You say: I'm afraid ........................................... (go out)

3 You are eating in a restaurant. The waiter thinks you have finished and starts to take your plate away. You say: Wait a minute! ...........................................

4 You are going to a restaurant tonight. You phone to reserve a table. Later your friend says, 'Shall I phone to reserve a table.' You say: No, .........................................

5 You know that a friend of yours is looking for a place to live. Perhaps she has been successful.
   Ask her. You say: ...........................................

6 You are still thinking about where to go for your holiday. A friend asks, 'Where are you going for your holiday?' You say: ...........................................

7 Linda went to the bank, but a few minutes ago she returned. Somebody asks, 'Is Linda still at the bank?' You say: No, ...........................................

7.4 Put in been or gone.

1 Jim is on holiday. He's ..........gone.......... to Italy.

2 Hello! I've just ....................... to the shops. I've bought lots of things.

3 Alice isn't here at the moment. She's ....................... to the shop to get a newspaper.

4 Tom has ....................... out. He'll be back in about an hour.

5 'Are you going to the bank?' 'No, I've already ....................... to the bank.'
Present perfect 2 (I have done)

Study this example conversation:

DAVE: Have you travelled a lot, Jane?
JANE: Yes, I've been to lots of places.
DAVE: Really? Have you ever been to China?
JANE: Yes, I've been to China twice.
DAVE: What about India?
JANE: No, I haven't been to India.

When we talk about a period of time that continues from the past until now, we use the present perfect (have been / have travelled etc.). Here, Dave and Jane are talking about the places Jane has visited in her life (which is a period that continues until now).

Some more examples:
- Have you ever eaten caviar? (in your life)
- We've never had a car.
- 'Have you read Hamlet?' 'No, I haven't read any of Shakespeare's plays.'
- Susan really loves that film. She's seen it eight times!
- What a boring film! It's the most boring film I've ever seen.

Been (to) = visited:
- I've never been to China. Have you been there?

In the following examples too, the speakers are talking about a period that continues until now (recently / in the last few days / so far / since breakfast etc.):
- Have you heard from Brian recently?
- I've met a lot of people in the last few days.
- Everything is going well. We haven't had any problems so far.
- I'm hungry. I haven't eaten anything since breakfast.
  (= from breakfast until now)
- It's good to see you again. We haven't seen each other for a long time.

We use the present perfect with today / this evening / this year etc. when these periods are not finished at the time of speaking (see also Unit 14B):
- I've drunk four cups of coffee today.
- Have you had a holiday this year (yet)?
- I haven't seen Tom this morning. Have you?
- Rob hasn't studied very hard this term.

We say: It's the (first) time something has happened. For example:
- Don is having a driving lesson. It's his first one.
  It's the first time he has driven a car. (not drives)
- He has never driven a car before.
- Sarah has lost her passport again. This is the second time this has happened. (not happens)
- Bill is phoning his girlfriend again. That's the third time he's phoned her this evening.
Exercises

Unit 8

8.1 You are asking people questions about things they have done. Make questions with ever using the words in brackets.

1 (ride / horse?) Have you ever ridden a horse?
2 (be / California?) Have
3 (run / marathon?) 
4 (speak / famous person?) 
5 (most beautiful place / visit?) What's

8.2 Complete B's answers. Some sentences are positive and some negative. Use the following verbs:

be be eat happen have meet play read see see try

A 1 What's Mark's sister like?
2 How is Diane these days?
3 Are you hungry?
4 Can you play chess?
5 Are you enjoying your holiday?
6 What's that book like?
7 Is Brussels an interesting place?
8 Mike was late for work again today.
9 Do you like caviar?
10 I hear your car broke down again yesterday.
11 Who's that woman by the door?

B I've no idea. I've never met her.
I don't know. I haven't met her recently.
I don't know. I have much today.
Yes, but I haven't been for ages.
Yes, it's the best holiday for a long time.
I don't know. I haven't seen it.
I've no idea. I haven't been there.
Again? He has been late every day this week.
I don't know. I haven't seen it.
Yes, it's the second time this week.
I don't know. I haven't seen her before.

8.3 Complete the sentences using today / this year / this term etc.

1 I saw Tom yesterday, but I haven't seen him today.
2 I read a newspaper yesterday, but I haven't read it today.
3 Last year the company made a profit, but this year
4 Tracy worked hard at school last term, but
5 It snowed a lot last winter, but
6 Our football team won a lot of games last season, but we

8.4 Read the situations and write sentences as shown in the example.

1 Jack is driving a car, but he's very nervous and not sure what to do.
   You ask: Have you driven a car before?
   He says: No, this is the first time I've driven a car.

2 Ben is playing tennis. He's not good at it and he doesn't know the rules.
   You ask: Have
   He says: No, this is the first

3 Sue is riding a horse. She doesn't look very confident or comfortable.
   You ask: 
   She says:

4 Maria is in London. She has just arrived and it's very new for her.
   You ask: 
   She says:
Present perfect continuous
(I have been doing)

It has been raining

Study this example situation:

Is it raining?
No, but the ground is wet.

It has been raining.

Have/has been -ing is the present perfect continuous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/they/you have (= I’ve etc.)</th>
<th>been doing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it has (= he’s etc.)</td>
<td>waiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>playing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use the present perfect continuous for an activity that has recently stopped or just stopped.

There is a connection with now:

- You’re out of breath. Have you been running? (= you’re out of breath now)
- Paul is very tired. He’s been working very hard. (= he’s tired now)
- Why are your clothes so dirty? What have you been doing?
- I’ve been talking to Amanda about the problem and she agrees with me.
- Where have you been? I’ve been looking for you everywhere.

It has been raining for two hours.

Study this example situation:

It began raining two hours ago and it is still raining.

How long has it been raining?
It has been raining for two hours.

We use the present perfect continuous in this way with how long, for ... and since .... The activity is still happening (as in this example) or has just stopped.

- How long have you been learning English? (= you’re still learning English)
- Tim is still watching television. He’s been watching television all day.
- Where have you been? I’ve been looking for you for the last half hour.
- Chris hasn’t been feeling well recently.

You can use the present prefect continuous for actions repeated over a period of time:

- Debbie is a very good tennis player. She’s been playing since she was eight.
- Every morning they meet in the same café. They’ve been going there for years.

Compare I am doing (see Unit 1) and I have been doing:

- Don’t disturb me now. I’m working.
- We need an umbrella. It’s raining.
- Hurry up! We’re waiting.

- I’ve been working hard. Now I’m going to have a break.
- The ground is wet. It’s been raining.
- We’ve been waiting for an hour.
Exercises

9.1 What have these people been doing or what has been happening?

1. earlier  now
   They 've been shopping.

2. earlier  now
   She

3. earlier  now
   They

4. earlier  now
   He

9.2 Write a question for each situation.

1. You meet Paul as he is leaving the swimming pool.
   You ask: (you / swim?)
   **Have you been swimming?**

2. You have just arrived to meet a friend who is waiting for you.
   You ask: (you / wait / long?)

3. You meet a friend in the street. His face and hands are very dirty.
   You ask: (what / you / do?)

4. A friend of yours is now working in a shop. You want to know how long.
   You ask: (how long / you / work / there?)

5. A friend tells you about his job – he sells computers. You want to know how long.
   You ask: (how long / you / sell / computers?)

9.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1. It’s raining. The rain started two hours ago.
   It _has been raining_ for two hours.

2. We are waiting for the bus. We started waiting 20 minutes ago.
   We _have been waiting_ for 20 minutes.

3. I’m learning Spanish. I started classes in December.
   I _have been learning_ since December.

4. Mary is working in London. She started working there on 18 January.
   She _has been working_ since 18 January.

5. Our friends always spend their holidays in Italy. They started going there years ago.
   They _have been going_ there for years.

9.4 Put the verb into the present continuous (I am -ing) or present perfect continuous (I have been -ing).

1. _Maria has been learning_ (Maria / learn) English for two years.

2. Hello, Tom. _I am looking_ (I / look) for you. Where have you been?

3. Why _have you been looking_ (you / look) at me like that? Stop it!

4. Linda is a teacher. _She has been teaching_ (she / teach) for ten years.

5. _I have been thinking_ (I / think) about what you said and I’ve decided to take your advice.

6. ‘Is Paul on holiday this week?’ ‘No, _he has been working_ (he / work).’

7. Sarah is very tired. _She has been working_ (she / work) very hard recently.
Present perfect continuous and simple (I have been doing and I have done)

Study this example situation:

Kate's clothes are covered in paint. She has been painting the ceiling.
Has been painting is the present perfect continuous.

We are interested in the activity. It does not matter whether something has been finished or not. In this example, the activity (painting the ceiling) has not been finished.

The ceiling was white. Now it is red. She has painted the ceiling.
Has painted is the present perfect simple.

Here, the important thing is that something has been finished. Has painted is a completed action. We are interested in the result of the activity (the painted ceiling), not the activity itself.

Compare these examples:

- My hands are very dirty. I've been repairing the car.
- Joe has been eating too much recently.
- He should eat less.
- It's nice to see you again. What have you been doing since we last met?
- Where have you been? Have you been playing tennis?
- The car is OK again now. I've repaired it.
- Somebody has eaten all my chocolates.
- The box is empty.
- Where's the book I gave you? What have you done with it?
- Have you ever played tennis?

We use the continuous to say how long (for an activity that is still happening):

- How long have you been reading that book?
- Lisa is still writing letters. She's been writing letters all day.
- They've been playing tennis since 2 o'clock.
- I'm learning Spanish, but I haven't been learning it very long.

We use the simple to say how much, how many or how many times (for completed actions):

- How much of that book have you read?
- Lisa has written ten letters today.
- They've played tennis three times this week.
- I'm learning Spanish, but I haven't learnt very much yet.

Some verbs (for example, know/like/believe) are not normally used in the continuous:

- I've known about it for a long time. (not I've been knowing)

For a list of these verbs, see Unit 4A. But note that you can use want and mean in the present perfect continuous:

- I've been meaning to phone Jane, but I keep forgetting.
10.1 For each situation, write two sentences using the words in brackets.

1. Tom started reading a book two hours ago. He is still reading it and now he is on page 53. (read / for two hours) He has been reading for two hours. (read / 53 pages so far) He has read 53 pages so far.

2. Rachel is from Australia. She is travelling round Europe at the moment. She began her trip three months ago. (travel / for three months) She has travelled for three months. (visit / six countries so far) She has visited six countries so far.

3. Patrick is a tennis player. He began playing tennis when he was ten years old. This year he is national champion again – for the fourth time. (win / the national championships / four times) He has won the national championships four times. (play / tennis since he was ten) He has been playing tennis since he was ten.

4. When they left college, Lisa and Sue started making films together. They still make films. (make / five films since they left college) They have made five films since they left college.

10.2 For each situation, ask a question using the words in brackets.

1. You have a friend who is learning Arabic. You ask: (how long / learn / Arabic?) How long have you been learning Arabic?

2. You have just arrived to meet a friend. She is waiting for you. You ask: (wait / long?) Have you been waiting long?

3. You see somebody fishing by the river. You ask: (catch / any fish?) Have you caught any fish?

4. Some friends of yours are having a party next week. You ask: (how many people / invite?) How many people are you inviting?

5. A friend of yours is a teacher. You ask: (how long / teach?) How long have you been teaching?

6. You meet somebody who is a writer. You ask: (how many books / write?) How many books have you written?

7. A friend of yours is saving money to go on holiday. You ask: (how long / save?) How long have you been saving money?

10.3 Put the verb into the more suitable form, present perfect simple (I have done) or continuous (I have been doing).

1. Where have you been? Have you been playing (you / play) tennis?

2. Look! (somebody / break) that window.

3. You look tired. (you / work) hard?

4. 'Liz is away on holiday.' 'Is she? Where (she / go)?

5. My brother is an actor. (he / appear) in several films.

6. 'Sorry I'm late.' 'That's all right. (I / not / wait) long.'

7. 'Is it still raining?' 'No, (it / stop).'

8. (I / lose) my address book. (you / see) it?

9. (I / read) the book you lent me, but (I / not / finish) it yet. It's very interesting.

10. (I / read) the book you lent me, so you can have it back now.
How long have you (been) ... ?

Study this example situation:

Dan and Jenny are married. They got married exactly 20 years ago, so today is their 20th wedding anniversary. They have been married for 20 years.

We say: They are married. (present)

But How long have they been married? (present perfect)
(not How long are they married?)

They have been married for 20 years.
(not They are married for 20 years)

We use the present perfect to talk about something that began in the past and still continues now. Compare the present and the present perfect:

- Bill is in hospital.
  
  but He has been in hospital since Monday.
  (not Bill is in hospital since Monday)

- Do you know each other well?
  
  but Have you known each other for a long time?
  (not Do you know)

- She's waiting for somebody.
  
  but She's been waiting all morning.

- Do they have a car?
  
  but How long have they had their car?

I have known/had/lived etc. is the present perfect simple.
I have been learning / been waiting / been doing etc. is the present perfect continuous.

When we ask or say ‘how long’, the continuous is more usual (see Unit 10):

- I've been learning English for six months.
- It's been raining since lunchtime.
- Richard has been doing the same job for 20 years.
- ‘How long have you been driving?’ ‘Since I was 17.’

Some verbs (for example, know/like/believe) are not normally used in the continuous:

- How long have you known Jane? (not have you been knowing)
- I've had a pain in my stomach all day. (not I've been having)

See also Units 4A and 10C. For have, see Unit 17.

You can use either the present perfect continuous or simple with live and work:

- Julia has been living / has lived in Paris for a long time.
- How long have you been working / have you worked here?

But we use the simple (I've lived / I've done etc.) with always:

- I've always lived in the country. (not always been living)

We say ‘I haven't done something since/for ...’ (present perfect simple):

- I haven't seen Tom since Monday. (= Monday was the last time I saw him)
- Sue hasn't phoned for ages. (= the last time she phoned was ages ago)
Exercises

11.1 Are the underlined verbs right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1 Bob is a friend of mine. I know him very well. OK
2 Bob is a friend of mine. I know him for a long time. I've known him
3 Sue and Alan are married since July.
4 The weather is awful. It's raining again.
5 The weather is awful. It's raining all day.
6 I like your house. How long are you living there?
7 Gary is working in a shop for the last few months.
8 I don't know Tim well. We've only met a few times.
9 I gave up drinking coffee. I don't drink it for a year.
10 That's a very old bike. How long do you have it?

11.2 Read the situations and write questions from the words in brackets.

1 John tells you that his mother is in hospital. You ask him:
   (how long / be / in hospital?) How long has your mother been in hospital?
2 You meet a woman who tells you that she teaches English. You ask her:
   (how long / teach / English?)
3 You know that Jane is a good friend of Caroline's. You ask Jane:
   (how long / know / Caroline?)
4 Your friend's brother went to Australia some time ago and he's still there. You ask your friend:
   (how long / be / in Australia?)
5 Tim always wears the same jacket. It's a very old jacket. You ask him:
   (how long / have / that jacket?)
6 You are talking to a friend about Joe. Joe now works at the airport. You ask your friend:
   (how long / work / at the airport?)
7 A friend of yours is learning to drive. You ask him:
   (how long / learn / to drive?)
8 You meet somebody on a plane. She says that she lives in Chicago. You ask her:
   (always / live / in Chicago?)

11.3 Complete B's answers to A's questions.

A

1 Bill is in hospital, isn't he?
2 Do you see Ann very often?
3 Is Margaret married?
4 Are you waiting for me?
5 You know Linda, don't you?
6 Do you still play tennis?
7 Is Jim watching TV?
8 Do you watch TV a lot?
9 Have you got a headache?
10 George is never ill, is he?
11 Are you feeling ill?
12 Sue lives in London, doesn't she?
13 Do you go to the cinema a lot?
14 Would you like to go to New York one day?

B

Yes, he has been in hospital since Monday.
No, I haven't seen her for three months.
Yes, she has been married for ten years.
Yes, I have been for the last half hour.
Yes, we have been each other a long time.
No, I haven't been tennis for years.
Yes, he has been TV all evening.
No, I haven't been TV for ages.
Yes, I have been a headache all morning.
No, he hasn't been ill since I've known him.
Yes, I have been ill all day.
Yes, she has been in London for the last few years.
No, I haven't been to the cinema for ages.
Yes, I have been to go to New York.
(use always / want)
For and since
When ... ? and How long ... ?

We use *for* and *since* to say how long something has been happening.

**A**

- We use *for* + a period of time (two hours, six weeks etc.):
  - I've been waiting *for* two hours.

- We use *since* + the start of a period (8 o'clock, Monday, 1999 etc.):
  - I've been waiting *since* 8 o'clock.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>For</th>
<th>Since</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>two hours ago</td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two hours</td>
<td>a long time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 minutes</td>
<td>six months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>five days</td>
<td>50 years</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Sally has been working here *for* six months. (not since six months)
- I haven't seen Tom *for* three days. (not since three days)

- Sally has been working here *since* April. (= from April until now)
- I haven't seen Tom *since* Monday. (= from Monday until now)

It is possible to leave out *for* (but not usually in negative sentences):
- They've been married *for* ten years. (with or without *for*)
- They *haven't had* a holiday *for* ten years. (you must use *for*)

We do *not* use *for* + all ... (all day / all my life etc.):
- I've lived here *all* my life. (not for all my life)

**B**

Compare *when* ...? (+ past simple) and *how long* ...? (+ present perfect):

- **A:** When did it start raining?
  - **B:** It started raining *an hour ago* / at 1 o'clock.

- **A:** How long has it been raining?
  - **B:** It's been raining *for an hour* / *since 1 o'clock*.

- **A:** When did Joe and Carol first meet?
  - **B:** They first met *a long time ago*.
    - when they were at school.

- **A:** How long have they known each other?
  - **B:** They've known each other *for a long time*.
    - since they were at school.

**C**

We say 'It's (a long time / two years etc.) since something happened':
- It's two years since I last saw Joe. (= I haven't seen Joe for two years)
- It's ages since we went to the cinema. (= We haven't been to the cinema for ages)

You can ask 'How long is it *since* ...?':
- How long is it since you last saw Joe? (= When did you last see Joe?)
- How long is it since Mrs Hill died? (= When did Mrs Hill die?)

You can also say 'It's been (= It has been) ... since ...':
- It's been two years since I last saw Joe.

**How long have you (been) ...?** → **Unit 11**
Exercises

12.1 Write for or since.
1 It’s been raining _____ lunchtime.
2 Sarah has lived in Paris _______ 1995.
3 Paul has lived in London _______ ten years.
4 I’m tired of waiting. We’ve been sitting here _______ an hour.
5 Kevin has been looking for a job _______ he left school.
6 I haven’t been to a party _______ ages.
7 I wonder where Joe is. I haven’t seen him _______ last week.
8 Jane is away. She’s been away _______ Friday.
9 The weather is dry. It hasn’t rained _______ a few weeks.

12.2 Write questions with how long and when.
1 It’s raining.
   (how long?) _______ has it been raining?
   (when?) _______ did it start raining?
2 Kate is learning Japanese.
   (how long / learn?) _______ have you been learning?
   (when / start?) _______ did you start learning?
3 I know Simon.
   (how long / you / know?) _______ have you known each other for?
   (when / first / meet?) _______ did you first meet?
4 Rebecca and David are married.
   (how long?) _______ have you been married?
   (when?) _______ did you get married?

12.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences.
1 It’s raining. It’s been raining since lunchtime. It _______ at lunchtime.
2 Ann and Sue are friends. They first met years ago. They’ve _______ years.
3 Joe is ill. He became ill on Sunday. He has _______ Sunday.
4 Joe is ill. He became ill a few days ago. He has _______ a few days.
5 Liz is married. She’s been married for a year. She got _______.
6 You have a headache. It started when you woke up.
   I’ve _______.
7 Sue has been in Italy for the last three weeks.
   She went _______.
8 You’re working in a hotel. You started six months ago.
   I’ve _______.

12.4 Write B’s sentences using the words in brackets.
1 A: Do you often go on holiday?
   B: (no / five years) _______.
2 A: Do you often see Sarah?
   B: (no / about a month) _______.
3 A: Do you often go to the cinema?
   B: (no / a long time) _______.
4 A: Do you often eat in restaurants?
   B: (no / ages) _______.

Now write B’s answers again. This time use It’s ... since ...
5 _______.
6 _______.
7 _______.
8 _______.
Present perfect and past 1
(I have done and I did)

A

Study this example situation:

Tom is looking for his key. He can’t find it. He has lost his key. (present perfect)
This means that he doesn’t have his key now.

Ten minutes later:

Now Tom has found his key. He has it now.
Has he lost his key? No, he has found it.
Did he lose his key? Yes, he did.
He lost his key (past simple)
but now he has found it. (present perfect)

The present perfect (something has happened) is a present tense. It always tells us about the situation now. ‘Tom has lost his key’ = he doesn’t have his key now (see Unit 7).
The past simple (something happened) tells us only about the past. If somebody says ‘Tom lost his key’, this doesn’t tell us whether he has the key now or not. It tells us only that he lost his key at some time in the past.

Do not use the present perfect if the situation now is different. Compare:

- They’ve gone away. They’ll be back on Friday. (they are away now)
  They went away, but I think they’re back at home now. (not They’ve gone)

- It has stopped raining now, so we don’t need the umbrella. (it isn’t raining now)
  It stopped raining for a while, but now it’s raining again. (not It has stopped)

B

You can use the present perfect for new or recent happenings:

- I’ve repaired the TV. It’s working OK now. ‘Oh, that’s good.’
- Have you heard the news? Sally has won the lottery!

Use the past simple (not the present perfect) for things that are not recent or new:

- Mozart was a composer. He wrote more than 600 pieces of music.
  (not has been ... has written)
- My mother grew up in Scotland. (not has grown)

Compare:

- Did you know that somebody has invented a new type of washing machine?
- Who invented the telephone? (not has invented)

C

We use the present perfect to give new information (see Unit 7). But if we continue to talk about it, we normally use the past simple:

- A: Ow! I’ve burnt myself.
  B: How did you do that? (not have you done)
  A: I picked up a hot dish. (not have picked)

- A: Look! Somebody has spilt something on the sofa.
  B: Well, it wasn’t me. I didn’t do it. (not hasn’t been ... haven’t done)
Exercises

13.1 Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets. Use the present perfect where possible. Otherwise use the past simple.

1. I can’t get in. I’ve lost my key.
2. Everybody go home.
3. I meant to call you last night, but I forgot.
4. Mary go to Egypt for a holiday, but she’s back home in England now.
5. Are you OK? Yes, I have a headache, but I feel fine now.

13.2 Put the verb into the correct form, present perfect or past simple.

1. It __stopped__ raining for a while, but now it’s raining again. (stop)
2. The town is very different now. It __has changed__ a lot. (change)
3. I did German at school, but I __forget__ most of it now. (forget)
4. The police __arrest__ three people, but later they let them go. (arrest)
5. What do you think of my English? Do you think it __improve__? (improve)
6. A: Are you still reading the paper?  
   B: No, I __finish__ with it. You can have it. (finish)
7. I __apply__ for a job as a tourist guide, but I wasn’t successful. (apply)
8. Where’s my bike? It __be__ outside the house, but it’s not there now. (be)
9. Look! There’s an ambulance over there. There __be__ an accident. (be)
10. A: Have you heard about Ben? He __break__ his arm. (break)  
    B: Really? How __happen__ that? (happen)  
    A: He __fall__ off a ladder. (fall)

13.3 Are the underlined parts of these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1. Do you know about Sue? She’s given up her job. **Ok**
2. My mother has grown up in Scotland. **grew**
3. How many plays has Shakespeare written? **has written**
4. Ow! I’ve cut my finger. It’s bleeding. **cut**
5. Drugs have become a big problem everywhere. **become**
6. The Chinese have invented paper. **invented**
7. Where have you been born? **in**
8. Mary isn’t at home. She’s gone shopping. **has gone**
9. Albert Einstein has been the scientist who has developed the theory of relativity. **developed**
Present perfect and past 2
(I have done and I did)

Do not use the present perfect (I have done) when you talk about a finished time (for example, yesterday / ten minutes ago / in 1999 / when I was a child). Use a past tense:
- It was very cold yesterday. (not has been)
- Paul and Lucy arrived ten minutes ago. (not have arrived)
- Did you eat a lot of sweets when you were a child? (not have you eaten)
- I got home late last night. I was very tired and went straight to bed.

Use the past to ask When ...? or What time ...?
- When did your friends arrive? (not have ... arrived)
- What time did you finish work?

Compare:

Present perfect
- Tom has lost his key. He can’t get into the house.
- Is Carla here or has she left?

Past simple
- Tom lost his key yesterday. He couldn’t get into the house.
- When did Carla leave?

Present perfect (have done)
- I’ve done a lot of work today.

We use the present perfect for a period of time that continues until now. For example: today / this week / since 1985.

Past simple (did)
- I did a lot of work yesterday.

We use the past simple for a finished time in the past. For example: yesterday / last week / from 1995 to 2001.

- It hasn’t rained this week.
- Have you seen Anna this morning? (it is still morning)
- Have you seen Tim recently?
- I don’t know where Lisa is. I haven’t seen her. (= I haven’t seen her recently)
- We’ve been waiting for an hour. (we are still waiting now)
- Ian lives in London. He has lived there for seven years.
- I have never played golf. (in my life)
- It’s the last day of your holiday. You say: It’s been a really good holiday. I’ve really enjoyed it.
- It didn’t rain last week.
- Did you see Anna this morning? (it is now afternoon or evening)
- Did you see Tim on Sunday?
- A: Was Lisa at the party on Sunday?
  B: I don’t think so. I didn’t see her.
- We waited (or were waiting) for an hour. (we are no longer waiting)
- Ian lived in Scotland for ten years. Now he lives in London.
- I didn’t play golf last summer.
- After you come back from holiday you say: It was a really good holiday. I really enjoyed it.
Exercises

14.1 Are the underlined parts of these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1. I've lost my key. I can't find it anywhere.  
   OK

2. Have you eaten a lot of sweets when you were a child?  
   Did you eat

3. I've bought a new car. You must come and see it.  

4. I've bought a new car last week.  

5. Where have you been yesterday evening?  

6. Lucy has left school in 1999.  

7. I'm looking for Mike. Have you seen him?  

8. 'Have you been to Paris?' 'Yes, many times.'  

9. I'm very hungry. I haven't eaten much today.  

10. When has this book been published?  

14.2 Make sentences from the words in brackets. Use the present perfect or past simple.

1. (it / not / rain / this week)  It hasn't rained this week.

2. (the weather / be / cold / recently)  The weather

3. (it / cold / last week)  It

4. (I / not / read / a newspaper yesterday)  I

5. (I / not / read / a newspaper today)  

6. (Emily / earn / a lot of money / this year)  

7. (she / not / earn / so much / last year)  

8. (you / have / a holiday recently?)  

14.3 Put the verb into the correct form, present perfect or past simple.

1. I don't know where Lisa is.  Have you seen (you / see) her?

2. When I arrived home last night, I was very tired and I went straight to bed.

3. A: Have you finished (you / finish) painting the bedroom?  
   B: Not yet. I'll finish it tomorrow.

4. George was not feeling very well last week.

5. Mr Clark worked in a bank for 15 years. Then he gave it up.

6. Molly lives in Dublin. She has lived there all her life.

7. A: Have you been (you / go) to the cinema last night?  
   B: Yes, but it was a mistake. The film was awful.

8. My grandfather died before I was born. I never met him.

9. I don't know Carol's husband. I never meet (never / meet) him.


12. A: How long have you lived (you / live) there?  B: Five years.


14. A: And how long have you lived in Chicago?  B: Two years.

14.4 Write sentences about yourself using the ideas in brackets.

1. (something you haven't done today)  I haven't eaten any fruit today.

2. (something you haven't done today)  

3. (something you didn't do yesterday)  

4. (something you did yesterday evening)  

5. (something you haven't done recently)  

6. (something you've done a lot recently)  

--- Additional exercises 2-4 (pages 303-04), 14-15 (pages 310-11) ---

29
Past perfect (I had done)

Study this example situation:

Sarah went to a party last week. Paul went to the party too, but they didn’t see each other. Paul left the party at 10.30 and Sarah arrived at 11 o’clock. So:

When Sarah arrived at the party, Paul wasn’t there.
He had gone home.

Had gone is the past perfect (simple):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/they/you he/she/it</th>
<th>had (= I’d etc.)</th>
<th>gone seen finished etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The past perfect simple is had + past participle (gone/seen/finished etc).

Sometimes we talk about something that happened in the past:

Sarah arrived at the party.

This is the starting point of the story. Then, if we want to talk about things that happened before this time, we use the past perfect (had ...):

When Sarah arrived at the party, Paul had already gone home.

Some more examples:

When we got home last night, we found that somebody had broken into the flat.
Karen didn’t want to go to the cinema with us because she’d already seen the film.
At first I thought I’d done the right thing, but I soon realised that I’d made a big mistake.
The man sitting next to me on the plane was very nervous. He hadn’t flown before.

or ... He had never flown before.

Compare the present perfect (have seen etc.) and the past perfect (had seen etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present perfect</th>
<th>Past perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have seen</td>
<td>had seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now</td>
<td>now</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Who is that woman? I’ve never seen her before.
- We aren’t hungry. We’ve just had lunch.
- The house is dirty. They haven’t cleaned it for weeks.
- I didn’t know who she was. I’d never seen her before. (= before that time)
- We weren’t hungry. We’d just had lunch.
- The house was dirty. They hadn’t cleaned it for weeks.

Compare the past simple (left, was etc.) and the past perfect (had left, had been etc.):

A: Was Tom there when you arrived?
B: Yes, but he left soon afterwards.

A: Was Tom there when you arrived?
B: No, he had already left.

Kate wasn’t at home when I phoned. She was at her mother’s house.

A: Kate had just got home when I phoned.
B: She had been at her mother’s house.
15.1 Read the situations and write sentences from the words in brackets.

1. You went to Sue's house, but she wasn't there. (she / go / out) **She had gone out.**
2. You went back to your home town after many years. It wasn't the same as before. (it / change / a lot)
3. I invited Rachel to the party, but she couldn't come. (she / arrange / to do something else)
4. You went to the cinema last night. You got to the cinema late. (the film / already / begin)
5. It was nice to see Dan again after such a long time. (I / not / see / him for five years)
6. I offered Sue something to eat, but she wasn't hungry. (she / just / have / breakfast)

15.2 For each situation, write a sentence ending with never ... before. Use the verb in brackets.

1. The man sitting next to you on the plane was very nervous. It was his first flight. (fly) **He'd never flown before.**
2. A woman walked into the room. She was a complete stranger to me. (see) **I'd never seen her before.**
3. Sam played tennis yesterday. He wasn't very good at it because it was his first game. (play) **He'd never played before.**
4. Last year we went to Denmark. It was our first time there. (be there) **We'd never been there before.**

15.3 Use the sentences on the left to complete the paragraphs on the right. These sentences are in the order in which they happened – so (1) happened before (2), (2) before (3) etc. But your paragraph begins with the underlined sentence, so sometimes you need the past perfect.

1. (1) Somebody broke into the office during the night. **We arrived at work in the morning and found that somebody had broken into the office during the night. So we**...
2. (1) Laura went out this morning. **I tried to phone Laura this morning, but she had gone out.**
3. (1) Jim came back from holiday a few days ago. **I met Jim a few days ago.**
4. (1) Kevin sent Sally lots of emails. **Yesterday Kevin had sent lots of emails from Sally. He was very surprised.**

15.4 Put the verb into the correct form, past perfect (I had done) or past simple (I did).

1. 'Was Paul at the party when you arrived?' 'No, he **had gone** (go) home'.
2. I felt very tired when I got home, so I **went** (go) straight to bed.
3. The house was very quiet when I got home. Everybody **went** (go) to bed.
4. Sorry I'm late. The car **broke** (break) down on my way here.
5. We were driving along the road when we **saw** (see) a car which **broke** (break) down, so we **stopped** (stop) to help.
Past perfect continuous
(I had been doing)

Study this example situation:

**yesterday morning**

Yesterday morning I got up and looked out of the window. The sun was shining, but the ground was very wet.

It had been raining.

It was not raining when I looked out of the window; the sun was shining. But it had been raining before.

Had been -ing is the past perfect continuous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>had</th>
<th>been</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>(= I'd etc.)</td>
<td>(= he'd etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some more examples:

- When the boys came into the house, their clothes were dirty, their hair was untidy and one of them had a black eye. They’d been fighting.
- I was very tired when I got home. I’d been working hard all day.
- When I went to Madrid a few years ago, I stayed with a friend of mine. She’d been living there only a short time but knew the city very well.

You can say that something had been happening for a period of time before something else happened:

- We’d been playing tennis for about half an hour when it started to rain heavily.
- George went to the doctor last Friday. He hadn’t been feeling well for some time.

Compare have been -ing (present perfect continuous) and had been -ing (past perfect continuous):

**Present perfect continuous**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have been -ing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I hope the bus comes soon. I’ve been waiting for 20 minutes. *(before now)*
- James is out of breath. He has been running.

**Past perfect continuous**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I had been -ing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- At last the bus came. I’d been waiting for 20 minutes. *(before the bus came)*
- James was out of breath. He had been running.

Compare was -ing (past continuous) and had been -ing:

- It wasn’t raining when we went out. The sun was shining. But it had been raining, so the ground was wet.
- Cathy was sitting in an armchair resting. She was tired because she’d been working very hard.

Some verbs (for example, know and like) are not normally used in the continuous:

- We were good friends. We had known each other for years. *(not had been knowing)*

For a list of these verbs, see Unit 4A.
Exercises

16.1 Read the situations and make sentences from the words in brackets.
1 I was very tired when I arrived home.
   (I / work / hard all day)  I'd been working hard all day.
2 The two boys came into the house. They had a football and they were both very tired.
   (they / play / football)
3 I was disappointed when I had to cancel my holiday.
   (I / look / forward to it)
4 Ann woke up in the middle of the night. She was frightened and didn't know where she was.
   (she / dream)
5 When I got home, Tom was sitting in front of the TV. He had just turned it off.
   (he / watch / a film)

16.2 Read the situations and complete the sentences.
1 We played tennis yesterday. Half an hour after we began playing, it started to rain.
   We .......................................................... when it started to rain .
2 I had arranged to meet Tom in a restaurant. I arrived and waited for him. After 20 minutes
   I suddenly realised that I was in the wrong restaurant.
   I .......................................................... the wrong restaurant.
3 Sarah got a job in factory. Five years later the factory closed down.
   At the time the factory .......................................................... , Sarah ..........................................................
   there for five years.
4 I went to a concert last week. The orchestra began playing. After about ten minutes a man in
   the audience suddenly started shouting.
   The orchestra .......................................................... when

This time make your own sentence:
5 I began walking along the road. I ..........................................................
   when

16.3 Put the verb into the most suitable form, past continuous (I was doing), past perfect
(I had done) or past perfect continuous (I had been doing).
1 It was very noisy next door. Our neighbours .......................................................... (have) a party.
2 We were good friends. We .......................................................... (know) each other for years.
3 John and I went for a walk. I had difficulty keeping up with him because he
   .......................................................... (walk) so fast .
4 Sue was sitting on the ground. She was out of breath. She .......................................................... (run).
5 When I arrived, everybody was sitting round the table with their mouths full. They
   .......................................................... (eat).
6 When I arrived, everybody was sitting round the table and talking. Their mouths were empty,
   but their stomachs were full. They .......................................................... (eat).
7 Jim was on his hands and knees on the floor. He .......................................................... (look) for his
   contact lens.
8 When I arrived, Kate .......................................................... (wait) for me. She was annoyed with me
   because I was late and she .......................................................... (wait) for a long time.
9 I was sad when I sold my car. I .......................................................... (have) it for a very long time.
10 We were extremely tired at the end of the journey. We .......................................................... (travel) for
    more than 24 hours.

→ Additional exercises 5-8 (pages 304-07)
Have got and have

A

Have got and have (= for possession, relationships, illnesses etc.)

You can use have got or have (without got). There is no difference in meaning:

☐ They've got a new car. or They have a new car.
☐ Lisa's got two brothers. or Lisa has two brothers.
☐ I've got a headache. or I have a headache.
☐ Our house has got a small garden. or Our house has a small garden.
☐ He's got a few problems. or He has a few problems.

With these meanings (possessions etc.), you cannot use continuous forms (am having etc.):

☐ We’re enjoying our holiday. We’ve got / We have a nice room in the hotel. (not We’re having)

For the past we used had (without got):

☐ Lisa had long hair when she was a child. (not Lisa had got)

B

In questions and negative sentences there are three possible forms:

| Have you got any questions? | I haven’t got any questions. |
| Do you have any questions? | I don’t have any questions. |
| Have you any questions? (less usual) | I haven’t any questions. (less usual) |
| Has she got a car? | She hasn’t got a car. |
| Does she have a car? | She doesn’t have a car. |
| Has she a car? (less usual) | She hasn’t a car. (less usual) |

In past questions and negative sentences, we use did/didn’t:

☐ Did you have a car when you were living in London?
☐ I didn’t have a watch, so I didn’t know the time.
☐ Lisa had long hair, didn’t she?

C

Have breakfast / have a bath / have a good time etc.

We also use have (but not have got) for many actions and experiences. For example:

| breakfast / dinner / a cup of coffee / something to eat etc. |
| a bath / a shower / a swim / a break / a rest / a party / a holiday |
| an accident / an experience / a dream |
| a look (at something) |
| a chat / a conversation / a discussion (with somebody) |
| difficulty / trouble / fun / a good time etc. |
| a baby (= give birth to a baby) |

Have got is not possible in the expressions in the box. Compare:

☐ Sometimes I have (= eat) a sandwich for my lunch. (not I’ve got)

but I’ve got / I have some sandwiches. Would you like one?

You can use continuous forms (am having etc.) with the expressions in the box:

☐ We're enjoying our holiday. We're having a great time. (not We have)
☐ Mike is having a shower at the moment. He has a shower every day.

In questions and negative sentences we use do/does/did:

☐ I don’t usually have a big breakfast. (not I usually haven’t)
☐ What time does Jenny have lunch? (not has Jenny lunch)
☐ Did you have difficulty finding a place to live?
Exercises

17.1 Write negative sentences with have. Some are present (can't) and some are past (couldn't).

1. I can't get into the house. (a key) __________
2. I couldn't read the letter. (my glasses) __________
3. I can't get onto the roof. (a ladder) __________
4. We couldn't visit the museum. (enough time) __________
5. He couldn't find his way to our house. (a map) __________
6. She can't pay her bills. (any money) __________
7. I can't go swimming today. (enough energy) __________
8. They couldn't take any photographs. (a camera) __________

17.2 Complete the questions with have. Some are present and some are past.

1. Excuse me, __________ a pen I could borrow?
2. Why are you holding your face like that? __________ a toothache?
3. __________ a lot of toys when you were a child?
4. A: __________ the time, please?
   B: Yes, it's ten past seven.
5. I need a stamp for this letter. __________ one?
6. When you worked in your last job, __________ your own office?
7. A: It started to rain very heavily while I was out.
   B: __________ an umbrella?

17.3 Write sentences about yourself. Have you got these things now? Did you have them ten years ago?
Write two sentences each time using I've got / I haven't got and I had / I didn't have.
(You can also write about your family: We've got ... / We had ... etc.).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Now</th>
<th>Ten years ago</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a car)</td>
<td>I've got a car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I didn't have a car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a bike)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a mobile phone)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a dog)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a guitar)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(long hair)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a driving licence)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

17.4 Complete the sentences. Use an expression from the list and put the verb into the correct form where necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have a baby</th>
<th>have a break</th>
<th>have a chat</th>
<th>have difficulty</th>
<th>have a good flight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have a look</td>
<td>have lunch</td>
<td>have a party</td>
<td>have a nice time</td>
<td>have a shower</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I don't eat much during the day. I never __________.
2. David starts work at 8 o'clock and __________ at 10.30.
3. We __________ last week. It was great – we invited lots of people.
4. Excuse me, can I __________ at your newspaper, please?
5. Jim is away on holiday at the moment. I hope he __________.
6. I met Ann in the supermarket yesterday. We stopped and __________ finding the book you wanted?
   B: No, I found it OK.
7. Suzanne __________ a few weeks ago. It's her second child.
8. A: Why didn't you answer the phone?
   B: I __________.
9. You meet your friend Sally at the airport. She has just arrived. You say:
   Hi, Sally. How are you? __________ ?
Used to (do)

Study this example situation:

Diane doesn’t travel much these days.
She prefers to stay at home.

But she used to travel a lot.
She used to go away two or three times a year.
She used to travel a lot = she travelled a lot regularly in
the past, but she doesn’t do this any more.

Something used to happen = it happened regularly in the past, but no longer happens:

☐ I used to play tennis a lot, but I don’t play very often now.
☐ David used to spend a lot of money on clothes. These days he can’t afford it.
☐ ‘Do you go to the cinema much?’ ‘Not now, but I used to.’ (= I used to go)

We also use used to ... for things that were true, but are not true any more:

☐ This building is now a furniture shop. It used to be a cinema.
☐ I used to think Mark was unfriendly, but now I realise he’s a very nice person.
☐ I’ve started drinking tea recently. I never used to like it before.
☐ Nicole used to have very long hair when she was a child.

‘I used to do something’ is past. There is no present form. You cannot say ‘I use to do’.
To talk about the present, use the present simple (I do).

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past</th>
<th>present</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he used to play</td>
<td>he plays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we used to live</td>
<td>we live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there used to be</td>
<td>there is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

☐ We used to live in a small village, but now we live in London.
☐ There used to be four cinemas in the town. Now there is only one.

The normal question form is did you use to ... ?:

☐ Did you use to eat a lot of sweets when you were a child?

The negative form is didn’t use to ... (used not to ... is also possible):

☐ I didn’t use to like him. (or I used not to like him.)

Compare I used to do and I was doing:

☐ I used to watch TV a lot. (= I watched TV regularly in the past, but I no longer do this)
☐ I was watching TV when Mike called. (= I was in the middle of watching TV)

Do not confuse I used to do and I am used to doing (see Unit 61). The structures and meanings
are different:

☐ I used to live alone. (= I lived alone in the past, but I no longer live alone.)
☐ I am used to living alone. (= I live alone, and I don’t find it strange or difficult because
I’ve been living alone for some time.)
Exercises

18.1 Complete the sentences with use(d) to + a suitable verb.
1. Diane doesn’t travel much now. She used to travel a lot, but she prefers to stay at home these days.
2. Liz ______________________ a motorbike, but last year she sold it and bought a car.
3. We came to live in London a few years ago. We ______________________ in Leeds.
4. I rarely eat ice-cream now, but I ______________________ it when I was a child.
5. Jim ______________________ my best friend, but we aren’t good friends any longer.
6. It only takes me about 40 minutes to get to work now that the new road is open. It ______________________ more than an hour.
7. There ______________________ a hotel near the airport, but it closed a long time ago.
8. When you lived in New York, ______________________ to the theatre very often?

18.2 Matt changed his lifestyle. He stopped doing some things and started doing other things:

- studying hard
- going to bed early
- running three miles every morning
- sleeping late
- going out in the evening
- spending a lot of money

Write sentences about Matt with used to and didn’t use to.
1. He used to study hard.
2. He didn’t use to sleep late.
3. ______________________
4. ______________________
5. ______________________
6. ______________________

18.3 Compare what Karen said five years ago and what she says today:

**FIVE YEARS AGO**
- I travel a lot.
- I’ve got lots of friends.
- I’m very lazy.
- I don’t like cheese.
- I go to a lot of parties.
- I’m a hotel receptionist.

**TODAY**
- I eat lots of cheese now.
- I work very hard these days.
- I don’t know many people these days.
- I work in a bookshop now.
- Tea’s great! I like it now.
- My dog died two years ago.

Now write sentences about how Karen has changed. Use used to / didn’t use to / never used to in the first part of your sentence.

1. She used to travel a lot, but she doesn’t go away much these days.
2. ______________________
3. ______________________
4. ______________________
5. ______________________
6. ______________________
7. ______________________
8. ______________________
9. ______________________
10. ______________________

→ Additional exercise 9 (page 307)
Present tenses (I am doing / I do) for the future

**Present continuous (I am doing) with a future meaning**

This is Ben’s diary for next week.

He is playing tennis on Monday afternoon.
He is going to the dentist on Tuesday morning.
He is having dinner with Kate on Friday.

In all these examples, Ben has already decided and arranged to do these things.

I’m doing something (tomorrow) = I have already decided and arranged to do it:

- A: What are you doing on Saturday evening? *(not What do you do)*
  - B: I’m going to the theatre. *(not I go)*
- A: What time is Cathy arriving tomorrow?
  - B: Half past ten. I’m meeting her at the station.
- I’m not working tomorrow, so we can go out somewhere.
- Ian isn’t playing football next Saturday. He’s hurt his leg.

‘I’m going to (do)’ is also possible in these sentences:

- What are you going to do on Saturday evening?

But the present continuous is more natural for arrangements. See also Unit 20B.

Do not use will to talk about what you have arranged to do:

- What are you doing this evening? *(not What will you do)*
- Alex is getting married next month. *(not will get)*

You can also use the present continuous for an action just before you begin to do it. This happens especially with verbs of movement *(go/come/leave etc.)*:

- I’m tired. I’m going to bed now. Goodnight. *(not I go to bed now)*
- ‘Tina, are you ready yet?’ ‘Yes, I’m coming.’ *(not I come)*

**Present simple (I do) with a future meaning**

We use the present simple when we talk about timetables, programmes etc. (for public transport, cinemas etc.):

- My train leaves at 11.30, so I need to be at the station by 11.15.
- What time does the film begin this evening?
- It’s Wednesday tomorrow. / Tomorrow is Wednesday.

You can use the present simple to talk about people if their plans are fixed like a timetable:

- I start my new job on Monday.
- What time do you finish work tomorrow?

But the continuous is more usual for personal arrangements:

- What time are you meeting Ann tomorrow? *(not do you meet)*

Compare:

**Present continuous**

- What time are you arriving?
- I’m going to the cinema this evening.

**Present simple**

- What time does the train arrive?
- The film begins at 8.15 (this evening).
Exercises

19.1 A friend of yours is planning to go on holiday soon. You ask her about her plans. Use the words in brackets to make your questions.

1 (where / go?) Where are you going? ......................................................... (Scotland.

2 (how long / go for?) ................................................................. (Ten days.

3 (when / leave?) ................................................................. (Next Friday.

4 (go / alone?) ................................................................. (No, with a friend.

5 (travel / by car?) ................................................................. (No, by train.

6 (where / stay?) ................................................................. (In a hotel.

19.2 Tom wants you to visit him, but you are very busy. Look at your diary for the next few days and explain to him why you can’t come.

TOM: Can you come on Monday evening?
YOU: Sorry, but I’m playing volleyball. ....................................... (1)

TOM: What about Tuesday evening then?
YOU: No, not Tuesday. I ................................................................. (2)

TOM: And Wednesday evening?
YOU: I’m afraid not. ................................................................. (3)

TOM: Well, are you free on Thursday?
YOU: I’m afraid not. ................................................................. (4)

19.3 Have you arranged to do anything at these times? Write sentences about yourself.

1 (this evening) I’m going out this evening... or I’m not doing anything this evening.

2 (tomorrow morning) I .................................................................

3 (tomorrow evening) .................................................................

4 (next Sunday) .................................................................

5 (choose another day or time) .................................................................

19.4 Put the verb into the more suitable form, present continuous or present simple.

1 I’m going (go) to the cinema this evening.
2 Does the film begin (the film / begin) at 3.30 or 4.30?
3 We (have) a party next Saturday. Would you like to come?
4 The art exhibition (finish) on 3 May.
5 I (not / go) out this evening. I (stay) at home.
6 ‘(you / do) anything tomorrow morning?’ ‘No, I’m free. Why?’
7 We (go) to a concert tonight. It (start) at 7.30.
8 I (leave) now. I’ve come to say goodbye.
9 A: Have you seen Liz recently?
   B: No, but we (meet) for lunch next week.
10 You are on the train to London and you ask another passenger:
   Excuse me. What time (this train / get) to London?
11 You are talking to Helen:
   Helen, I (go) to the supermarket. (you / come) with me?
12 You and a friend are watching television. You say:
   I’m bored with this programme. What time (it / end)?
13 I (not / use) the car this evening, so you can have it.
14 Sue (come) to see us tomorrow. She (travel) by train and her train (arrive) at 10.15.
(I'm) going to (do)

A  I am going to do something = I have already decided to do it, I intend to do it:
   □ A: Are you going to watch the late film on TV tonight?
   B: No, I'm going to have an early night.
   □ A: I hear Sarah has won some money. What is she going to do with it?
   B: She's going to buy a new car.
   □ I'm just going to make a quick phone call. Can you wait for me?
   □ This cheese looks horrible. I'm not going to eat it.

B  I am doing and I am going to do

We use I am doing (present continuous) when we say what we have arranged to do – for example, arranged to meet somebody, arranged to go somewhere:
   □ What time are you meeting Ann this evening?
   □ I'm leaving tomorrow. I've got my plane ticket.

I am going to do something = I've decided to do it (but perhaps not arranged to do it):
   □ 'Your shoes are dirty.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to clean them.' (= I've decided to clean them, but I haven't arranged to clean them)
   □ I've decided not to stay here any longer. Tomorrow I'm going to look for somewhere else to stay.

Often the difference is very small and either form is possible.

C  You can also say that 'something is going to happen' in the future. For example:

   The man can't see the wall in front of him.
   He is going to walk into the wall.

   When we say that 'something is going to happen', the situation now makes this clear. The man is walking towards the wall now, so we can see that he is going to walk into it.

Some more examples:
   □ Look at those black clouds! It's going to rain. (the clouds are there now)
   □ I feel terrible. I think I'm going to be sick. (I feel terrible now)
   □ The economic situation is bad now and things are going to get worse.

D  I was going to (do something) = I intended to do it, but didn't do it:
   □ We were going to travel by train, but then we decided to go by car instead.
   □ Peter was going to do the exam, but he changed his mind.
   □ I was just going to cross the road when somebody shouted 'Stop!'

You can say that 'something was going to happen' (but didn't happen):
   □ I thought it was going to rain, but it didn't.
Exercises

20.1 Write a question with going to for each situation.
1 Your friend has won some money. You ask:
   (what / do with it?) ____________
2 Your friend is going to a party tonight. You ask:
   (what / wear?) ____________
3 Your friend has just bought a new table. You ask:
   (where / put it?) ____________
4 Your friend has decided to have a party. You ask:
   (who / invite?) ____________

20.2 Read the situations and complete the dialogues. Use going to.
1 You have decided to tidy your room this morning.
   FRIEND: Are you going out this morning?
   YOU: No, ____________
2 You bought a sweater, but it doesn’t fit you very well. You have decided to take it back.
   FRIEND: That sweater is too big for you.
   YOU: I know. ____________
3 You have been offered a job, but you have decided not to accept it.
   FRIEND: I hear you’ve been offered a job.
   YOU: That’s right, but ____________
4 You have to phone Sarah. It’s morning now, and you have decided to phone her tonight.
   FRIEND: Have you phoned Sarah yet?
   YOU: No, ____________
5 You are in a restaurant. The food is awful and you’ve decided to complain.
   FRIEND: This food is awful, isn’t it?
   YOU: Yes, it’s disgusting. ____________

20.3 What is going to happen in these situations? Use the words in brackets.
1 There are a lot of black clouds in the sky.
   (rain) ____________
2 It is 8.30. Tom is leaving his house. He has to be at work at 8.45, but the journey takes
   30 minutes.
   (late) ____________
3 There is a hole in the bottom of the boat. A lot of water is coming in through the hole.
   (sink) ____________
4 Lucy and Chris are driving. There is very little petrol left in the tank. The nearest petrol
   station is a long way away.
   (run out) ____________

20.4 Complete the sentences with was/were going to + the following verbs:
   buy give up have phone play travel
1 We ____________ by train, but then we decided to go by car instead.
2 I ____________ some new clothes yesterday, but I was very busy and didn’t
   have time to go to the shops.
3 Martin and I ____________ tennis last week, but he was injured.
4 I ____________ Jane, but I decided to email her instead.
5 A: When I last saw Tim, he ____________ his job.
   B: That’s right, but in the end he decided to stay where he was.
6 We ____________ a party last week, but some of our friends couldn’t come,
   so we cancelled it.
Will/shall 1

A
We use I'll (= I will) when we decide to do something at the time of speaking:
- Oh, I’ve left the door open. I’ll go and shut it.
- ‘What would you like to drink?’ ‘I’ll have an orange juice, please.’
- ‘Did you phone Lucy?’ ‘Oh no, I forgot. I’ll phone her now.’

You cannot use the present simple (I do / I go etc.) in these sentences:
- I’ll go and shut the door. (not I go and shut)

We often use I think I’ll ... and I don’t think I’ll ...:
- I feel a bit hungry. I think I’ll have something to eat.
- I don’t think I’ll go out tonight. I’m too tired.

In spoken English the negative of will is usually won’t (= will not):
- I can see you’re busy, so I won’t stay long.

B
Do not use will to talk about what you have already decided or arranged to do (see Units 19–20):
- I’m going on holiday next Saturday. (not I’ll go)
- Are you working tomorrow? (not Will you work)

C
We often use will in these situations:

Offering to do something
- That bag looks heavy. I’ll help you with it. (not I help)

Agreeing to do something
- A: Can you give Tim this book?
  B: Sure, I’ll give it to him when I see him this afternoon.

Promising to do something
- Thanks for lending me the money. I’ll pay you back on Friday.
- I won’t tell anyone what happened. I promise.

Asking somebody to do something (Will you ... ?)
- Will you please turn the stereo down? I’m trying to concentrate.

You can use won’t to say that somebody refuses to do something:
- I’ve tried to give her advice, but she won’t listen.
- The car won’t start. (= the car ‘refuses’ to start)

D
Shall I ...? Shall we ...?

Shall is used mostly in the questions shall I ...? / shall we ...?
We use shall I ...? / shall we ...? to ask somebody’s opinion (especially in offers or suggestions):
- Shall I open the window? (= Do you want me to open the window?)
- I’ve got no money. What shall I do? (= What do you suggest?)
- ‘Shall we go?’ ‘Just a minute. I’m not ready yet.’
- Where shall we go this evening?

Compare shall I ...? and will you ...?:
- Shall I shut the door? (= Do you want me to shut it?)
- Will you shut the door? (= I want you to shut it)
Exercises

Unit 21

21.1 Complete the sentences with I'll + a suitable verb.
1 I'm too tired to walk home. I think I'll take a taxi.
2 'It's cold in this room.' 'Is it? ______________________ on the heating then.'
3 A: We haven't got any milk.
   B: Oh, I forgot to buy some. ______________________ and get some now.
4 'Shall I do the washing-up?' 'No, it's all right. ______________________ it later.'
5 'I don't know how to use this computer.' 'OK, ______________________ you.'
6 'Would you like tea or coffee?' '______________________ coffee, please.'
7 'Goodbye! Have a nice holiday.' 'Thanks, ______________________ you a postcard.'
8 Thanks for letting me borrow your camera. ______________________ it back to you on Monday, OK?
9 'Are you coming with us?' 'No, I think ______________________ here.'

21.2 Read the situations and write sentences with I think I'll ... or I don't think I'll ...
1 It's a bit cold. The window is open and you decide to close it. You say:
   I think I'll close the window.
2 You are feeling tired and it's getting late. You decide to go to bed. You say:
   I think ______________________
3 A friend of yours offers you a lift in his car, but you decide to walk. You say:
   Thank you, but ______________________
4 You arranged to play tennis today. Now you decide that you don't want to play. You say:
   I don't think ______________________
5 You were going to go swimming. Now you decide that you don't want to go. You say:
   ______________________

21.3 Which is correct? (If necessary, study Units 19-20 first.)
1 'Did you phone Lucy?' 'Oh no, I forgot. I phone / I'll phone her now.' (I'll phone is correct)
2 I can't meet you tomorrow. I'm playing / I'll play tennis. (I'm playing is correct)
3 'I meet / I'll meet you outside the hotel in half an hour, OK?' 'Yes, that's fine.'
4 'I need some money.' 'OK, I'm lending / I'll lend you some. How much do you need?'
5 I'm having / I'll have a party next Saturday. I hope you can come.
6 Remember to get a newspaper when you go out.' 'OK, I don't forget / I won't forget.'
7 What time does your train leave / will your train leave tomorrow?
8 I asked Sue what happened, but she doesn't tell / won't tell me.
9 'Are you doing / Will you do anything tomorrow evening?' 'No, I'm free. Why?'
10 I don't want to go out alone. Do you come / Will you come with me?

21.4 What do you say in these situations? Write sentences with shall I ... or shall we ...?
1 You and a friend want to do something this evening, but you don't know what.
   You ask your friend. What shall we do this evening?
2 You try on a jacket in a shop. You are not sure whether to buy it or not. You ask a
   friend for advice. ______________________ it?
3 It's Helen's birthday next week. You want to give her a present, but you don't know what.
   You ask a friend for advice.
   What ______________________
4 You and a friend are going on holiday together, but you haven't decided where.
   You ask him/her. ______________________ or ______________________
5 You and a friend are going out. You haven't decided whether to go by car or to walk.
   You ask him/her. ______________________ or ______________________
6 Your friend wants you to phone later. You don't know what time to phone. You ask him/her.
   ______________________
Will/shall 2

We do not use will to say what somebody has already arranged or decided to do:
- Diane is working next week. *(not Diane will work)*
- Are you going to watch television this evening? *(not Will you watch)*

For 'is working' and 'Are you going to ... ?', see Units 19–20.

But often, when we talk about the future, we are not talking about what somebody has decided to do. For example:

Kate is doing an exam next week. Chris and Joe are talking about it.

Do you think Kate will pass the exam? Yes, she'll pass easily.

She'll pass does not mean 'she has decided to pass'. Joe is saying what he knows or thinks will happen. He is predicting the future.

When we predict a future happening or situation, we use will/won't.

Some more examples:
- Jill has been away a long time. When she returns, she'll find a lot of changes here.
- 'Where will you be this time next year?' 'I'll be in Japan.'
- That plate is hot. If you touch it, you'll burn yourself.
- Tom won't pass the exam. He hasn't studied hard enough.
- When will you get your exam results?

We often use will ('ll) with:

- probably
- I'll probably be home late tonight.
- I expect
- I haven't seen Carol today. I expect she'll phone this evening.
- (I'm) sure
- Don't worry about the exam. I'm sure you'll pass.
- (I) think
- Do you think Sarah will like the present we bought her?
- (I) don't think
- I don't think the exam will be very difficult.
- I wonder
- I wonder what will happen.

After I hope, we generally use the present (will is also possible):
- I hope Kate passes the exam. *(or I hope Kate will pass ...)*
- I hope it doesn't rain tomorrow.

Generally we use will to talk about the future, but sometimes we use will to talk about now.

For example:
- Don't phone Ann now. She'll be busy. *(= she'll be busy now)*

I shall ... / we shall ...

Normally we use shall only with I and we. You can say:
- I shall or I will *(I'll)* we shall or we will *(we'll)*
- I shall be late this evening. *(or I will be)*
- We shall probably go to Scotland in the summer. *(or We will probably go)*

In spoken English we normally use I'll and we'll:
- We'll probably go to Scotland.

The negative of shall is shall not or shan't:
- I shan't be here tomorrow. *(or I won't be)*

Do not use shall with he/she/it/you/they:
- She will be very angry. *(not She shall be)*

Will/shall 1 → Unit 21  I will and I'm going to → Unit 23  Will be doing and will have done → Unit 24
The future → Appendix 3  American English → Appendix 7
Exercises

Unit 22

22.1 Which form of the verb is correct (or more natural) in these sentences? The verbs are underlined.
1 Diane isn't free on Saturday. She'll work / She's working. (She’s working is correct)
2 I'll go / I'm going to a party tomorrow night. Would you like to come too?
3 I think Jenny will get / is getting the job. She has a lot of experience.
4 I can't meet you this evening. A friend of mine will come / is coming to see me.
5 A: Have you decided where to go for your holidays?
   B: Yes, we'll go / we're going to Italy.
6 There's no need to be afraid of the dog. It won't hurt / It isn't hurting you.

22.2 Complete the sentences with will (ill) + the following verbs:
be come get like live look meet pass
1 Don't worry about the exam. I'm sure you'll pass .
2 Why don't you try on this jacket? It looks nice on you.
3 You must meet George sometime. I think you should like him.
4 It's raining. Don't go out. You must stay wet.
5 Do you think people will live longer in the future?
6 Goodbye. I expect we'll meet again before long.
7 I've invited Sue to the party, but I don't think she'll come.
8 When the new road is finished, my journey to work will pass much shorter.

22.3 Put in will (ill) or won't.
1 Can you wait for me? I won't be very long.
2 There's no need to take an umbrella with you. It's not going to rain.
3 If you don't eat anything now, you'll be hungry later.
4 I'm sorry about what happened yesterday. It won't happen again.
5 I've got some incredible news! You never believe what happened.
6 Don't ask Amanda for advice. She doesn't know what to do.

22.4 Where do you think you will be at these times? Write true sentences about yourself. Use:
   I'll be ... or I'll probably be ... or I don't know where I'll be
1 (next Monday evening at 7:45) I'll be at home.
   or I'll probably be at home.
   or I don't know where I'll be.
2 (at 5 o'clock tomorrow morning)
3 (at 10.30 tomorrow morning)
4 (next Saturday afternoon at 4.15)
5 (this time next year)

22.5 Write questions using do you think ... will ... ? + the following:
be back cost end get married happen like rain
1 I've bought Rosa this picture. Do you think she'll like it?
2 The weather doesn't look very good. Do you think it will rain?
3 The meeting is still going on. When do you think it will end?
4 My car needs to be repaired. How much will it cost?
5 Sally and David are in love. Do you think they will get married?
6 'I'm going out now.' 'OK. What time will you be back?'
7 The future situation is uncertain. What do you think will happen?
I will and I'm going to

Future actions

Study the difference between will and (be) going to:

Sue is talking to Helen:

Let's have a party. That's a great idea. We'll invite lots of people.

will (I'll): We use will when we decide to do something at the time of speaking. The speaker has not decided before. The party is a new idea.

Later that day, Helen meets Dave:

Sue and I have decided to have a party. We're going to invite lots of people.

(be) going to: We use (be) going to when we have already decided to do something. Helen had already decided to invite lots of people before she spoke to Dave.

Compare:

- 'Gary phoned while you were out.' ‘OK. I'll call him back.’
  ‘Gary phoned while you were out.’ ‘Yes, I know. I'm going to call him back.’
- 'Ann is in hospital.' ‘Oh really? I didn't know. I'll go and visit her.’
  ‘Ann is in hospital.’ ‘Yes, I know. I'm going to visit her this evening.’

Future happenings and situations (predicting the future)

Sometimes there is not much difference between will and going to. For example, you can say:

- I think the weather will be nice this afternoon.
- I think the weather is going to be nice this afternoon.

When we say something is going to happen, we think this is because of the situation now (see Unit 20C). For example:

- Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain. (not It will rain)
  (We can see that it is going to rain from the clouds that are in the sky now.)
- I feel terrible. I think I'm going to be sick. (not I think I'll be sick)
  (I think I'm going to be sick because I feel terrible now.)

Do not use will in this type of situation.

In other situations, use will:

- Tom will probably get here at about 8 o'clock.
- I think Sarah will like the present we bought for her.
- These shoes are very well-made. They'll last a long time.

I'm going to → Unit 20  Will → Units 21–22  The future → Appendix 3
Exercises

23.1 Complete the sentences using will (‘ll) or going to.

1. A: Why are you turning on the television?
   B: I’m going to watch the news. (I / watch)
   B: Haven’t you? Well, don’t worry. I’ll lend you some. (I / lend)
3. A: I’ve got a headache.
   B: Have you? Wait a second and I’ll get you an aspirin for you. (I / get)
4. A: Why are you filling that bucket with water?
   B: I’m going to wash the car. (I / wash)
5. A: I’ve decided to repaint this room.
   B: Oh, have you? What colour will it be? (you / paint)
6. A: Where are you going? Are you going shopping?
   B: Yes, I’ll buy something for dinner. (I / buy)
7. A: I don’t know how to use this camera.
   B: It’s easy. I’ll show you. (I / show)
8. A: What would you like to eat?
   B: I’d like a sandwich, please. (I / have)
9. A: Did you post that letter for me?
   B: Oh, I’m sorry. I completely forgot. I’ll do it now. (I / do)
10. A: The ceiling in this room doesn’t look very safe, does it?
    B: No, it looks as if it’s going to fall down. (it / fall)
11. A: Has George decided what to do when he leaves school?
    B: Yes. Everything is planned. He’s going to have a holiday for a few weeks.
    (he / have) Then he’ll do a computer programming course. (he / do)

23.2 Read the situations and complete the sentences using will (‘ll) or going to.

1. The phone rings and you answer. Somebody wants to speak to Jim.
   CALLER: Hello. Can I speak to Jim, please?
   YOU: Just a moment. I’ll get him. (I / get)
2. It’s a nice day, so you have decided to take a walk. Just before you go, you tell your friend.
   YOU: The weather’s too nice to stay in. I’m going to take a walk. (I / take)
   FRIEND: Good idea. I think I’ll join you. (I / join)
3. Your friend is worried because she has lost an important letter.
   YOU: Don’t worry about the letter. I’m sure I’ll find it. (you / find)
   FRIEND: I hope so.
4. There was a job advertised in the paper recently. At first you were interested, but then you decided not to apply.
   FRIEND: Have you decided what to do about that job you were interested in?
   YOU: Yes, I’ve decided not to apply. (I / not / apply)
5. You and a friend come home very late. Other people in the house are asleep. Your friend is noisy.
   YOU: Shh! Don’t make so much noise. Everybody will wake up. (you / wake)
6. Paul has to go to the airport to catch a plane tomorrow morning.
   PAUL: Liz, I need somebody to take me to the airport tomorrow morning.
   LIZ: That’s no problem. I’ll take you. (I / take) What time is your flight?
   PAUL: 10.50.
   LIZ: OK, I’ll take you at about 9 o’clock then. (we / leave)
   Later that day, Joe offers to take Paul to the airport.
   JOE: Paul, do you want me to take you to the airport?
   PAUL: No thanks, Joe. (Liz / take)
Will be doing and will have done

Study this example situation:

These people are standing in a queue to get into the cinema.

Half an hour from now, the cinema will be full. Everyone will be watching the film.

Three hours from now, the cinema will be empty. The film will have finished. Everybody will have gone home.

I will be doing something (future continuous) = I will be in the middle of doing it:

☐ This time next week I'll be on holiday. I'll be lying on the beach or swimming in the sea.
☐ You have no chance of getting the job. You'll be wasting your time if you apply for it.

Compare will be (doing) and will (do):

☐ Don't phone between 7 and 8. We'll be having dinner.
☐ Let's wait for Liz to arrive and then we'll have dinner.

Compare will be -ing with other continuous forms:

☐ At 10 o'clock yesterday, Sally was in her office. She was working. (past)
☐ It's 10 o'clock now. She is in her office. She is working. (present)
☐ At 10 o'clock tomorrow, she will be in her office. She will be working.

We also use will be -ing in a different way: to talk about complete actions in the future. For example:

☐ The government will be making a statement about the crisis later today.
☐ Will you be going away this summer?
☐ Later in the programme, I'll be talking to the Minister of Education ...
☐ Our best player is injured and won't be playing in the game on Saturday.

In these examples will be -ing is similar to (be) going to ....

We use will have (done) (future perfect) to say that something will already be complete before a time in the future. For example:

☐ Sally always leaves for work at 8.30 in the morning. She won't be at home at 9 o'clock - she'll have gone to work.
☐ We're late. The film will already have started by the time we get to the cinema.

Compare will have (done) with other perfect forms:

☐ Ted and Amy have been married for 24 years. (present perfect)
☐ Next year they will have been married for 25 years.
☐ When their son was born, they had been married for three years. (past perfect)
Exercises

24.1 Read about Colin. Then tick (✓) the sentences which are true. In each group of sentences at least one is true.

Colin goes to work every day. He leaves home at 8 o'clock and arrives at work at about 8.45. He starts work immediately and continues until 12.30 when he has lunch (which takes about half an hour). He starts work again at 1.15 and goes home at exactly 4.30. Every day he follows the same routine and tomorrow will be no exception.

1 At 7.45
   a he'll be leaving the house ✓
   b he'll have left the house
   c he'll be at home ✓
   d he'll be having breakfast ✓

4 At 12.45
   a he'll have lunch
   b he'll be having lunch
   c he'll have finished his lunch
   d he'll have started his lunch

2 At 8.15
   a he'll be leaving the house ✓
   b he'll have left the house
   c he'll have arrived at work ✓
   d he'll be arriving at work

5 At 4 o'clock
   a he'll have finished work
   b he'll finish work
   c he'll be working
   d he won't have finished work

3 At 9.15
   a he'll be working ✓
   b he'll start work
   c he'll have started work ✓
   d he'll be arriving at work

6 At 4.45
   a he'll leave work
   b he'll be leaving work
   c he'll have left work
   d he'll have arrived home

24.2 Put the verb into the correct form, will be (doing) or will have (done).

1 Don't phone between 7 and 8. __We'll be having__ (we / have) dinner then.
2 Phone me after 8 o'clock. ____________________________ (we / finish) dinner by then.
3 Tomorrow afternoon we're going to play tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30. So at 4 o'clock, __we / play__ tennis.

4 A: Can we meet tomorrow?
   B: Yes, but not in the afternoon. ____________________________ (I / work).

5 B has to go to a meeting which begins at 10 o'clock. It will last about an hour.
   A: Will you be free at 11.30?
   B: Yes, ____________________________ (the meeting / end) by then.

6 Ben is on holiday and he is spending his money very quickly. If he continues like this, ____________________________ (he / spend) all his money before the end of his holiday.

7 Do you think ____________________________ (you / still / do) the same job in ten years' time?

8 Lisa is from New Zealand. She is travelling around Europe at the moment. So far she has travelled about 1,000 miles. By the end of the trip, ____________________________ (she / travel) more than 3,000 miles.

9 If you need to contact me, ____________________________ (I / stay) at the Lion Hotel until Friday.

10 A: ____________________________ (you / see) Laura tomorrow?
    B: Yes, probably. Why?
    A: I borrowed this CD from her. Can you give it back to her?
When I do / When I've done  When and if

Study this example:

Will you phone me tomorrow?
Yes, I’ll phone you when I get home.

‘I’ll phone you when I get home’ is a sentence with two parts:
the main part: ‘I’ll phone you’
and the when-part: ‘when I get home’
The time in the sentence is future (‘tomorrow’), but we use a present tense (I get) in the when-part of the sentence.
We do not use will in the when-part of the sentence.

Some more examples:

☐ We’ll go out when it stops raining. (not when it will stop)
☐ When you are in London again, come and see us. (not When you will be)
☐ (said to a child) What do you want to be when you grow up? (not will grow)

The same thing happens after while / before / after / as soon as / until or till:

☐ I’m going to read a lot while I’m on holiday. (not while I will be)
☐ I’ll probably go back home on Sunday. Before I go, I’d like to visit the museum.
☐ Wait here until (or till) I come back.

You can also use the present perfect (have done) after when / after / until / as soon as:

☐ Can I borrow that book when you’ve finished with it?
☐ Don’t say anything while Ian is here. Wait until he has gone.

If you use the present perfect, one thing must be complete before the other (so the two things do not happen together):

☐ When I’ve phoned Kate, we can have dinner.
  (= First I’ll phone Kate and after that we can have dinner.)

Do not use the present perfect if the two things happen together:

☐ When I phone Kate, I'll ask her about the party. (not When I’ve phoned)

It is often possible to use either the present simple or the present perfect:

☐ I’ll come as soon as I finish. or I’ll come as soon as I’ve finished.
☐ You’ll feel better after you have something to eat or You’ll feel better after you’ve had something to eat.

After if, we normally use the present simple (if I do / if I see etc.) for the future:

☐ It’s raining hard. We’ll get wet if we go out. (not if we will go)
☐ I’ll be angry if it happens again. (not if it will happen)
☐ Hurry up! If we don’t hurry, we’ll be late.

Compare when and if:

We use when for things which are sure to happen:

☐ I’m going shopping later. (for sure) When I go shopping, I’ll buy some food.

We use if (not when) for things that will possibly happen:

☐ I might go shopping later. (it’s possible) If I go shopping, I’ll buy some food.
☐ If it is raining this evening, I won’t go out. (not When it is raining)
☐ Don’t worry if I’m late tonight. (not when I’m late)
☐ If they don’t come soon, I’m not going to wait. (not When they don’t come)
Exercises

Unit 25

25.1 Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets. All the sentences are about the future. Use will/won't or the present simple (I see / he plays / it is etc.).

1. I _______ phone _______ (phone) you when I _______ get _______ (get) home from work.
2. I want to see Julia before she _______ (go) out.
3. We're going on holiday tomorrow. I _______ (tell) you all about it when we _______ (come) back.
4. Brian looks very different now. When you _______ (see) him again, you _______ (not / recognise) him.
5. _______ (you / be) lonely without me while I _______ (be) away?
6. We must do something soon before it _______ (be) too late.
7. I don't want to go without you. I _______ (wait) until you _______ (be) ready.
8. Sue has applied for the job, but she isn't very well-qualified for it. I _______ (be) surprised if she _______ (get) it.
9. I hope to play tennis tomorrow if the weather _______ (be) nice.
10. I'm going out now. If anybody _______ (phone) while I _______ (be) out, can you take a message?

25.2 Make one sentence from two.

1. It will stop raining soon. Then we'll go out.
   We'll go out when it stops raining.
2. I'll find somewhere to live. Then I'll give you my address.
3. I _______ do the shopping. Then I'll come straight back home.
4. It's going to get dark. Let's go home before that.
5. She must apologise to me first. I won't speak to her until then.

25.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1. A friend of yours is going on holiday. You want to know what she is going to do.
   You ask: What are you going to do when you are on holiday _______ ?
2. A friend of yours is visiting you. She has to go soon but maybe there's time for some more coffee.
   You ask: Would you like some more coffee before _______ ?
3. You want to sell your car. Jim is interested in buying it, but he hasn't decided yet.
   You ask: Can you let me know as soon as _______ ?
4. Your friends are going to New York soon. You want to know where they're going to stay.
   You ask: Where are you going to stay when _______ ?
5. The traffic is very bad in your town, but they are building a new road at the moment.
   You say: I think things will be better when they _______ .

25.4 Put in when or if.

1. Don't worry _______ I'm late tonight.
2. Tom might phone while I'm out this evening. _______ he does, can you take a message?
3. I'm going to Rome next week. _______ I'm there, I hope to visit a friend of mine.
4. I think Jill will get the job. I'll be very surprised _______ she doesn't get it.
5. I'm going shopping. _______ you want anything, I can get it for you.
6. I'm going away for a few days. I'll phone you _______ I get back.
7. I want you to come to the party, but _______ you don't want to come, that's all right.
8. We can eat at home or, _______ you prefer, we can go to a restaurant.

→ Additional exercises 12–15 (pages 309–11), 32 (page 321)
Can, could and (be) able to

We use can to say that something is possible or allowed, or that somebody has the ability to do something. We use can + infinitive (can do / can see etc.):
  □ We can see the lake from our bedroom window.
  □ ‘I haven’t got a pen.’ ‘You can use mine.’
  □ Can you speak any foreign languages?
  □ I can come and see you tomorrow if you like.
  □ The word ‘play’ can be a noun or a verb.

The negative is can’t (= cannot):
  □ I’m afraid I can’t come to the party on Friday.

You can say that somebody is able to do something, but can is more usual:
  □ We are able to see the lake from our bedroom window.

But can has only two forms: can (present) and could (past). So sometimes it is necessary to use (be) able to. Compare:

  □ I can’t sleep.
  □ Tom can come tomorrow.
  □ Maria can speak French, Spanish and English.
  □ I haven’t been able to sleep recently.
  □ Tom might be able to come tomorrow.
  □ Applicants for the job must be able to speak two foreign languages.

Could

Sometimes could is the past of can. We use could especially with:
  □ see hear smell taste feel remember understand
  □ We had a lovely room in the hotel. We could see the lake.
  □ As soon as I walked into the room, I could smell gas.
  □ I was sitting at the back of the theatre and couldn’t hear very well.

We also use could to say that somebody had the general ability or permission to do something:
  □ My grandfather could speak five languages.
  □ We were totally free. We could do what we wanted. (= we were allowed to do)

Could and was able to

We use could for general ability. But if you want to say that somebody did something in a specific situation, use was/were able to or managed to (not could):
  □ The fire spread through the building very quickly, but fortunately everybody was able to escape / managed to escape. (not could escape)
  □ We didn’t know where David was, but we managed to find / were able to find him in the end. (not could find)

Compare:
  □ Mike was an excellent tennis player when he was younger. He could beat anybody.
    (= he had the general ability to beat anybody)
  □ Mike and Pete played tennis yesterday. Pete played very well, but Mike managed to beat him. (= he managed to beat him in this particular game)

The negative couldn’t (could not) is possible in all situations:
  □ My grandfather couldn’t swim.
  □ We looked for David everywhere, but we couldn’t find him.
  □ Pete played well, but he couldn’t beat Mike.
Exercises

26.1 Complete the sentences using can or (be) able to. Use can if possible; otherwise use (be) able to.
1. Gary has travelled a lot. He speak five languages.
2. I haven’t been able to sleep very well recently.
3. Nicole drive, but she hasn’t got a car.
4. I used to stand on my head, but I can’t do it now.
5. I can’t understand Martin. I’ve never understand him.
6. I can’t see you on Friday, but I meet you on Saturday morning.
7. Ask Catherine about your problem. She might help you.

26.2 Write sentences about yourself using the ideas in brackets.
1. (something you used to be able to do)
   I used to be able to sing well.
2. (something you used to be able to do)
   I used
3. (something you would like to be able to do)
   I’d
4. (something you have never been able to do)
   I’ve

26.3 Complete the sentences with can/can’t/could/couldn’t + the following:

- can’t come
- eat
- hear
- run
- sleep
- wait

1. I’m afraid I to your party next week.
2. When Tim was 16, he 100 metres in 11 seconds.
3. ‘Are you in a hurry?’ ‘No, I’ve got plenty of time.’
4. I was feeling sick yesterday. I anything.
5. Can you speak a little louder? I you very well.
6. ‘You look tired.’ ‘Yes, I last night.’

26.4 Complete the answers to the questions with was/were able to ...

1. A: Did everybody escape from the fire?
   B: Yes, although the fire spread quickly, everybody was able to escape
2. A: Did you finish your work this afternoon?
   B: Yes, there was nobody to disturb me, so I
3. A: Did you have difficulty finding our house?
   B: No really. Your directions were good and we
4. A: Did the thief get away?
   B: Yes. No-one realised what was happening and the thief

26.5 Complete the sentences using could, couldn’t or managed to.

1. My grandfather travelled a lot. He speak five languages.
2. I looked everywhere for the book, but I find it.
3. They didn’t want to come with us at first, but we persuade them.
4. Laura had hurt her leg and walk very well.
5. Sue wasn’t at home when I phoned, but I contact her at her office.
6. I looked very carefully and see somebody in the distance.
7. I wanted to buy some tomatoes. The first shop I went to didn’t have any, but I get some in the next shop.
8. My grandmother loved music. She play the piano very well.
9. A girl fell into the river, but fortunately we rescue her.
10. I had forgotten to bring my camera, so I take any photographs.
Could (do) and could have (done)

We use could in a number of ways. Sometimes could is the past of can (see Unit 26):
- I can hear something. *(now)*
- I listened. I could hear something. *(past)*

But could is not only used in this way. We also use could to talk about possible actions now or in the future (especially to make suggestions).

For example:
- A: What shall we do this evening?
  B: We could go to the cinema.
- A: When you go to Paris next month, you could stay with Julia.
  B: Yes, I suppose I could.

Can is also possible in these sentences (*We can go to the cinema.* etc.). With could, the suggestion is less sure.

We also use could *(not can)* for actions which are not realistic. For example:
- I’m so tired, I could sleep for a week. *(not I can sleep for a week)*

Compare can and could:
- I can stay with Julia when I go to Paris. *(realistic)*
- Maybe I could stay with Julia when I go to Paris. *(possible, but less sure)*
- This is a wonderful place. I could stay here ever. *(unrealistic)*

We also use could *(not can)* to say that something is possible now or in the future. The meaning is similar to might or may (see Unit 29):
- The story could be true, but I don’t think it is. *(not can be true)*
- I don’t know what time Liz is coming. She could get here at any time.

We use could have (done) to talk about the past. Compare:
- I’m so tired, I could sleep for a week. *(now)*
  I was so tired, I could have slept for a week. *(past)*
- The situation is bad, but it could be worse. *(now)*
  The situation was bad, but it could have been worse. *(past)*

Something could have happened = it was possible but did not happen:
- Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in Paris? You could have stayed with Julia.
  (you didn’t stay with her)
- I didn’t know that you wanted to go to the concert. I could have got you a ticket.
  (I didn’t get you a ticket)
- Dave was lucky. He could have hurt himself when he fell, but he’s OK.

We use couldn’t to say that something would not be possible now:
- I couldn’t live in a big city. I’d hate it. *(= it wouldn’t be possible for me)*
- Everything is fine right now. Things couldn’t be better.

For the past we use couldn’t have (done):
- We had a really good holiday. It couldn’t have been better.
- The trip was cancelled last week. Paul couldn’t have gone anyway because he was ill.
  *(= it would not have been possible for him to go)*

Couldn’t have (done) → Unit 28B  Could and might → Unit 29C  Could I/you ...? → Unit 37
Could with if → Units 38C, 39E, 40D  Modal verbs (can/could/will/would etc.) → Appendix 4
Exercises

Unit 27

27.1 Answer the questions with a suggestion. Use could.

1. Where shall we go for our holidays?
   (to Scotland) We could go to Scotland.

2. What shall we have for dinner tonight?
   (fish) We could have fish.

3. When shall I phone Angela?
   (now) You could phone her now.

4. What shall I give Ann for her birthday?
   (a book) You could give her a book.

5. Where shall we hang this picture?
   (in the kitchen) You could hang it in the kitchen.

27.2 In some of these sentences, you need could (not can). Change the sentences where necessary.

1. The story can be true, but I don't think it is.
   The story could be true.

2. It's a nice day. We can go for a walk.
   OK (could go is also possible)

3. I'm so angry with him. I can kill him!

4. If you're hungry, we can have dinner now.

5. It's so nice here. I can stay here all day, but unfortunately I have to go.

6. A: Where's my bag. Have you seen it?
   B: No, but it can be in the car.

7. Peter is a keen musician. He plays the flute and he can also play the piano.

8. A: I need to borrow a camera.
   B: You can borrow mine.

9. The weather is nice now, but it can change later.

27.3 Complete the sentences. Use could or could have + a suitable verb.

1. A: What shall we do this evening?
   B: I don't mind. We could go to the cinema.

2. A: I had a very boring evening at home yesterday.
   B: Why did you stay at home? You couldn't have gone out with us.

3. A: There's an interesting job advertised in the paper. You couldn't have applied for it.
   B: What sort of job? Show me the advertisement.

4. A: How was your exam? Was it difficult?
   B: It wasn't so bad. It couldn't have been worse.

5. A: I got very wet walking home in the rain last night.
   B: Why did you walk? You couldn't have walked a taxi.

6. A: Where shall we meet tomorrow?
   B: Well, I couldn't have gone to your house if you like.

27.4 Complete the sentences. Use couldn't or couldn't have + these verbs (in the correct form):

be be come find get live wear

1. I couldn't live in a big city. I'd hate it.

2. We had a really good holiday. It couldn't have been better.

3. I couldn't wear that hat. I'd look silly and people would laugh at me.

4. We managed to find the restaurant you recommended, but we couldn't get it without the map that you drew for us.

5. Paul has to get up at 4 o'clock every morning. I don't know how he does it. I couldn't get up at that time every day.

6. The staff at the hotel were really nice when we stayed there last summer. They couldn't have been more helpful.

A: I tried to phone you last week. We had a party and I wanted to invite you.

B: That was nice of you, but I couldn't have been anyway. I was away all last week.

Additional exercises 16-18 (pages 311-13)
Must and can't

Study this example:

My house is very near the motorway. It must be very noisy.

You can use must to say that you believe something is certain:

- You've been travelling all day. You must be tired. (Travelling is tiring and you've been travelling all day, so you must be tired.)
- 'Jim is a hard worker.' 'Jim? You must be joking. He doesn't do anything.'
- Carol must get very bored in her job. She does the same thing every day.
- I'm sure Sally gave me her phone number. I must have it somewhere.

You can use can't to say that you believe something is not possible:

- You've just had lunch. You can't be hungry already. (People are not normally hungry just after eating a meal. You've just eaten, so you can't be hungry.)
- They haven't lived here for very long. They can't know many people.

Study the structure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/you/he (etc.)</th>
<th>must</th>
<th>be (tired / hungry / at work etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>can't</td>
<td>be (doing / going / joking etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>do / get / know / have etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the past we use must have (done) and can't have (done).

Study this example:

There's nobody at home. They must have gone out.

Martin and Lucy are standing at the door of their friends' house.
They have rung the doorbell twice, but nobody has answered. Lucy says:
They must have gone out.

- I didn't hear the phone. I must have been asleep.
- 'I've lost one of my gloves.' 'You must have dropped it somewhere.'
- Sue hasn't contacted me. She can't have got my message.
- Tom walked into a wall. He can't have been looking where he was going.

Study the structure:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/you/he (etc.)</th>
<th>must</th>
<th>have been (asleep / at work etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>can't</td>
<td>been (doing / looking etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>gone / got / known etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can use couldn't have instead of can't have:

- Sue couldn't have got my message.
- Tom couldn't have been looking where he was going.

Can't ('I can't swim' etc.) → Unit 26  Must ('I must go' etc.) → Units 31–32
Modal verbs (can/could/will/would etc.) → Appendix 4  American English → Appendix 7
Exercises

28.1 Put in must or can’t.
1 You’ve been travelling all day. You must be tired.
2 That restaurant be very good. It’s always full of people.
3 That restaurant be very good. It’s always empty.
4 I’m sure I gave you the key. You have it. Have you looked in your bag?
5 You’re going on holiday next week. You be looking forward to it.
6 It rained every day during their holiday, so they have had a very nice time.
7 Congratulations on passing your exam. You be very pleased.
8 You got here very quickly. You have walked very fast.
9 Bill and Sue always travel business class, so they be short of money.

28.2 Complete each sentence with a verb (one or two words) in the correct form.
1 I’ve lost one of my gloves. I must it somewhere.
2 They haven’t lived here for very long. They can’t many people.
3 Ted isn’t at work today. He must ill.
4 Ted wasn’t at work last week. He must ill.
5 (the doorbell rings) I wonder who that is. It can’t Mary. She’s still at work at this time.
6 Sarah knows a lot about films. She must the cinema a lot.
7 Look. James is putting on his hat and coat. He must out.
8 I left my bike outside the house last night and now it has gone. Somebody must it.
9 Amy was in a very difficult situation when she lost her job. It can’t easy for her.
10 There is a man walking behind us. He has been walking behind us for the last twenty minutes. He us.

28.3 Read the situations and use the words in brackets to write sentences with must have and can’t have.
1 The phone rang, but I didn’t hear it. (I / asleep)
   I must have been asleep.
2 Sue hasn’t contacted me. (she / get / my message)
   She can’t have got my message.
3 The jacket you bought is very good quality. (it / very expensive)

4 I haven’t seen the people next door for ages. (they / go away)

5 I can’t find my umbrella. (I / leave / it in the restaurant last night)

6 Dave, who is usually very friendly, walked past me without speaking. (he / see / me)

7 There was a man standing outside the café. (he / wait / for somebody)

8 Liz did the opposite of what I asked her to do. (she / understand / what I said)

9 When I got back to my car, the door was unlocked. (I / forget / to lock it)

10 I was woken up in the night by the noise next door. (the neighbours / have / a party)

11 The light was red, but the car didn’t stop. (the driver / see / the red light)
May and might 1

Study this example situation:

You are looking for Bob. Nobody is sure where he is, but you get some suggestions.

He may be in his office. (= perhaps he is in his office)

Where's Bob?

He might be having lunch. (= perhaps he is having lunch)

Ask Ann. She might know. (= perhaps she knows)

We use may or might to say that something is a possibility. Usually you can use may or might, so you can say:

- It may be true. or It might be true. (= perhaps it is true)
- She might know. or She may know.

The negative forms are may not and might not (or mightn't):

- It may not be true. (= perhaps it isn’t true)
- She might not work here any more. (= perhaps she doesn’t work here)

Study the structure:

| I/you/he (etc.) | may might | (not) be (true / in his office etc.)
|-----------------|-----------|---------------------------------|
|                 |           | be (doing / working / having etc.)
|                 |           | know / work / want etc.

For the past we use may have (done) or might have (done):

- A: I wonder why Kate didn’t answer the phone.
  - B: She may have been asleep. (= perhaps she was asleep)
- A: I can’t find my bag anywhere.
  - B: You might have left it in the shop. (= perhaps you left it in the shop)
- A: I was surprised that Kate wasn’t at the meeting yesterday.
  - B: She might not have known about it. (= perhaps she didn’t know)
- A: I wonder why David was in such a bad mood yesterday.
  - B: He may not have been feeling well. (= perhaps he wasn’t feeling well)

Study the structure:

| I/you/he (etc.) | may might | (not) have been (asleep / at home etc.)
|-----------------|-----------|---------------------------------|
|                 |           | been (doing / working / feeling etc.)
|                 |           | known / had / wanted / left etc.

Could is similar to may and might:

- It’s a strange story, but it could be true. (= it may/might be true)
- You could have left your bag in the shop. (= you may/might have left it)

But couldn’t (negative) is different from may not and might not. Compare:

- Sarah couldn’t have got my message. Otherwise she would have replied.
  (= it is not possible that she got my message)
- I wonder why Sarah hasn’t replied to my message. I suppose she might not have got it.
  (= perhaps she didn’t get it, and perhaps she did)

Could → Unit 27  May/might 2 → Unit 30  May I ... ? → Unit 37C  Might with if → Units 30B, 38C, 40D
Modal verbs (can/could/will/would etc.) → Appendix 4
Exercises

29.1 Write these sentences in a different way using might.
1 Perhaps Helen is in her office.  She might be in her office.
2 Perhaps Helen is busy.  
3 Perhaps she is working.  
4 Perhaps she wants to be alone.  
5 Perhaps she was ill yesterday.  
6 Perhaps she went home early.  
7 Perhaps she had to go home early.  
8 Perhaps she was working yesterday.  

In sentences 9–11 use might not.
9 Perhaps she doesn’t want to see me.  
10 Perhaps she isn’t working today.  
11 Perhaps she wasn’t feeling well yesterday.  

29.2 Complete each sentence with a verb in the correct form.
1 ‘Where’s Sam?’ ‘I’m not sure. He might be having lunch.’
2 ‘Who is that man with Emily?’ ‘I’m not sure. It might be her brother.’
3 a: Who was the man we saw with Anna yesterday?
   b: I’m not sure. It may be her brother.
4 a: What are those people doing by the side of the road?
   b: I don’t know. They might be waiting for a bus.
5 ‘Do you have a stamp?’ ‘No, but ask Simon. He may have one.’

29.3 Read the situation and make sentences from the words in brackets. Use might.
1 I can’t find Jeff anywhere. I wonder where he is.
   a (he / go / shopping) He might have gone shopping.
   b (he / play / tennis) He might be playing tennis.
2 I’m looking for Sarah. Do you know where she is?
   a (she / watch / TV / in her room) 
   b (she / go / out) 
3 I can’t find my umbrella. Have you seen it?
   a (it / be / in the car) 
   b (you / leave / in the restaurant last night) 
4 Why didn’t Dave answer the doorbell? I’m sure he was at home at the time.
   a (he / go / to bed early) 
   b (he / not / hear / the doorbell) 
   c (he / be / in the shower) 

29.4 Complete the sentences using might not have ... or couldn’t have ...
1 A: Do you think Sarah got the message we sent her?
   B: No, she would have contacted us. She couldn’t have got it.
2 A: I was surprised Kate wasn’t at the meeting. Perhaps she didn’t know about it.
   B: That’s possible. She might not have known about it.
3 A: I wonder why they never replied to our letter. Do you think they received it?
   B: Maybe not. They couldn’t have.
4 A: I wonder how the fire started. Was it an accident?
   B: No, the police say it
5 A: Mike says he needs to see you. He tried to find you yesterday.
   B: Well, he very hard. I was in my office all day.
6 A: The man you spoke to – are you sure he was American?
   B: No, I’m not sure. He

→ Additional exercises 16–18 (pages 311–13)
May and might 2

We use may and might to talk about possible actions or happenings in the future:

- I haven't decided yet where to go for my holidays. I may go to Ireland. (= perhaps I will go there)
- Take an umbrella with you. It might rain later. (= perhaps it will rain)
- The bus isn't always on time. We might have to wait a few minutes. (= perhaps we will have to wait)

The negative forms are may not and might not (mightn't):

- Liz may not go out tonight. She isn't feeling well. (= perhaps she will not go out)
- There might not be enough time to discuss everything at the meeting. (= perhaps there will not be enough time)

Compare will and may/might:

- I'll be late this evening. (for sure)
- I may/might be late this evening. (possible)

Usually you can use may or might. So you can say:

- I may go to Ireland. or I might go to Ireland.
- Jane might be able to help you. or Jane may be able to help you.

But we use only might (not may) when the situation is not real:

- If I were in Tom's position, I might look for another job.

The situation here is not real because I am not in Tom's position (so I'm not going to look for another job). May is not possible in this example.

There is also a continuous form: may/might be -ing. Compare this with will be -ing:

- Don't phone at 8.30. I'll be watching the film on television.
- Don't phone at 8.30. I might be watching (or I may be watching) the film on television. (= perhaps I'll be watching it)

We also use may/might be -ing for possible plans. Compare:

- I'm going to Ireland in July. (for sure)
- I may be going (or I might be going) to Ireland in July. (possible)

But you can also say 'I may go (or I might go) ...' with little difference in meaning.

Might as well

Rose and Clare have just missed the bus. The buses run every hour.

What shall we do? Shall we walk?

We might as well. It's a nice day and I don't want to wait here for an hour.

We might as well do something = We should do it because there is no better alternative. There is no reason not to do it.

May as well is also possible.

- A: What time are you going out?
  - B: Well, I'm ready, so I might as well go now.
- Buses are so expensive these days, you may as well get a taxi. (= taxis are as good, no more expensive)

Will be -ing → Unit 24  May/might 1 → Unit 29  May I ...? → Unit 37  Might with if → Units 38C, 40D
Exercises

30.1 Write sentences with might.
1. Where are you going for your holidays? (to Ireland???)
   I haven’t decided yet. I ____________ to Ireland.

2. What sort of car are you going to buy? (a Mercedes???)
   I’m not sure yet. I ____________ a Mercedes.

3. What are you doing this weekend? (go to London???)
   I haven’t decided yet. I ____________ to London.

4. When is Tom coming to see us? (on Saturday???)
   He hasn’t said yet. He ____________ come on Saturday.

5. Where are you going to hang that picture? (in the dining room???)
   I haven’t made up my mind yet. I ____________ hang it in the dining room.

6. What is Julia going to do when she leaves school? (go to university???)
   She’s still thinking about it. She ____________ go to university.

30.2 Complete the sentences using might + the following:

- bite
- break
- need
- rain
- slip
- wake

1. Take an umbrella with you when you go out. It ____________ rain later.
2. Don’t make too much noise. You ____________ the baby.
3. Be careful of that dog. It ____________ you.
4. I don’t think we should throw that letter away. We ____________ it later.
5. Be careful. The footpath is very icy. You ____________.
6. Don’t let the children play in this room. They ____________ something.

30.3 Complete the sentences using might be able to or might have to + a suitable verb.

1. I can’t help you, but why don’t you ask Jane? She ____________ help you.
2. I can’t meet you this evening, but I ____________ you tomorrow.
3. I’m not working on Saturday, but I ____________ on Sunday.
4. I can come to the meeting, but I ____________ before the end.

30.4 Write sentences with might not.

1. I’m not sure that Liz will come to the party.
   Liz ____________ come to the party.

2. I’m not sure that I’ll go out this evening.
   I ____________

3. I’m not sure that we’ll get tickets for the concert.
   We ____________

4. I’m not sure that Sue will be able to come out with us this evening.
   ____________

30.5 Read the situations and make sentences with might as well.

1. You and a friend have just missed the bus. The buses run every hour.
   You say: We’ll have to wait an hour for the next bus. We ____________ walk.

2. You have a free ticket for a concert. You’re not very keen on the concert, but you decide to go.
   You say: I ____________ to the concert. It’s a pity to waste a free ticket.

3. You’ve just painted your kitchen. You still have a lot of paint, so why not paint the bathroom too?
   You say: We ____________ paint the bathroom too. There’s plenty of paint left.

4. You and a friend are at home. You’re bored. There’s a film on TV starting in a few minutes.
   You say: ____________ There’s nothing else to do.
Have to and must

A

I have to do something = it is necessary to do it, I am obliged to do it:
- You can’t turn right here. You have to turn left.
- I have to wear glasses for reading.
- George can’t come out with us this evening. He has to work late.
- Last week Tina broke her arm and had to go to hospital.
- I haven’t had to go to the doctor for ages.

We use do/does/did in questions and negative sentences (for the present and past simple):
- What do I have to do to get a new driving licence? (not What have I to do?)
- Karen doesn’t have to work Saturdays. (not Karen hasn’t to)
- Why did you have to leave early?

You can use have to with will and might/may:
- If the pain gets worse, you’ll have to go to the doctor.
- I might have to work late tomorrow evening. or I may have to work ...
  (= it’s possible that I will have to)

Must is similar to have to:
- It’s later than I thought. I must go. or I have to go.

You can use must to give your own opinion (for example, to say what you think is necessary, or to recommend someone to do something). Have to is also possible:
- I haven’t spoken to Sue for ages. I must phone her. (= I say this is necessary)
- Mark is a really nice person. You must meet him. (I recommend this)

We use have to (not must) to say what someone is obliged to do. The speaker is not giving his/her own opinion:
- I have to work from 8.30 to 5.30 every day. (a fact, not an opinion)
- Jane has to travel a lot for her work

But must is often used in written rules and instructions:
- Applications for the job must be received by 18 May.
- (exam instruction) You must write your answers in ink.

You cannot use must to talk about the past:
- We had to leave early. (not we must)

C

Mustn’t and don’t have to are completely different:

You mustn’t do something = it is necessary that you do not do it (so don’t do it):
- You must keep it a secret. You mustn’t tell anyone. (= don’t tell anyone)
- I promised I would be on time. I mustn’t be late. (= I must be on time)

You don’t have to do something = you don’t need to do it (but you can if you want):
- You don’t have to tell him, but you can if you want to.
- I don’t have to be at the meeting, but I think I’ll go anyway.

You can use have got to instead of have to. So you can say:
- I’ve got to work tomorrow. or I have to work tomorrow.
- When has Liz got to go? or When does Liz have to go?
Exercises

Unit 31

31.1 Complete the sentences with have to / has to / had to.
1. Bill starts work at 5 a.m. He has to get up at four. (he / get up)
2. ‘I broke my arm last week.’ Did you have to go to hospital? (you / go)
3. There was a lot of noise from the street. We had to close the window. (we / close)
4. Karen can’t stay for the whole meeting. She has to leave early. (she / leave)
5. How old do you have to be to drive in your country? (you / be)
6. I don’t have much time. I have to hurry. (I / hurry)
7. How is Paul enjoying his new job? He enjoys it a lot. (he / enjoy)
8. ‘I’m afraid I can’t stay long.’ ‘What time do you have to go?’ (you / go)
9. ‘The bus was late again.’ ‘How long do you have to wait?’ (you / wait)
10. There was nobody to help me. I had to do everything by myself. (I / do)

31.2 Complete the sentences using have to + the verbs in the list. Some sentences are positive (I have to ... etc.) and some are negative (I don’t have to ... etc.):

ask do drive get up go make make pay show

1. I’m not working tomorrow, so I don’t have to get up early.
2. Steve didn’t know how to use the computer, so I had to show him.
3. Excuse me a moment – I have to make a phone call. I won’t be long.
4. I’m not so busy. I have a few things to do, but I don’t have to do them now.
5. I couldn’t find the street I wanted. I had to ask somebody for directions.
6. The car park is free. You don’t have to pay to park your car there.
7. A man was injured in the accident, but he had to go to hospital because it wasn’t serious.
8. Sue has a senior position in the company. She has to make important decisions.
9. When Patrick starts his new job next month, he has to travel 50 miles to work every day.

31.3 In some of these sentences, must is wrong or unnatural. Correct the sentences where necessary.

1. It’s later than I thought. I must go. OK (have to is also correct)
2. I must work every day from 8.30 to 5.30.
3. You must come and see us again soon.
4. Tom can’t meet us tomorrow. He must work.
5. I must work late yesterday evening.
6. I must get up early tomorrow. I have lots to do.
7. Julia wears glasses. She must wear glasses since she was very young.

31.4 Complete the sentences with mustn’t or don’t/don’tesn’t have to.

1. I don’t want anyone to know about our plan. You mustn’t tell anyone.
2. Richard doesn’t have to wear a suit to work, but he usually does.
3. I can stay in bed tomorrow morning because I don’t have to go to work.
4. Whatever you do, you mustn’t touch that switch. It’s very dangerous.
5. There’s a lift in the building, so we don’t have to climb the stairs.
6. You mustn’t forget what I told you. It’s very important.
7. Sue mustn’t get up early, but she usually does.
8. Don’t make so much noise. We don’t have to wake the children.
9. I don’t have to eat too much. I’m supposed to be on a diet.
10. You don’t have to be a good player to enjoy a game of tennis.

→ Additional exercise 16 (page 311)
Must mustn't needn't

Must mustn't needn't

You must do something = it is necessary that you do it:
- Don't tell anybody what I said. You must keep it a secret.
- We haven't got much time. We must hurry.

You mustn't do something = it is necessary that you do not do it (so don't do it):
- You must keep it a secret. You mustn't tell anybody else. (= don't tell anybody else)
- We must be very quiet. We mustn't make any noise.

You needn't do something = you don't need to do it (but you can if you like):
- You can come with me if you like, but you needn't come if you don't want to. (= it is not necessary for you to come)
- We've got plenty of time. We needn't hurry. (= it is not necessary to hurry)

Instead of needn't, you can use don't/doesn't need to. So you can say:
- We needn't hurry. or We don't need to hurry.

Remember that we say don't need to do, but needn't do (without to).

Needn't have (done)

Study this example situation:

I think it's going to rain. I'll take the umbrella.

Paul had to go out. He thought it was going to rain, so he took the umbrella.

But it didn't rain, so the umbrella was not necessary. So he needn't have taken it.

He needn't have taken the umbrella = He took the umbrella, but this was not necessary.

Compare needn't (do) and needn't have (done):
- Everything will be OK. You needn't worry. (it's not necessary)
- Everything was OK. You needn't have worried. (you worried, but it was not necessary)

Didn't need to (do) and needn't have (done)

I didn't need to ... = it was not necessary for me to ... (and I knew this at the time):
- I didn't need to get up early, so I didn't.
- I didn't need to get up early, but it was a lovely morning, so I did.

I didn't have to ... is also possible in these examples.

I needn't have done something = I did it, but now I know that it was not necessary:
- I got up very early because I had to get ready to go away. But in fact it didn't take me long to get ready. So, I needn't have got up so early. I could have stayed in bed longer.
Exercises

32.1 Complete the sentences using needn’t + the following verbs:

ask come explain leave tell walk

1 We’ve got plenty of time. We ___________ yet.
2 I can manage the shopping alone. You ___________ with me.
3 We ___________ all the way home. We can get a taxi.
4 Just help yourself if you’d like more to eat. You ___________ first.
5 We can keep this a secret between ourselves. We ___________ anybody else.
6 I understand the situation perfectly. You ___________ further.

32.2 Complete the sentences with must, mustn’t or needn’t.

1 We haven’t got much time. We ___________ hurry.
2 We’ve got plenty of time. We ___________ hurry.
3 We have enough food at home, so we ___________ go shopping today.
4 Gary gave me a letter to post. I ___________ remember to post it.
5 Gary gave me a letter to post. I ___________ forget to post it.
6 There’s plenty of time for you to make up your mind. You ___________ decide now.
7 You ___________ wash those tomatoes. They’ve already been washed.
8 This is a valuable book. You ___________ look after it carefully and you ___________ lose it.
9 A: What sort of house do you want to buy? Something big?
   B: Well, it ___________ be big — that’s not so important. But it ___________ have a nice garden — that’s essential.

32.3 Read the situations and make sentences with needn’t have.

1 Paul went out. He took an umbrella because he thought it was going to rain. But it didn’t rain. ___________
2 Linda bought some eggs when she went shopping. When she got home, she found that she already had plenty of eggs. She ___________
3 A colleague got angry with you at work. He shouted at you, which you think was unnecessary. Later you say to him: You ___________
4 Brian had money problems, so he sold his car. A few days later he won some money in a lottery. He ___________
5 We took a camcorder with us on holiday, but we didn’t use it in the end. We ___________
6 I thought I was going to miss my train, so I rushed to the station. But the train was late and in the end I had to wait twenty minutes. ___________

32.4 Write two sentences for each situation. Use needn’t have in the first sentence and could have in the second (as in the example). For could have, see Unit 27.

1 Why did you rush? Why didn’t you take your time?
   ___________
   ___________
2 Why did you walk home? Why didn’t you take a taxi?
   ___________
3 Why did you stay at a hotel? Why didn’t you stay with us?
   ___________
4 Why did she phone me in the middle of the night? Why didn’t she wait until the morning?
   ___________
5 Why did you leave without saying anything? Why didn’t you say goodbye?
   ___________
You should do something = it is a good thing to do or the right thing to do. You can use should to give advice or to give an opinion:

- You look tired. You should go to bed.
- The government should do more to reduce crime.
- ‘Should we invite Susan to the party?’ ‘Yes, I think we should.’

We often use should with I think / I don’t think / Do you think ... ?:

- I think the government should do more to reduce crime.
- I don’t think you should work so hard.
- ‘Do you think I should apply for this job?’ ‘Yes, I think you should.’

You shouldn’t do something = it isn’t a good thing to do:

- You shouldn’t believe everything you read in the newspapers.

Should is not as strong as must or have to:

- You should apologise. (= it would be a good thing to do)
- You must apologise. / You have to apologise. (= you have no alternative)

You can use should when something is not right or what you expect:

- I wonder where Tina is. She should be here by now. (= she isn’t here yet, and this is not normal)
- The price on this packet is wrong. It should be £2.50, not £3.50.
- That man on the motorbike should be wearing a helmet.

We also use should to say that we expect something to happen:

- She’s been studying hard for the exam, so she should pass. (= I expect her to pass)
- There are plenty of hotels in the town. It shouldn’t be difficult to find somewhere to stay. (= I don’t expect it to be difficult)

You should have done something = you didn’t do it, but it would have been the right thing to do:

- You missed a great party last night. You should have come. Why didn’t you? (= you didn’t come, but it would have been good to come)
- I wonder why they’re so late. They should have arrived long ago.

You shouldn’t have done something = you did it, but it was the wrong thing to do:

- I’m feeling sick. I shouldn’t have eaten so much. (= I ate too much)
- She shouldn’t have been listening to our conversation. It was private. (= she was listening)

Compare should (do) and should have (done):

- You look tired. You should go to bed now.
- You went to bed very late last night. You should have gone to bed earlier.

Ought to ...

You can use ought to instead of should in the sentences on this page. We say ‘ought to do’ (with to):

- Do you think I ought to apply for this job? (= Do you think I should apply ... ?)
- Jack ought not to go to bed so late. (= Jack shouldn’t go ...)
- It was a great party last night. You ought to have come.
- She’s been studying hard for the exam, so she ought to pass.
Exercises  Unit 33

33.1 For each situation, write a sentence with should or shouldn’t + the following:

- go-away-for-a-few-days  
- go to bed so late  
- look for another job  
- put some pictures on the walls  
- take a photograph  
- use her car so much

1 Liz needs a change.  She should go away for a few days.
2 Your salary is very low.  You shouldn’t work so hard.
3 Jack always has difficulty getting up.  He should go to bed earlier.
4 What a beautiful view!  You should take a photograph.
5 Sue drives everywhere. She never walks.  She shouldn’t use her car so much.
6 Bill’s room isn’t very interesting.  He should put some pictures on the walls.

33.2 Read the situations and write sentences with I think/I don’t think … should …

1 Peter and Cathy are planning to get married. You think it’s a bad idea.
I don’t think they should get married.

2 Jane has a bad cold but plans to go out this evening. You don’t think this is a good idea. You say to her:

3 Peter needs a job. He’s just seen an advertisement for a job which you think would be ideal for him, but he’s not sure whether to apply or not. You say to him:
I think you should apply.

4 The government wants to increase taxes, but you don’t think this is a good idea.

33.3 Complete the sentences with should (have) + the verb in brackets.

1 Diane ... should pass ... the exam. She’s been studying very hard. (pass)
2 You missed a great party last night. You should have come. (come)
3 We don’t see you enough. You should come more often. (come)
4 I’m in a difficult position. What do you think I should do? (do)
5 I’m sorry that I didn’t take your advice. I should have listened to you. (listen)
6 I’m playing tennis with Jane tomorrow. She might play tennis with me. (play)
7 We lost the match, but we should have won. We were the better team. (win)
8 ‘Is Mike here yet?’ ‘Not yet, but he will be here soon.’ (be)
9 I posted the letter three days ago, so it should have arrived by now. (arrive)

33.4 Read the situations and write sentences with should/shouldn’t. Some of the sentences are past and some are present.

1 I’m feeling sick. I ate too much. I shouldn’t have eaten so much.

2 That man on the motorbike isn’t wearing a helmet. That’s dangerous.
He should be wearing a helmet.

3 When we got to the restaurant, there were no free tables. We hadn’t reserved one.
We should have reserved a table.

4 The notice says that the shop is open every day from 8.30. It is 9 o’clock now, but the shop isn’t open yet.

5 The speed limit is 30 miles an hour, but Kate is doing 50.
She shouldn’t be driving that fast.

6 Laura gave me her address, but I didn’t write it down. Now I can’t remember it.
I should have written it down.

7 I was driving behind another car. Suddenly, the driver in front stopped without warning and I drove into the back of his car. It wasn’t my fault.
The driver in front should have slowed down.

8 I walked into a wall. I was looking behind me. I wasn’t looking where I was going.
Should 2

A You can use should after a number of verbs, especially:

- demand
- insist
- propose
- recommend
- suggest

- They insisted that we should have dinner with them.
- I demanded that he should apologise.
- What do you suggest I should do?
- I insist that something should be done about the problem.

We also say ‘It’s important/vital/necessary/essential that ... should ...’:

- It’s essential that everyone should be here on time.

B You can also leave out should in all the sentences in Section A:

- It’s essential that everyone be here on time. (= that everyone should be here)
- I demanded that he apologise. (= that he should apologise)
- What do you suggest I do?
- I insist that something be done about the problem.

This form (be/do/have/apologise etc.) is sometimes called the subjunctive. It is the same as the infinitive (without to).

You can also use normal present and past tenses:

- It’s essential that everyone is here on time.
- I demanded that he apologised.

After suggest, you cannot use to ... (‘to do / to buy’ etc.). You can say:

- What do you suggest we should do?

or

- What do you suggest we do? (but not What do you suggest us to do?)

- Jane suggested that I (should) buy a car.

or

- Jane suggested that I bought a car. (but not Jane suggested me to buy)

You can also use -ing after suggest: What do you suggest doing? See Unit 53.

C You can use should after a number of adjectives, especially:

- strange
- odd
- funny
- typical
- natural
- interesting
- surprised
- surprising

- It’s strange that he should be late. He’s usually on time.
- I was surprised that he should say such a thing.

D If ... should ...

You can say ‘If something should happen ...’ . For example:

- If Tom should phone while I’m out, tell him I’ll call him back later.

‘If Tom should phone’ is similar to ‘If Tom phones’. With should, the speaker feels that the possibility is smaller. Another example:

- We have no jobs at present. But if the situation should change, we’ll let you know.

You can also begin these sentences with should (Should something happen ...):

- Should Tom phone, tell him I’ll call him back later.

E You can use I should ... / I shouldn’t ... to give somebody advice. For example:

- ‘Shall I leave now?’ ‘No, I should wait a bit longer.’

Here, I should wait = I would wait if I were you, I advise you to wait.

Two more examples:

- ‘I’m going out now. Is it cold?’ ‘Yes, I should wear a coat.’
- I shouldn’t stay up too late. You’ll be tired tomorrow.
Exercises

34.1 Write a sentence (beginning in the way shown) that means the same as the first sentence.

1 'I think it would be a good idea to see a specialist,' the doctor said to me.
The doctor recommended that _____________.
2 'You really must stay a little longer,' she said to me.
She insisted that _________________.
3 'Why don't you visit the museum after lunch?' I said to them.
I suggested that _________________.
4 'You must pay the rent by Friday,' the landlord said to us.
The landlord demanded that _________________.
5 'Why don't you go away for a few days?' Jack said to me.
Jack suggested that _________________.

34.2 Are these sentences right or wrong?

1 a Tom suggested that I should look for another job. _____________.
b Tom suggested that I look for another job.
c Tom suggested that I looked for another job.
d Tom suggested me to look for another job.

2 a Where do you suggest I go for my holiday? _____________.
b Where do you suggest me to go for my holiday? _____________.
c Where do you suggest I should go for my holiday?

34.3 Complete the sentences using should + the following:
ask be leave listen say worry
1 It's strange that he _____________. late. He's usually on time.
2 It's funny that you _____________. that. I was going to say the same thing.
3 It's only natural that parents _____________. about their children.
4 Isn't it typical of Joe that he _____________. without saying goodbye to anybody?
5 I was surprised that they _____________. me for advice. What advice could I give them?
6 I'm going to give you all some essential information, so it's important that everybody _____________. very carefully.

34.4 Use the words in brackets to complete these sentences. Use If ... should ...

1 I'm going out now. _____________. Tom should phone, tell him I'll call him back this evening.
   (Tom / phone)
2 I've hung the washing out to dry on the balcony. _____________. can you bring the washing in, please? (it / rain)
3 I think everything will be OK. _____________. any problems,
   I'm sure we'll be able to solve them. (there / be)
4 I don't want anyone to know where I'm going. _____________. just say that you don't know. (someone / ask)

Write sentences 3 and 4 again, this time beginning with Should.

5 _____________. I'm sure we'll be able to solve them.
6 _____________. just say that you don't know.

34.5 (Section E) Complete the sentences using I should + the following:

buy keep phone wait
1 'Shall I leave now?' 'No, _____________. a bit longer.'
2 'Shall I throw these things away?' 'No, _____________. them. You may need them.'
3 'Shall I go and see Paul?' 'Yes, but _____________. him first.'
4 'Is it worth repairing this TV set?' 'No, _____________. a new one.'
Had better  It's time ...

A

Had better (I'd better / you'd better etc.)

I'd better do something = it is advisable to do it. If I don't do it, there will be a problem or a danger:
- I have to meet Ann in ten minutes. I'd better go now or I'll be late.
- 'Shall I take an umbrella?' 'Yes, you'd better. It might rain.'
- We'd better stop for petrol soon. The tank is almost empty.

The negative is I'd better not (= I had better not):
- 'Are you going out tonight?' 'I'd better not. I've got a lot to do.'
- You don't look very well. You'd better not go to work today.

Remember that:

The form is 'had better' (usually 'I'd better / you'd better' etc. in spoken English).
- I'd better phone Carol, hadn't I?

Had is normally past, but the meaning of had better is present or future, not past.
- I'd better go to the bank now / tomorrow.

We say 'I'd better do' (not to do).
- It might rain. We'd better take an umbrella. (not We'd better to take)

B

Had better and should

Had better is similar to should but not exactly the same. We use had better only for a specific situation (not for things in general). You can use should in all types of situations to give an opinion or give advice:
- It's late. You'd better go. / You should go. (a specific situation)
- You're always at home. You should go out more often. (in general – not 'had better go')

Also, with had better, there is always a danger or a problem if you don't follow the advice.

Should only means 'it is a good thing to do'. Compare:
- It's a great film. You should go and see it. (but no problem if you don't)
- The film starts at 8.30. You'd better go now or you'll be late.

C

It's time ...

You can say It's time (for somebody) to ... :
- It's time to go home. / It's time for us to go home.

But you can also say:
- It's late. It's time we went home.

Here we use the past (went), but the meaning is present, not past:
- It's 10 o'clock and he's still in bed. It's time he got up. (not It's time he gets up)

It's time you did something = you should have already done it or started it. We often use this structure to criticise or to complain:
- It's time the children were in bed. It's long after their bedtime.
- You're very selfish. It's time you realised that you're not the most important person in the world.

You can also say It's about time ... . This makes the criticism stronger:
- Jack is a great talker. But it's about time he did something instead of just talking.
Exercises

Unit 35

35.1 Read the situations and write sentences with had better or had better not. Use the words in brackets.

1. You’re going out for a walk with Tom. It looks as if it might rain. You say to Tom:
   (an umbrella) _We’d better take an umbrella._

2. Michael has just cut himself. It’s a bad cut. You say to him:
   (a plaster) _You’d better put a plaster on it._

3. You and Kate plan to go to a restaurant this evening. It’s a popular restaurant. You say to Kate:
   (reserve) We _had better reserve a table._

4. Jill doesn’t look very well – not well enough to go to work. You say to her:
   (work) _Jill, you’d better stay at home._

5. You received the phone bill four weeks ago, but you haven’t paid it yet. If you don’t pay soon,
you could be in trouble. You say to yourself:
   (pay) _I’d better pay the bill._

6. You want to go out, but you’re expecting an important phone call. You say to your friend:
   (go out) I _had better call you back._

7. You and Liz are going to the theatre. You’ve missed the bus and you don’t want to be late.
   You say to Liz: (a taxi) _Liz, we’d better get a taxi._

35.2 Put in had better where suitable. If had better is not suitable, use should.

1. I have an appointment in ten minutes. I _had better_ go now or I’ll be late.

2. It’s a great film. You _should_ go and see it. You’ll really like it.

3. I _had better_ get up early tomorrow. I’ve got a lot to do.

4. When people are driving, they _had better_ keep their eyes on the road.

5. I’m glad you came to see us. You _had better_ come more often.

6. She’ll be upset if we don’t invite her to the wedding, so we _had better_ invite her.

7. These biscuits are delicious. You _had better_ try one.

8. I think everybody _had better_ learn a foreign language.

35.3 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need only one word, sometimes two.

1 a. I need some money. I’d better _go_ to the bank.
   b. John is expecting you to phone him. You _had better_ phone him now.
   c. ‘Shall I leave the window open?’ ‘No, you’d better _not_.’
   d. We’d better leave as soon as possible, _had better_ we?

2 a. It’s time the government _did_ something about the problem.
   b. It’s time something _did_ about the problem.
   c. I think it’s about time you _did_ about other people instead of only thinking
      about yourself.

35.4 Read the situations and write sentences with It’s time (somebody did something).

1. You think the children should be in bed. It’s already 11 o’clock.
   _It’s time the children were in bed._

2. You haven’t had a holiday for a very long time. You need one now.
   It’s time I _had_.

3. You’re sitting on a train waiting for it to leave the station. It’s already five minutes late.
   _It’s time the train was moving._

4. You enjoy having parties. You haven’t had one for a long time.
   _It’s time we_ then_._

5. The company you work for has been badly managed for a long time. You think some changes
   should be made.
   _It’s time the company_._

6. Andrew has been doing the same job for the last ten years. He should try something else.
Would

We use **would** (‘d) / wouldn’t when we *imagine* a situation or an action (= we think of something that is not real):
- It **would be** nice to buy a new car, but we can’t afford it.
- I’d **love** to live by the sea.
- A: Shall I tell Chris what happened?
  B: No, I **wouldn’t** say anything.
  (= I wouldn’t say anything in your situation)

We use **would have** (done) when we imagine situations or actions in the past (= things that didn’t happen):
- They helped us a lot. I don’t know what we’d have done
  (= we would have done) without their help.
- I didn’t tell Sam what happened. He **wouldn’t have** been pleased.

Compare **would** (do) and **would have** (done):
- I **would phone** Sue, but I haven’t got her number. *(now)*
  I **would have phoned** Sue, but I didn’t have her number. *(past)*
- I’m not going to invite them to the party. They **wouldn’t** come anyway.
  I didn’t invite them to the party. They **wouldn’t have** come anyway.

We often use **would** in sentences with **if** (see Units 38–40):
- I **would phone** Sue if I had her number.
- I **would have phoned** Sue if I’d had her number.

Compare **will** (‘ll) and **would** (‘d):
- I’ll **stay** a bit longer. I’ve got plenty of time.
  I’d stay a bit longer, but I really have to go now. *(so I can’t stay longer)*
- I’ll **phone** Sue. I’ve got her number.
  I’d phone Sue, but I haven’t got her number. *(so I can’t phone her)*

Sometimes **would/ wouldn’t** is the past of **will/ won’t**. Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TOM:</strong> I’ll phone you on Sunday.</td>
<td>→ Tom said he’d phone me on Sunday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ANN:</strong> I promise I won’t be late.</td>
<td>→ Ann promised that she wouldn’t be late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LIZ:</strong> Damn! The car won’t start.</td>
<td>→ Liz was annoyed because her car wouldn’t start.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Somebody wouldn’t do something** = he/she refused to do it:
- I tried to warn him, but he **wouldn’t listen** to me. (= he refused to listen)
- The car **wouldn’t start**. (= it ‘refused’ to start)

You can also use **would** when you talk about things that happened regularly in the past:
- When we were children, we lived by the sea. In summer, if the weather was fine, we would all get up early and go for a swim. (= we did this regularly)
- Whenever Richard was angry, he **would** walk out of the room.

With this meaning, **would** is similar to **used to** (see Unit 18):
- Whenever Richard was angry, he **used to** walk out of the room.

Will → Units 21–22  Would you ... ? → Unit 37A  Would ... if → Units 38–40  Wish ... would → Unit 41
Would like → Units 37E, 58  Would prefer / would rather → Unit 59  Modal verbs → Appendix 4
Exercises

36.1 Write sentences about yourself. Imagine things you would like or wouldn't like.
1 (a place you'd love to live) I'd love to live by the sea.
2 (a job you wouldn't like to do) 
3 (something you would love to do) 
4 (something that would be nice to have) 
5 (a place you'd like to go to) 

36.2 Complete the sentences using would + the following verbs (in the correct form):

be be do enjoy enjoy have pass stop
1 They helped us a lot. I don't know what we would have done without their help.
2 You should go and see the film. You .............................................................. it.
3 It's a pity you couldn't come to the concert yesterday. You .............................................................. it.
4 Shall I apply for the job or not? What ........................................... you ........................................... in my position?
5 I was in a hurry when I saw you. Otherwise I .............................................................. to talk.
6 We took a taxi home last night but got stuck in the traffic. It .............................................................. quicker to walk.
7 Why don't you go and see Clare? She .............................................................. very pleased to see you.
8 Why didn't you do the exam? I'm sure you .............................................................. it.
9 In an ideal world, everybody .............................................................. enough to eat.

36.3 Each sentence on the right follows a sentence on the left. Which follows which?

| 1 I'd like to go to Australia one day. | a It wouldn't have been very nice. |
| 2 I wouldn't like to live on a busy road. | b It would have been fun. |
| 3 I'm sorry the trip was cancelled. | c It would be nice. |
| 4 I'm looking forward to going out tonight. | d It won't be much fun. |
| 5 I'm glad we didn't go out in the rain. | e It wouldn't be very nice. |
| 6 I'm not looking forward to the trip. | f It will be fun. |

36.4 Write sentences using promised + would/wouldn't.
1 I wonder why Laura is late. She promised she wouldn't be late.
2 I wonder why Steve hasn't phoned. He promised ..............................................................
3 Why did you tell Jane what I said? You ..............................................................
4 I'm surprised they didn't wait for us. They ..............................................................

36.5 Complete the sentences. Use wouldn't + a suitable verb.
1 I tried to warn him, but he wouldn't listen to me.
2 I asked Amanda what had happened, but she .............................................................. me.
3 Paul was very angry about what I'd said and .............................................................. to me for two weeks.
4 Martina insisted on carrying all her luggage. She .............................................................. me help her.

36.6 These sentences are about things that often happened in the past. Complete the sentences using would + the following: forget help shake share walk

1 Whenever Richard was angry, he would walk out of the room.
2 We used to live next to a railway line. Every time a train went past, the house ..............................................................
3 George was a very kind man. He always .............................................................. you if you had a problem.
4 Brenda was always very generous. She didn't have much, but she .............................................................. what she had with everyone else.
5 You could never rely on Joe. It didn't matter how many times you reminded him to do something, he ..............................................................
Can/Could/Would you ... ? etc.
(Requests, offers, permission and invitations)

A Asking people to do things (requests)

We use can or could to ask people to do things:

- Can you wait a moment, please?
- Could you wait a moment, please?
- Liz, can you do me a favour?
- Excuse me, could you tell me how to get to the airport?

Note that we say Do you think you could ... ? (not can):
- Do you think you could lend me some money until next week?

We also use will and would to ask people to do things (but can/could are more usual):
- Liz, will you do me a favour?
- Would you please be quiet? I'm trying to concentrate.

B Asking for things

To ask for something, we use Can I have ... ? or Could I have ... ?:

- (in a shop) Can I have these postcards, please?
- (during a meal) Could I have the salt, please?

May I have ... ? is also possible:
- May I have these postcards, please?

C Asking to do things

To ask to do something, we use can, could or may:

- (on the phone) Hello, can I speak to Steve, please?
- 'Could I use your phone?' 'Yes, of course.'
- Do you think I could borrow your bike?
- 'May I come in?' 'Yes, please do.'

May is more formal than can or could.

To ask to do something, you can also say Do you mind if I ... ? or Is it all right / Is it OK if I ... ?:
- 'Do you mind if I use your phone?' 'Sure. Go ahead.'
- 'Is it all right if I come in?' 'Yes, of course.'

D Offering to do things

To offer to do something, you can use Can I ... ?:

- 'Can I get you a cup of coffee?' 'That would be nice.'
- 'Can I help you?' 'No, it's all right. I can manage.'

E Offering and inviting

To offer or to invite, we use Would you like ... ? (not Do you like):

- 'Would you like a cup of coffee?' 'Yes, please.'
- 'Would you like to come to dinner tomorrow evening?' 'I'd love to.'

I'd like ... is a polite way of saying what you want:

- (at a tourist information office) I'd like some information about hotels, please.
- (in a shop) I'd like to try on this jacket, please.
37.1 Read the situations and write questions beginning Can ... or Could ... .

1 You're carrying a lot of things. You can't open the door yourself. There's a man standing near
the door. You say to him: **Could you open the door, please?**

2 You phone Sue, but somebody else answers. Sue isn't there. You want to leave a message for
her. You say: __________________________________________________________________________

3 You're a tourist. You want to go to the station, but you don't know how to get there. You ask
at your hotel: __________________________________________________________________________

4 You are in a clothes shop. You see some trousers you like and you want to try them on.
You say to the shop assistant: __________________________________________________________________________

5 You have a car. You have to go the same way as Steve, who is on foot. You offer him a lift.
You say to him: __________________________________________________________________________

37.2 Read the situation and write a question using the word in brackets.

1 You want to borrow your friend's camera. What do you say to him?
   (think) **Do you think I could borrow your camera?**

2 You are at a friend's house and you want to use her phone. What do you say?
   (all right) **Is it all right if I use your phone?**

3 You've written a letter in English. Before you send it, you want a friend to check it for you.
   What do you ask?
   (think) __________________________________________________________________________

4 You want to leave work early. What do you ask your boss?
   (mind) __________________________________________________________________________

5 The woman in the next room is playing music. It's very loud. You want her to turn it down.
   What do you say to her?
   (think) __________________________________________________________________________

6 You're on a train. The window is open and you're feeling cold. You'd like to close it, but first
   you ask the woman next to you.
   (OK) __________________________________________________________________________

7 You're still on the train. The woman next to you has finished reading her newspaper, and
   you'd like to have a look at it. You ask her.
   (think) __________________________________________________________________________

37.3 What would you say in these situations?

1 Paul has come to see you in your flat. You offer him something to eat.
   **YOU:** **Would you like something to eat**
   **PAUL:** No, thank you. I've just eaten.

2 You need help to change the film in your camera. You ask Kate.
   **YOU:** I don't know how to change the film.
   **KATE:** Sure. It's easy. All you have to do is this.

3 You're on a bus. You have a seat, but an elderly man is standing. You offer him your seat.
   **YOU:** __________________________________________________________________________
   **MAN:** Oh, that's very kind of you. Thank you very much.

4 You're the passenger in a car. Your friend is driving very fast. You ask her to slow down.
   **YOU:** You're making me very nervous.
   **DRIVER:** Oh, I'm sorry. I didn't realise I was going so fast.

5 You've finished your meal in a restaurant and now you want the bill. You ask the waiter:
   **YOU:** __________________________________________________________________________
   **WAITER:** Right. I'll get it for you now.

6 A friend of yours is interested in one of your books. You invite him to borrow it.
   **FRIEND:** This looks very interesting.
   **YOU:** Yes, it's a good book.
If I do ... and If I did ...

Compare these examples:

(1) Lisa has lost her watch. She tells Sue:
   LISA: I've lost my watch. Have you seen it anywhere?
   SUE: No, but if I find it, I'll tell you.

In this example, Sue feels there is a real possibility that she will find the watch. So she says:
   if I find ..., I'll ...

(2) Joe says:
   If I found a wallet in the street, I'd take it to the police station.

This is a different type of situation. Here, Joe doesn't expect to find a wallet in the street; he is imagining a situation that will probably not happen. So he says:
   if I found ..., I'd (= I would) ...  (not if I find ..., I'll ...)

When you imagine something like this, you use if + past (if I found / if there was / if we didn't etc.).

But the meaning is not past:
   □ What would you do if you won a million pounds?
     (we don't really expect this to happen)
   □ I don't really want to go to their party, but I probably will go. They'd be upset if I didn't go.
   □ If there was (or were) an election tomorrow, who would you vote for?

For if ... was/were, see Unit 39C.

We do not normally use would in the if-part of the sentence:
   □ I'd be very frightened if somebody pointed a gun at me. (not if somebody would point)
   □ If I didn't go to their party, they'd be upset. (not if I wouldn't go)

But you can use if ... would when you ask somebody to do something:
   □ (from a formal letter) I would be grateful if you would let me know your decision as soon as possible.

In the other part of the sentence (not the if-part) we use would ('d) / wouldn't:
   □ If you took more exercise, you'd (= you would) feel better.
   □ I'm not tired. If I went to bed now, I wouldn't sleep.
   □ Would you mind if I used your phone?

Could and might are also possible:
   □ If you took more exercise, you might feel better. (= it is possible that you would feel better)
   □ If it stopped raining, we could go out. (= we would be able to go out)

Do not use when in sentences like those on this page:
   □ They'd be upset if I didn't go to their party. (not when I didn't go)
   □ What would you do if you were bitten by a snake? (not when you were bitten)
Exercises

38.1 Put the verb into the correct form.

1. They would be offended if I .. didn't go .. to their party. (not / go)
2. If you took more exercise, you .. would feel .. better. (feel)
3. If they offered me the job, I .. would take .. it. (take)
4. A lot of people would be out of work if the car factory .. closed down .. . (not / get)
5. If I sold my car, I .. would press .. much money for it. (not / get)
6. (in a lift) What would happen if somebody .. pressed .. that red button? (press)
7. I don't think there's any chance that Gary and Emma will get married. I'd be absolutely
   astonished if they .. did .. . (do)
8. Liz gave me this ring. She .. would be very upset if I lost it. (be)
9. Dave and Kate are expecting us. They would be very disappointed if we
   .. would come .. . (not / come)
10. Would Steve mind if I .. borrowed .. his bike without asking him? (borrow)
11. What would you do if somebody .. walked .. in here with a gun? (walk)
12. I'm sure Sue .. would understand .. if you explained the situation to her. (understand)

38.2 You ask a friend to imagine these situations. You ask What would you do if ... ?

1. (imagine - you win a lot of money)
   What .. would you do .. if you won a lot of money?

2. (imagine - you lose your passport)
   What ..

3. (imagine - there's a fire in the building)

4. (imagine - you're in a lift and it stops between floors)

38.3 Answer the questions in the way shown.

1. A: Shall we catch the 10.30 train?
   B: No. (arrive too early) .. If we caught the 10.30 train, we'd arrive too early..

2. A: Is Kevin going to take his driving test?
   B: No. (fail) If

3. A: Why don't we stay at a hotel?
   B: No. (cost too much) If

4. A: Is Sally going to apply for the job?
   B: No. (not / get it) If

5. A: Let's tell them the truth.
   B: No. (not / believe us) If

6. A: Why don't we invite Bill to the party?
   B: No. (have to invite his friends too)

38.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. If you took more exercise, .. you'd feel better..
2. I'd be very angry if ..
3. If I didn't go to work tomorrow, ..
4. Would you go to the party if ..
5. If you bought some new clothes, ..
6. Would you mind if ..
If I knew ...  I wish I knew ...

Study this example situation:

Sarah wants to phone Paul, but she can’t do this because she doesn’t know his number.
She says:

If I knew his number, I would phone him.

Sarah says: If I knew his number .... This tells us that she doesn’t know his number. She is imagining the situation. The real situation is that she doesn’t know his number.

When you imagine a situation like this, you use if + past (if I knew / if you were / if we didn’t etc.). But the meaning is present, not past:

- If I didn’t want to go to the party, I wouldn’t go. (but I want to go)
- We wouldn’t have any money if we didn’t work. (but we work)
- If you were in my position, what would you do?
- It’s a pity you can’t drive. It would be useful if you could.

We use the past in the same way after wish (I wish I knew / I wish you were etc.). We use wish to say that we regret something, that something is not as we would like it to be:

- I wish I knew Paul’s phone number.
  (= I don’t know it and I regret this)
- Do you ever wish you could fly?
  (you can’t fly)
- It rains a lot here. I wish it didn’t rain so often.
- It’s very crowded here. I wish there weren’t so many people. (there are a lot of people)
- I wish I didn’t have to work tomorrow, but unfortunately I do.

If I were / if I was

After if and wish, you can use were instead of was (if I were ... / I wish it were etc.). I was / it was are also possible. So you can say:

- If I were you, I wouldn’t buy that coat. or If I was you, ...
- I’d go out if it weren’t so cold. or ... if it wasn’t so cold.
- I wish Carol were here. or I wish Carol was here.

We do not normally use would in the if-part of the sentence or after wish:

- If I were rich, I would have a yacht. (not If I would be rich)
- I wish I had something to read. (not I wish I would have)

Sometimes wish ... would is possible: I wish you would listen. See Unit 41.

Could sometimes means ‘would be able to’ and sometimes ‘was/were able to’:

- You could get a better job if you could use a computer. (you could get = you would be able to get)
Exercises

39.1 Put the verb into the correct form.
1. If I _______ (know) his number, I would phone him.
2. I _______ (not / buy) that coat if I were you.
3. I ________________ (help) you if I could, but I'm afraid I can't.
4. We would need a car if we ____________ (live) in the country.
5. If we had the choice, we ____________ (live) in the country.
6. This soup isn't very good. It ________________ (taste) better if it wasn't so salty.
7. I wouldn't mind living in England if the weather ________________ (be) better.
8. If I were you, I ________________ (not / wait). I ________________ (go) now.
9. You're always tired. If you ________________ (not / go) to bed so late every night, you
   wouldn't be tired all the time.
10. I think there are too many cars. If there ________________ (not / be) so many cars,
    there ________________ (not / be) so much pollution.

39.2 Write a sentence with if ... for each situation.
1. We don't see you very often because you live so far away.
   If you didn't live so far away, we'd see you more often.
2. This book is too expensive, so I'm not going to buy it.
   I'd ________________ if ________________.
3. We don't go out very often - we can't afford it.
   We ________________.
4. I can't meet you tomorrow - I have to work late.
   If ________________.
5. It's raining, so we can't have lunch outside.
   We ________________.
6. I don't want his advice, and that's why I'm not going to ask for it.
   If ________________.

39.3 Write sentences beginning I wish ...:
1. I don't know many people (and I'm lonely). I wish I knew more people.
2. I don't have a mobile phone (and I need one). I wish ________________.
3. Helen isn't here (and I need to see her). ________________.
4. It's cold (and I hate cold weather). ________________.
5. I live in a big city (and I don't like it). ________________.
6. I can't go to the party (and I'd like to). ________________.
7. I have to work tomorrow (but I'd like to stay in bed). ________________.
8. I don't know anything about cars (and my car has just broken down).

9. I'm not feeling well (and it's not nice).

39.4 Write your own sentences beginning I wish ...
1. (somewhere you'd like to be now - on the beach, in New York, in bed etc.)
   I wish ________________.
2. (something you'd like to have - a computer, a job, lots of money etc.)
   ________________.
3. (something you'd like to be able to do - sing, speak a language, fly etc.)
   ________________.
4. (something you'd like to be - beautiful, strong, rich etc.)
   ________________.
If I had known ...  I wish I had known ...

Study this example situation:

Last month Gary was in hospital for a few days. Rachel didn't know this, so she didn't go to visit him. They met a few days ago. Rachel said:

If I had known you were in hospital, I would have gone to see you.

Rachel said: If I had known you were in hospital .... This tells us that she didn't know he was in hospital.

We use if + had ('d) ... to talk about the past (if I had known/been/done etc.):

- I didn't see you when you passed me in the street. If I'd seen you, of course I would have said hello. (but I didn't see you)
- I decided to stay at home last night. I would have gone out if I hadn't been so tired. (but I was tired)
- If he had been looking where he was going, he wouldn't have walked into the wall. (but he wasn't looking)
- The view was wonderful. If I'd had a camera with me, I would have taken some photographs. (but I didn't have a camera)

Compare:

- I'm not hungry. If I was hungry, I would eat something.  (now)
- I wasn't hungry. If I had been hungry, I would have eaten something. (past)

Do not use would in the if-part of the sentence. We use would in the other part of the sentence:

- If I had seen you, I would have said hello. (not If I would have seen you)

Note that 'd can be would or had:

- If I'd seen you, (I'd seen = I had seen)
- I'd have said hello. (I'd have said = I would have said)

We use had (done) in the same way after wish. I wish something had happened = I am sorry that it didn't happen:

- I wish I'd known that Gary was ill. I would have gone to see him. (but I didn't know)
- I feel sick. I wish I hadn't eaten so much cake. (I ate too much cake)
- Do you wish you had studied science instead of languages? (you didn't study science)

Do not use would have ... after wish:

- The weather was cold while we were away. I wish it had been warmer. (not I wish it would have been)

Compare would (do) and would have (done):

- If I had gone to the party last night, I would be tired now. (I am not tired now – present)
- If I had gone to the party last night, I would have met lots of people. (I didn't meet lots of people – past)

Compare would have, could have and might have:

- If the weather hadn't been so bad,
  - we would have gone out.
  - we could have gone out.
  - (= we would have been able to go out)
  - we might have gone out.
  - (= perhaps we would have gone out)
Exercises

40.1 Put the verb into the correct form.
1. I didn’t know you were in hospital. If _________________________ (I / know), I would have gone _________________________ (I / go) to see you.
2. Sam got to the station just in time to catch the train to the airport. If _________________________ (he / miss) the train, _________________________ (he / miss) his flight.
3. I’m glad that you reminded me about Amanda’s birthday. _________________________ (I / forget) if _________________________ (you / not / remind) me.
4. Unfortunately I forgot my address book when I went on holiday. If _________________________ (I / have) your address, _________________________ (I / send) you a postcard.
5. A: How was your holiday? Did you have a nice time?
   B: It was OK, but _________________________ (we / enjoy) it more if _________________________ (the weather / be) nicer.
6. I took a taxi to the hotel, but the traffic was bad. _________________________ (it / be) quicker if _________________________ (I / walk).
7. I’m not tired. If _________________________ (I / be) tired, I’d go home now.
8. I wasn’t tired last night. If _________________________ (I / be) tired, I would have gone home earlier.

40.2 For each situation, write a sentence beginning with If.
1. I wasn’t hungry, so I didn’t eat anything.
   If I’d been hungry, I would have eaten something.
2. The accident happened because the road was icy.
   If the road _________________________ (it / be) icy, the accident wouldn’t have happened.
3. I didn’t know that Joe had to get up early, so I didn’t wake him up.
   If I _________________________ (I / know) that Joe had to get up early, I would have woken him up.
4. I was able to buy the car only because Jane lent me the money.
   If Jane hadn’t lent me the money _________________________ (I / be) without a car.
5. Karen wasn’t injured in the crash because she was wearing a seat belt.
   If Karen _________________________ (she / not / wear) a seat belt, she would have been injured.
6. You didn’t have any breakfast – that’s why you’re hungry now.
   If you ________ (you / have) breakfast, you wouldn’t be hungry now.
7. I didn’t get a taxi because I didn’t have any money.
   If I _________________________ (I / have) any money, I would have taken a taxi.

40.3 Imagine that you are in these situations. For each situation, write a sentence with I wish.
1. You’ve eaten too much and now you feel sick.
   You say: _________________________ (I / wish) I hadn’t eaten so much.
2. There was a job advertised in the newspaper. You decided not to apply for it. Now you think that your decision was wrong.
   You say: _________________________ (I / wish) I _________________________ (you / apply) for it.
3. When you were younger, you never learned to play a musical instrument. Now you regret this.
   You say: _________________________ (I / wish) I _________________________ (you / learn) to play an instrument.
4. You’ve painted the gate red. Now you think that red was the wrong colour.
   You say: _________________________ (I / wish) I _________________________ (you / paint) the gate green.
5. You are walking in the country. You’d like to take some photographs, but you didn’t bring your camera.
   You say: _________________________ (I / wish) I _________________________ (you / bring) your camera.
6. You have some unexpected guests. They didn’t phone first to say they were coming. You are very busy and you are not prepared for them.
   You say (to yourself): _________________________ (I / wish) they _________________________ (they / telephone) first.
Wish

You can say ‘I wish you luck / every success / a happy birthday’ etc.:  
☐ I wish you every success in the future.  
☐ I saw Tim before the exam and he wished me luck.

We say ‘wish somebody something’ (luck / a happy birthday etc.). But you cannot ‘wish that something happens’. We use hope in this situation. For example:  
☐ I hope you get this letter before you go away. (*not I wish you get*)

Compare I wish and I hope:  
☐ I wish you a pleasant stay here.  
☐ I hope you have a pleasant stay here. (*not I wish you have*)

We also use wish to say that we regret something, that something is not as we would like it. When we use wish in this way, we use the past (knew/lived etc.), but the meaning is present:  
☐ I wish I knew what to do about the problem. (*I don’t know and I regret this*)  
☐ I wish you didn’t have to go so soon. (*you have to go*)  
☐ Do you wish you lived near the sea? (*you don’t live near the sea*)  
☐ Jack’s going on a trip to Mexico soon. I wish I was going too. (*I’m not going*)

To say that we regret something in the past, we use wish + had ... (*had known / had said*) etc.:  
☐ I wish I’d known about the party. I would have gone if I’d known. (*I didn’t know*)  
☐ It was a stupid thing to say. I wish I hadn’t said it. (*I said it*)

For more examples, see Units 39 and 40.

I wish I could (do something) = I regret that I cannot do it:  
☐ I’m sorry I have to go. I wish I could stay longer. (*but I can’t*)  
☐ I’ve met that man before. I wish I could remember his name. (*but I can’t*)

I wish I could have (done something) = I regret that I could not do it:  
☐ I hear the party was great. I wish I could have gone. (*but I couldn’t go*)

You can say ‘I wish (somebody) would (do something)’. For example:

It’s been raining all day. Jill doesn’t like it. She says:  
I wish it would stop raining.

Jill would like the rain to stop, but this will probably not happen. We use I wish ... would when we would like something to happen or change. Usually, the speaker doesn’t expect this to happen.

We often use I wish ... would to complain about a situation:  
☐ The phone has been ringing for five minutes. I wish somebody would answer it.  
☐ I wish you would do something instead of just sitting and doing nothing.

You can use I wish ... wouldn’t ... to complain about things that people do repeatedly:  
☐ I wish you wouldn’t keep interrupting me.

We use I wish ... would ... for actions and changes, not situations. Compare:  
☐ I wish Sarah would come. (= I want her to come)  
☐ I wish Sarah was (or were) here now. (*not I wish Sarah would be*)
☐ I wish somebody would buy me a car.  
☐ but I wish I had a car. (*not I wish I would have*)
Exercises

Unit 41

41.1 Put in wish(ed) or hope(d).

1 I __________ you a pleasant stay here.
2 Enjoy your holiday. I __________ you have a great time.
3 Goodbye. I __________ you all the best.
4 We said goodbye to each other and __________ each other luck.
5 We’re going to have a picnic tomorrow, so I __________ the weather is nice.
6 I __________ you luck in your new job. I __________ it works out well for you.

41.2 What do you say in these situations? Write sentences with I wish ... would ...

1 It’s raining. You want to go out, but not in the rain.
   You say: I wish it would stop raining.

2 You’re waiting for Jane. She’s late and you’re getting impatient.
   You say to yourself: I wish

3 You’re looking for a job – so far without success. Nobody will give you a job.
   You say: I wish somebody

4 You can hear a baby crying. It’s been crying for a long time and you’re trying to study.
   You say:

5 Brian has been wearing the same clothes for years. You think he needs some new clothes.
   You say to Brian:

For the following situations, write sentences with I wish ... wouldn’t ...

6 Your friend drives very fast. You don’t like this.
   You say to your friend: I wish you

7 Joe leaves the door open all the time. This annoys you.
   You say to Joe:

8 A lot of people drop litter in the street. You don’t like this.
   You say: I wish people

41.3 Are these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1 I wish Sarah would be here now.
2 I wish you would listen to me.
3 I wish I would have more free time.
4 I wish our flat would be a bit bigger.
5 I wish the weather would change.
6 I wish you wouldn’t complain all the time.
7 I wish everything wouldn’t be so expensive.

I wish Sarah were here now.

41.4 Put the verb into the correct form.

1 It was a stupid thing to say. I wish I __________ it. (I / not / say)
2 I’m fed up with this rain. I wish __________. (it / stop)
3 It’s a difficult question. I wish __________ the answer. (I / know)
4 I should have listened to you. I wish __________ your advice. (I / take)
5 You’re lucky to be going away. I wish __________ with you. (I / can / come)
6 I have no energy at the moment. I wish __________ so tired. (I / not / be)
7 Aren’t they ready yet? I wish __________ up. (they / hurry)
8 It would be nice to stay here longer. I wish __________ to leave now.
   (we / not / have)
9 When we were in London last year, we didn’t have time to see all the things we wanted to see.
   I wish __________ longer. (we / can / stay)
10 It’s freezing today. I wish __________ so cold. I hate cold weather. (it / not / be)
11 Joe still doesn’t know what he wants to do. I wish __________. (he / decide)
12 I really didn’t enjoy the party. I wish __________. (we / not / go)
Passive 1 (is done / was done)

Study this example:

This house was built in 1935.

Was built is passive.

Compare active and passive:

Somebody built this house in 1935. (active)

This house was built in 1935. (passive)

When we use an active verb, we say what the subject does:

□ My grandfather was a builder. He built this house in 1935.
□ It's a big company. It employs two hundred people.

When we use a passive verb, we say what happens to the subject:

□ This house is quite old. It was built in 1935.
□ Two hundred people are employed by the company.

When we use the passive, who or what causes the action is often unknown or unimportant:

□ A lot of money was stolen in the robbery. (somebody stole it, but we don’t know who)
□ Is this room cleaned every day? (does somebody clean it? – it’s not important who)

If we want to say who does or what causes the action, we use by ...

□ This house was built by my grandfather.
□ Two hundred people are employed by the company.

The passive is be (is/was etc.) + past participle (done/cleaned/seen etc.):

(be) done  (be) cleaned  (be) damaged  (be) built  (be) seen etc.

For irregular past participles (done/seen/known etc.), see Appendix 1.

Study the active and passive forms of the present simple and past simple:

**Present simple**

active: clean(s) / see(s) etc.  Somebody cleans this room every day.

passive: am/is/are + cleaned/seen etc.  This room is cleaned every day.

□ Many accidents are caused by careless driving.
□ I’m not often invited to parties.
□ How is this word pronounced?

**Past simple**

active: cleaned/saw etc.  Somebody cleaned this room yesterday.

passive: was/were + cleaned/seen etc.  This room was cleaned yesterday.

□ We were woken up by a loud noise during the night.
□ ‘Did you go to the party?’ ‘No, I wasn’t invited.’
□ How much money was stolen in the robbery?
Exercises

42.1 Complete the sentences using one of these verbs in the correct form, present or past:

- cause
- damage
- hold
- invite
- make
- overtake
- show
- surround
- translate
- write

1. Many accidents are caused by dangerous driving.
2. Cheese is produced from milk.
3. The roof of the building was damaged in a storm a few days ago.
4. You were invited to the wedding. Why didn’t you go?
5. A cinema is a place where films are shown.
6. In the United States, elections for president are held every four years.
7. Originally the book was translated into English, and a few years ago it was written in Spanish.
8. Although we were driving quite fast, we were overtaken by a lot of other cars.
9. You can’t see the house from the road. It is surrounded by trees.

42.2 Write questions using the passive. Some are present and some are past.

1. Ask about glass. (how / make?) How is glass made?
2. Ask about television. (when / invent?) When was television invented?
3. Ask about mountains. (how / form?) How did mountains form?
4. Ask about Pluto (the planet). (when / discover?) When was Pluto discovered?
5. Ask about silver. (what / use for?) What is silver used for?

42.3 Put the verb into the correct form, present simple or past simple, active or passive.

1. It’s a big factory. Five hundred people are employed (employ) there.
2. Did somebody clean (somebody / clean) this room yesterday?
3. Water covers (cover) most of the earth’s surface.
4. How much of the earth’s surface is covered (cover) by water?
5. The park gates are locked (lock) at 6.30 p.m. every evening.
6. The letter was posted (post) a week ago and it arrived (arrive) yesterday.
7. The boat hit a rock and sank (sink) quickly. Fortunately everybody was rescued.
8. Richard’s parents died (die) when he was very young. He and his sister were brought up (bring up) by their grandparents.
9. I was born in London, but I grew up (grow up) in Canada.
10. While I was on holiday, my camera was stolen (steal) from my hotel room.
11. While I was on holiday, my camera disappeared (disappear) from my hotel room.
12. Why did Sue resign (Sue / resign) from her job? Didn’t she enjoy it?
13. Why did Bill sack (Bill / sack) from his job? What did he do wrong?
14. The company is not independent. It is owned (own) by a much larger company.
15. I saw an accident last night. Somebody called (call) an ambulance but nobody was injured (injure), so the ambulance wasn’t needed (not / need).
16. Where were these photographs taken (you / take)? In London?
17. Sometimes it’s quite noisy living here, but it’s not a problem for me – I’m not bothered (not / bother) by it.

42.4 Rewrite these sentences. Instead of using somebody, they, people etc., write a passive sentence.

1. Somebody cleans the room every day. The room is cleaned every day.
2. They cancelled all flights because of fog. All flights were cancelled because of fog.
3. People don’t use this road much. This road is not used much.
4. Somebody accused me of stealing money. I was accused of stealing money.
5. How do people learn languages? How do languages learn people?
6. Somebody warned us not to go out alone. We were warned not to go out alone.
Passive 2 (be done / been done / being done)

Study the following active and passive forms:

**Infinitive**

**active:** (to) do/clean/see etc.  
Somebody will clean **the room** later.

**passive:** (to) be + done/cleaned/seen etc.  
**The room** will be cleaned later.

- The situation is serious. Something must be done before it’s too late.
- A mystery is something that can’t be explained.
- The music was very loud and could be heard from a long way away.
- A new supermarket is going to be built next year.
- Please go away. I want to be left alone.

**Perfect infinitive**

**active:** (to) have + done/cleaned/seen etc.  
Somebody should have cleaned **the room**.

**passive:** (to) have been + done/cleaned/seen etc.  
**The room** should have been cleaned.

- I haven’t received the letter yet. It might have been sent to the wrong address.
- If you hadn’t left the car unlocked, it wouldn’t have been stolen.
- There were some problems at first, but they seem to have been solved.

**Present perfect**

**active:** have/has + done etc.  
The room looks nice. Somebody has cleaned **it**.

**passive:** have/has been + done etc.  
The room looks nice. **It** has been cleaned.

- Have you heard? The concert has been cancelled.
- Have you ever been bitten by a dog?
- ‘Are you going to the party?’ ‘No, I haven’t been invited.’

**Past perfect**

**active:** had + done etc.  
The room looked nice. Somebody had cleaned **it**.

**passive:** had been + done etc.  
The room looked nice. **It** had been cleaned.

- The vegetables didn’t taste very good. They had been cooked too long.
- The car was three years old but hadn’t been used very much.

**Present continuous**

**active:** am/is/are + (do)ing  
Somebody is cleaning **the room** at the moment.

**passive:** am/is/are + being (done)  
**The room** is being cleaned at the moment.

- There’s somebody walking behind us. I think we are being followed.
- (in a shop) ‘Can I help you?’ ‘No, thank you. I’m being served.’

**Past continuous**

**active:** was/were + (do)ing  
Somebody was cleaning **the room** when I arrived.

**passive:** was/were + being (done)  
**The room** was being cleaned when I arrived.

- There was somebody walking behind us. We were being followed.

Passive 1, 3 → Units 42, 44
43.1 What do these words mean? Use it can ... or it can't ... . Use a dictionary if necessary.

If something is
1 washable, it can be washed . 4 unusable, ____________________________ .
2 unbreakable, it ____________________________ . 5 invisible, ____________________________ .
3 edible, ____________________________ . 6 portable, ____________________________ .

43.2 Complete these sentences with the following verbs (in the correct form):

arrest carry cause do make repair send spend wake up

Sometimes you need have (might have, should have etc.).

1 The situation is serious. Something must be done before it's too late.
2 I haven't received the letter. It might have been sent to the wrong address.
3 A decision will ____________________________ until the next meeting.
4 Do you think that more money should ____________________________ on education?
5 This road is in very bad condition. It should ____________________________ a long time ago.
6 The injured man couldn't walk and had to ____________________________ .
7 It's not certain how the fire started, but it might ____________________________ by an electrical fault.
8 I told the hotel receptionist I wanted to ____________________________ at 6.30 the next morning.
9 If you hadn't pushed the policeman, you wouldn't ____________________________ .

43.3 Rewrite these sentences. Instead of using somebody or they etc., write a passive sentence.

1 Somebody has cleaned the room. The room has been cleaned.
2 They have postponed the meeting. The ____________________________ .
3 Somebody is using the computer at the moment.
   The computer ____________________________ .
4 I didn't realise that somebody was recording our conversation.
   I didn't realise that ____________________________ .
5 When we got to the stadium, we found that they had cancelled the game.
   When we got to the stadium, we found that ____________________________ .
6 They are building a new ring road round the city.
   ____________________________ .
7 They have built a new hospital near the airport.
   ____________________________ .

43.4 Make sentences from the words in brackets. Sometimes the verb is active, sometimes passive.

1 There's somebody behind us. (I think / we / follow) I think we're being followed.
2 This room looks different. (you / paint / the walls?) Have you painted the walls?
3 My car has disappeared. (it / steal!) It ____________________________ .
4 My umbrella has disappeared. (somebody / take) Somebody ____________________________ .
5 Sam gets a higher salary now. (he / promote) He ____________________________ .
6 Ann can't use her office at the moment. (it / redecorate) It ____________________________ .
7 The photocopier broke down yesterday, but now it's OK. (it / work / again; it / repair)
   It ____________________________ .
8 When I went into the room, I saw that the table and chairs were not in the same place.
   (the furniture / move) The ____________________________ .
9 The man next door disappeared six months ago. (he / not / see / since then)
   He ____________________________ .
10 I wonder how Jane is these days. (I / not / see / for ages)
   I ____________________________ .
11 A friend of mine was mugged on his way home a few nights ago. (you / ever / mug?)
   ____________________________ .
Passive 3

A
I was offered ... / we were given ... etc.

Some verbs can have two objects. For example, give:

- Somebody gave the police the information. (= Somebody gave the information to the police)
- The police were given the information. or
  The information was given to the police.

So it is possible to make two passive sentences:

- The police were given the information. or
  The information was given to the police.

Other verbs which can have two objects are:

- ask, offer, pay, show, teach, tell

When we use these verbs in the passive, most often we begin with the person:

- I was offered the job, but I refused it. (= they offered me the job)
- You will be given plenty of time to decide. (= we will give you plenty of time)
- Have you been shown the new machine? (= has anybody shown you?)
- The men were paid £400 to do the work. (= somebody paid the men £400)

I don’t like being ...

The passive of doing/seeing etc. is being done / being seen etc. Compare:

- active: I don’t like people telling me what to do.
- passive: I don’t like being told what to do.

- I remember being taken to the zoo when I was a child.
  (= I remember somebody taking me to the zoo)
- Steve hates being kept waiting. (= he hates people keeping him waiting)
- We managed to climb over the wall without being seen. (= without anybody seeing us)

B
I was born ...

We say 'I was born ...' (not I am born):

- I was born in Chicago.
- Where were you born? (not Where are you born?)

But

- How many babies are born every day? present

C
Get

You can use get instead of be in the passive:

- There was a fight at the party, but nobody got hurt. (= nobody was hurt)
- I don’t often get invited to parties. (= I’m not often invited)
- I’m surprised Liz didn’t get offered the job. (= Liz wasn’t offered the job)

You can use get only when things happen. For example, you cannot use get in the following sentences:

- Jill is liked by everybody. (not gets liked – this is not a ‘happening’)
- He was a mystery man. Very little was known about him. (not got known)

We use get mainly in informal spoken English. You can use be in all situations.

We also use get in the following expressions (which are not passive in meaning):

- get married, get divorced
- get dressed (= put on your clothes)
- get lost (= not know where you are)
- get changed (= change your clothes)
Exercises

44.1 Write these sentences in another way, beginning in the way shown.
1 They didn't give me the information I needed.
   I wasn't given the information I needed.
2 They asked me some difficult questions at the interview.
   I
3 Linda's colleagues gave her a present when she retired.
   Linda
4 Nobody told me about the meeting.
   I wasn't
5 How much will they pay you for your work?
   How much will you
6 I think they should have offered Tom the job.
   I think Tom
7 Has anybody shown you what to do?
   Have you

44.2 Complete the sentences using being + the following (in the correct form):
give invite keep knock down stick treat
1 Steve hates being kept waiting.
2 We went to the party without them.
3 I like giving presents and I also like them.
4 It's a busy road and I don't like crossing it. I'm afraid of crossing it.
5 I'm an adult. I don't like thinking like a child.
6 You can't do anything about being stuck in a traffic jam.

44.3 When were they born? Choose five of these people and write a sentence for each.
   (Two of them were born in the same year.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Year of Birth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Beethoven</td>
<td>1869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galileo</td>
<td>1564</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elvis Presley</td>
<td>1929</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agatha Christie</td>
<td>1904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahatma Gandhi</td>
<td>1869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leonardo da Vinci</td>
<td>1564</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walt Disney</td>
<td>1904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martin Luther King</td>
<td>1929</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>William Shakespeare</td>
<td>1564</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Walt Disney was born in 1904.
2
3
4
5
6
7 And you? I

44.4 Complete the sentences using get/got + the following verbs (in the correct form):
ask damage hurt pay steal sting stop use
1 There was a fight at the party, but nobody got hurt.
2 Alex was stung by a bee while he was sitting in the garden.
3 These tennis courts don't get used very often. Not many people want to play.
4 I used to have a bicycle, but it stopped working a few months ago.
5 Rachel works hard but doesn't pay much.
6 Last night I was stopped by the police as I was driving home. One of the lights on my car wasn't working.
7 Please pack these things very carefully. I don't want them to get damaged.
8 People often want to know what my job is. I often get asked that question.
It is said that ... He is said to ... He is supposed to ...

Study this example situation:

Henry is very old. Nobody knows exactly how old he is, but:

It is said that he is 108 years old.
or He is said to be 108 years old.

Both these sentences mean: ‘People say that he is 108 years old.’

You can use these structures with a number of other verbs, especially:

alleged believed considered expected known reported thought understood

Compare the two structures:

☐ Cathy works very hard.
   It is said that she works 16 hours a day. or She is said to work 16 hours a day.
☐ The police are looking for a missing boy.
   It is believed that the boy is wearing a white pullover and blue jeans.
   or The boy is believed to be wearing a white pullover and blue jeans.
☐ The strike started three weeks ago.
   It is expected that it will end soon.
   or The strike is expected to end soon.
☐ A friend of mine has been arrested.
   It is alleged that he hit a policeman.
   or He is alleged to have hit a policeman.
☐ The two houses belong to the same family.
   It is said that there is a secret tunnel between them.
   or There is said to be a secret tunnel between them.

These structures are often used in news reports. For example, in a report about an accident:

☐ It is reported that two people were injured in the explosion.
   or Two people are reported to have been injured in the explosion.

(Be) supposed to

Sometimes (it is) supposed to ... = (it is) said to ... :

☐ I want to see that film. It’s supposed to be good. (= it is said to be good)
☐ Mark is supposed to have hit a policeman, but I don’t believe it.

But sometimes supposed to has a different meaning. We use supposed to to say what is intended, arranged or expected. Often this is different from the real situation:

☐ The plan is supposed to be a secret, but everybody seems to know about it.
   (= the plan is intended to be a secret)
☐ What are you doing at work? You’re supposed to be on holiday.
   (= you arranged to be on holiday)
☐ Our guests were supposed to come at 7.30, but they were late.
☐ Jane was supposed to phone me last night, but she didn’t.
☐ I’d better hurry. I’m supposed to be meeting Chris in ten minutes.

You’re not supposed to do something = it is not allowed or advisable:

☐ You’re not supposed to park your car here. It’s private parking only.
☐ Jeff is much better after his illness, but he’s still not supposed to do any heavy work.
Exercises

45.1 Write these sentences in another way, beginning as shown. Use the underlined word each time.

1. It is expected that the strike will end soon. The strike is expected to end soon.
2. It is expected that the weather will be good tomorrow.
   The weather is expected to be good tomorrow.
3. It is believed that the thieves got in through a window in the roof.
   The thieves are believed to have got in through a window in the roof.
4. It is reported that many people are homeless after the floods.
   Many people are reported to be homeless after the floods.
5. It is thought that the prisoner escaped by climbing over a wall.
   The prisoner is thought to have escaped by climbing over a wall.
6. It is alleged that the man was driving at 110 miles an hour.
   The man is alleged to have been driving at 110 miles an hour.
7. It is reported that the building has been badly damaged by the fire.
   The building is reported to have been badly damaged by the fire.

8. a. It is said that the company is losing a lot of money.
   The company is said to be losing a lot of money.
   b. It is believed that the company lost a lot of money last year.
   The company is believed to have lost a lot of money last year.
   c. It is expected that the company will make a loss this year.
   The company is expected to make a loss this year.

45.2 There are a lot of rumours about Alan. Here are some of the things people say about him:

1. Alan speaks ten languages.
2. He knows a lot of famous people.
3. He is very rich.
4. He has twelve children.
5. He was an actor when he was younger.

Nobody is sure whether these things are true. Write sentences about Alan using supposed to.

1. Alan is supposed to speak ten languages.
2. He is supposed to know a lot of famous people.
3. He is supposed to be very rich.
4. He is supposed to have twelve children.
5. He is supposed to have been an actor when he was younger.

45.3 Complete the sentences using supposed to be + the following:

on a diet a flower my friend a joke a secret working

1. Everybody seems to know about the plan, but it is supposed to be a secret.
2. You shouldn’t criticise me all the time. You are supposed to criticise me all the time.
3. I shouldn’t be eating this cake really. I am supposed to be eating this cake.
4. I’m sorry for what I said. I was trying to be funny. It was supposed to be funny.
5. What’s this drawing? Is it a tree? Or maybe it is supposed to be a tree.
6. You shouldn’t be reading the paper now. You are supposed to be working.

45.4 Write sentences with supposed to + the following verbs:

arrive block park phone start

Use the negative (not supposed to) where necessary.

1. You’re not supposed to park here. It’s private parking only.
2. We are supposed to work at 8.15, but we rarely do anything before 8.30.
3. Oh, I forgot. I forgot to phone Helen, but I completely forgot.
4. This door is a fire exit. You’re not supposed to open it.
5. My train is supposed to arrive at 11.30, but it was an hour late.
Have something done

Study this example situation:

The roof of Lisa’s house was damaged in a storm. Yesterday a workman came and repaired it.

Lisa had the roof repaired yesterday.

This means: Lisa arranged for somebody else to repair the roof. She didn’t repair it herself.

We use have something done to say that we arrange for somebody else to do something for us. Compare:

- Lisa repaired the roof. (= she repaired it herself)
- Lisa had the roof repaired. (= she arranged for somebody else to repair it)
- ‘Did you make those curtains yourself?’ ‘Yes, I enjoy making things.’
- ‘Did you have those curtains made?’ ‘No, I made them myself.’

Be careful with word order. The past participle (repaired/cut etc.) is after the object:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have</th>
<th>object</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lisa had the roof repaired yesterday.</td>
<td>repaired</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where did you have cut?</td>
<td>cut?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Your hair looks nice. Have you had cut it?</td>
<td>cut?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our neighbour has just had a garage built.</td>
<td>built.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We are having the house painted at the moment.</td>
<td>painted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How often do you have your car serviced?</td>
<td>serviced?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think you should have your car cleaned.</td>
<td>cleaned.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t like having my photograph taken.</td>
<td>taken.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Get something done

You can also say ‘get something done’ instead of ‘have something done’ (mainly in informal spoken English):

- When are you going to get the roof repaired? (= have the roof repaired)
- I think you should get your hair cut really short.

Sometimes have something done has a different meaning. For example:

- Paul and Karen had all their money stolen while they were on holiday.
  This does not mean that they arranged for somebody to steal their money. ‘They had all their money stolen’ means only: ‘All their money was stolen from them’.

With this meaning, we use have something done to say that something happens to somebody or their belongings. Usually what happens is not nice:

- Gary had his nose broken in a fight. (= his nose was broken)
- Have you ever had your passport stolen?
Exercises

46.1 Tick (√) the correct sentence, (a) or (b), for each picture.

1 SARAH
(a) Sarah is cutting her hair.
(b) Sarah is having her hair cut.

2 BILL
(a) Bill is cutting his hair.
(b) Bill is having his hair cut.

3 JOHN
(a) John is cleaning his shoes.
(b) John is having his shoes cleaned.

4 SUE
(a) Sue is taking a photograph.
(b) Sue is having her photograph taken.

46.2 Answer the questions using To have something done. Choose from the boxes:

- my car - my eyes - my jacket - my watch - clean - repair - service - test

1 Why did you go to the garage? To have my car serviced.
2 Why did you go to the cleaner's? To clean my jacket.
3 Why did you go to the jeweller's? To have my watch repaired.
4 Why did you go to the optician's? To have my glasses repaired.

46.3 Write sentences in the way shown.

1 Lisa didn't repair the roof herself. She had it repaired.
2 I didn't cut my hair myself. I had it cut.
3 They didn't paint the house themselves. They had it painted.
4 John didn't build that wall himself. He had it built.
5 I didn't deliver the flowers myself. I had them delivered.

46.4 Use the words in brackets to complete the sentences. Use the structure have something done.

1 We are having the house painted (the house / paint) at the moment.
2 I lost my key. I'll have to make another key / make a new key.
3 When was the last time you cut your hair / cut your hair? (your hair / cut)?
4 I deliver the newspapers (you / a newspaper / deliver) to your house every day, or do you go out and buy one?
5 A: What are those workmen doing in your garden?
   B: Oh, we are building a garage / build.
6 A: Can I see the photographs you took when you were on holiday?
   B: I'm afraid I haven't developed the film / developed it yet.
7 This coat is dirty. I must have it cleaned.
8 If you want to wear earrings, why don't you have your ears pierced (your ears / pierce)?
9 A: I heard your computer wasn't working.
   B: That's right, but it's OK now. I've repaired it / repaired it.

In these items, use 'have something done' with its second meaning (see Section D).

10 Gary was in a fight last night. He had his nose broken (his nose / break).
11 Did I tell you about Jane? She broke her handbag / steal last week.
12 Did you hear about Pete? He vandalised his car / vandalise a few nights ago.
Reported speech 1 (He said that ...)

Study this example situation:

```
I'm feeling ill.
```

Paul said, ‘I am feeling ill.’

Compare:

- **direct**
  - Paul said, ‘I am feeling ill.’

- **reported**
  - Paul said that *he* was feeling ill.

You want to tell somebody what Paul said. There are two ways of doing this:
- You can repeat Paul’s words *(direct speech)*:
  - Paul said, ‘I’m feeling ill.’
- Or you can use **reported speech**:
  - Paul said that *he* was feeling ill.

In writing we use these quotation marks to show direct speech.

When we use reported speech, the main verb of the sentence is usually past (Paul said that ... / I told her that ... etc.). The rest of the sentence is usually past too:

- □ Paul said that he was feeling ill.
- □ I told Lisa that I didn’t have any money.

You can leave out that. So you can say:

- □ Paul said that he was feeling ill. or □ Paul said he was feeling ill.

In general, the **present** form in direct speech changes to the **past** form in reported speech:

- *am/is* → *was*  
- *do/does* → *did*  
- *will* → *would*  
- *are* → *were*  
- *have/has* → *had*  
- *can* → *could*  
- *want/like/know/go* etc. → *wanted/liked/knew/went* etc.

Compare direct speech and reported speech:

You met Jenny. Here are some of the things she said in *direct* speech:

- ‘My parents are very well.’
- ‘I’m going to learn to drive.’
- ‘I want to buy a car.’
- ‘John has a new job.’
- ‘I can’t come to the party on Friday.’
- ‘I don’t have much free time.’
- ‘I’m going away for a few days. I’ll phone you when I get back.’

Later you tell somebody what Jenny said. You use **reported** speech:

- □ Jenny said that her parents were very well.
- □ She said that she was going to learn to drive.
- □ She said that she wanted to buy a car.
- □ She said that John had a new job.
- □ She said that she couldn’t come to the party on Friday.
- □ She said she didn’t have much free time.
- □ She said that she was going away for a few days and would phone me when she got back.

The **past simple** *(did/saw/knew etc.)* can usually stay the same in reported speech, or you can change it to the **past perfect** *(had done / had seen / had known etc.):*

- □ **direct**
  - Paul said: ‘I woke up feeling ill, so I didn’t go to work.’
- □ **reported**
  - Paul said that he woke up feeling ill, so he didn’t go to work.
  - or
  - Paul said that he had woken up feeling ill, so he hadn’t gone to work.
Exercises

47.1 Yesterday you met a friend of yours, Steve. You hadn't seen him for a long time. Here are some of the things Steve said to you:

1. I'm living in London.
2. My father isn't very well.
3. Rachel and Mark are getting married next month.
4. My sister has had a baby.
5. I don't know what Frank is doing.
6. I saw Helen at a party in June and she seemed fine.
7. I haven't seen Diane recently.
8. I'm not enjoying my job very much.
9. You can come and stay at my place if you're ever in London.
10. My car was stolen a few days ago.
11. I want to go on holiday, but I can't afford it.
12. I'll tell Chris I saw you.

Later that day you tell another friend what Steve said. Use reported speech.

1. Steve said that he was living in London.
2. He said that ____________________________
3. He ____________________________
4. ____________________________
5. ____________________________
6. ____________________________
7. ____________________________
8. ____________________________
9. ____________________________
10. ____________________________
11. ____________________________
12. ____________________________

47.2 Somebody says something to you which is the opposite of what they said earlier. Complete the answers.

1. A: That restaurant is expensive.
   B: Is it? I thought you said ____________
2. A: Sue is coming to the party tonight.
   B: Is she? I thought you said she ____________
   B: Does she? Last week you said ____________
   B: Do you? I thought you said ____________
5. A: Jane will be here next week.
   B: Will she? But didn't you say ____________?
6. A: I'm going out this evening.
   B: Are you? But you said ____________
7. A: I can speak a little French.
   B: Can you? But earlier you said ____________
8. A: I haven't been to the cinema for ages.
   B: Haven't you? I thought you said ____________
Reported speech 2

It is not always necessary to change the verb in reported speech. If you report something and the situation hasn't changed, you do not need to change the verb to the past:

- **direct** Paul said, 'My new job is very interesting.'
- **reported** Paul said that his new job is very interesting.
  
  (The situation hasn't changed. His job is still interesting.)

- **direct** Helen said, 'I want to go to New York next year.'
- **reported** Helen told me that she wants to go to New York next year.
  
  (Helen still wants to go to New York next year.)

You can also change the verb to the past:

- Paul said that his new job was very interesting.
- Helen told me that she wanted to go to New York next year.

But if you are reporting a finished situation, you **must** use a past verb:

- Paul left the room suddenly. He said he had to go. (not has to go)

You need to use a past form when there is a difference between what was said and what is really true. For example:

You met Sonia a few days ago.
She said: 'Joe is in hospital.' (direct speech)

Later that day you meet Joe in the street. You say:
'I didn't expect to see you, Joe. Sonia said you were in hospital.'
(not 'Sonia said you are in hospital', because clearly he is not)

Say and tell

If you say who somebody is talking to, use tell:

- **Sonia told me** that you were in hospital. (not Sonia said me)
- **What did you tell the police?** (not say the police)

Otherwise use say:

- Sonia said that you were in hospital. (not Sonia told that ...)
- What did you say?

But you can ‘say something to somebody’:

- Ann said goodbye to me and left. (not Ann said me goodbye)
- What did you say to the police?

Tell/ask somebody to do something

We also use the infinitive (to do / to stay etc.) in reported speech, especially with tell and ask (for orders and requests):

- **direct** 'Stay in bed for a few days,' the doctor said to me.
- **reported** The doctor told me to stay in bed for a few days.

- **direct** 'Don't shout,' I said to Jim.
- **reported** I told Jim not to shout.

- **direct** 'Please don't tell anybody what happened,' Jackie said to me.
- **reported** Jackie asked me not to tell anybody what (had) happened.

You can also say ‘Somebody said (not) to do something’:

- Jackie said not to tell anyone. (but not Jackie said me)
48.1 Here are some things that Sarah said to you:

I've never been to the United States.  I don't have any brothers or sisters.
I can't drive.  I don't like fish.  Jane has a very well-paid job.
I'm working tomorrow evening.  Jane is a friend of mine.  Dave is lazy.

But later Sarah says something different to you. What do you say?

Sarah

1. Dave works very hard.
2. Let's have fish for dinner.
3. I'm going to buy a car.
4. Jane is always short of money.
6. I think New York is a great place.
7. Let's go out tomorrow evening.
8. I've never spoken to Jane.

But you said he was lazy.

You

48.2 Complete the sentences with say or tell (in the correct form). Use only one word each time.

1. Ann said goodbye to me and left.
2. ___________________ us about your holiday. Did you have a nice time?
3. Don't just stand there! __________________ something!
4. I wonder where Sue is. She __________________ she would be here at 8 o'clock.
5. Dan __________________ me that he was bored with his job.
6. The doctor __________________ that I should rest for at least a week.
7. Don't __________________ anybody what I _____________. It's a secret just between us.
8. 'Did she __________________ you what happened?' 'No, she didn't __________________ anything to me.'
9. Gary couldn't help me. He __________________ me to ask Caroline.
10. Gary couldn't help me. He __________________ to ask Caroline.

48.3 The following sentences are direct speech:

Don't wait for me if I'm late.
Mind your own business.
Don't worry, Sue.
Please slow down!
Can you open your bag, please?
Could you get a newspaper?
Hurry-up!
Will you marry me?
Do you think you could give me a hand, Tom?

Now choose one of these to complete each of the sentences below. Use reported speech.

1. Bill was taking a long time to get ready, so I ____________________ to hurry up.
2. Sarah was driving too fast, so I asked ____________________ .
3. Sue was nervous about the situation. I told ____________________ .
4. I couldn't move the piano alone, so I ____________________ .
5. The customs officer looked at me suspiciously and ____________________ .
6. Tom was going to the shop, so I ____________________ .
7. The man started asking me personal questions, so I ____________________ .
8. John was very much in love with Mary, so he ____________________ .
9. I didn't want to delay Helen, so I ____________________ .
Questions 1

In questions we usually put the subject after the first verb:

- **subject + verb**
- **verb + subject**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tom</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>Will Tom be here tomorrow?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>Have you been working hard?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the house</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>When was the house built?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember that the subject comes after the first verb:

- Is Catherine working today? (*not* is working Catherine)

In **present simple** questions, we use do/does:

- You live → do you live?
- The film begins → does the film begin?

- Do you live near here?
- What time does the film begin?

In **past simple** questions, we use did:

- You sold → did you sell?
- The train stopped → did the train stop?

- Did you sell your car?
- Why did the train stop?

But do not use do/does/did if who/what etc. is the subject of the sentence. Compare:

- **who object**
  - Emma telephoned somebody.
  - Who did Emma telephone?
  - Somebody telephoned Emma.

- **who subject**
  - Who telephoned Emma?

In these examples, who/what etc. is the **subject**:

- Who wants something to eat? (*not* Who does want)
- What happened to you last night? (*not* What did happen)
- How many people came to the meeting? (*not* did come)
- Which bus goes to the centre? (*not* does go)

Note the position of prepositions in questions beginning Who/What/Which/Where ... ?:

- Who do you want to speak to?
- What was the weather like yesterday?
- Which job has Ann applied for?
- Where are you from?

You can use **preposition + whom** in formal style:

- To whom do you wish to speak?

Isn't it ... ? / Didn't you ... ? etc. (negative questions)

We use negative questions especially to show surprise:

- Didn't you hear the doorbell? I rang it three times.

or when we expect the listener to agree with us:

- 'Haven't we met somewhere before?' 'Yes, I think we have.'

Note the meaning of yes and no in answers to negative questions:

- Don't you want to go to the party?
  - Yes. (= Yes, I want to go)
  - No. (= No, I don't want to go)

Note the word order in negative questions beginning Why ... ?:

- Why don't we go out for a meal tonight? (*not* Why we don't go)
- Why wasn't Mary at work yesterday? (*not* Why Mary wasn't)
**Exercises**

### 49.1 Ask Joe questions. (Look at his answers before you write the questions.)

1. Where do you live?  ____________
   - In Manchester.
2. Born there? ____________
   - No, I was born in London.
3. Married? ____________
   - Yes.
4. How long married? ____________
   - 17 years.
5. Children? ____________
   - Yes, two boys.
6. How old they? ____________
   - 12 and 15.
7. What do? ____________
   - I'm a journalist.
8. What wife do? ____________
   - She's a doctor.

### 49.2 Make questions with who or what.

1. Somebody hit me. ____________
   - Who hit you?
2. I hit somebody. ____________
   - Who did you hit?
3. Somebody paid the bill. ____________
4. Something happened. ____________
5. Diane said something. ____________
6. This book belongs to somebody. ____________
7. Somebody lives in that house. ____________
8. I fell over something. ____________
9. Something fell on the floor. ____________
10. This word means something. ____________
11. I borrowed the money from somebody. ____________
12. I'm worried about something. ____________

### 49.3 Put the words in brackets in the correct order. All the sentences are questions.

1. (when / was / built / this house) ____________
   - When was this house built?
2. (how / cheese / is / made) ____________
3. (when / invented / the computer / was) ____________
4. (why / Sue / working / isn't / today) ____________
5. (what time / coming / your friends / are) ____________
6. (why / was / cancelled / the concert) ____________
7. (where / your mother / was / born) ____________
8. (why / you / to the party / didn't / come) ____________
9. (how / the accident / did / happen) ____________
10. (why / this machine / doesn't / work) ____________

### 49.4 Write negative questions from the words in brackets. In each situation you are surprised.

1. A: We won't see Liz this evening.  ____________
   - Isn't she coming to the party?
2. A: I hope we don't meet David tonight.  ____________
3. A: Don't go and see that film.  ____________
4. A: I'll have to borrow some money.  ____________
   - Why? (you / not / have / any?)
Questions 2 (Do you know where ... ? / He asked me where ...)

A

Do you know where ... ? / I don't know why ... / Could you tell me what ... ? etc.

We say:

Where has Tom gone?

but Do you know where Tom has gone? (not Do you know where has Tom gone?)

When the question (Where has Tom gone?) is part of a longer sentence (Do you know ... ? / I don't know ... / Can you tell me ... ? etc.), the word order changes. We say:

- What time is it? but Do you know what time it is?
- Who are those people? I don't know who those people are.
- Where can I find Linda? Can you tell me where I can find Linda?
- How much will it cost? Do you have any idea how much it will cost?

Be careful with do/does/did questions. We say:

- What time does the film begin? but Do you know what time the film begins?
  (not does the film begin)
- What do you mean? Please explain what you mean.
- Why did she leave early? I wonder why she left early.

Use if or whether where there is no other question word (what, why etc.):

- Did anybody see you? but Do you know if anybody saw you?
  or ... whether anybody saw you?

B

He asked me where ... (reported questions)

The same changes in word order happen in reported questions. Compare:

- direct The police officer said to us, 'Where are you going?'
- reported The police officer asked us where we were going.

- direct Clare said, 'What time do the banks close?'
- reported Clare wanted to know what time the banks closed.

In reported speech the verb usually changes to the past (were, closed etc.). See Unit 47.

Study these examples. You had an interview for a job and these were some of the questions the interviewer asked you:

Are you willing to travel? Why did you apply for the job?

What do you do in your spare time? Can you speak any foreign languages?

How long have you been working in your present job? Do you have a driving licence?

Later you tell a friend what the interviewer asked you. You use reported speech:

- She asked if (or whether) I was willing to travel.
- She wanted to know what I did in my spare time.
- She asked how long I had been working in my present job.
- She asked why I had applied for the job. (or ... why I applied)
- She wanted to know if (or whether) I could speak any foreign languages.
- She asked if (or whether) I had a driving licence.

Reported speech → Units 47–48
Exercises

50.1 Make a new sentence from the question in brackets.

1 (Where has Tom gone?) Do you know where Tom has gone?
2 (Where is the post office?) Could you tell me where
3 (What’s the time?) I wonder
4 (What does this word mean?) I want to know
5 (What time did they leave?) Do you know
6 (Is Sue going out tonight?) I don’t know
7 (Where does Caroline live?) Do you have any idea
8 (Where did I park the car?) I can’t remember
9 (Is there a bank near here?) Can you tell me
10 (What do you want?) Tell me
11 (Why didn’t Kate come to the party?) I don’t know
12 (How much does it cost to park here?) Do you know
13 (Who is that woman?) I have no idea
14 (Did Liz get my letter?) Do you know
15 (How far is it to the airport?) Can you tell me

50.2 You are making a phone call. You want to speak to Sue, but she isn’t there. Somebody else answers the phone. You want to know three things: (1) Where has she gone? (2) When will she be back? and (3) Did she go out alone?

Complete the conversation:

A: Do you know where ? (1)
B: Sorry, I’ve got no idea.
A: Never mind. I don’t suppose you know . (2)
B: No, I’m afraid not.
A: One more thing. Do you happen to know ? (3)
B: I’m afraid I didn’t see her go out.
A: OK. Well, thank you anyway. Goodbye.

50.3 You have been away for a while and have just come back to your home town. You meet Tony, a friend of yours. He asks you a lot of questions:

1 How are you?
2 Where have you been?
3 How long have you been back?
4 What are you doing now?
5 Why did you come back?
6 Where are you living?
7 Are you glad to be back?
8 Do you have any plans to go away again?
9 Can you lend me some money?

Now you tell another friend what Tony asked you. Use reported speech.

1 He asked me how I was.
2 He asked me
3 He
4
5
6
7
8
9

→ Additional exercise 25 (page 316)
Auxiliary verbs (have/do/can etc.)
I think so / I hope so etc.

In each of these sentences there is an auxiliary verb and a main verb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have</th>
<th>She can't</th>
<th>lost</th>
<th>my keys.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>to the party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The hotel</td>
<td>do you</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>ten years ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>live?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In these examples have/can't/was/do are auxiliary (= helping) verbs.

You can use an auxiliary verb when you don't want to repeat something:
- 'Have you locked the door?' 'Yes, I have.' (= I have locked the door)
- George wasn't working, but Janet was. (= Janet was working)
- She could lend me the money, but she won't. (= she won't lend me the money)

Use do/does/did for the present and past simple:
- 'Do you like onions?' 'Yes, I do.' (= I like onions)
- 'Does Simon live in London?' 'He did, but he doesn't any more.'

You can use auxiliary verbs to deny what somebody says (= say it is not true):
- 'You're sitting in my place.' 'No, I'm not.' (= I'm not sitting in your place)
- 'You didn't lock the door before you left.' 'Yes, I did.' (= I locked the door)

We use have you? / isn't she? / do they? etc. to show interest in what somebody has said or to show surprise:
- 'I've just seen Simon.' 'Oh, have you? How is he?'
- 'Liz isn't very well today.' 'Oh, isn't she? What's wrong with her?'
- 'It rained every day during our holiday.' 'Did it? What a pity!'
- 'Jim and Nora are getting married.' 'Are they? Really?'

We use auxiliary verbs with so and neither:
- 'I'm feeling tired.' 'So am I.' (= I'm feeling tired too)
- 'I never read newspapers.' 'Neither do I.' (= I never read newspapers either)
- Sue hasn't got a car and neither has Martin.

Note the word order after so and neither (verb before subject):
- I passed the exam and so did Paul. (not so Paul did)

Instead of neither, you can use nor. You can also use not ... either:
- 'I don't know.' 'Neither do I.' or 'Nor do I.' or 'I don't either.'

I think so / I hope so etc.

After some verbs you can use so when you don't want to repeat something:
- 'Are those people English?' 'I think so.' (= I think they are English)
- 'Will you be at home this evening?' 'I expect so. (= I expect I'll be at home ...)
- 'Do you think Kate has been invited to the party?' 'I suppose so.'

In the same way we say: I hope so, I guess so and I'm afraid so.

The usual negative forms are:

I think so / I expect so  →  I don't think so / I don't expect so
I hope so / I'm afraid so / I guess so  →  I hope not / I'm afraid not / I guess not
I suppose so  →  I don't suppose so or I suppose not

- 'Is that woman American?' 'I think so. / I don't think so.'
- 'Do you think it will rain?' 'I hope so. / I hope not.' (not I don't hope so)
Exercises

Unit 51

51.1 Complete each sentence with an auxiliary verb (do/was/could etc.). Sometimes the verb must be negative (don't/wasn't etc.).

1. I wasn't tired, but my friends ... were ...
2. I like hot weather, but Ann ... ... ...
3. 'Is Colin here?' 'He ... ... five minutes ago, but I think he's gone home now.'
4. Liz said she might phone later this evening, but I don't think she ... ... ...
5. 'Are you and Chris coming to the party?' 'I ... ... , but Chris ... ... .'
6. I don't know whether to apply for the job or not. Do you think I ... ... ?
7. 'Please don't tell anybody what I said.' 'Don't worry. I ... ... .'
8. 'You never listen to me.' 'Yes, I ... ... !'
9. 'Can you play a musical instrument?' 'No, but I wish I ... ... .'
10. 'Please help me.' 'I'm sorry. I ... ... if I ... ... , but I ... ... .'

51.2 You never agree with Sue. Answer in the way shown.

1. I'm hungry. Are you? I'm not. ... ... ...
2. I'm not tired. Aren't you? I am. ... ... ...
3. I like football. ... ... ...
4. I didn't enjoy the film. ... ... ...
5. I've never been to Australia. ... ... ...
6. I thought the exam was easy. ... ... ...

51.3 You are talking to Tina. If you're in the same position as Tina, reply with So ... or Neither ... as in the first example. Otherwise, ask questions as in the second example.

1. I'm feeling tired. So am I. ... ... ...
2. I work hard. Do you? What do you do? ... ... ...
3. I watched television last night. ... ... ...
4. I won't be at home tomorrow. ... ... ...
5. I like reading. I read a lot. ... ... ...
6. I'd like to live somewhere else. ... ... ...
7. I can't go out tonight. ... ... ...

51.4 In these conversations, you are B. Read the information in brackets and then answer with I think so, I hope not etc.

1. (You don't like rain.)
   A: Do you think it will rain? B: (hope) ... ... ...
2. (You need more money quickly.)
   A: Do you think you'll get a pay rise soon? B: (hope) ... ... ...
3. (You think Diane will probably get the job that she applied for.)
   A: Do you think Diane will get the job? B: (expect) ... ... ...
4. (You're not sure whether Barbara is married - probably not.)
   A: Is Barbara married? B: (think) ... ... ...
5. (You are the receptionist at a hotel. The hotel is full.)
   A: Have you got a room for tonight? B: (afraid) ... ... ...
6. (You're at a party. You have to leave early.)
   A: Do you have to leave already? B: (afraid) ... ... ...
7. (Ann normally works every day, Monday to Friday. Tomorrow is Wednesday.)
   A: Is Ann working tomorrow? B: (suppose) ... ... ...
8. (You are going to a party. You can't stand John.)
   A: Do you think John will be at the party? B: (hope) ... ... ...
9. (You're not sure what time the concert is - probably 7.30.)
   A: Is the concert at 7.30? B: (think) ... ... ...

103
Question tags (do you? isn't it? etc.)

Study these examples:

- Have you? and wasn't it? are question tags (= mini-questions that we often put on the end of a sentence in spoken English). In question tags, we use an auxiliary verb (have/was/will etc.).
- We use do/does/did for the present and past simple (see Unit 51):
  - 'Karen plays the piano, doesn't she?'  ‘Well, yes, but not very well.’
  - 'You didn't lock the door, did you?'  ‘No, I forgot.’

Normally we use a negative question tag after a positive sentence:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive sentence + Negative tag</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kate will be here soon, won't she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There was a lot of traffic, wasn't there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Michael should pass the exam, shouldn't he?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

... and a positive question tag after a negative sentence:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Negative sentence + Positive tag</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kate won't be late, will she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They don't like us, do they?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You haven't got a car, have you?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice the meaning of yes and no in answer to a negative sentence:

- You're not going out today, are you?  Yes. (= Yes, I am going out)
- No. (= No, I am not going out)

The meaning of a question tag depends on how you say it. If your voice goes down, you are not really asking a question; you are only inviting the listener to agree with you:

- 'It's a nice day, isn't it?’  ‘Yes, beautiful.’
- 'Tim doesn't look well today, does he?’  ‘No, he looks very tired.’
- She's very funny. She's got a great sense of humour, hasn't she?

But if the voice goes up, it is a real question:

- 'You haven't seen Lisa today, have you?'  ‘No, I'm afraid I haven't.’
- (= Have you by chance seen Lisa today?)

You can use a negative sentence + positive tag to ask for things or information, or to ask somebody to do something. The voice goes up at the end of the tag in sentences like these:

- 'You haven't got a pen, have you?’  ‘Yes, here you are.’
- 'You couldn't do me a favour, could you?'  ‘It depends what it is.’
- 'You don't know where Karen is, do you?’  ‘Sorry, I have no idea.’

After Let's ... the question tag is shall we:

- Let's go for a walk, shall we?  (the voice goes up)

After Don't ... , the question tag is will you:

- Don't be late, will you?  (the voice goes down)

After I'm ... , the negative question tag is aren't I? (= am I not?):

- I'm right, aren't I?’  ‘Yes, you are.’

Auxiliary verbs (have/do/can etc.) → Unit 51
52.1 Put a question tag on the end of these sentences.

1. Kate won't be late, __________ will she?  
2. You're tired, __________ aren't you?  
3. You've got a camera, __________ you?  
4. You weren't listening, __________ were you?  
5. Sue doesn't know Ann, __________ she?  
6. Jack's on holiday, __________ he?  
7. Kate's applied for the job, __________ she?  
8. You can speak German, __________ you?  
9. He won't mind if I use his phone, __________ he?  
10. There are a lot of people here, __________ there?  
11. Let's go out tonight, __________ we?  
12. This isn't very interesting, __________ it?  
13. I'm too impatient, __________ I?  
14. You wouldn't tell anyone, __________ you?  
15. Helen has lived here a long time, __________ has she?  
16. I shouldn't have lost my temper, __________ I?  
17. He'd never met her before, __________ he?  
18. Don't drop that vase, __________ you?  

No, she's never late.  
Yes, a little.  
Yes, I've got two actually.  
Yes, I was!  
No, they've never met.  
Yes, he's in Portugal.  
Yes, but she won't get it.  
Yes, but not very fluently.  
No, of course he won't.  
Yes, more than I expected.  
Yes, that would be great.  
No, not very.  
Yes, you are sometimes.  
No, of course not.  
Yes, 20 years.  
No, but never mind.  
No, that was the first time.  
No, don't worry.

52.2 Read the situation and write a sentence with a question tag. In each situation you are asking your friend to agree with you.

1. You look out of the window. The sky is blue and the sun is shining. What do you say to your friend? (nice day) __________ it's a nice day, isn't it?  
2. You're with a friend outside a restaurant. You're looking at the prices, which are very high. What do you say? (expensive) __________ It  
3. You and a colleague have just finished a training course. You really enjoyed it. What do you say to your colleague? (great) __________ The course  
4. Your friend's hair is much shorter than when you last met. What do you say to her/him? (have / your hair / cut) __________ You  
5. You and a friend are listening to a woman singing. You like her voice very much. What do you say to your friend? (a good voice) __________ She  
6. You are trying on a jacket in a shop. You look in the mirror and you don't like what you see. What do you say to your friend? (not / look / very good) __________ It  
7. You and a friend are walking over a small wooden bridge. The bridge is very old and some parts are broken. What do you say? (not / very safe) __________ This bridge

52.3 In these situations you are asking for information, asking people to do things etc.

1. You need a pen. Perhaps Jane has got one. Ask her. __________ Jane, you haven't got a pen, have you?  
2. Joe is just going out. You want him to get some stamps. Ask him. __________ Joe, you  
3. You're looking for Diane. Perhaps Kate knows where she is. Ask her. __________ Kate, you  
4. You need a bicycle pump. Perhaps Helen has got one. Ask her. __________ Helen,  
5. Ann has a car and you need a lift to the station. Perhaps she'll take you. Ask her. __________ Ann,  
6. You're looking for your keys. Perhaps Robert has seen them. Ask him. __________ Robert,
Verb + -ing (enjoy doing / stop doing etc.)

Look at these examples:
- I enjoy reading. (not I enjoy to read)
- Would you mind closing the door? (not mind to close)
- Chris suggested going to the cinema. (not suggested to go)

After enjoy, mind and suggest, we use -ing (not to ...).

Some more verbs that are followed by -ing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stop</th>
<th>Postpone</th>
<th>Admit</th>
<th>Avoid</th>
<th>Imagine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Finish</td>
<td>Consider</td>
<td>Deny</td>
<td>Risk</td>
<td>Fancy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Suddenly everybody stopped talking. There was silence.
- I'll do the shopping when I've finished cleaning the flat.
- He tried to avoid answering my question.
- I don't fancy going out this evening. (= I'm not enthusiastic about it)
- Have you ever considered going to live in another country?

The negative form is not -ing:
- When I'm on holiday, I enjoy not having to get up early.

We also use -ing after:

| Give up (= stop) | Put off (= postpone) | Go on / carry on (= continue) | Keep or keep on (= do something continuously or repeatedly) |

- I've given up reading newspapers. I think it's a waste of time.
- Jenny doesn't want to retire. She wants to go on working. (or ... to carry on working.)
- You keep interrupting when I'm talking! or You keep on interrupting ...

With some verbs you can use the structure verb + somebody + -ing:
- I can't imagine George riding a motorbike.
- You can't stop me doing what I want.
- 'Sorry to keep you waiting so long.' 'That's all right.'

Note the passive form (being done/seen/kept etc.):
- I don't mind being kept waiting. (= I don't mind people keeping me ...)

When you are talking about finished actions, you can say having done/stolen/said etc.:
- They admitted having stolen the money.

But it is not necessary to use having (done). You can also say:
- They admitted stealing the money.
- I now regret saying (or having said) what I said.

For regret, see Unit 56B.

After some of the verbs on this page (especially admit/deny/suggest) you can also use that ... :
- They denied that they had stolen the money. (or They denied stealing ...)
- Sam suggested that we went to the cinema. (or Sam suggested going ...)
Exercises

53.1 Complete each sentence with one of the following verbs (in the correct form):
answer  apply  be  forget  listen  live  lose  make  read  try  use  write

1. He tried to avoid __________ my question.
2. Could you please stop __________ so much noise?
3. I enjoy __________ to music.
4. I considered __________ for the job, but in the end I decided against it.
5. Have you finished __________ the newspaper yet?
6. We need to change our routine. We can't go on __________ like this.
7. I don't mind you __________ the phone as long as you pay for all your calls.
8. My memory is getting worse. I keep __________ things.
9. I've put off __________ the letter so many times. I really must do it today.
10. What a stupid thing to do! Can you imagine anybody __________ so stupid?
11. I've given up __________ to lose weight—it's impossible.
12. If you invest your money on the stock market, you risk __________ it.

53.2 Complete the sentences for each situation using -ing.

1. What shall we do? We could go to the zoo.
   She suggested __________ to the zoo.

2. Do you want to play tennis?
   No, not really.
   He didn't fancy __________.

3. You were driving too fast.
   Yes, it's true. Sorry!
   She admitted __________.

4. Why don't we go for a swim?
   Good idea!
   She suggested __________.

5. You broke the CD player.
   No, I didn't!
   He denied __________.

6. Can you wait a few minutes?
   Sure, no problem.
   They didn't mind __________.

53.3 Complete the sentences so that they mean the same as the first sentence. Use -ing.

1. I can do what I want and you can't stop me.
   You __________ doing what I want.

2. It's not a good idea to travel during the rush hour.
   It's better to avoid __________.

3. Shall we paint the kitchen next weekend instead of this weekend?
   Shall we postpone __________ until __________?

4. Could you turn the radio down, please?
   Would you mind __________?

5. Please don't interrupt me all the time.
   Would you mind __________?

53.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use -ing.

1. She's a very interesting person. I always enjoy __________

2. I'm not feeling very well. I don't fancy __________

3. I'm afraid there aren't any chairs. I hope you don't mind __________

4. It was a beautiful day, so I suggested __________

5. It was very funny. I couldn't stop __________

6. My car isn't very reliable. It keeps __________
Verb + to ... (decide to ... / forget to ... etc.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>offer</th>
<th>decide</th>
<th>hope</th>
<th>deserve</th>
<th>promise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agree</td>
<td>plan</td>
<td>manage</td>
<td>afford</td>
<td>threaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refuse</td>
<td>arrange</td>
<td>fail</td>
<td>forget</td>
<td>learn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After these verbs you can use to ... (infinitive):
- It was late, so we **decided** to take a taxi home.
- Simon was in a difficult situation, so I **agreed** to help him.
- How old were you when you **learnt** to drive? *(or learnt how to drive)*
- I waved to Karen but **failed** to attract her attention.

The negative is not to ... :
- We decided **not** to go out because of the weather.
- I **promised** not to be late.

After some verbs to ... is not possible. For example, enjoy/think/suggest:
- I enjoy reading. *(not enjoy to read)*
- Tom suggested going to the cinema. *(not suggested to go)*
- Are you thinking of buying a car? *(not thinking to buy)*

For verb + -ing, see Unit 53. For verb + preposition + -ing, see Unit 62.

We also use to ... after:

| seem | appear | tend | pretend | claim |

For example:
- They **seem** to have plenty of money.
- I like Dan, but I think he **tends** to talk too much.
- Ann **pretended** not to see me when she passed me in the street.

There is also a continuous infinitive (to be doing) and a perfect infinitive (to have done):
- I pretended to be reading the newspaper. *(= I pretended that I was reading)*
- You **seem** to have lost weight. *(= it seems that you have lost weight)*
- Martin **seems** to be enjoying his new job. *(= it seems that he is enjoying it)*

After dare you can use the infinitive with or without to:
- I wouldn’t dare to tell him. or I wouldn’t dare to tell him.

But after dare not *(or daren’t)*, you must use the infinitive without to:
- I daren’t tell him what happened. *(not I daren’t to tell him)*

After some verbs you can use a question word *(what/whether/how etc.)* + to ... . We use this structure especially after:

| ask | decide | know | remember | forget | explain | learn | understand | wonder |

- We asked **how** to get to the station.
- Have you decided **where** to go for your holidays?
- I don’t know **whether** to apply for the job or not.
- Do you understand **what** to do?

Also show/tell/ask/advise/teach somebody what/how/where to do something:
- Can somebody show me **how** to change the film in this camera?
- Ask Jack. He’ll tell you **what** to do.

Verb + -ing → Unit 53   Verb + object + to ... *(want etc.)* → Unit 55
Verb + to ... and -ing → Units 55C, 56-58
Exercises

54.1 Complete the sentences for these situations.
1. Shall we get married? Yes, let’s.
   They decided to get married.

2. Please help me. OK.
   She agreed.

3. Can I carry your bag for you? No, thanks. I can manage.
   He offered.

4. Let’s meet at 8 o’clock. OK, fine.
   They arranged.

5. What’s your name? I’m not going to tell you.
   She refused.

6. Please don’t tell anyone. I won’t. I promise.
   She promised.

54.2 Complete each sentence with a suitable verb.
1. Don’t forget to post the letter I gave you.
2. There was a lot of traffic, but we managed to get to the airport in time.
3. Jill has decided not to buy a car.
4. We’ve got a new computer in our office. I haven’t learnt it yet.
5. Karen failed to impress the interviewer at the job interview.
6. We were all afraid not to speak. Nobody dared to say anything.

54.3 Put the verb into the correct form, to ... or -ing. (See Unit 53 for verbs + -ing.)
1. When I’m tired, I enjoy watching television. It’s relaxing. (watch)
2. It was a nice day, so we decided to go for a walk. (go)
3. It’s a nice day. Does anyone fancy going for a walk? (go)
4. I’m not in a hurry. I don’t mind waiting. (wait)
5. They don’t have much money. They can’t afford to buy anything. (go)
6. I wish that dog would stop barking. It’s driving me mad. (bark)
7. Our neighbour threatened to call the police if we didn’t stop the noise. (call)
8. We were hungry, so I suggested having dinner early. (have)
9. Hurry up! I don’t want to miss the train. (miss)
10. I’m still looking for a job, but I hope to find something soon. (find)

54.4 Make a new sentence using the verb in brackets.
1. You’ve lost weight. (seem) You seem to have lost weight.
2. Tom is worried about something. (appear) Tom appears worried.
3. You know a lot of people. (seem) You seem to know a lot of people.
4. My English is getting better. (seem) My English seems to be improving.
5. That car has broken down. (appear) That car appears to have broken down.
7. They have solved the problem. (claim) They claim to have solved the problem.

54.5 Complete each sentence using what/how/whether + the following verbs:
   do get go ride say use
1. Do you know how to get to John’s house?
2. Can you show me how to use this washing machine?
3. Would you know if there was a fire in the building?
4. You’ll never forget how to ride a bicycle once you’ve learnt.
5. I was really astonished. I didn’t know what to say.
6. I’ve been invited to the party, but I haven’t decided or not.

→ Additional exercises 26–28 (pages 317–19)
Verb (+ object) + to ...
(I want you to ... etc.)

want  ask  help  would like
expect  beg  mean (= intend)  would prefer

These verbs are followed by to ... (infinitive). The structure can be:

\[ \text{verb + to ...} \quad \text{or} \quad \text{verb + object + to ...} \]

- We expected to be late.
- We expected Dan to be late.
- Would you like to go now?
- Would you like me to go now?
- He doesn't want to know.
- He doesn't want anybody to know.

Do not say 'want that':

- Do you want me to come with you? (not Do you want that I come)

After help you can use the infinitive with or without to. So you can say:

- Can you help me to move this table?  or  Can you help me move this table?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tell  remind  force  encourage  teach  enable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>order  warn  invite  persuade  get (= persuade, arrange for)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These verbs have the structure \[ \text{verb + object + to ...} \] :

- Can you remind me to phone Sam tomorrow?
- Who taught you to drive?
- I didn't move the piano by myself. I got somebody to help me.
- Jim said the switch was dangerous and warned me not to touch it.

In the next example, the verb is passive (I was warned / we were told etc.):

- I was warned not to touch the switch.

You cannot use suggest with the structure \[ \text{verb + object + to ...} \] :

- Jane suggested that I should ask your advice. (not Jane suggested me to ask)

After advise, recommend and allow, two structures are possible. Compare:

\[ \text{verb + -ing (without an object)} \quad \text{verb + object + to ...} \]

- I wouldn't advise/recommend staying in that hotel.
- I wouldn't advise/recommend anybody to stay in that hotel.
- They don't allow parking in front of the building.
- They don't allow people to park in front of the building.

Study these examples with (be) allowed (passive):

- Parking isn't allowed in front of the building.
- You aren't allowed to park in front of the building.

Make and let

These verbs have the structure \[ \text{verb + object + infinitive} \] (without to):

- I made him promise that he wouldn't tell anybody what happened. (not to promise)
- Hot weather makes me feel tired. (= causes me to feel tired)
- Her parents wouldn't let her go out alone. (= wouldn't allow her to go out)
- Let me carry your bag for you.

We say 'make somebody do' (not to do), but the passive is '(be) made to do' (with to):

- We were made to wait for two hours. (= They made us wait ...)

Suggest \(\rightarrow\) Units 34, 53  Tell/ask somebody to ... \(\rightarrow\) Unit 48D  Verb + -ing \(\rightarrow\) Unit 53
Verb + to ... \(\rightarrow\) Unit 54  Verb + to ... and -ing \(\rightarrow\) Units 56–58  Help \(\rightarrow\) Unit 57C
Exercises

Unit 55

55.1 Complete the questions. Use do you want me to ... ? or would you like me to ... ? with these verbs (+ any other necessary words):

- come
- lend
- repeat
- show
- shut
- wait

1. Do you want to go alone, or __________ ?
2. Do you have enough money, or do you want __________ ?
3. Shall I leave the window open, or would you __________ ?
4. Do you know how to use the machine, or would __________ ?
5. Did you hear what I said, or do __________ ?
6. Can I go now, or do __________ ?

55.2 Complete the sentences for these situations.

1. [Image of a person asking to lock the door and another person responding, "OK."]
   She told __________ to lock the door.

2. [Image of a person asking why the other person doesn't want to come and stay with them, and the other person responding, "That would be nice."]
   They invited him __________.

3. [Image of a person asking if they can use the other person's phone, and the other person responding, "No."]
   She wouldn't let __________.

4. [Image of a person telling someone to be careful, and the other person responding, "Don't worry. I will."]
   She warned __________.

5. [Image of a person asking if they can give the other person a hand, and the other person responding, "Sure."]
   He asked __________.

55.3 Complete each second sentence so that the meaning is similar to the first sentence.

1. My father said I could use his car.
   My father allowed __________ to use his car.

2. I was surprised that it rained.
   I didn't expect __________.

3. Don't stop him doing what he wants.
   Let __________.

4. Tim looks older when he wears glasses.
   Tim's glasses make __________.

5. I think you should know the truth.
   I want __________.

6. Don't let me forget to phone my sister.
   Remind __________.

7. At first I didn't want to apply for the job, but Sarah persuaded me.
   Sarah persuaded __________.

8. My lawyer said I shouldn't say anything to the police.
   My lawyer advised __________.

9. I was told that I shouldn't believe everything he says.
   I was warned __________.

10. If you've got a car, you are able to get around more easily.
    Having a car enables __________.

55.4 Put the verb into the correct form: infinitive (do/make/eat etc.), to + infinitive, or -ing.

1. They don't allow people __________ in front of the building. (park)
2. I've never been to Iceland, but I'd like __________ there. (go)
3. I'm in a difficult position. What do you advise me __________? (do)
4. The film was very sad. It made me __________. (cry)
5. Diane's parents always encouraged her __________ hard at school. (study)
6. I don't recommend __________ in that restaurant. The food is terrible. (eat)
7. She said the letter was personal and wouldn't let me __________ it. (read)
8. We are not allowed __________ personal phone calls at work. (make)
9. 'I don't think Alex likes me.' "What makes you __________ that?" (think)

→ Additional exercises 26–28 (pages 317–19)
Verb + -ing or to ... 1
(remember/regret etc.)

Some verbs are followed by -ing and some are followed by to ...

- **Verbs usually followed by -ing:**
  - admit
  - fancy
  - postpone
  - avoid
  - finish
  - consider
  - imagine
  - stop
  - deny
  - keep (on)
  - suggest
  - enjoy
  - mind

For examples, see Unit 53.

- **Verbs usually followed by to:**
  - afford
  - fail
  - offer
  - agree
  - forget
  - plan
  - arrange
  - hope
  - promise
  - decide
  - learn
  - refuse
  - deserve
  - manage
  - threaten

For examples, see Unit 54.

Some verbs can be followed by -ing or to ... with a difference of meaning:

**remember**

I remember doing something = I did it and now I remember this.

You remember doing something **after** you have done it.

- I know I locked the door. I clearly remember locking it.
  
  ( = I locked it, and now I remember this)

- He could remember driving along the road just before the accident, but he couldn't remember the accident itself.

I remembered to do something = I remembered that I had to do it, so I did it.

You remember to do something **before** you do it.

- I remembered to lock the door, but I forgot to shut the windows.
  
  ( = I remembered that I had to lock it, and so I locked it)

- Please remember to post the letter.
  
  ( = don't forget to post it)

**regret**

I regret doing something = I did it and now I'm sorry about it:

- I now regret saying what I said. I shouldn't have said it.
- It began to get cold and he regretted not wearing his coat.

I regret to say / to tell you / to inform you = I'm sorry that I have to say (etc.).

(from a formal letter) We regret to inform you that we cannot offer you the job.

**go on**

Go on doing something = continue with the same thing:

- The president paused for a moment and then went on talking.
- We need to change. We can't go on living like this.

Go on to do something = do or say something new:

- After discussing the economy, the president then went on to talk about foreign policy.

The following verbs can be followed by -ing or to ... :

- begin
- start
- continue
- intend
- bother

So you can say:

- It has started raining. or It has started to rain.
- John intends buying a house. or John intends to buy ...
- Don't bother locking the door. or Don't bother to lock ...

But normally we do not use -ing after -ing:

- It's starting to rain. (not It's starting raining)
Exercises

56.1 Put the verb into the correct form, -ing or to .... Sometimes either form is possible.

1 They denied ______ the money. (steal)
2 I don’t enjoy __________ very much. (drive)
3 I don’t want __________ out tonight. I’m too tired. (go)
4 I can’t afford __________ out tonight. I don’t have enough money. (go)
5 Has it stopped __________ yet? (rain)
6 Our team was unlucky to lose the game. We deserved __________ . (win)
7 Why do you keep __________ me questions? Can’t you leave me alone? (ask)
8 Please stop __________ me questions! (ask)
9 I refuse __________ any more questions. (answer)
10 One of the boys admitted __________ the window. (break)
11 The boy’s father promised __________ for the window to be repaired. (pay)
12 If the company continues __________ money, the factory may be closed. (lose)
13 ‘Does Sarah know about the meeting?’ ‘No, I forgot __________ her.’ (tell)
14 The baby began __________ in the middle of the night. (cry)
15 Julia has been ill, but now she’s beginning __________ better. (get)
16 I’ve enjoyed __________ you. I hope __________ you again soon. (meet, see)

56.2 Here is some information about Tom when he was a child.

1 He was in hospital when he was four. 4 Once he fell into the river.
2 He went to Paris when he was eight. 5 He said he wanted to be a doctor.
3 He cried on his first day at school. 6 Once he was bitten by a dog.

He can still remember 1, 2 and 4. But he can’t remember 3, 5 and 6. Write sentences beginning He can remember ... or He can’t remember ... :

1 He can remember being in hospital when he was four.
2
3
4
5
6

56.3 Complete each sentence with a verb in the correct form, -ing or to ....

1 a Please remember ______ the door when you go out.
   b A: You lent me some money a few months ago.
      B: Did I? Are you sure? I don’t remember _______________ you any money.
   c A: Did you remember _______________ your sister?
      B: Oh no, I completely forgot. I’ll phone her tomorrow.
   d When you see Steve, remember _______________ him my regards.
   e Someone must have taken my bag. I clearly remember _______________ it by the window and now it has gone.

2 a I believe that what I said was fair. I don’t regret _______________ it.
   b I knew they were in trouble, but I regret _______________ I did nothing to help them.

3 a Ben joined the company nine years ago. He became assistant manager after two
   years, and a few years later he went on _______________ manager of the company.
   b I can’t go on _______________ here any more. I want a different job.
   c When I came into the room, Liz was reading a newspaper. She looked up and said hello,
      and then went on _______________ her newspaper.

→ Additional exercises 26–28 (pages 317–19)

113
Verb + -ing or to ... 2 (try/need/help)

A

Try to ... and try -ing

Try to do = attempt to do, make an effort to do:
□ I was very tired. I tried to keep my eyes open, but I couldn’t.
□ Please try to be quiet when you come home. Everyone will be asleep.

Try also means ‘do something as an experiment or test’. For example:
□ These cakes are delicious. You should try one. (= you should have one to see if you like it)
□ We couldn’t find anywhere to stay. We tried every hotel in the town, but they were all full. (= we went to every hotel to see if they had a room)

If try (with this meaning) is followed by a verb, we say try -ing:
□ A: The photocopier doesn’t seem to be working.
□ B: Try pressing the green button.
(= press the green button – perhaps this will help to solve the problem)

Compare:
□ I tried to move the table, but it was too heavy. (so I couldn’t move it)
□ I didn’t like the way the furniture was arranged, so I tried moving the table to the other side of the room. But it still didn’t look right, so I moved it back again.

B

Need to ... and need -ing

I need to do something = it is necessary for me to do it:
□ I need to take more exercise.
□ He needs to work harder if he wants to make progress.
□ I don’t need to come to the meeting, do I?

Something needs doing = it needs to be done:
□ The batteries in the radio need changing.
(= they need to be changed)
□ Do you think my jacket needs cleaning?
(= ... needs to be cleaned)
□ It’s a difficult problem. It needs thinking about very carefully. (= it needs to be thought about)

C

Help and can’t help

You can say help to do or help do (with or without to):
□ Everybody helped to clean up after the party. or
   Everybody helped clean up ...
□ Can you help me to move this table? or
   Can you help me move ...

I can’t help doing something = I can’t stop myself doing it:
□ I don’t like him, but he has a lot of problems. I can’t help feeling sorry for him.
□ She tried to be serious, but she couldn’t help laughing.
(= she couldn’t stop herself laughing)
□ I’m sorry I’m so nervous. I can’t help it.
(= I can’t help being nervous)
Exercises

57.1 Make suggestions. Each time use try + one of the following suggestions:

phone his office  move the aerial  change the batteries
turn it the other way  take an aspirin

1 The radio isn't working. I wonder what's wrong with it.
Have you tried changing the batteries?
2 I can't open the door. The key won't turn.
Try
3 The TV picture isn't very good. What can I do about it?
Have you tried
4 I can't contact Fred. He's not at home. What shall I do?
Why don't you
5 I've got a terrible headache. I wish it would go.
Have you

57.2 For each picture, write a sentence with need(s) + one of the following verbs:
clean  cut  empty  paint  tighten

1 This jacket is dirty. It needs cleaning.
2 The room isn't very nice.
3 The grass is very long. It
4 The screws are loose.
5 The bin is full.

57.3 Put the verb into the correct form.

1 a I was very tired. I tried to keep (keep) my eyes open, but I couldn't.
   b I rang the doorbell, but there was no answer. Then I tried (knock)
      on the door, but there was still no answer.
   c We tried (put) the fire out but without success. We had
      to call the fire brigade.
   d Sue needed to borrow some money. She tried (ask) Gerry,
      but he was short of money, too.
   e I tried (reach) the shelf, but I wasn't tall enough.
   f Please leave me alone. I'm trying (concentrate).

2 a I need a change. I need (go) away for a while.
   b My grandmother isn't able to look after herself any more. She needs
      (look) after.
   c The windows are dirty. They need (clean).
   d Your hair is getting very long. It needs (cut).
   e You don't need (iron) that shirt. It doesn't need

3 a They were talking very loudly. I couldn't help (overhear)
   what they said.
b Can you help me (get) the dinner ready?
   c He looks so funny. Whenever I see him, I can't help (smile).
   d The fine weather helped (make) it a very enjoyable holiday.
Verb + -ing or to ... 3 (like / would like etc.)

A

Like / love / hate

When you talk about repeated actions, you can use -ing or to ... after these verbs.

So you can say:

- Do you like getting up early? or Do you like to get up early?
- Stephanie hates flying. or Stephanie hates to fly.
- I love meeting people. or I love to meet people.
- I don't like being kept waiting. or ... like to be kept waiting.
- I don't like friends calling me at work. or ... friends to call me at work.

but

(1) We use -ing (not to ...) when we talk about a situation that already exists (or existed).

For example:

- Paul lives in Berlin now. He likes living there. (He likes living in Berlin = He lives there and he likes it)
- Do you like being a student? (You are a student – do you like it?)
- The office I worked in was horrible. I hated working there. (I worked there and I hated it)

(2) There is sometimes a difference between I like to do and I like doing:

I like doing something = I do it and I enjoy it:
- I like cleaning the kitchen. (= I enjoy it.)

I like to do something = I think it is a good thing to do, but I don't necessarily enjoy it:
- It's not my favourite job, but I like to clean the kitchen as often as possible.

Note that enjoy and mind are always followed by -ing (not to ...):

- I enjoy cleaning the kitchen. (not I enjoy to clean)
- I don't mind cleaning the kitchen. (not I don't mind to clean)

B

Would like / would love / would hate / would prefer

Would like / would love etc. are usually followed by to ...

- I'd like (= would like) to go away for a few days.
- Would you like to come to dinner on Friday?
- I wouldn't like to go on holiday alone.
- I'd love to meet your family.
- Would you prefer to have dinner now or later?

Compare I like and I would like (I'd like):

- I like playing tennis. / I like to play tennis. (= I like it in general)
- I'd like to play tennis today. (= I want to play today)

Would mind is always followed by -ing (not to ...):

- Would you mind closing the door, please?

C

I would like to have done something = I regret now that I didn't or couldn't do it:

- It's a pity we didn't see Val when we were in London. I would like to have seen her again.
- We'd like to have gone away, but we were too busy at home.

You can use the same structure after would love / would hate / would prefer:

- Poor old David! I would hate to have been in his position.
- I'd love to have gone to the party, but it was impossible.
Exercises

Unit 58

58.1 Write sentences about yourself. Say whether you like or don't like these activities. Choose one of these verbs for each sentence:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>like / don't like</th>
<th>love</th>
<th>hate</th>
<th>enjoy</th>
<th>don't mind</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(fly) I don't like flying. or I don't like to fly.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(play cards)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(be alone)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(go to museums)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(cook)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

58.2 Make sentences from the words in brackets. Use -ing or to ... Sometimes either form is possible.

1. Paul lives in Berlin now. It's nice. He likes it.
   (he / like / live / there) He likes living there.
2. Jane is a biology teacher. She likes her job.
   (she / like / teach / biology) She
3. Joe always carries his camera with him and takes a lot of photographs.
   (he / like / take / photographs)
4. I used to work in a supermarket. I didn't like it much.
   (I / not / like / work / there)
5. Rachel is studying medicine. She likes it.
   (she / like / study / medicine)
6. Dan is famous, but he doesn't like it.
   (he / not / like / be / famous)
7. Jennifer is a very cautious person. She doesn't take many risks.
   (she / not / like / take / risks)
8. I don't like surprises.
   (I / like / know / things / in advance)

58.3 Complete each sentence with a verb in the correct form, -ing or to ... In one sentence either form is possible.

1. It's good to visit other places - I enjoy travelling.
2. 'Would you like to go down?' 'No, thanks. I'll stand.'
3. I'm not quite ready yet. Would you mind travelling a little longer?
4. When I was a child, I hated travelling to bed early.
5. When I have to catch a train, I'm always worried that I'll miss it. So I like travelling to the station in plenty of time.
6. I enjoy travelling busy. I don't like it when there's nothing to do.
7. I would love travelling to your wedding, but I'm afraid it isn't possible.
8. I don't like travelling in this part of town. I want to move somewhere else.
9. Do you have a minute? I'd like travelling to you about something.
10. If there's bad news and good news, I like travelling the bad news first.

58.4 Write sentences using would ... to have (done). Use the verbs in brackets.

1. It's a pity I couldn't go to the wedding. (like) I would like to have gone to the wedding.
2. It's a pity I didn't see the programme. (like)
3. I'm glad I didn't lose my watch. (hate)
4. It's a pity I didn't meet your parents. (love)
5. I'm glad I wasn't alone. (not / like)
6. It's a pity I couldn't travel by train. (prefer)
Prefer and would rather

A Prefer to do and prefer doing

You can use ‘prefer to (do)’ or ‘prefer -ing’ to say what you prefer in general:

- I don’t like cities. I prefer to live in the country. or I prefer living in the country.

Study the differences in structure after prefer. We say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I prefer</th>
<th>to something else.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prefer something</td>
<td>to something else.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doing something</td>
<td>to doing something else.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to do something</td>
<td>rather than (do) something else.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I prefer this coat to the coat you were wearing yesterday.
- I prefer driving to travelling by train.

but
- I prefer to drive rather than travel by train.
- Sarah prefers to live in the country rather than (live) in a city.

Would prefer (I’d prefer …)

We use would prefer to say what somebody wants in a specific situation (not in general):

- ‘Would you prefer tea or coffee?’ ‘Coffee, please.’

We say ‘would prefer to do something’ (not doing):

- ‘Shall we go by train?’ ‘I’d prefer to drive.’ (not I’d prefer driving)
- I’d prefer to stay at home tonight rather than go to the cinema.

Would rather (I’d rather …)

Would rather (do) = would prefer (to do). We use would rather + infinitive (without to).

Compare:

- ‘Shall we go by train?’ ‘I’d prefer to drive.’
- ‘I’d rather drive.’ (not to drive)
- ‘Would you rather have tea or coffee?’ ‘Coffee, please.’

The negative is ‘I’d rather not (do something!’):

- I’m tired. I’d rather not go out this evening, if you don’t mind.
- ‘Do you want to go out this evening?’ ‘I’d rather not.’

We say ‘would rather do something than do something else’:

- I’d rather stay at home tonight than go to the cinema.

I’d rather you did something

We say ‘I’d rather you did something’ (not I’d rather you do). For example:

- ‘Shall I stay here?’ ‘I’d rather you came with us.’ (= I would prefer this)
- ‘I’ll repair your bike tomorrow, OK?’ ‘I’d rather you did it today.’
- ‘Are you going to tell them what happened?’ ‘No. I’d rather they didn’t know.’
- Shall I tell them, or would you rather they didn’t know?

In this structure we use the past (came, did etc.), but the meaning is present not past.

Compare:

- I’d rather make dinner now.
- I’d rather you made dinner now. (not I’d rather you make)

I’d rather you didn’t (do something) = I’d prefer you not to do it:

- I’d rather you didn’t tell anyone what I said.
- ‘Shall I tell Linda what happened?’ ‘I’d rather you didn’t.’

Would prefer → Unit 58B Prefer (one thing) to (another) → Unit 136D
Exercises

Unit 59

59.1 Which do you prefer? Write sentences using 'I prefer (something) to (something else)'. Put the verb into the correct form where necessary.

1 (drive / travel by train) I prefer ____________ to ____________.
2 (basketball / football) I prefer ____________ to ____________.
3 (phone people / send emails) I prefer ____________ to ____________.
4 (go to the cinema / watch videos at home) ____________ to ____________.

Now rewrite sentences 3 and 4 using the structure 'I prefer to (do something)'.

5 (1) I prefer to ____________ rather than ____________.
6 (2) I prefer ____________ to ____________.
7 (3) ____________ to ____________.

59.2 Write sentences using I'd prefer ... and I'd rather ... + the following:

eat at home - get a taxi - go alone - wait a few minutes - listen to some music
stand - go for a swim - wait till later - think about it for a while

1 Shall we walk home? I'd prefer to get a taxi.
2 Do you want to eat now? I'd rather wait till later.
3 Would you like to watch TV? ____________ to ____________.
4 Do you want to go to a restaurant? ____________ to ____________.
5 Let's leave now. ____________ to ____________.
6 Shall we play tennis? ____________ to ____________.
7 I think we should decide now. ____________ to ____________.
8 Would you like to sit down? ____________ to ____________.
9 Do you want me to come with you? ____________ to ____________.

Now use the same ideas to complete these sentences using than and rather than.

10 I'd prefer to get a taxi ____________ walk home.
11 I'd prefer to go for a swim ____________ eat at home.
12 I'd rather ear at home ____________ go for a swim.
13 I'd prefer to think about it for a while ____________ go with you.
14 I'd rather listen to some music ____________ watch TV.

59.3 Complete the sentences using would you rather I ...

1 Are you going to make dinner or would you rather I ________?
2 Are you going to tell Liz what happened or would you rather ________?
3 Are you going to do the shopping or ________?
4 Are you going to phone Diane or ________?

59.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 'Shall I tell Ann the news?' 'No, I'd rather she ____________ know.'
2 Do you want me to go now or would you rather I ____________ here?
3 Do you want to go out this evening or would you rather ____________ at home?
4 This is a private letter addressed to me. I'd rather you ____________ read it.
5 I don't really like these shoes. I'd rather they ____________ a different colour.
6 A: Do you mind if I turn on the radio?
   B: I'd rather you ____________ . I'm trying to study.
Preposition (in/for/about etc.) + -ing

If a preposition (in/for/about etc.) is followed by a verb, the verb ends in -ing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>preposition</th>
<th>verb (-ing)</th>
<th>for us?</th>
<th>for languages?</th>
<th>for a car?</th>
<th>for me to your party?</th>
<th>for lunch tomorrow?</th>
<th>at home all the time?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>working</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at</td>
<td>learning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with</td>
<td>studying</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of</td>
<td>having</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for</td>
<td>inviting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about</td>
<td>meeting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instead of</td>
<td>sitting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in spite of</td>
<td>feeling</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can also say 'instead of somebody doing something', 'fed up with people doing something' etc.:

☐ I'm fed up with people telling me what to do.

Note the use of the following prepositions + -ing:

before -ing and after -ing:

☐ Before going out, I phoned Sarah. (not Before to go out)
☐ What did you do after leaving school?

You can also say 'Before I went out ...' and '... after you left school'.

by -ing (to say how something happens):

☐ The burglars got into the house by breaking a window and climbing in.
☐ You can improve your English by reading more.
☐ She made herself ill by not eating properly.
☐ Many accidents are caused by people driving too fast.

without -ing:

☐ We ran ten kilometres without stopping.
☐ It was a stupid thing to say. I said it without thinking.
☐ She needs to work without people disturbing her. (or ... without being disturbed.)
☐ I have enough problems of my own without having to worry about yours.

To -ing (look forward to doing something etc.)

To is often part of the infinitive (to do / to see etc.):

☐ We decided to go out.
☐ Would you like to meet for lunch tomorrow?

But to is also a preposition (like in/for/about/from etc.). For example:

☐ We drove from London to Edinburgh.
☐ I prefer tea to coffee.
☐ Are you looking forward to the weekend?

If a preposition is followed by a verb, the verb ends in -ing:

in doing about meeting without stopping (etc.)

So, when to is a preposition and it is followed by a verb, you must say to -ing:

☐ I prefer driving to travelling by train. (not to travel)
☐ Are you looking forward to going on holiday? (not looking forward to go)
Exercises

60.1 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1. Why is it useful to have a car?
   What are the advantages of **having a car**?

2. I don’t intend to apply for the job.
   I have no intention of ________________________________.

3. Helen has a good memory for names.
   Helen is good at ________________________________.

4. Mark won’t pass the exam. He has no chance.
   Mark has no chance of ________________________________.

5. Did you get into trouble because you were late?
   Did you get into trouble for ________________________________?

6. We didn’t eat at home. We went to a restaurant instead.
   Instead of ________________________________.

7. We got into the exhibition. We didn’t have to queue.
   We got into the exhibition without ________________________________.

8. Our team played well, but we lost the game.
   Our team lost the game despite ________________________________.

60.2 Complete the sentences using by -ing. Use the following (with the verb in the correct form):
   borrow too much money   break a window   drive too fast
   put some pictures on the walls   stand on a chair   turn a key

1. The burglars got into the house **by breaking a window**.

2. I was able to reach the top shelf ________________________________.

3. You start the engine of a car ________________________________.

4. Kevin got himself into financial trouble ________________________________.

5. You can put people’s lives in danger ________________________________.

6. We made the room look nicer ________________________________.

60.3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word. Use only one word each time.

1. We ran ten kilometres without ________________.

2. He left the hotel without ________________ his bill.

3. It’s a nice morning. How about ________________ for a walk?

4. We were able to translate the letter into English without ________________ a dictionary.

5. Before ________________ to bed, I like to have a hot drink.

6. It was a long journey. I was very tired after ________________ on a train for 36 hours.

7. I was annoyed because the decision was made without ________________ me.

8. After ________________ the same job for ten-years, I felt I needed a change.

9. We lost our way because we went straight on instead of ________________ left.

10. I like these photographs you took. You’re good at ________________ photographs.

60.4 For each situation, write a sentence with I’m (not) looking forward to.

1. You are going on holiday next week. How do you feel?
   I’m ________________ going on holiday.

2. Diane is a good friend of yours and she is coming to visit you soon. So you will see her again soon. How do you feel? I’m ________________________________.

3. You are going to the dentist tomorrow. You don’t enjoy going to the dentist. How do you feel?
   I’m not ________________

4. Carol is a student at school. She hates it, but she is leaving school next summer.
   How does she feel?

5. You’ve arranged to play tennis tomorrow. You like tennis a lot. How do you feel?

→ Additional exercises 26–28 (pages 317–19)
Be/get used to something (I'm used to ...)

Study this example situation:

Lisa is American, but she lives in Britain. When she first drove a car in Britain, she found it very difficult because she had to drive on the left, not on the right. Driving on the left was strange and difficult for her because:

She wasn't used to it.
She wasn't used to driving on the left.

But after a lot of practice, driving on the left became less strange. So:
She got used to driving on the left.
Now it's no problem for Lisa:
She is used to driving on the left.

I'm used to something = it is not new or strange for me:

☐ Frank lives alone. He doesn't mind this because he has lived alone for 15 years. It is not strange for him. He is used to it. He is used to living alone.
☐ I bought some new shoes. They felt a bit strange at first because I wasn't used to them.
☐ Our new flat is on a very busy street. I expect we'll get used to the noise, but at the moment it's very disturbing.
☐ Diane has a new job. She has to get up much earlier now than before – at 6.30. She finds this difficult because she isn't used to getting up so early.
☐ Barbara's husband is often away from home. She doesn't mind this. She is used to him being away.

After be/get used you cannot use the infinitive (to do / to drive etc.). We say:

☐ She is used to driving on the left. (not She is used to drive)

When we say 'I am used to something', to is a preposition, not a part of the infinitive.
So we say:

☐ Frank is used to living alone. (not Frank is used to live)
☐ Lisa had to get used to driving on the left. (not get used to drive)

Do not confuse I am used to doing and I used to do:

I am used to (doing) something = it isn't strange or new for me:

☐ I am used to the weather in this country.
☐ I am used to driving on the left because I've lived in Britain a long time.

I used to do something = I did it regularly in the past but no longer do it. You can use this only for the past, not for the present.
The structure is 'I used to do' (not 'I am used to do'):

☐ I used to drive to work every day, but these days I usually go by bike.
☐ We used to live in a small village, but now we live in London.
Exercises

61.1 Look again at the situation in Section A on the opposite page ('Lisa is American ...'). The following situations are similar. Complete the sentences using used to.

1. Juan is Spanish and went to live in England. In Spain he usually had dinner late in the evening, but in England dinner was at 6 o'clock. This was very early for him and he found it very strange at first.
   When Juan first went to England, he ____________________________ dinner so early, but after some time he ____________________________ it. Now he finds it normal. He ____________________________ at 6 o'clock.

2. Julia is a nurse. A year ago she started working nights. At first she found it hard and didn't like it.
   She ____________________________ nights and it took her a few months to ____________________________ it. Now, after a year, she's quite happy. She ____________________________ nights.

61.2 What do you say in these situations? Use I'm (not) used to ....

1. You live alone. You don't mind this. You have always lived alone.
   FRIEND: Do you get a bit lonely sometimes?
   YOU: No, I ____________________________ living alone.

2. You sleep on the floor. You don't mind this. You have always slept on the floor.
   FRIEND: Wouldn't you prefer to sleep in a bed?
   YOU: No, I ____________________________

3. You have to work long hours in your job. This is not a problem for you. You have always worked long hours.
   FRIEND: You have to work very long hours in your job, don't you?
   YOU: Yes, but I don't mind that. I ____________________________

4. You usually go to bed early. Last night you went to bed very late (for you) and as a result you are very tired this morning.
   FRIEND: You look tired this morning.
   YOU: Yes, ____________________________

61.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences using used to.

1. Some friends of yours have just moved into a flat on a busy street. It is very noisy. They'll have to ____________________________ the noise.

2. The children at school had a new teacher. She was different from the teacher before her, but this wasn't a problem for the children. They soon ____________________________

3. Sue moved from a big house to a much smaller one. She found it strange at first. She had to ____________________________ in a much smaller house.

4. Some people you know from Britain are going to live in your country. What will they have to get used to?
   They'll have to ____________________________

61.4 Complete the sentences using only one word each time (see Section C).

1. Lisa had to get used to ____________________________ on the left.
2. We used to ____________________________ in a small village, but now we live in London.
3. Dan used to ____________________________ a lot of coffee. Now he prefers tea.
4. I feel very full after that meal. I'm not used to ____________________________ so much.
5. I wouldn't like to share an office. I'm used to ____________________________ my own office.
6. I used to ____________________________ a car, but I sold it a few months ago.
7. When we were children, we used to ____________________________ swimming very often.
8. There used to ____________________________ a cinema here, but it was knocked down a few years ago.
9. I'm the boss here! I'm not used to ____________________________ told what to do.

→ Additional exercises 26-28 (pages 317-19)
Verb + preposition + -ing (succeed in -ing / accuse somebody of -ing etc.)

Many verbs have the structure verb + preposition (in/for/about etc.) + object. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>preposition</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We talked about the problem.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You must apologise for what you said.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the object is another verb, it ends in -ing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>preposition</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We talked about going to America.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You must apologise for not telling the truth.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some more verbs with this structure:

- succeed (in)
- insist (on)
- think (of)
- dream (of)
- approve (of)
- decide (against)
- feel (like)
- look forward (to)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
<th>preposition</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Have you succeeded in finding a job yet?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They insisted on paying for the meal.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m thinking of buying a house.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I wouldn’t dream of asking them for money.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He doesn’t approve of swearing.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We have decided against moving to London.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you feel like going out tonight?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m looking forward to meeting her.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can also say ‘approve of somebody doing something’, ‘look forward to somebody doing something’:

- I don’t approve of people killing animals for fun.
- We are all looking forward to Peter coming home.

The following verbs can have the structure verb + object + preposition + -ing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
<th>preposition</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I congratulated Liz on getting a new job.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They accused us of telling lies.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nobody suspected the general of being a spy.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What prevented you from coming to see us?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The rain didn’t stop us from enjoying our holiday.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I forgot to thank them for helping me.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please forgive me for being so late.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excuse me for not writing to you.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can say ‘stop somebody doing’ or ‘stop somebody from doing’:

- You can’t stop me doing what I want. or You can’t stop me from doing what I want.

Some of these verbs are often used in the passive. For example:

- We were accused of telling lies.
- The general was suspected of being a spy.

Note that we say ‘apologise to somebody for …’:

- I apologised to them for keeping them waiting. (not I apologised them)
Exercises

62.1 Complete each sentence using only one word.
1. Our neighbours apologised for ________ so much noise.
2. I feel lazy. I don’t feel like ____________ any work.
3. I wanted to go out alone, but Joe insisted on ____________ with me.
4. I’m fed up with my job. I’m thinking of ____________ something else.
5. We have decided against ____________ a new car because we can’t really afford it.
6. I hope you get in touch with me soon. I’m looking forward to ____________ from you.
7. The weather was extremely bad and this prevented us from ____________ out.
8. The man who has been arrested is suspected of ____________ a false passport.
9. I think you should apologise to Sue for ____________ so rude to her.
10. Some parents don’t approve of their children ____________ a lot of television.
11. I’m sorry I can’t come to your party, but thank you very much for ____________ me.

62.2 Complete each sentence using a preposition + one of the following verbs (in the correct form):

carry cause escape go interrupt live see solve spend walk

1. Do you feel ________ going out this evening?
2. It took us a long time, but we finally succeeded ____________ the problem.
3. I’ve always dreamed ____________ in a small house by the sea.
4. The driver of the other car accused me ____________ the accident.
5. There’s a fence around the lawn to stop people ____________ on the grass.
6. Excuse me ____________ you, but may I ask you something?
7. Where are you thinking ____________ your holiday this year?
8. The guards weren’t able to prevent the prisoner ____________ it for me.
9. My bag wasn’t very heavy, but Dan insisted ____________ for me.
10. It’s a pity Paul can’t come to the party. I was really looking forward ____________ him.

62.3 Complete the sentences on the right.

1. ________ It was nice of you to help me. Thanks very much.
   You Kevin

   Kevin thanked ____________ for helping him.

2. ________ I’ll drive you to the station. I insist.
   Ann Tom

   Tom insisted ____________.

3. ________ I hear you got married. Congratulations!
   You Dan

   Dan congratulated me ____________.

4. ________ It was nice of you to come to see me. Thank you.
   Sue Jenny

   Jenny thanked ____________.

5. ________ I’m sorry I didn’t phone earlier.
   You Kate

   Kate apologised ____________.

6. ________ You’re selfish.
   You Jane

   Jane accused ____________.
Expressions + -ing

When these expressions are followed by a verb, the verb ends in -ing:

**It's no use / It's no good**
- There's nothing you can do about the situation, so it's no use worrying about it.
- It's no good trying to persuade me. You won't succeed.

**There's no point in**
- There's no point in having a car if you never use it.
- There was no point in waiting any longer, so we went.
But we usually say 'the point of doing something':
- What's the point of having a car if you never use it?

**It's (not) worth**
- I live only a short walk from here, so it's not worth taking a taxi.
- Our flight was very early in the morning, so it wasn't worth going to bed.

You can say that a film is worth seeing, a book is worth reading etc.:
- What was the film like? Was it worth seeing?
- Thieves broke into the house but didn't take anything. There was nothing worth stealing.

**Have difficulty -ing, have trouble -ing**

We say 'have difficulty doing something' (not to do):
- I had no difficulty finding a place to live. (not difficulty to find)
- Did you have any difficulty getting a visa?
- People often have difficulty reading my writing.

You can also say 'have trouble doing something':
- I had no trouble finding a place to live.

**We use -ing after:**

- a waste of money / a waste of time
  - It was a waste of time reading that book. It was rubbish.
  - It's a waste of money buying things you don't need.

- spend/waste (time)
  - He spent hours trying to repair the clock.
  - I waste a lot of time day-dreaming.

- (be) busy
  - She said she couldn't see me. She was too busy doing other things.

**Go swimming / go fishing etc.**

We use go -ing for a number of activities (especially sports). For example, you can say:
- go swimming  go sailing  go fishing  go climbing  go skiing  go jogging

*Also* go shopping, go sightseeing

- How often do you go swimming?
- I'd like to go skiing.
- When did you last go shopping?
- I've never been sailing. (For gone and been, see Unit 7D.)
Exercises

63.1 Make sentences beginning There's no point ...
1 Why have a car if you never use it?
   There's no point in having a car if you never use it.
2 Why work if you don't need money?
3 Don't try to study if you feel tired.
4 Why hurry if you've got plenty of time?

63.2 Complete the sentences on the right.
1 Shall we get a taxi home? No, it isn't far. It's not worth getting a taxi.
2 If you need help, why don't you ask Dave? It's no use asking him.
   He won't be able to do anything.
3 I don't really want to go out tonight. Well, stay at home! There's no point
   going out if you don't want to.
4 Shall I phone Liz now? No, it's no good now. She won't be at home.
5 Are you going to complain about what happened? No, it's not worth
   mentioning it.
6 Do you ever read newspapers? Nobody will do anything about it.
7 Do you want to keep these old clothes? No, I think it's a waste.
   Let's throw them away. They're not worth keeping.

63.3 Write sentences using difficulty.
1 I managed to get a visa, but it was difficult. I had difficulty getting a visa.
2 I find it hard to remember people's names.
3 Lucy managed to get a job without difficulty.
4 It won't be difficult to get a ticket for the game.
   You won't have any difficulty.

63.4 Complete the sentences. Use only one word each time.
1 It's a waste of money buying things you don't need.
2 Every morning I spend an hour reading the newspaper.
3 'What's Sue doing?' 'She's going away tomorrow, so she's busy packing.'
4 I think you waste too much time watching television.
5 There's a beautiful view from that hill. It's worth going to the top.
6 It's no use looking for the job. I know I wouldn't get it.
7 Just stay calm. There's no point in getting angry.

63.5 Complete these sentences with the following (with the verb in the correct form):
   go riding  go sailing  go shopping  go skiing  go swimming
1 Barry lives by the sea and he's got a boat, so he often goes sailing.
2 It was a very hot day, so we went swimming.
3 There's plenty of snow in the mountains, so we'll be able to go skiing.
4 Helen has got two horses. She goes riding regularly.
5 'Where's Dan?' 'He's gone shopping. There were a few things he needed to buy.'
To ... , for ... and so that ... (purpose)

A We use to ... to say why somebody does something (= the purpose of an action):
  □ ‘Why are you going out?’ ‘To post a letter.’
  □ A friend of mine phoned to invite me to a party.
  □ We shouted to warn everybody of the danger.

We use to ... to say why something exists (= its purpose):
  □ This wall is to keep people out of the garden.
  □ The president has a team of bodyguards to protect him.

B We use to ... to say what can be done or must be done with something:
  □ It's difficult to find a place to park in the centre. (= a place where you can park)
  □ Would you like something to eat?
  □ Have you got much work to do? (= 'work that you must do')
  □ I get lonely if there's nobody to talk to.
  □ I need something to open this bottle with.

Also money/time/chance/opportunity/energy/courage etc. to (do something):
  □ They gave us some money to buy some food.
  □ Do you have much opportunity to practise your English?
  □ I need a few days to think about your proposal.

C For ... and to ...

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for + noun</th>
<th>to + verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm going to Spain for a holiday.</td>
<td>I'm going to Spain to learn Spanish.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What would you like for dinner?</td>
<td>What would you like to eat?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let's go to the pool for a swim.</td>
<td>Let's go to the pool to have a swim.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can say 'for (somebody) to (do something)'.
  □ There weren't any chairs for us to sit on, so we had to sit on the floor.

You can use for -ing or to ... to talk about the general purpose of something, or what it is generally used for:
  □ Do you use this brush for washing the dishes? (or ... to wash the dishes?)

You can use What ... for? to ask about purpose:
  □ What is this switch for?
  □ What did you do that for?

D So that

Sometimes you have to use so that for purpose.

We use so that (not to ...) especially

when the purpose is negative (so that ... won't/wouldn't):
  □ I hurried so that I wouldn't be late. (= because I didn't want to be late)
  □ Leave early so that you won't (or don't) miss the bus.

with can and could (so that ... can/could):
  □ She's learning English so that she can study in Canada.
  □ We moved to London so that we could see our friends more often.
Exercises

64.1 Choose from Box A and Box B to make a new sentence with to ...

A
1. I shouted.
2. I had to go to the bank.
3. I'm saving money.
4. I went into hospital.
5. I'm wearing two sweaters.
6. I phoned the police.

B
I want to keep warm.
I wanted to report that my car had been stolen.
I want to go to Canada.
I had to have an operation.
I needed to get some money.
I wanted to warn people of the danger.

1. I shouted to warn people of the danger.
2. I had to go to the bank.
3. I...
4. ...
5. ...
6. ...

64.2 Complete these sentences using a suitable verb.
1. The president has a team of bodyguards to protect him.
2. I didn't have enough time to read the newspaper today.
3. I came home by taxi. I didn't have the energy.
4. 'Would you like something?,' "Yes, please. A cup of coffee."
5. We need a bag to carry these things in.
6. There will be a meeting next week to discuss the problem.
7. I wish we had enough money to buy another car.
8. I saw Helen at the party, but we didn't have a chance to talk to each other.
9. I need some new clothes. I don't have anything nice.
10. They've just passed their exams. They're having a party.
11. I can't do all this work alone. I need somebody to help me.

64.3 Put in to or for.
1. I'm going to Spain for a holiday.
2. You need a lot of experience to do this job.
3. You need a lot of experience to do this job.
4. We'll need more time to make a decision.
5. I went to the dentist for a check-up.
6. I had to put on my glasses to read the letter.
7. Do you have to wear glasses for reading?
8. I wish we had a garden for the children to play in.

64.4 Write sentences with so that.
1. I hurried. I didn't want to be late. I hurried so that I wouldn't be late.
2. I wore warm clothes. I didn't want to be cold.
3. I left Dave my phone number. I wanted him to be able to contact me.
4. We whispered. We didn't want anybody else to hear our conversation.
   nobody
5. Please arrive early. We want to be able to start the meeting on time.
   Please
6. Jennifer locked the door. She didn't want to be disturbed.

7. I slowed down. I wanted the car behind me to be able to overtake.
Difficult to understand etc.

Compare sentences (a) and (b):

- (a) It is difficult to understand him.
- (b) He is difficult to understand.

Sentences (a) and (b) have the same meaning. Note that we say:
- He is difficult to understand. (not He is difficult to understand him.)

You can use the same structures with:
- easy hard impossible dangerous safe expensive cheap nice
- good interesting exciting

- Do you think it is safe (for us) to drink this water?
  - Do you think this water is safe (for us) to drink? (not to drink it)
- The questions in the exam were very difficult. It was impossible to answer them.
  - The questions in the exam were very difficult. They were impossible to answer.
- (not to answer them)
- Jill has lots of interesting ideas. It’s interesting to talk to her.
  - Jill is interesting to talk to. (not to talk to her.)

You can also use this structure with adjective + noun:

- This is a difficult question (for me) to answer. (not to answer it)

(It’s) nice of (you) to ...

You can say ‘It’s nice of somebody to do something’:

- It was nice of you to take me to the airport. Thank you very much.

You can use many other adjectives in this way. For example:
- kind clever sensible mean silly stupid careless unfair considerate:
  - It’s silly of Mary to give up her job when she needs the money.
  - I think it was very unfair of him to criticise me.

I’m sorry to ... / I was surprised to ... etc.

You can use adjective + to ... to say how somebody reacts to something:

- I was sorry to hear that your father is ill.

You can use many other adjectives in this way. For example:

- happy glad pleased sad disappointed surprised amazed astonished relieved
  - Was Julia surprised to see you?
  - It was a long and tiring journey. We were glad to get home.

The first / the next (etc.) + to ...

You can use to ... after the first/the last, the next, the only, the second (etc.):

- If I have any more news, you will be the first (person) to know.
- The next train to arrive at platform 4 will be the 10.50 to Cardiff.
- Everybody was late except me. I was the only one to arrive on time.

You can say that something is sure/certain/likely/bound to happen:

- Carla is a very good student. She’s bound to pass the exam. (= she is sure to pass)
- I’m likely to be late home this evening. (= I will probably be late home)

Afraid/interested/sorry → Unit 66  If ... → Unit 84C Enough and too + adjective → Unit 103
Exercises

Unit 65

65.1 (Section A) Write these sentences in another way, beginning as shown.
1. It's difficult to understand him. He is difficult to understand.
2. It's easy to use this machine. This machine is
3. It was very difficult to open the window. The window
4. It's impossible to translate some words. Some words
5. It's expensive to maintain a car. A
6. It's not safe to stand on that chair. That

65.2 (Section A) Complete the second sentence. Use the adjective in brackets and to ... as in the example.
1. I couldn't answer the question. (difficult) It was a difficult question to answer.
2. Everybody makes that mistake. (easy) It's an
3. I like living in this place. (nice) It's a
4. We enjoyed watching the game. (good) It was a

65.3 (Section B) Make a new sentence beginning It ... . Use one of these adjectives each time:
careless / inconsiderate / kind / nice
1. Sue has offered to help me. It's kind of Sue to offer to help me.
2. You make the same mistake again and again.
3. Dan and Jenny invited me to stay with them.
4. The neighbours make so much noise at night.

65.4 (Section C) Use the following words to complete these sentences:
sorry / hear / glad / hear / pleased / get / surprised / see
1. We were pleased to get your letter last week.
2. I got your message. I that you're keeping well.
3. We Paula at the party. We didn't expect her to come.
4. I that your mother isn't well. I hope she gets better soon.

65.5 (Section D) Complete the second sentence using the words in brackets + to ...
1. Nobody left before me. (the first) I was the first person to leave.
2. Everybody else arrived before Paul. (the last) Paul was the
3. Fiona passed the exam. All the other students failed. (the only) Fiona was
4. I complained to the restaurant manager about the service. Another customer had already complained. (the second) I was
5. Neil Armstrong walked on the moon in 1969. Nobody had done this before him. (the first) Neil Armstrong was

65.6 (Section E) Complete these sentences using the words in brackets and a suitable verb.
1. Diane is a very good student. She is bound to pass the exam. (bound)
2. I'm not surprised you're tired. After such a long journey you tired. (bound)
3. Andy has a very bad memory. He what you tell him. (sure)
4. I don't think you need to take an umbrella. It . (not likely)
5. The holidays begin this weekend. There a lot of traffic on the roads. (likely)
To ... (afraid to do) and preposition + -ing (afraid of -ing)

Afraid to (do) and afraid of (doing)
I am afraid to do something = I don’t want to do it because it is dangerous or the result could be bad.

We use afraid to do for things we do intentionally; we can choose to do them or not:
- This part of town is dangerous. People are afraid to walk here at night. (= they don’t want to walk here because it is dangerous – so they don’t)
- James was afraid to tell his parents what had happened. (= he didn’t want to tell them because he knew they would be angry, worried etc.)

I am afraid of something happening = it is possible that something bad will happen (for example, an accident).

We do not use afraid of -ing for things we do intentionally:
- The path was icy, so we walked very carefully. We were afraid of falling. (= it was possible that we would fall – not we were afraid to fall)
- I don’t like dogs. I’m always afraid of being bitten. (not afraid to be bitten)

So, you are afraid to do something because you are afraid of something happening as a result:
- I was afraid to go near the dog because I was afraid of being bitten.

Interested in (doing) and interested to (do)

I’m interested in doing something = I’m thinking of doing it, I would like to do it:
- Let me know if you’re interested in joining the club. (not to join)
- I tried to sell my car, but nobody was interested in buying it. (not to buy)

We use interested to ... to say how somebody reacts to what they hear/see/read/learn/know/find.

For example, ‘I was interested to hear it’ = I heard it and it was interesting for me:
- I was interested to know that Tanya has left her job.
- Ask Mike for his opinion. I would be interested to know what he thinks. (= it would be interesting for me to know it)

This structure is the same as surprised to ... / glad to ... etc. (see Unit 65C):
- I was surprised to hear that Tanya has left her job.

Sorry to (do) and sorry for/about (doing)

We use sorry to ... to say we regret something that happens (see Unit 65C):
- I was sorry to hear that Nicky lost her job. (= I was sorry when I heard that …)
- I’ve enjoyed my stay here. I’ll be sorry to leave.

We also say sorry to ... to apologise at the time we do something:
- I’m sorry to phone you so late, but I need to ask you something.

You can use sorry for or sorry about (doing something) to apologise for something you did before:
- I’m sorry for (or about) shouting at you yesterday. (not sorry to shout)

You can also say:
- I’m sorry I shouted at you yesterday.

We say:
I want to (do) / I’d like to (do) but I’m thinking of (doing) / I dream of (doing)
I failed to (do) but I succeeded in (doing)
I allowed them to (do) but I prevented them from (doing)
I stopped them from (doing)

For examples, see Units 54–55 and 62.
Exercises

66.1 Use the words in brackets to write sentences. Use afraid to ... or afraid of -ing.

1 The streets are unsafe at night.
   (a lot of people / afraid / go / out) A lot of people are afraid to go out.

2 We walked very carefully along the icy path.
   (we / afraid / fall) We were afraid of falling.

3 I don’t usually carry my passport with me.
   (I / afraid / lose / it)

4 I thought she would be angry if I told her what had happened.
   (I / afraid / tell / her)

5 We rushed to the station.
   (we / afraid / miss / our train)

6 In the middle of the film there was an especially horrifying scene.
   (we / afraid / look)

7 The vase was very valuable, so I held it carefully.
   (I / afraid / drop / it)

8 I thought the food on my plate didn’t look fresh.
   a (I / afraid / eat / it)
   b (I / afraid / get / sick)

66.2 Complete the sentences using in ... or to .... Use these verbs:
   buy get know look read start

   1 I’m trying to sell my car, but nobody is interested in buying it.
   2 Julia is interested in her own business.
   3 I was interested in your letter in the newspaper last week.
   4 Ben wants to stay single. He’s not interested in married.
   5 I met Mark a few days ago. You’ll be interested that he’s just got a job in Paris.
   6 I don’t enjoy sightseeing. I’m not interested in old buildings.

66.3 Complete each sentence using sorry for/about ... or sorry to .... Use the verb in brackets.

   1 I’m sorry to phone you so late, but I need to ask you something. (phone)
   2 I was sorry that you didn’t get the job you applied for. (hear)
   3 I’m sorry all those bad things about you. I didn’t mean them. (say)
   4 I’m sorry you, but do you have a pen I could borrow? (disturb)
   5 I’m sorry the book you lent me. I’ll buy you another one. (lose)

66.4 Complete each sentence using the verb in brackets.

   1 a We wanted to leave the building. (leave)
      b We weren’t allowed to leave the building. (leave)
      c We were prevented from leaving the building. (leave)

   2 a Peter failed to solve the problem. (solve)
      b Chris succeeded in solving the problem. (solve)

   3 a I’m thinking of going away next week. (go)
      b I’m hoping to go away next week. (go)
      c I’d like to go away next week. (go)
      d I’m looking forward to going away next week. (go)

   4 a Helen wanted to buy me lunch. (buy)
      b Helen promised to buy me lunch. (buy)
      c Helen insisted on buying me lunch. (buy)
      d Helen wouldn’t dream of buying me lunch. (buy)

→ Additional exercise 27 (page 318)
See somebody do and see somebody doing

A

Study this example situation:

Tom got into his car and drove away. You saw this. You can say:

- I saw Tom get into his car and drive away.

In this structure we use get/drive/do etc.
(not to get / to drive / to do).

\[ \text{Somebody did something} + \quad \text{I saw this} \]

I saw somebody do something

But after a passive (‘he was seen’ etc.), we use to:

- He was seen to get in the car.

B

Study this example situation:

Yesterday you saw Kate. She was waiting for a bus. You can say:

- I saw Kate waiting for a bus.

In this structure we use -ing (waiting/doing etc.):

\[ \text{Somebody was doing something} + \quad \text{I saw this} \]

I saw somebody doing something

C

Study the difference in meaning between the two structures:

I saw him do something = he did something (past simple) and I saw this. I saw the complete action from beginning to end:

- He fell off the wall. I saw this. → I saw him fall off the wall.
- The accident happened. Did you see it? → Did you see the accident happen?

I saw him doing something = he was doing something (past continuous) and I saw this. I saw him when he was in the middle of doing it. This does not mean that I saw the complete action:

- He was walking along the street. I saw this when I drove past in my car. → I saw him walking along the street.

Sometimes the difference is not important and you can use either form:

- I’ve never seen her dance. or I’ve never seen her dancing.

D

We use these structures with see and hear, and a number of other verbs:

- I didn’t hear you come in. (you came in – I didn’t hear this)
- Liz suddenly felt somebody touch her on the shoulder.
- Did you notice anyone go out?
- I could hear it raining. (it was raining – I could hear it)
- The missing children were last seen playing near the river.
- Listen to the birds singing!
- Can you smell something burning?
- I found Sue in my room reading my letters.
Exercises

Unit 67

67.1 Complete the answers to the questions.

1. Did anybody go out? I don't think so. I didn't see anybody go out.
2. Has Sarah arrived yet? Yes, I think I heard her.
3. How do you know I took the money? I know because I saw you.
4. Did the doorbell ring? I don't think so. I didn't hear.
5. Can Tom play the piano? I've never heard.
6. Did I lock the door when I went out? Yes, I saw.
7. How did the woman fall? I don't know. I didn't see.

67.2 In each of these situations you and a friend saw, heard or smelt something. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. Look! There's Kate. We saw Kate waiting for a bus.
2. Look! There's Dave and Helen. We saw Dave and Helen.
3. Look! There's Clare. We saw Clare.
4. Listen! That's Bill. We heard Bill.
5. Can you smell burning? We could smell burning.
6. Look! There's Linda. We saw Linda.

67.3 Complete these sentences. Use the following verbs (in the correct form):

climb come crawl cry explode ride run say sing slam sleep tell

1. Listen to the birds singing!
2. I didn't hear you come in.
3. We listened to the old man telling his story from beginning to end.
4. Listen! Can you hear a baby crying?
5. I looked out of the window and saw Dan riding his bike along the road.
6. I thought I heard somebody say 'Hi', so I looked round.
7. We watched two men slapping across the garden and slapping through an open window into the house.
8. Everybody heard the bomb exploding. It was a tremendous noise.
9. Oh! I can feel something slapping up my leg! It must be an insect.
10. I heard somebody slamming the door in the middle of the night. It woke me up.
11. When we got home, we found a cat sleeping on the kitchen table.
-ing clauses
(Feeling tired, I went to bed early.)

A
Study these situations:

Joe was playing football. He hurt his knee.
You can say:
- Joe hurt his knee playing football.

You were feeling tired. So you went to bed early.
You can say:
- Feeling tired, I went to bed early.

'Playing football' and 'feeling tired' are -ing clauses.
If the -ing clause is at the beginning of the sentence (as in the second example), we write a comma (,) after it.

B
When two things happen at the same time, you can use an -ing clause.
- Kate is in the kitchen making coffee.
  (= she is in the kitchen and she is making coffee)
- A man ran out of the house shouting.
  (= he ran out of the house and he was shouting)
- Do something! Don't just stand there doing nothing!

We also use -ing when one action happens during another action. We use -ing for the longer action:
- Joe hurt his knee playing football. (= while he was playing)
- Did you cut yourself shaving? (= while you were shaving)

You can also use -ing after while or when:
- Jim hurt his knee while playing football.
- Be careful when crossing the road. (= when you are crossing)

C
When one action happens before another action, we use having (done) for the first action:
- Having found a hotel, we looked for somewhere to have dinner.
- Having finished her work, she went home.

You can also say after -ing:
- After finishing her work, she went home.

If one short action follows another short action, you can use the simple -ing form (doing instead of having done) for the first action:
- Taking a key out of his pocket, he opened the door.

These structures are used more in written English than in spoken English.

D
You can use an -ing clause to explain something, or to say why somebody does something.
The -ing clause usually comes at the beginning of the sentence:
- Feeling tired, I went to bed early. (= because I felt tired)
- Being unemployed, he hasn't got much money. (= because he is unemployed)
- Not having a car, she finds it difficult to get around.
  (= because she doesn't have a car)
- Having already seen the film twice, I didn't want to go to the cinema.
  (= because I had already seen it twice)

These structures are used more in written English than in spoken English.
Exercises

68.1 Choose from Box A and Box B to make sentences. Use an -ing clause.

A
1. Kate was in the kitchen.
2. Diane was sitting in an armchair.
3. Sue opened the door carefully.
4. Sarah went out.
5. Linda was in London for two years.
6. Mary walked around the town.

B
She was trying not to make a noise.
She looked at the sights and took photographs.
She said she would be back in an hour.
She was reading a book.
She was making coffee.
She worked as a tourist guide.

1. Kate was in the kitchen making coffee.

2. Diane was sitting
3. Sue
4.
5.
6.

68.2 Make one sentence from two using an -ing clause.

1. Joe was playing football. He hurt his knee. Joe hurt his knee playing football.
2. I was watching television. I fell asleep.
   I
3. A friend of mine slipped and fell. He was getting off a bus.
   A friend of mine
4. I was walking home in the rain. I got very wet.
   I
5. Laura was driving to work yesterday. She had an accident.

6. Two firefighters were overcome by smoke. They were trying to put out the fire.

68.3 Make sentences beginning Having ...

1. She finished her work. Then she went home. Having finished her work, she went home.
2. We bought our tickets. Then we went into the theatre.

3. They had dinner and then they continued their journey.

4. After I'd done the shopping, I went for a cup of coffee.

68.4 Make sentences beginning -ing or Not -ing (like those in Section D). Sometimes you need to begin with Having (done something).

1. I felt tired. So I went to bed early.
   Feeling tired, I went to bed early.

2. I thought they might be hungry. So I offered them something to eat.

3. She is a foreigner. So she needs a visa to work in this country.

4. I didn't know his phone number. So I wasn't able to contact him.

5. Sarah has travelled a lot. So she knows a lot about other countries.

6. I wasn't able to speak the local language. So I had trouble communicating.

7. We had spent nearly all our money. So we couldn't afford to stay at a hotel.
Countable and uncountable 1

A noun can be countable or uncountable:

**Countable**
- I eat a banana every day.
- I like bananas.

Banana is a countable noun.

A countable noun can be singular (banana) or plural (bananas).

We can use numbers with countable nouns. So we can say ‘one banana’, ‘two bananas’ etc.

Examples of nouns usually countable:
- Kate was singing a song.
- There’s a nice beach near here.
- Do you have a ten-pound note?
- It wasn’t your fault. It was an accident.
- There are no batteries in the radio.
- We haven’t got enough cups.

**Uncountable**
- I eat rice every day.
- I like rice.

Rice is an uncountable noun.

An uncountable noun has only one form (rice).

We cannot use numbers with uncountable nouns. We cannot say ‘one rice’, ‘two rices’ etc.

Examples of nouns usually uncountable:
- Kate was listening to some music.
- There’s sand in my shoes.
- Do you have any money?
- It wasn’t your fault. It was bad luck.
- There is no electricity in this house.
- We haven’t got enough water.

You can use a/an with singular countable nouns:
- a beach
- a student
- an umbrella

You cannot use singular countable nouns alone (without a/the/my etc.):
- I want a banana. (not I want banana)
- There’s been an accident. (not There’s been accident)

You can use plural countable nouns alone:
- I like bananas. (= bananas in general)
- Accidents can be prevented.

You cannot normally use a/an with uncountable nouns. We do not say ‘a sand’, ‘a music’, ‘a rice’.

But you can often use a ... of. For example:
- a bowl / a packet / a grain of rice

You can use uncountable nouns alone (without the/my/some etc.):
- I eat rice every day.
- There’s blood on your shirt.
- Can you hear music?

You can use some and any with plural countable nouns:
- We sang some songs.
- Did you buy any apples?

We use many and few with plural countable nouns:
- We didn’t take many photographs.
- I have a few things to do.

You can use some and any with uncountable nouns:
- We listened to some music.
- Did you buy any apple juice?

We use much and little with uncountable nouns:
- We didn’t do much shopping.
- I have a little work to do.
Exercises

69.1 Some of these sentences need a/an. Correct the sentences where necessary.

1. Joe goes everywhere by bike. He hasn't got car.  
2. Helen was listening to music when I arrived.  
3. We went to very nice restaurant last weekend.  
4. I clean my teeth with toothpaste.  
5. I use toothbrush to clean my teeth.  
6. Can you tell me if there's bank near here?  
7. My brother works for insurance company in London.  
8. I don't like violence.  
9. Can you smell paint?  
10. When we were in Rome, we stayed in big hotel.  
11. We need petrol. I hope we come to petrol station soon.  
12. I wonder if you can help me. I have problem.  
13. I like your suggestion. It's very interesting idea.  
14. John has got interview for job tomorrow.  
15. I like volleyball. It's good game.  
16. Liz doesn't usually wear jewellery.  
17. Jane was wearing beautiful necklace.

69.2 Complete the sentences using the following words. Use a/an where necessary.

- accident  biscuit  blood  coat  decision  electricity  interview  key  moment  music  question  sugar

1. It wasn't your fault. It was an accident.
2. Listen! Can you hear music?
3. I couldn't get into the house because I didn't have a key.
4. It's very warm today. Why are you wearing a coat?
5. Do you take sugar in your coffee?
6. Are you hungry? Would you like a biscuit with your coffee?
7. Our lives would be very difficult without electricity.
8. 'I had an interview for a job yesterday.' 'Did you? How did it go?'
9. The heart pumps blood through the body.
10. Excuse me, but can I ask you a question?
11. I'm not ready yet. Can you wait a moment, please?
12. We can't delay much longer. We have to make a decision soon.

69.3 Complete the sentences using the following words. Sometimes the word needs to be plural (-s), and sometimes you need to use a/an.

- air  day  friend  language  letter  meat  patience  people  photograph  queue  space  umbrella

1. I had my camera, but I didn't take any photographs.
2. There are seven days in a week.
3. A vegetarian is a person who doesn't eat meat.
4. Outside the cinema there was a queue of people waiting to see the film.
5. I'm not very good at writing a letter.
6. Last night I went out with some friends of mine.
7. There were very few queues in town today. The streets were almost empty.
8. I'm going out for a walk. I need some fresh air.
10. I think it's going to rain. Do you have an umbrella I could borrow?
11. Do you speak any language?
12. Our flat is very small. We haven't got much space.
Countable and uncountable 2

Many nouns can be used as countable or uncountable nouns, usually with a difference in meaning. Compare:

**Countable**
- Did you hear a noise just now? (= a specific noise)
- I bought a paper to read. (= a newspaper)
- There’s a hair in my soup! (= one single hair)
- You can stay with us. There is a spare room. (= a room in a house)
- I had some interesting experiences while I was travelling. (= things that happened to me)
- Enjoy your trip. Have a good time!

**Uncountable**
- I can’t work here. There’s too much noise. (not too many noises)
- I need some paper to write on. (= material for writing on)
- You’ve got very long hair. (not hairs)
- You can’t sit here. There isn’t room. (= space)
- They offered me the job because I had a lot of experience. (not experiences)
- I can’t wait. I haven’t got time.

Coffee/tea/juice/beer etc. (drinks) are normally uncountable:
- I don’t like coffee very much.
But you can say a coffee (= a cup of coffee), two coffees (= two cups) etc.:
- Two coffees and an orange juice, please.

The following nouns are usually uncountable:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>accommodation</th>
<th>behaviour</th>
<th>damage</th>
<th>luck</th>
<th>permission</th>
<th>traffic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>advice</td>
<td>bread</td>
<td>furniture</td>
<td>luggage</td>
<td>progress</td>
<td>weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baggage</td>
<td>chaos</td>
<td>information</td>
<td>news</td>
<td>scenery</td>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You cannot use a/an with these nouns:
- I’m going to buy some bread. or ... a loaf of bread. (not a bread)
- Enjoy your holiday! I hope you have good weather. (not a good weather)

These nouns are not usually plural (so we do not say ‘breads’, ‘furnitures’ etc.):
- Where are you going to put all your furniture? (not furnitures)
- Let me know if you need more information. (not informations)

News is uncountable, not plural:
- The news was very depressing. (not The news were)

Travel (noun) means ‘travelling in general’ (uncountable). We do not say ‘a travel’ to mean a trip or a journey:
- They spend a lot of money on travel.
- We had a very good trip/journey. (not a good travel)

Compare these countable and uncountable nouns:

**Countable**
- I’m looking for a job.
- What a beautiful view!
- It’s a nice day today.
- We had a lot of bags and cases.
- These chairs are mine.
- That’s a good suggestion.

**Uncountable**
- I’m looking for work. (not a work)
- What beautiful scenery!
- It’s nice weather today.
- We had a lot of baggage/luggage
- This furniture is mine.
- That’s good advice.
Exercises

70.1 Which of the underlined parts of these sentences is correct?
1 ‘Did you hear noise / a noise just now?’ ‘No, I didn’t hear anything.’ (a noise is correct).
2 a If you want to know the news, you can read paper / a paper.
   b I want to print some documents, but the printer is out of paper / papers.
3 a I thought there was somebody in the house because there was light / a light on inside.
   b Light / A light comes from the sun.
4 a I was in a hurry this morning, I didn’t have time / a time for breakfast.
   b ‘Did you enjoy your holiday?’ ‘Yes, we had wonderful time / a wonderful time.’
5 This is nice room / a nice room. Did you decorate it yourself?
6 Sue was very helpful. She gave us some very useful advice / advices.
7 Did you have nice weather / a nice weather when you were away?
8 We were very unfortunate. We had bad luck / a bad luck.
9 Is it difficult to find a work / job at the moment?
10 Our travel / journey from Paris to Moscow by train was very tiring.
11 When the fire alarm rang, there was total chaos / a total chaos.
12 I had to buy a / some bread because I wanted to make some sandwiches.
13 Bad news don’t / doesn’t make people happy.
14 Your hair is / Your hairs are too long. You should have it / them cut.
15 The damage / the damages caused by the storm will cost a lot to repair.

70.2 Complete the sentences using the following words. Use the plural (-s) where necessary.

advice chair experience experience furniture hair
information job luggage permission progress work

1 I didn’t have much luggage – just two small bags.
2 They’ll tell you all you want to know. They’ll give you plenty of
3 There is room for everybody to sit down. There are plenty of
4 We have no , not even a bed or a table.
5 ‘What does Alan look like?’ ‘He’s got a long beard and very short
6 Carla’s English is better than it was. She’s made
7 Mike is unemployed. He can’t get a
8 Mike is unemployed. He can’t get
9 If you want to leave early, you have to ask for
10 I didn’t know what to do. So I asked Chris for
11 I don’t think Dan will get the job. He doesn’t have enough
12 Paul has done many interesting things. He could write a book about his

70.3 What do you say in these situations? Complete each sentence using one of the words from Section B.

1 Your friends have just arrived at the station. You can’t see any cases or bags. You ask them:
   Have you got any luggage?
2 You go into the tourist office. You want to know about places to see in the town. You say:
   I’d like
3 You are a student. You want your teacher to advise you about which courses to do. You say:
   Can you give me
4 You want to watch the news on TV, but you don’t know when it is on. You ask your friend:
   What time
5 You are at the top of a mountain. You can see a very long way. It’s beautiful. You say:
   It isn’t it?
6 You look out of the window. The weather is horrible: cold, wet and windy. You say:
   What
Countable nouns with a/an and some

Countable nouns can be singular or plural:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a dog</th>
<th>a child</th>
<th>the evening</th>
<th>this party</th>
<th>an umbrella</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dogs</td>
<td>some children</td>
<td>the evenings</td>
<td>these parties</td>
<td>two umbrellas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Before singular countable nouns you can use a/an:

- Goodbye! Have a nice evening.
- Do you need an umbrella?

You cannot use singular countable nouns alone (without a/the/my etc.):

- She never wears a hat. (not She never wears hat)
- Be careful of the dog. (not Be careful of dog)
- What a beautiful day!
- I've got a headache.

We use a/an ... to say what kind of thing or person something/somebody is:

- That's a nice table.

In the plural we use the noun alone (not some ...):

- Those are nice chairs. (not some nice chairs)

Compare singular and plural:

- A dog is an animal.
- I'm an optimist.
- Tim's father is a doctor.
- Are you a good driver?
- Jill is a really nice person.
- What a lovely dress!

- Dogs are animals.
- We're optimists.
- Most of my friends are students.
- Are they good students?
- Jill's parents are really nice people.
- What awful shoes!

We say that somebody has a long nose / a nice face / blue eyes / small hands etc.:

- Jack has got a long nose. (not the long nose)
- Jack has got blue eyes. (not the blue eyes)

Remember to use a/an when you say what somebody's job is:

- Sandra is a nurse. (not Sandra is nurse)
- Would you like to be an English teacher?

You can use some with plural countable nouns. We use some in two ways.

1. Some = a number of / a few of / a pair of:
   - I've seen some good films recently. (not I've seen good films)
   - Some friends of mine are coming to stay at the weekend.
   - I need some new sunglasses. (= a new pair of sunglasses)

Do not use some when you are talking about things in general (see Unit 75):

- I love bananas. (not some bananas)
- My aunt is a writer. She writes books. (not some books)

Sometimes you can make sentences with or without some (with no difference in meaning):

- There are (some) eggs in the fridge if you're hungry.

2. Some = some but not all:

- Some children learn very quickly. (but not all children)
- Tomorrow there will be rain in some places, but most of the country will be dry.
71.1 What are these things? Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 an ant? It's an insect. 7 Earth, Mars, Venus and Jupiter?
2 ants and bees? They're insects. 8 a tulip? 9 the Nile, the Rhine and the Mississippi?
3 a cauliflower? 10 a pigeon, an eagle and a crow?
4 chess? 11 Beethoven? He was a composer.
5 a violin, a trumpet and a flute? 12 Shakespeare?
6 a skyscraper? 13 Albert Einstein?

Who were these people?
11 Beethoven? He was a composer. 15 Marilyn Monroe?
12 Shakespeare? 16 Elvis Presley and John Lennon?
13 Albert Einstein?
14 Washington, Lincoln and Kennedy?

71.2 Read about what these people do, and say what their jobs are. Choose from:

chef interpreter journalist nurse plumber surgeon travel agent waiter

1 Sarah looks after patients in hospital. She's a nurse.
2 Gary works in a restaurant. He brings the food to the tables. He
3 Martina arranges people's holidays for them. She
4 Kevin works in a hospital. He operates on people.
5 Jonathan cooks in a restaurant.
6 Jane writes articles for a newspaper.
7 Dave installs and repairs water pipes.
8 Linda translates what people are saying from one language into another, so that they can understand each other.

71.3 Put in a/an or some where necessary. If no word is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 I've seen some good films recently.
2 What's wrong with you? Have you got a headache?
3 I know a lot of people. Most of them are students.
4 When I was a child, I used to be very shy.
5 Would you like to be an actor?
6 Do you collect stamps?
7 What a beautiful garden!
8 Birds, for example the penguin, cannot fly.
9 Do you enjoy going to concerts?
10 I've been walking for three hours. I've got sore feet.
11 I don't feel very well this morning. I've got sore throat.
12 Maria speaks English, but not very much.
13 It's a pity we don't have a camera. I'd like to take a photograph of that house.
14 Those are nice shoes. Where did you get them?
15 I'm going shopping. I want to buy new shoes.
16 You need a visa to visit all countries, but not all of them.
17 Jane is a teacher. Her parents were teachers too.
18 I don't believe him. He's a liar. He's always telling lies.
A/An and the

A

Study this example:

Joe says ‘a sandwich’, ‘an apple’ because this is the first time he talks about them.

Joe now says ‘the sandwich’, ‘the apple’ because Karen knows which sandwich and which apple he means – the sandwich and the apple that he had for lunch.

JOE    KAREN

Compare a and the in these examples:

☐ A man and a woman were sitting opposite me. The man was American, but I think the woman was British.

☐ When we were on holiday, we stayed at a hotel. Sometimes we ate at the hotel and sometimes we went to a restaurant.

We use the when we are thinking of a specific thing. Compare a/an and the:

☐ Tim sat down on a chair. (perhaps one of many chairs in the room)

☐ Tim sat down on the chair nearest the door. (a specific chair)

☐ Paula is looking for a job. (not a specific job)

☐ Did Paula get the job she applied for? (a specific job)

☐ Have you got a car? (not a specific car)

☐ I cleaned the car yesterday. (= my car)

We use the when it is clear in the situation which thing or person we mean. For example, in a room we talk about the light / the floor / the ceiling / the door / the carpet etc.:

☐ Can you turn off the light, please? (= the light in this room)

☐ I took a taxi to the station. (= the station in that town)

☐ (in a shop) I’d like to speak to the manager, please. (= the manager of this shop)

In the same way, we say (go to) the bank, the post office:

☐ I have to go to the bank and then I’m going to the post office. (The speaker is usually thinking of a specific bank or post office.)

We also say (go to) the doctor / the dentist:

☐ Caroline isn’t very well. She’s gone to the doctor. (= her usual doctor)

☐ I don’t like going to the dentist.

Compare the and a:

☐ I have to go to the bank today.

☐ Is there a bank near here?

☐ I don’t like going to the dentist.

☐ My sister is a dentist.

We say ‘once a week / three times a day / £1.50 a kilo’ etc.:

☐ ‘How often do you go to the cinema?’ ‘About once a month.’

☐ ‘How much are those potatoes?’ ‘£1.50 a kilo.’

☐ Helen works eight hours a day, six days a week.
Exercises

72.1 Put in a/an or the.
1 This morning I bought ___ newspaper and ___ magazine. ___ newspaper is in my bag, but I can't remember where I put ___ magazine.
2 I saw ___ accident this morning. ___ car crashed into ___ tree. ___ driver of ___ car wasn't hurt, but ___ car was badly damaged.
3 There are two cars parked outside: ___ blue one and ___ grey one. ___ blue one belongs to my neighbours; I don't know who ___ owner of ___ grey one is.
4 My friends live in ___ old house in ___ small village. There is ___ beautiful garden behind ___ house. I would like to have ___ garden like that.

72.2 Put in a/an or the.
1 a This house is very nice. Has it got ___ garden?
b It's a beautiful day. Let's sit in ___ garden.
c I like living in this house, but it's a pity that ___ garden is so small.
2 a Can you recommend ___ good restaurant?
b We had dinner in ___ very nice restaurant.
c We had dinner in ___ best restaurant in town.
3 a She has ___ French name, but in fact she's English, not French.
b What's ___ name of that man we met yesterday?
c We stayed at a very nice hotel - I can't remember ___ name now.
4 a There isn't ___ airport near where I live. ___ nearest airport is 70 miles away.
b Our flight was delayed. We had to wait at ___ airport for three hours.
c Excuse me, please. Can you tell me how to get to ___ airport?
5 a 'Are you going away next week?' ‘No, ___ week after next.’
b I'm going away for ___ week in September.
c Gary has a part-time job. He works three mornings ___ week.

72.3 Put in a/an or the where necessary.
1 Would you like ___ apple?
2 How often do you go to dentist?
3 Could you close door, please?
4 I'm sorry, I didn't mean to do that. It was mistake.
5 Excuse me, where is bus station, please?
6 I have problem. Can you help me?
7 I'm just going to post office. I won't be long.
8 There were no chairs, so we sat on floor.
9 Have you finished with book I lent you?
10 My sister has just got job in bank in Manchester.
11 We live in small flat in city centre.
12 There's supermarket at end of street I live in.

72.4 Answer these questions about yourself. Where possible, use the structure in Section D (once a week / three times a day etc).
1 How often do you go to the cinema? ___ Three or four times a year. ___
2 How much does it cost to hire a car in your country? About ___ a day.
3 How often do you go to the cinema?
4 How often do you go away on holiday?
5 What's the usual speed limit in towns in your country?
6 How much sleep do you need?
7 How often do you go out in the evening?
8 How much television do you watch (on average)?
The 1

We use the when there is only one of something:

- What is the longest river in the world? (there is only one longest river)
- The earth goes round the sun and the moon goes round the earth.
- Have you ever crossed the equator?
- I’m going away at the end of this month.

Don’t forget the:

- Paris is the capital of France. (not Paris is capital of …)

But we use a/an to say what kind of thing something is (see Unit 71B). Compare the and a:

- The sun is a star. (= one of many stars)
- The hotel we stayed at was a very nice hotel.

We say: the sky, the sea, the ground, the country, the environment.

- We looked up at all the stars in the sky. (not in sky)
- Would you like to live in the country? (= not in a town)
- We must do more to protect the environment. (= the natural world around us)

But we say space (without the) when we mean ‘space in the universe’. Compare:

- There are millions of stars in space. (not in the space)
- I tried to park my car, but the space was too small.

We use the before same (the same):

- Your pullover is the same colour as mine. (not is same colour)
- ‘Are these keys the same?’ ‘No, they’re different.’

We say: (go to) the cinema, the theatre.

- I go to the cinema a lot, but I haven’t been to the theatre for ages.

When we say the cinema / the theatre, we do not necessarily mean a specific cinema or theatre.

We usually say the radio, but television (without the). Compare:

- I listen to the radio a lot. but I watch television a lot.
- We heard the news on the radio. but We watched the news on television.

The television = the television set:

- Can you turn off the television, please?

Breakfast lunch dinner

We do not normally use the with the names of meals (breakfast, lunch etc.):

- What did you have for breakfast?
- We had lunch in a very nice restaurant.
- What time is dinner?

But we use a if there is an adjective before breakfast, lunch etc.:

- We had a very nice lunch. (not We had very nice lunch)

Platform 5 Room 126 etc.

We do not use the before noun + number. For example, we say:

- Our train leaves from Platform 5. (not the Platform 5)
- (in a shop) Have you got these shoes in size 43? (not the size 43)

In the same way, we say: Room 126 (in a hotel), page 29 (of a book), question 3 (in an exam), Gate 10 (at an airport) etc.
Exercises

73.1 Put in the or a/an where necessary. If no word is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 A: Where did you have _______ lunch?
   B: We went to _______ restaurant.

2 A: Did you have _______ nice holiday?
   B: Yes, it was _______ best holiday I’ve ever had.

3 A: Where’s _______ nearest shop?
   B: There’s one at _______ end of this street.

4 A: Do you often listen to _______ radio?
   B: No. In fact I haven’t got _______ radio.

5 A: Would you like to travel in _______ space?
   B: Yes, I’d love to go to _______ moon.

6 A: Do you go to _______ cinema very often?
   B: No, not very often. But I watch a lot of films on _______ television.

7 A: It was _______ nice day yesterday, wasn’t it?
   B: Yes, it was beautiful. We went for a walk by _______ sea.

8 A: What did you have for _______ breakfast this morning?
   B: Nothing. I never eat _______ breakfast.

9 A: Excuse me, where is _______ Room 25, please?
   B: It’s on _______ second floor.

10 A: We spent all our money because we stayed at _______ most expensive hotel in town.
    B: Why didn’t you stay at _______ cheaper hotel?

73.2 Put in the where necessary. If you don’t need the, leave the space empty.

1 I haven’t been to _______ cinema for ages.

2 I lay down on _______ ground and looked up at _______ sky.

3 Sarah spends most of her free time watching _______ television.

4 _______ television was on, but nobody was watching it.

5 Lisa and I arrived at _______ same time.

6 Have you had _______ dinner yet?

7 You’ll find _______ information you need at _______ top of _______ page 15.

8 What’s _______ capital city of Canada?

73.3 Put in the or a/an where necessary. (See Unit 72 for a/an and the if necessary.)

1 Sun is star. _______ sun is _______ star.

2 Paul lives in small village in country. ________________

3 Moon goes round earth every 27 days. ________________

4 I’m fed up with doing same thing every day. ________________

5 It was very hot day. It was hottest day of year. ________________

6 I don’t usually have lunch, but I always eat good breakfast. ________________

7 If you live in foreign country, you should try and learn language. ________________

8 We missed our train because we were waiting on wrong platform. ________________

9 Next train to London leaves from Platform 3. ________________

73.4 Complete the sentences using the following. Use the where necessary.

breakfast cinema dinner gate Gate 21 question 8 sea

1 ‘Are you going out this evening?’ ‘Yes, after _______ dinner.’

2 There was no wind, so _______ was very calm.

3 The test wasn’t too difficult, but I couldn’t answer _______.

4 ‘I’m going to _______ tonight.’ ‘Are you? What are you going to see?’

5 I didn’t have time for _______ this morning because I was in a hurry.

6 Oh, _______ is open. I must have forgotten to shut it.

7 (airport announcement) Flight AB123 to Rome is now boarding at _______.

-> Additional exercise 29 (page 319)

147
The 2 (school / the school etc.)

Compare school and the school:

Alison is ten years old. Every day she goes to school. She's at school now. School begins at 9 and finishes at 3.

We say a child goes to school or is at school (as a pupil). We are not necessarily thinking of a specific school. We are thinking of school as a general idea.

Today Alison's mother wants to speak to her daughter's teacher. So she has gone to the school to see her. She's at the school now. Alison's mother is not a pupil. She is not 'at school', she doesn't 'go to school'. If she wants to see Alison's teacher, she goes to the school (= Alison's school, a specific building).

We use prison, hospital, university, college and church in a similar way. We do not use the when we are thinking of the general idea of these places and what they are used for. Compare:

- Ken's brother is in prison for robbery. (He is a prisoner. We are not thinking of a specific prison.)
- Joe had an accident last week. He was taken to hospital. He's still in hospital now. (as a patient)
- When I leave school, I want to go to university/college.
- Sally's father goes to church every Sunday. (to a religious service)
- Ken went to the prison to visit his brother. (He went as a visitor, not as a prisoner.)
- Jane has gone to the hospital to visit Joe. She's at the hospital now. (as a visitor)
- Excuse me, where is the university, please? (= the university buildings)
- Some workmen went to the church to repair the roof. (not for a religious service)

With most other places, you need the. For example, the cinema, the bank (see Units 72C and 73D).

Bed  work  home

We say go to bed / be in bed etc. (not the bed):
- It's time to go to bed now.
- Do you ever have breakfast in bed?

but  I sat down on the bed. (a specific piece of furniture)

go to work / be at work / start work / finish work etc. (not the work):
- Chris didn't go to work yesterday.
- What time do you usually finish work?

go home / come home / arrive home / get home / be at home etc.:
- It's late. Let's go home.
- Will you be at home tomorrow afternoon?

We say go to sea / be at sea (without the) when the meaning is 'go/be on a voyage':
- Keith works on ships. He is at sea most of the time.

but  I'd like to live near the sea.
- It can be dangerous to swim in the sea.
Exercises

74.1 Complete each sentence using a preposition (to/at/in etc.) + one of these words:

bed home hospital hospital prison school university work

1 Two people were injured in the accident and were taken __________ hospital.
2 In Britain, children from the age of five have to go _____________________________.
3 Mark didn’t go out last night. He stayed ____________________________________.
4 There is a lot of traffic in the morning when everybody is going _____________________.
5 Cathy’s mother has just had an operation. She is still _____________________________.
6 When Julia leaves school, she wants to study economics ___________________________.
7 Bill never gets up before 9 o’clock. It’s 8.30 now, so he is still _________________________.
8 If you commit a serious crime, you could be sent _____________________________________.

74.2 Complete the sentences with the word given (school etc.). Use the where necessary.

1 (school)
   a Every term parents are invited to __________ school __________ to meet the teachers.
   b Why aren’t your children at __________ school __________ today? Are they ill?
   c When he was younger, Ted hated _____________________________.
   d What time does ___________ usually start in the mornings in your country?
   e A: How do your children get home from ___________? By bus?
      b: No, they walk. ___________ isn’t very far.
   f What sort of job does Jenny want to do when she leaves ________________________?
   g There were some people waiting outside: ___________ to meet their children.

2 (university)
   a In your country do many people go to ________________________?
   b If you want to get a degree, you normally have to study at _________________________.
   c This is only a small town, but ___________________________ is one of the biggest in the country.

3 (hospital)
   a My brother has always been very healthy. He’s never been in _________________________.
   b When Ann was ill, I went to ___________________________ to visit her. When I was there,
      I met Lisa who is a nurse at ___________________________.
   c Peter was injured in an accident and was kept in ___________________________ for a few days.

4 (church)
   a John’s mother is a regular churchgoer. She goes to ___________________________ every Sunday.
   b John himself doesn’t go to ___________________________.
   c John went to ___________________________ to take some photographs of the building.

5 (prison)
   a In some places people are in ___________________________ because of their political beliefs.
   b A few days ago the fire brigade were called to ___________________________ to put out a fire.
   c The judge decided to fine the man £500 instead of sending him to ___________________________.

6 (home/work/bed)
   a I like to read in ___________________________ before I go to sleep.
   b It’s nice to travel around, but there’s no place like ___________________________!
   c Shall we meet after ___________________________ tomorrow evening?
   d If I’m feeling tired, I go to ___________________________ early.
   e What time do you usually start ___________________________ in the morning?
   f The economic situation was very bad. Many people were out of ___________________________.

7 (sea)
   a There’s a nice view from the window. You can see ___________________________.
   b It was a long voyage. We were at ___________________________ for four weeks.
   c I love swimming in ___________________________.

→ Additional exercise 29 (page 319)
The 3 (children / the children)

When we are talking about things or people in general, we do not use the:

- I'm afraid of dogs. (not the dogs)
  (dogs = dogs in general, not a specific group of dogs)
- Doctors are paid more than teachers.
- Do you collect stamps?
- Crime is a problem in most big cities. (not The crime)
- Life has changed a lot in the last thirty years. (not The life)
- Do you like classical music / Chinese food / fast cars?
- My favourite sport is football/skiing/athletics.
- My favourite subject at school was history/physics/English.

We say 'most people / most books / most cars' etc. (not the most ...):
- Most hotels accept credit cards. (not The most hotels)

We use the when we mean specific things or people.

Compare:

**In general** (without the)
- Children learn from playing.
  (= children in general)
- I couldn't live without music.
- All cars have wheels.
- Sugar isn't very good for you.
- English people drink a lot of tea.
  (= English people in general)

**Specific people or things** (with the)
- We took the children to the zoo.
  (= a specific group, perhaps the speaker's children)
- The film wasn't very good, but I liked the music. (= the music in the film)
- All the cars in this car park belong to people who work here.
- Can you pass the sugar, please?
  (= the sugar on the table)
- The English people I know drink a lot of tea.
  (= only the English people I know, not English people in general)

The difference between 'something in general' and 'something specific' is not always very clear.

Compare:

**In general** (without the)
- I like working with people.
  (= people in general)
- I like working with people who are lively. (not all people, but 'people who are lively' is still a general idea)
- Do you like coffee?
  (= coffee in general)
- Do you like strong black coffee?
  (not all coffee, but 'strong black coffee' is still a general idea)

**Specific people or things** (with the)
- I like the people I work with.
  (= a specific group of people)
- Did you like the coffee we had after dinner last night? (= specific coffee)
Exercises

75.1 Choose four of these things and write whether you like them or not:

- boxing
- cats
- fast food restaurants
- football
- hot weather
- maths
- opera
- small children
- rock music
- zoos

Begin each sentence with one of these:

I like ... / I don't like ...
I love ... / I hate ...
I don't mind ...
I'm interested in ... / I'm not interested in ...

1. I don't like hot weather very much.

2. ...

3. ...

4. ...

5. ...

75.2 Complete the sentences using the following. Use the where necessary.

- (the) basketball
- (the) grass
- (the) patience
- (the) people
- (the) questions
- (the) meat
- (the) information
- (the) shops
- (the) history
- (the) water
- (the) spiders
- (the) lies

1. My favourite sport is basketball.
2. The information we were given wasn't correct.
3. Some people are afraid of spiders.
4. A vegetarian is somebody who doesn't eat meat.
5. The test wasn't very difficult. I answered it without difficulty.
6. Do you know the people who live next door?
7. History is the study of the past.
8. George always tells the truth. He never tells lies.
9. It was late when we arrived in the town, and the shops were shut.
10. The water in the pool didn't look very clean, so we didn't go for a swim.
11. Don't sit on the grass. It's wet after the rain.
12. You need the water to teach young children.

75.3 Choose the correct form, with or without the.

1. I'm afraid of dogs / the dogs. (dogs is correct)
2. Can you pass salt / the salt, please? (the salt is correct)
3. Apples / The apples are good for you.
4. Look at apples / the apples on that tree! They're very big.
5. Women / The women live longer than men / the men.
6. I don't drink tea / the tea. I don't like it.
7. We had a very good meal. Vegetables / The vegetables were especially good.
8. Life / The life is strange sometimes. Some very strange things happen.
9. I like skiing / the skiing, but I'm not very good at it.
10. Who are people / the people in this photograph?
11. What makes people / the people violent? What causes aggression / the aggression?
12. All books / All the books on the top shelf belong to me.
13. Don't stay in that hotel. It's very noisy and beds / the beds are very uncomfortable.
14. A pacifist is somebody who is against war / the war.
15. First World War / The First World War lasted from 1914 until 1918.
16. I'd like to go to Egypt and see Pyramids / the Pyramids.
17. Someone gave me a book about history / the history of modern art / the modern art.
18. Ron and Brenda got married, but marriage / the marriage didn't last very long.
19. Most people / The most people believe that marriage / the marriage and family life / the family life are the basis of society / the society.
The 4 (the giraffe / the telephone / the piano etc. ; the + adjective)

Study these sentences:
- The giraffe is the tallest of all animals.
- The telephone is an excellent means of transport.
- When was the telephone invented?
- The dollar is the currency (= the money) of the United States.

In these examples, the ... does not mean one specific thing. The giraffe = a specific type of animal, not a specific giraffe. We use the (+ singular countable noun) in this way to talk about a type of animal, machine etc.

In the same way we use the for musical instruments:
- Can you play the guitar?
- The piano is my favourite instrument.

Compare a and the:
- I'd like to have a piano.  
  but I can't play the piano.
- We saw a giraffe at the zoo.  
  but The giraffe is my favourite animal.

Note that we use man (= human beings in general / the human race) without the:
- What do you know about the origins of man?  
  (not the man)

The + adjective

We use the + adjective (without a noun) to talk about groups of people, especially:

| the young | the rich | the sick | the blind | the injured |
| the old   | the poor | the disabled | the deaf | the dead |
| the elderly | the homeless | | | |

The young = young people, the rich = rich people etc. :
- Do you think the rich should pay higher taxes?
- The government has promised to provide more money to help the homeless.

These expressions are always plural in meaning. For example, you cannot say 'a young' or 'the injured' for one person. You must say 'a young person', 'the injured woman' etc.

Note that we say 'the poor' (not the poors), 'the young' (not the youngs) etc.

The + nationality

You can use the + nationality adjectives that end in -ch or -sh (the French / the English / the Spanish etc.) The meaning is 'the people of that country':
- The French are famous for their food. (= the people of France)

The French / the English etc. are plural in meaning. We do not say 'a French / an English'.

You have to say a Frenchman / an Englishwoman etc.

You can also use the + nationality words ending in -ese (the Chinese / the Sudanese / the Japanese etc.):
- The Chinese invented printing.

But these words can also be singular (a Japanese, a Sudanese etc.).
Also a Swiss (singular) and the Swiss (= the people of Switzerland)

With other nationalities, the plural noun ends in -s. For example:
- an Italian → Italians  
- a Mexican → Mexicans  
- a Turk → Turks

With these words (Italians etc.), we do not normally use the to talk about the people in general (see Unit 75).
Exercises

76.1 Answer the questions. Choose the right answer from the box. Don't forget the. Use a dictionary if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>animals</th>
<th>birds</th>
<th>inventions</th>
<th>currencies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tiger</td>
<td>eagle</td>
<td>telephone</td>
<td>dollar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elephant</td>
<td>penguin</td>
<td>wheel</td>
<td>peso</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rabbit</td>
<td>swan</td>
<td>telescope</td>
<td>euro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheetah</td>
<td>owl</td>
<td>laser</td>
<td>rupee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giraffe</td>
<td>parrot</td>
<td>helicopter</td>
<td>rouble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kangaroo</td>
<td>robin</td>
<td>typewriter</td>
<td>yen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. a Which of the animals is tallest? 
   b Which animal can run fastest? 
   c Which of these animals is found in Australia? 
2. a Which of these birds has a long neck? 
   b Which of these birds cannot fly? 
   c Which bird flies at night? 
3. a Which of these inventions is oldest? 
   b Which one is most recent? 
   c Which one was especially important for astronomy? 
4. a What is the currency of India? 
   b What is the currency of Canada? 
   c And the currency of your country? 

76.2 Put in the or a.

1. When was the telephone invented?
2. Can you play a musical instrument?
3. Jill plays the violin in an orchestra.
4. There was a piano in the corner of the room.
5. Can you play the piano?
6. Our society is based on a family.
7. Martin comes from a large family.
8. A computer has changed the way we live.

76.3 Complete these sentences using the + the following:

injured poor rich sick unemployed young

1. The young have the future in their hands.
2. Ambulances arrived at the scene of the accident and took someone to hospital.
3. Life is all right if you have a job, but things are not so easy for someone.
4. Julia has been a nurse all her life. She has spent her life caring for someone.
5. In England there is an old story about a man called Robin Hood. It is said that he robbed someone and gave the money to someone.

76.4 What do you call the people of these countries?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>one person (a/an ...)</th>
<th>the people in general</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>a Canadian</td>
<td>Canadians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>England</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and your country</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Names with and without the 1

We do not use the with names of people ('Helen', 'Helen Taylor' etc.). In the same way, we do not normally use the with names of places. For example:

- continents: Africa (not the Africa), Europe, South America
- countries, states etc.: France (not the France), Japan, Switzerland, Texas
- islands: Sicily, Bermuda, Tasmania
- cities, towns etc.: Cairo, New York, Bangkok
- mountains: Everest, Etna, Kilimanjaro

But we use the in names with Republic, Kingdom, States etc.:

- the Czech Republic
- the Dominican Republic
- the United Kingdom (the UK)
- the United States of America (the USA)

Compare:

☐ Have you been to Canada or the United States?

When we use Mr/Mrs/Captain/Doctor etc. + a name, we do not use the. So we say:

- Mr Johnson / Doctor Johnson / Captain Johnson / President Johnson etc. (not the ...)
- Uncle Robert / Saint Catherine / Princess Maria etc. (not the ...)

Compare:

☐ We called the doctor.

- We called Doctor Johnson. (not the Doctor Johnson)

We use mount (= mountain) and lake in the same way (without the):

- Mount Everest (not the ...)
- Mount Etna
- Lake Superior
- Lake Constance

☐ They live near the lake.

- They live near Lake Constance. (not the Lake Constance)

We use the with the names of oceans, seas, rivers and canals:

- the Atlantic (Ocean)
- the Indian Ocean
- the Mediterranean (Sea)
- the Red Sea
- the Channel (between
- the Amazon
- the Nile
- France and Britain)
- the Suez Canal

We use the with the names of deserts:

- the Sahara (Desert)
- the Gobi Desert

We use the with plural names of people and places:

- people: the Taylors (= Taylor family), the Johnsons
- countries: the Netherlands, the Philippines, the United States
- groups of islands: the Canaries / the Canary Islands, the Bahamas
- mountain ranges: the Rocky Mountains / the Rockies, the Andes, the Alps

☐ The highest mountain in the Alps is Mont Blanc.

We say:

- the north (of Brazil) but northern Brazil (without the)
- the south-east (of Spain) but south-eastern Spain

Compare:

☐ Sweden is in northern Europe; Spain is in the south.

Also the Middle East, the Far East

We also use north/south etc. (without the) in the names of some regions and countries:

- North America
- South Africa

Note that on maps, the is not usually included in the name.

Names with and without the 2 ➔ Unit 78
Exercises

Unit 77

77.1 Put in the where necessary. Leave the space empty if the sentence is already complete.
1. Who is ________ Doctor Johnson?  (the sentence is complete without the)
2. I was ill, so I went to see ________ doctor.
3. The most powerful person in ________ United States is ________ president.
4. ________ President Kennedy was assassinated in 1963.
5. Do you know ________ Wilsons? They’re a very nice couple.
6. Do you know ________ Professor Brown’s phone number?

77.2 Some of these sentences are correct, but some need the (sometimes more than once). Correct the sentences where necessary.
1. Everest was first climbed in 1953.  
2. Milan is in north of Italy.  
3. Africa is much larger than Europe.  
4. Last year I visited Mexico and United States.  
5. South of England is warmer than north.  
6. Portugal is in western Europe.  
7. France and Britain are separated by Channel.  
8. Jim has travelled a lot in Middle East.  
9. Chicago is on Lake Michigan.  
10. Next year we’re going skiing in Swiss Alps.  
11. UK consists of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.  
12. Seychelles are a group of islands in Indian Ocean.  
13. Africa’s highest mountain is Kilimanjaro (5895 metres).  
14. River Volga flows into Caspian Sea.

77.3 Here are some geography questions. Choose the right answer from one of the boxes and write the if necessary. You do not need all the names in the boxes. Use an atlas if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>continents</th>
<th>countries</th>
<th>oceans and seas</th>
<th>mountains</th>
<th>rivers and canals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Africa</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>Atlantic</td>
<td>Alps</td>
<td>Amazon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia</td>
<td>Denmark</td>
<td>Arctic</td>
<td>Andes</td>
<td>Rhine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>Indonesia</td>
<td>Indian Ocean</td>
<td>Himalayas</td>
<td>Danube</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe</td>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>Pacific</td>
<td>Rockies</td>
<td>Thames</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North America</td>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>Black Sea</td>
<td>Suez Canal</td>
<td>Nile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South America</td>
<td>United States</td>
<td>Mediterranean</td>
<td>Volga</td>
<td>Volga</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>number</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>What do you have to cross to travel from Europe to America? ________ the Atlantic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Where is Argentina?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Which is the longest river in Africa?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Of which country is Stockholm the capital?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Of which country is Washington the capital?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>What is the name of the mountain range in the west of North America?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>What is the name of the sea between Africa and Europe?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Which is the smallest continent in the world?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>What is the name of the ocean between North America and Asia?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>What is the name of the ocean between Africa and Australia?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Which river flows through London?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Which river flows through Vienna, Budapest and Belgrade?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Of which country is Bangkok the capital?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>What joins the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Which is the longest river in South America?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Names with and without the 2

A

Names without the

We do not use the with names of most city streets/roads/squares/parks etc.:

- Wall Street (not the ...)
- Fifth Avenue
- Hyde Park
- Queens Road
- Broadway
- Times Square

Names of important public buildings and institutions (for example, airports, stations, universities) are often two words:

- Manchester Airport
- Harvard University

The first word is the name of a place (‘Manchester’) or a person (‘Harvard’). These names are usually without the. In the same way, we say:

- Victoria Station (not the ...)
- Canterbury Cathedral
- Edinburgh Castle
- Buckingham Palace
- Cambridge University
- Sydney Harbour

Compare:

Buckingham Palace (not the ...) but the Royal Palace

(‘Royal’ is an adjective – it is not a name like ‘Buckingham’.)

B

Most other buildings have names with the. For example:

- hotels/restaurants the Sheraton Hotel, the Bombay Restaurant, the Holiday Inn
- theatres/cinemas the Palace Theatre, the Odeon (cinema)
- museums/galleries the Guggenheim Museum, the Hayward Gallery
- other buildings the Empire State (Building), the White House, the Eiffel Tower

We often leave out the noun:

- the Sheraton (Hotel)
- the Palace (Theatre)
- the Guggenheim (Museum)

Some names are only the + noun, for example:

- the Acropolis
- the Kremlin
- the Pentagon

C

Names with of usually have the. For example:

- the Bank of England
- the Museum of Modern Art
- the Great Wall of China
- the Tower of London

Note that we say:

- the University of Cambridge but Cambridge University (without the)

D

Many shops, restaurants, hotels, banks etc. are named after the people who started them. These names end in -s or -s. We do not use the with these names:

- Lloyds Bank (not the ...)
- Brown’s Restaurant
- Macy’s (department store)

Churches are often named after saints:

- St John’s Church (not the St Johns Church)
- St Patrick’s Cathedral

E

Most newspapers and many organisations have names with the:

- newspapers the Washington Post, the Financial Times, the Sun
- organisations the European Union, the BBC (= British Broadcasting Corporation), the Red Cross

Names of companies, airlines etc. are usually without the:

- Fiat (not the Fiat)
- Sony
- British Airways
- Kodak
- IBM
- Yale University Press

156

Names with and without the 1 → Unit 77
Exercises

78.1 Use the map to answer the questions. Write the name of the place and the street it is in. Use the if necessary. (Remember that on maps we do not normally use the.)

1. Is there a cinema near here? Yes, the Odeon in Market Street.
2. Is there a supermarket near here? Yes, in.
3. Is there a hotel near here? Yes, in.
4. Is there a church near here? Yes,.
5. Is there a museum near here? Yes,.
6. Is there a bookshop near here? Yes, at the end of.
7. Is there a park near here? There are two.
8. Is there a restaurant near here? or.

78.2 Where are the following? Use the where necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acropolis</th>
<th>Broadway</th>
<th>Buckingham Palace</th>
<th>Eiffel Tower</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kremlin</td>
<td>White House</td>
<td>Gatwick Airport</td>
<td>Times Square</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Times Square is in New York.
2. is in Paris.
3. is in London.
4. is in Washington.
5. is in Moscow.
6. is in New York.
7. is in Athens.
8. is near London.

78.3 Choose the correct form, with or without the.

1. Have you ever been to British Museum / the British Museum? (the British Museum is correct)
2. Hyde Park / The Hyde Park is a very large park in central London.
3. Another park in central London is St James’s Park / the St James’s Park.
4. Grand Hotel / The Grand Hotel is in Baker Street / the Baker Street.
5. Dublin Airport / The Dublin Airport is situated about 12 kilometres from the city centre.
6. Frank is a student at Liverpool University / the Liverpool University.
7. If you’re looking for a department store, I would recommend Harrison’s / the Harrison’s.
8. If you’re looking for a place to have lunch, I would recommend Ship Inn / the Ship Inn.
10. You should go to Science Museum / the Science Museum. It’s very interesting.
11. John works for IBM / the IBM now. He used to work for British Telecom / the British Telecom.
12. ‘Which cinema are you going to this evening?’ ‘Classic / The Classic.’
13. I’d like to go to China and see Great Wall / the Great Wall.
14. ‘Which newspaper do you want?’ ‘Herald / The Herald.’
Singular and plural

Sometimes we use a plural noun for one thing that has two parts. For example:

- trousers (two legs)
  also jeans/tights/shorts/pants
- pyjamas (top and bottom)
- glasses
- binoculars
- scissors

These words are plural, so they take a plural verb:
- My trousers are too long. (not my trousers is)

You can also use a pair of + these words:
- Those are nice jeans. or That's a nice pair of jeans. (not a nice jeans)
- I need some new glasses. or I need a new pair of glasses.

Some nouns end in -ics, but are not usually plural. For example:
- athletics
economics electronics
gymnastics maths (= mathematics)
physics politics
- Gymnastics is my favourite sport. (not Gymnastics are)

News is not plural (see Unit 70B):
- What time is the news on television? (not are the news)

Some words ending in -s can be singular or plural. For example:
- means a means of transport
- series a television series
- species a species of bird

Some singular nouns are often used with a plural verb. For example:
- audience committee company family firm government staff team

These nouns are all groups of people. We often think of them as a number of people (= they), not as one thing (= it). So we often use a plural verb:
- The government (= they) want to increase taxes.
- The staff at the school (= they) are not happy with their new working conditions.

In the same way, we often use a plural verb after the name of a sports team or a company:
- Italy are playing Brazil next week (in a football match).
- Shell have increased the price of petrol.

A singular verb (The government wants ... / Shell has ... etc.) is also possible.

We use a plural verb with police:
- The police are investigating the murder, but haven't arrested anyone yet.
  (not The police is ... hasn't)

Note that we say a police officer / a policeman / a policewoman (not a police).

We do not often use the plural of person ('persons'). We normally use people (a plural word):
- He's a nice person. but They are nice people. (not nice persons)
- Many people don't have enough to eat. (not Many people doesn't)

We think of a sum of money, a period of time, a distance etc. as one thing. So we use a singular verb:
- Twenty thousand pounds (= it) was stolen in the robbery. (not were stolen)
- Three years (= it) is a long time to be without a job. (not Three years are)
- Six miles is a long way to walk every day.
Exercises

79.1 Complete each sentence using a word from Sections A or B. Sometimes you need a or some.

1. My eyesight isn’t very good. I need ____________.
2. ____________ is a group of animals or plants that have the same characteristics.
3. Footballers don’t wear trousers when they play. They wear ____________.
4. The bicycle is ____________ of transport.
5. The bicycle and the car are ____________ of transport.
6. I want to cut this piece of material. I need ____________.
7. A friend of mine is writing ____________ of articles for the local newspaper.
8. There are a lot of American TV ____________ shown on British television.
9. While we were out walking, we saw many different ____________ of bird.

79.2 In each example the words on the left are connected with an activity (for example, a sport or an academic subject). Write the name of the activity. The beginning of the word is given.

1. calculate ____________
2. government ____________
3. finance ____________
4. running ____________
5. light ____________
6. exercises ____________
7. computer ____________

79.3 Choose the correct form of the verb, singular or plural. In one sentence either the singular or plural verb is possible.

1. Gymnastics ____________ my favourite sport. (is is correct)
2. The trousers you bought for me ____________ fit me.
3. The police ____________ to interview two men about the robbery last week.
4. Physics ____________ my best subject at school.
6. Fortunately the news ____________ as bad as we expected.
7. Where does ____________ your family live?
8. Three days ____________ long enough for a good holiday.
9. I can’t find my binoculars. Do you know where ____________ they are?
10. It’s a nice place to visit. The people ____________ very friendly.
11. ____________ the police know how the accident happened?
12. I don’t like very hot weather. Thirty degrees ____________ too hot for me.

79.4 Most of these sentences are wrong. Correct them where necessary.

1. Three years are a long time to be without a job.
2. The government want to increase taxes.
3. Susan was wearing a black jeans.
4. Brazil are playing Italy in a football match next week.
5. I like Martin and Jane. They’re very nice persons.
6. I need more than ten pounds. Ten pounds aren’t enough.
7. I’m going to buy a new pyjama.
8. The committee haven’t made a decision yet.
9. There was a police directing traffic in the street.
10. What is the police going to do?
11. This scissors isn’t very sharp.
Noun + noun (a tennis ball / a headache)

You can use two nouns together (noun + noun) to mean one thing/person/idea etc. For example:
- a tennis ball
- a bank manager
- a road accident
- income tax
- the city centre

The first noun is like an adjective. It tells us what kind of thing/person/idea etc. For example:
- a tennis ball = a ball used to play tennis
- a road accident = an accident that happens on the road
- income tax = tax that you pay on your income
- the water temperature = the temperature of the water
- a London doctor = a doctor from London
- my life story = the story of my life

So you can say:
- a television camera
- a television programme
- a television studio
- a television producer
(theser are all different things or people to do with television)
- language problems
- marriage problems
- health problems
- work problems
(theser are all different kinds of problems)

Compare:
- garden vegetables (= vegetables that are grown in a garden)
- a vegetable garden (= a garden where vegetables are grown)

Sometimes the first word ends in -ing. Usually these are things used for doing something:
- a frying pan (= a pan for frying)
- a washing machine
- a swimming pool
- a dining room

Sometimes there are more than two nouns together:
- I waited at the hotel reception desk.
- We watched the World Swimming Championships on television.
- If you want to play table tennis (= a game), you need a table tennis table (= a table).

When two nouns are together like this, sometimes we write them as one word and sometimes as two separate words. For example:
- a headache
- toothpaste
- a weekend
- a car park
- a road sign

There are no clear rules for this. If you are not sure, write two words.

Note the difference between:
- a sugar bowl (perhaps empty) and a bowl of sugar (= a bowl with sugar in it)
- a shopping bag (perhaps empty) and a bag of shopping (= a bag full of shopping)

When we use noun + noun, the first noun is like an adjective. It is normally singular, but the meaning is often plural. For example: a bookshop is a shop where you can buy books, an apple tree is a tree that has apples.

In the same way we say:
- a three-hour journey (= a journey that takes three hours)
- a ten-pound note (not pounds)
- a four-week course (not weeks)
- two 14-year-old girls (not years)
- a six-page letter (not pages)

Compare:
- It was a four-week course. but The course lasted four weeks.
Exercises

80.1 What do we call these things and people?
1. A ticket for a concert is __________
2. Problems concerning health are __________
3. A magazine about computers is __________
4. Photographs taken on your holiday are your __________
5. Chocolate made with milk is __________
6. Somebody whose job is to inspect factories is __________
7. A horse that runs in races is __________
8. A race for horses is __________
9. A hotel in central London is __________
10. The results of your exams are your __________
11. A scandal involving an oil company is __________
12. A person who works at a car factory is __________
13. A scheme to improve a road is __________
14. A course that lasts five days is __________
15. A question that has two parts is __________
16. A girl who is seven years old is __________

80.2 Answer the questions using two of the following words each time:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>accident</th>
<th>belt</th>
<th>card</th>
<th>credit</th>
<th>editor</th>
<th>forecast</th>
<th>newspaper</th>
<th>weather</th>
<th>window</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. This can be caused by bad driving. __________
2. If you’re staying at a hotel, you need to remember this. __________
3. You should wear this when you’re in a car. __________
4. You can often use this to pay for things instead of cash. __________
5. If you want to know if it’s going to rain, you can __________
6. This person is a top journalist. __________
7. You might stop to look in this when you’re walking __________

80.3 Complete the sentences using the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>minute(s)</th>
<th>60 minute(s)</th>
<th>two hour(s)</th>
<th>five day(s)</th>
<th>two year(s)</th>
<th>500 year(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>six mile(s)</td>
<td>six mile(s)</td>
<td>20 pound(s)</td>
<td>five course(s)</td>
<td>ten-page(s)</td>
<td>-450-page(s)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes you need the singular (day/page etc.) and sometimes the plural (days/pages etc.).

1. It’s quite a long book. There are __________ pages.
2. A few days ago I received a __________ letter from Julia.
3. I didn’t have any change. I only had a __________ note.
4. At work in the morning I usually have a __________ break for coffee.
5. There are __________ in an hour.
6. It’s only a __________ flight from London to Madrid.
7. It was a very big meal. There were __________ .
8. Mary has just started a new job. She’s got a __________ contract.
9. The oldest building in the city is the __________ castle.
10. I work __________ a week. Saturday and Sunday are free.
11. We went for a long walk in the country. We must have walked __________.
12. We went for a __________ walk in the country.
-s (your sister’s name) and of ... (the name of the book)

We use -s (apostrophe + s) mostly for people or animals:
- Tom’s computer isn’t working. (not the computer of Tom)
- How old are Chris’s children? (not the children of Chris)
- What’s (= What is) your sister’s name?
- What’s Tom’s sister’s name?
- Be careful. Don’t step on the cat’s tail.

Note that you can use -s without a following noun:
- This isn’t my book. It’s my sister’s. (= my sister’s book)

We do not always use -s for people. For example, we would use of ... in this sentence:
- What was the name of the man who phoned you? (‘the man who phoned you’ is too long to be followed by -s)

Note that we say a woman’s hat (= a hat for a woman), a boy’s name (= a name for a boy), a bird’s egg (= an egg laid by a bird) etc.

With a singular noun we use -s:
- my sister’s room (= her room – one sister) Mr Carter’s house (= his house)

With a plural noun (sisters, friends etc.) we put an apostrophe at the end of the word (-s’):
- my sisters’ room (= their room – two or more sisters)
- the Carters’ house (= their house – Mr and Mrs Carter)

If a plural noun does not end in -s (for example men/women/children/people) we use -s:
- the men’s changing room a children’s book (= a book for children)

Note that you can use -s after more than one noun:
- Jack and Karen’s wedding Mr and Mrs Carter’s house

For things, ideas etc., we normally use of (... of the book / ... of the restaurant etc.):
- the door of the garage (not the garage’s door)
- the name of the book the owner of the restaurant

Sometimes the structure noun + noun is possible (see Unit 80):
- the garage door the restaurant owner

We say the beginning/end/middle of ... , the top/bottom of ... , the front/back/side of ...:
- the beginning of the month (not the month’s beginning)
- the top of the hill the back of the car

You can usually use -s or of ... for an organisation (= a group of people). So you can say:
- the government’s decision or the decision of the government
- the company’s success or the success of the company

It is also possible to use -s for places. So you can say:
- the city’s streets the world’s population Italy’s prime minister

You can also use -s with time expressions (yesterday / next week etc.):
- Do you still have yesterday’s newspaper?
- Next week’s meeting has been cancelled.

In the same way, you can say today’s / tomorrow’s / this evening’s / Monday’s etc.

We also use -s (or -s’ with plural words) with periods of time:
- I’ve got a week’s holiday starting on Monday.
- Julia has got three weeks’ holiday.
- I live near the station – it’s only about ten minutes’ walk.
Exercises

81.1 In some of these sentences, it would be more natural to use -'s or -'. Change the underlined parts where necessary.

1 Who is the owner of this restaurant? OK
2 Where are the children of Chris? Chris's children
3 Is this the umbrella of your friend?
4 Write your name at the top of the page.
5 I've never met the daughter of Charles.
6 Have you met the son of Mary and Dan?
7 We don't know the cause of the problem.
8 Do we still have the newspaper of yesterday?
9 What's the name of this street?
10 What is the cost of a new computer?
11 The friends of your children are here.
12 The garden of our neighbours is very nice.
13 I work on the ground floor of the building.
14 The hair of Bill is very long.
15 I couldn't go to the party of Catherine.
16 What's the name of the woman who lives next door?
17 Have you seen the car of the parents of Mike?
18 What's the meaning of this expression?
19 Do you agree with the economic policy of the government?

81.2 What is another way of saying these things? Use -'s.

1 a hat for a woman a woman's hat
2 a name for a boy
3 clothes for children
4 a school for girls
5 a nest for a bird
6 a magazine for women

81.3 Read each sentence and write a new sentence beginning with the underlined words.

1 The meeting tomorrow has been cancelled.
   Tomorrow's meeting has been cancelled.
2 The storm last week caused a lot of damage.
   Last
3 The only cinema in the town has closed down.
   The
4 The weather in Britain is very changeable.
   Tourism is the main industry in the region.

81.4 Use the information given to complete the sentences.

1 If I leave my house at 9 o'clock and drive to the airport, I arrive at about 11.
   So it's about two hours' drive from my house to the airport. (drive)
2 If I leave my house at 8.40 and walk to the centre, I get there at 9 o'clock.
   So it's from my house to the centre. (walk)
3 I'm going on holiday on the 12th. I have to be back at work on the 26th.
   So I've got . (holiday)
4 I went to sleep at 3 o'clock this morning and woke up an hour later. After that I couldn't
   sleep. So last night I only had . (sleep)
Myself/yourself/themselves etc.

Study this example:

Steve introduced himself to the other guests.
We use myself/yourself/himself etc. (reflexive pronouns) when the subject and object are the same:

The reflexive pronouns are:

- **singular:** myself yourself (one person) himself/herself/itself
- **plural:** ourselves yourselves (more than one person) themselves

- I don’t want you to pay for me. I’ll pay for myself. (not I’ll pay for me)
- Julia had a great holiday. She really enjoyed herself.
- Do you talk to yourself sometimes? (said to one person)
- If you want more to eat, help yourselves. (said to more than one person)

Compare:

- It’s not our fault. You can’t blame us.
- It’s our own fault. We should blame ourselves.

We do not use myself etc. after feel/relax/concentrate/meet:

- I feel nervous. I can’t relax.
- You must try and concentrate. (not concentrate yourself)
- What time shall we meet? (not meet ourselves, not meet us)

We normally use wash/shave/dress without myself etc.: 

- He got up, washed, shaved and dressed. (not washed himself etc.)

You can also say get dressed (He got dressed).

Compare -selves and each other:

- Kate and Joe stood in front of the mirror and looked at themselves. (= Kate and Joe looked at Kate and Joe)
- Kate looked at Joe, Joe looked at Kate. They looked at each other.

You can use one another instead of each other:

- How long have you and Bill known each other? or ... known one another?
- Sue and Ann don’t like each other. or ... don’t like one another.
- Do you and Sarah live near each other? or ... near one another?

We also use myself/yourself etc. in another way. For example:

- ‘Who repaired your bike for you?’ ‘I repaired it myself.’

I repaired it myself = I repaired it, not anybody else. Here, myself is used to emphasise ‘I’ (= it makes it stronger). Some more examples:

- I’m not going to do your work for you. You can do it yourself. (= you, not me)
- Let’s paint the house ourselves. It will be much cheaper.
- The film itself wasn’t very good, but I loved the music.
- I don’t think Liz will get the job. Liz herself doesn’t think she’ll get it. (or Liz doesn’t think she’ll get it herself.)
82.1 Complete the sentences using myself/yourself etc. + the following verbs (in the correct form):

blame  burn  enjoy  express  hurt  introduce  put

1. Steve introduced himself to the other guests at the party.
2. Bill fell down some steps, but fortunately he didn’t.
3. It isn’t Sue’s fault. She really shouldn’t.
4. Please try and understand how I feel. in my position.
5. The children had a great time at the beach. They really .
6. Be careful! That pan is very hot. Don’t .
7. Sometimes I can’t say exactly what I mean. I wish I could better.

82.2 Put in myself/yourself/ourselves etc. or me/you/us etc.

1. Julia had a great holiday. She enjoyed .
2. It’s not my fault. You can’t blame .
3. What I did was really bad. I’m ashamed of .
4. We’ve got a problem. I hope you can help .
5. ‘Can I take another biscuit?’ ‘Of course. Help !’
6. You must meet Sarah. I’ll introduce to her.
7. Don’t worry about us. We can look after .
8. I gave them a key to our house so that they could let in.
9. I didn’t want anybody to see the letters, so I burned .

82.3 Complete these sentences. Use myself/yourself etc. only where necessary. Use the following verbs (in the correct form):

concentrate  defend  dry  feel  meet  relax  shave  wash

1. Martin decided to grow a beard because he was fed up with .
2. I wasn’t very well yesterday, but I much better today.
3. I climbed out of the swimming pool and with a towel.
4. I tried to study, but I couldn’t .
5. If somebody attacks you, you need to be able to .
6. I’m going out with Chris this evening. We’re at 7.30.
7. You’re always rushing around. Why don’t you sit down and ?
8. There was no water, so we couldn’t .

82.4 Complete the sentences with ourselves or each other.

1. How long have you and Bill known each other ?
2. If people work too hard, they can make ill.
3. I need you and you need me. We need .
4. In Britain friends often give presents at Christmas.
5. Some people are very selfish. They only think of .
6. Tracy and I don’t see very often these days.
7. We couldn’t get back into the house. We had locked .
8. They’ve had an argument. They’re not speaking to at the moment.
9. We’d never met before, so we introduced to .

82.5 Complete the answers to the questions using myself/yourself/itself etc.

1. Who repaired the bike for you? Nobody. I repaired it myself.
3. Do you want me to post that letter for you? No, I’ll .
4. Who told you that Linda was going away? Linda .
5. Can you phone John for me? Why can’t you ?

Additional exercise 30 (page 320)
A friend of mine / my own house on my own / by myself

A

A friend of mine / a friend of Tom's etc.

We say 'a friend) of mine/yours/his/hers/ours/their's:

- I'm going to a wedding on Saturday. A friend of mine is getting married. (not a friend of me)
- We went on holiday with some friends of ours. (not some friends of us)
- Michael had an argument with a neighbour of his.
- It was a good idea of yours to go to the cinema.

In the same way we say 'a friend) of my sister's / (a friend) of Tom's' etc. :

- That woman over there is a friend of my sister's.
- It was a good idea of Tom's to go to the cinema.

B

My own … / your own … etc.

We use my/your/his/her/its/our/their before own:

- my own house your own car her own room
  (not an own house, an own car etc.)

My own … / your own … etc. = something that is only mine/yours, not shared or borrowed:

- I don't want to share a room with anybody. I want my own room.
- Vicky and George would like to have their own house.
- It's a pity that the flat hasn't got its own parking space.
- It's my own fault that I've got no money. I buy too many things I don't need.
- Why do you want to borrow my car? Why don't you use your own? (= your own car)

You can also use own to say that you do something yourself instead of somebody else doing it for you. For example:

- Brian usually cuts his own hair.
  (= he cuts it himself; he doesn't go to the hairdresser's)
- I'd like to have a garden so that I could grow my own vegetables.
  (= grow them myself instead of buying them from shops)

C

On my own / by myself

On my own and by myself both mean 'alone'. We say:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{on} & \quad \text{my/your} \\
\text{his/her/its} & \quad \text{own} \\
\text{our/their} & \quad \text{by}
\end{align*}
\]

By himself / herself / itself

- I like living on my own / by myself.
- 'Did you go on holiday on your own / by yourself?'  'No, with a friend.'
- David was sitting on his own / by himself in a corner of the café.
- Learner drivers are not allowed to drive on their own / by themselves.
Exercises

83.1 Write new sentences with the same meaning. Change the underlined words and use the structure in Section A (a friend of mine etc.).
1 I am meeting one of my friends tonight. I'm meeting a friend of mine tonight.
2 We met one of your relatives. We met a...
3 Henry borrowed one of my books. Henry...
4 Liz invited some of her friends to her flat. Liz...
5 We had dinner with one of our neighbours. We...
6 I went on holiday with two of my friends. I...
7 Is that man one of your friends?...
8 I met one of Jane's friends at the party.

83.2 Complete the sentences using my own / your own etc. + the following:
bedroom business opinions private beach words
1 I share a kitchen and bathroom, but I have my own bedroom.
2 Gary doesn't think the same as me. He's got...
3 Julia is fed up with working for other people. She wants to start...
4 We stayed at a luxury hotel by the sea. The hotel had...
5 In the test we had to read a story, and then write it in...

83.3 Complete the sentences using my own / your own etc.
1 Why do you want to borrow my car? Why don't you use your own car?
2 How can you blame me? It's not my fault. It's...
3 She's always using my ideas. Why can't she use...
4 Please don't worry about my problems. You've got...
5 I can't make his decisions for him. He must make...

83.4 Complete the sentences using my own / your own etc. Use the following verbs:
bake cut make write
1 Brian never goes to the hairdresser. He cuts his own hair.
2 Mary doesn't often buy clothes. She usually...
3 We don't often buy bread. We usually...
4 Paul is a singer. He sings songs written by other people, but he also...

83.5 Complete the sentences using on my own / by myself etc.
1 Did you go on holiday on your own?
2 I'm glad I live with other people. I wouldn't like to live on...
3 The box was too heavy for me to lift by...
4 'Who was Tom with when you saw him?' 'Nobody. He was by...
5 Very young children should not go swimming by...
6 I don't think she knows many people. When I see her, she is always by...
7 I don't like strawberries with cream. I like them on...
8 Do you like working with other people or do you prefer working by...
9 We had no help decorating the flat. We did it completely on...
10 I went out with Sally because she didn't want to go out on...
There ... and it ...

There and it

We use there ... when we talk about something for the first time, to say that it exists:
- There's a new restaurant in King Street. (not A new restaurant is in King Street)
- I'm sorry I'm late. There was a lot of traffic. (not It was a lot of traffic)
- Things are more expensive now. There has been a big rise in the cost of living.

It = a specific thing, place, fact, situation etc. (but see also section C):
- We went to the new restaurant. It's very good. (It = the restaurant)
- I wasn't expecting them to come. It was a complete surprise. (It = that they came)

Compare there and it:
- I don't like this town. There's nothing to do here. It's a boring place.

There also means 'to/at/in that place':
- The new restaurant is very good. I went there (= to the restaurant) last night.
- When we got to the party, there were already a lot of people there (= at the party).

You can say there will be / there must be / there might be / there used to be etc.:
- Will there be many people at the party?
- 'Is there a flight to Paris this evening?' 'There might be. I'll phone the airport.'
- If people drove more carefully, there wouldn't be so many accidents.

Also there must have been, there should have been etc.:
- There was a light on. There must have been somebody at home.

Compare there and it:
- They live on a busy road. There must be a lot of noise from the traffic.
  They live on a busy main road. It must be very noisy.
- There used to be a cinema in King Street, but it closed a few years ago.
  That building is now a supermarket. It used to be a cinema.

You can also say there is sure/certain/likely/bound to be ...
- There is bound (= sure) to be a flight to Paris this evening.

We also use it in sentences like this:
- It's dangerous to walk in the road.

We do not usually say 'To walk in the road is dangerous'. Normally we begin with It ... .

Some more examples:
- It didn't take us long to get here.
- It's a pity (that) Sandra can't come to the party.
- Let's go. It's not worth waiting any longer.

We also use it to talk about distance, time and weather:
- How far is it from here to the airport.
- What day is it today?
- It's a long time since we saw you last.
- It was windy yesterday. (but There was a cold wind.)
Exercises

84.1 Put in there is/was or it is/was. Some sentences are questions (is there ... ? / is it ... ? etc.) and some are negative (isn't/wasn't).

1. The journey took a long time. There was a lot of traffic.
2. What's the new restaurant like? Is it good?
3. ‘________ a bookshop near here?’ ‘Yes, ___________ one in Hill Street.’
4. When we got to the cinema, ___________ a queue outside. ___________ a very long queue, so we decided not to wait.
5. I couldn’t see anything. ___________ completely dark.
6. ___________ trouble at the club last night. They had to call the police.
7. How far ___________ from Milan to Rome?
8. ___________ Keith’s birthday yesterday. We had a party.
9. ___________ three years since I last went to the theatre.
10. I wanted to visit the museum, but ___________ enough time.
11. ‘_________ time to leave?’ ‘Yes, ___________ nearly midnight.’
12. A few days ago ___________ a storm. ___________ a lot of damage.
13. ___________ a beautiful day yesterday. We had a picnic.
14. ___________ anything on television, so I turned it off.
15. ___________ an accident in King Street, but ___________ very serious.

84.2 Read the first sentence and then write a sentence beginning There ...

1. The roads were busy today. There was a lot of traffic.
2. This soup is very salty. ___________ in the soup.
3. The box was empty. ___________ in the box.
4. The film was very violent. ___________
5. The shops were very crowded. ___________
6. I like this town – it’s lively. ___________

84.3 Complete the sentences. Use there will be, there would be etc. Choose from:

will may would wouldn’t should used to (be) going to

1. If people drove more carefully, there would be fewer accidents.
2. ‘Do we have any eggs?’ ‘I’m not sure. ___________ some in the fridge.’
3. I think everything will be OK. I don’t think ___________ any problems.
4. Look at the sky. ___________ a storm.
5. ‘Is there a school in the village?’ ‘Not now. ___________ one, but it closed.’
6. People drive too fast on this road. I think ___________ a speed limit.
7. If people weren’t aggressive, ___________ any wars.

84.4 Are these sentences right or wrong? Change it to there where necessary.

1. They live on a busy road. It must be a lot of noise. There must be a lot of noise.
2. Last winter it was very cold and it was a lot of snow.
3. It used to be a church here, but it was knocked down.
4. Why was she so unfriendly? It must have been a reason.
5. It’s a long way from my house to the nearest shop.
6. A: Where can we park the car?
   B: Don’t worry. It’s sure to be a car park somewhere.
7. After the lecture it will be an opportunity to ask questions.
8. I like the place where I live, but it would be nicer to live by the sea.
9. I was told that it would be somebody to meet me at the station, but it wasn’t anybody.
10. The situation is still the same. It has been no change.
11. I don’t know who’ll win, but it’s sure to be a good game.
Some and any

A In general we use **some** (*also somebody/someone/something*) in positive sentences and **any** (*also anybody etc.*) in negative sentences:

- **some**
  - We bought **some** flowers.
  - He's busy. He's got **some** work to do.
  - There's **someone** at the door.
  - I'm hungry. I want **something** to eat.

- **any**
  - We didn't buy **any** flowers.
  - He's lazy. He never does **any** work.
  - There isn't **anybody** at the door.
  - I'm not hungry. I don't want **anything** to eat.

We use **any** in the following sentences because the meaning is negative:

- She went out **without any** money. (she didn't take **any** money with her)
- He refused to eat **anything**. (he didn't eat **anything**)
- Hardly **anybody** passed the examination. (= almost **nobody** passed)

B We use both **some** and **any** in questions. We use **some** to talk about a person or thing that we know exists, or we think exists:

- Are you waiting for **somebody**? (I think you are waiting for somebody)

We use **some** in questions when we offer or ask for things:

- Would you like **something** to eat? (there is something to eat)
- Can I have **some** sugar, please? (there is probably some sugar I can have)

But in most questions, we use **any**. We do not know if the thing or person exists:

- 'Have you got **any** luggage?' 'No, I haven't.'
- I can't find my bag. Has **anybody** seen it?

C We often use **any** after **if**:

- If there are **any** letters for me, can you send them on to this address?
- If **anyone** has any questions, I'll be pleased to answer them.
- Let me know if you need **anything**.

The following sentences have the idea of **if**:

- I'm sorry for **any** trouble I've caused. (= if I have caused any trouble)
- **Anyone** who wants to do the exam must tell me by Friday. (= if there is anyone)

D We also use **any** with the meaning 'it doesn't matter which':

- You can take **any** bus. They all go to the centre. (= it doesn't matter which bus you take)
- 'Sing a song.' 'Which song shall I sing?' 'Any song. I don't mind.' (= it doesn't matter which song)
- Come and see me **any** time you want.
- 'Let's go out somewhere.' 'Where shall we go?' 'Anywhere. I just want to go out.'
- We left the door unlocked. **Anybody** could have come in.

Compare **something** and **anything**:

- A: I'm hungry. I want **something** to eat.
- B: What would you like?
- A: I don't mind. **Anything**. (= it doesn't matter what)

E **Somebody/someone/anybody/anyone** are singular words:

- **Someone** is here to see you.

But we often use **they/Them/Their** after these words:

- **Someone** has forgotten **their** umbrella. (= his or her umbrella)
- If **anybody** wants to leave early, **they** can. (= he or she can)
85.1 Put in some or any.
1. We didn’t buy ________ flowers.
2. This evening I’m going out with _________ friends of mine.
3. A: Have you seen _________ good films recently?
   B: No, I haven’t been to the cinema for ages.
4. I didn’t have _________ money, so I had to borrow _________.
5. Can I have _________ milk in my coffee, please?
6. I was too tired to do _________ work.
7. You can cash these traveller’s cheques at _________ bank.
8. Can you give me _________ information about places of interest in the town?
9. With the special tourist train ticket, you can travel on _________ train you like.
10. If there are _________ words you don’t understand, use a dictionary.

85.2 Complete the sentences with some- or any- + -body/-thing/-where.
1. I was too surprised to say _________.
2. There’s _________ at the door. Can you go and see who it is?
3. Does _________ mind if I open the window?
4. I wasn’t feeling hungry, so I didn’t eat _________.
5. You must be hungry. Would you like _________ to eat?
6. Quick, let’s go! There’s _________ coming and I don’t want _________ to see us.
7. Sarah was upset about _________ and refused to talk to _________.
8. This machine is very easy to use. _________ can learn to use it very quickly.
9. There was hardly _________ on the beach. It was almost deserted.
10. ‘Do you live _________ near Joe?’ ‘No, he lives in another part of town.’
11. ‘Where shall we go on holiday?’ ‘Let’s go _________ warm and sunny.’
12. They stay at home all the time. They never seem to go _________.
13. I’m going out now. If _________ phones while I’m out, can you tell them I’ll be back at 11.30?
14. Why are you looking under the bed? Have you lost _________?
15. The police have asked that _________, who saw the accident should contact them.
16. ‘Can I ask you _________?’ ‘Sure. What do you want to ask?’
17. Sue is very secretive. She never tells _________.

85.3 Complete the sentences. Use any (+ noun) or anybody/anything/anywhere.
1. Which bus do I have to catch? _________ bus. They all go to the centre.
2. Which day shall I come? _________ day. I don’t mind. _________ I don’t mind.
3. What do you want to eat? _________ you have.
4. Where shall I sit? It’s up to you. You can sit _________ you like.
5. What sort of job are you looking for? _________ it doesn’t matter.
6. What time shall I phone tomorrow? I’ll be in all day. _________
7. Who shall I invite to the party? _________ you like.
8. Which newspaper shall I buy? _________ what they have in the shop.
No/none/any Nothing/nobody etc.

A

No and none

We use no + noun. No = not a or not any:
- We had to walk home because there was no bus. (= there wasn't a bus)
- Sue will have no difficulty finding a job. (= Sue won't have any difficulty ...)
- There were no shops open. (= There weren't any shops open.)

You can use no + noun at the beginning of a sentence:
- No reason was given for the change of plan.

We use none without a noun:
- ‘How much money do you have?’ ‘None.’ (= no money)
- All the tickets have been sold. There are none left. (= no tickets left)

Or we use none of ...:
- This money is all yours. None of it is mine.

After none of + plural (none of the students, none of them etc.) the verb can be singular or plural. A plural verb is more usual:
- None of the shops were (or was) open.

B

Nothing nobody/no-one nowhere

You can use these negative words at the beginning of a sentence or alone (as answers to questions):
- Nobody (or No-one) came to visit me while I was in hospital.
- ‘What happened?’ ‘Nothing.’
- ‘Where are you going?’ ‘Nowhere. I'm staying here.’

You can also use these words after a verb, especially after be and have:
- The house is empty. There's nobody living there.
- We had nothing to eat.

Nothing/nobody etc. = not + anything/anybody etc.:
- I didn't say anything. (= I said nothing.)
- Jane didn't tell anybody about her plans. (= Jane told nobody ...)
- They haven't got anywhere to live. (= They've got nowhere to live.)

With nothing/nobody etc., do not use a negative verb (isn't, didn't etc.):
- I said nothing. (not I didn't say nothing)
- Nobody tells me anything. (not Nobody doesn't tell me)

C

We also use any/anything/anybody etc. (without not) to mean 'it doesn't matter which/what/who' (see Unit 85D). Compare no- and any-:
- There was no bus, so we walked home.
  - You can take any bus. They all go to the centre. (= it doesn’t matter which)
- ‘What do you want to eat?’ ‘Nothing. I’m not hungry.’
  - I'm so hungry. I could eat anything. (= it doesn’t matter what)
- The exam was extremely difficult. Nobody passed. (= everybody failed)
  - The exam was very easy. Anybody could have passed. (= it doesn’t matter who)

D

After nobody/no-one you can use they/them/their (see also Unit 85E):
- Nobody phoned, did they? (= did he or she)
- No-one did what I asked them to do. (= him or her)
- Nobody in the class did their homework. (= his or her homework)
Exercises

Unit 86

86.1 Complete these sentences with no, none or any.

1. It was a public holiday, so there were _no_ shops open.
2. I haven't got _any_ money. Can you lend me some?
3. We had to walk home because there were _none_ taxis.
4. We had to walk home because there weren't _any_ taxis.
5. 'How many eggs have we got?' _none_. Do you want me to get some?'
6. We took a few photographs, but _none_ of them were very good.
7. What a stupid thing to do! _any_ intelligent person would do such a thing.
8. I'll try and answer _any_ questions you ask me.
9. I couldn't answer _any_ of the questions they asked me.
10. We cancelled the party because _any_ of the people we invited were able to come.
11. I tried to phone Chris, but there was _no_ answer.

86.2 Answer these questions using none/noobody/nothing/nowhere.

1. What did you do?
   - _Nothing_.
2. Who were you talking to?
   - _None_.
3. How much luggage have you got?
   - _None_.
4. Where are you going?
   - _Nowhere_.
5. How many mistakes did you make?
   - _None_.
6. How much did you pay?
   - _Nothing_.

Now answer the same questions using complete sentences with any/anybody/anything/anywhere.

7. (1) _I didn't do anything_.
8. (2) _I didn't do anything_.
9. (3) _I didn't do anything_.
10. (4) _I didn't do anything_.
11. (5) _I didn't do anything_.
12. (6) _I didn't do anything_.

86.3 Complete these sentences with no- or any- + -body/-thing/-where.

1. I don't want _any_ to drink. I'm not thirsty.
2. The bus was completely empty. There was _none_ on it.
3. 'Where did you go for your holidays?' _none_. I stayed at home.
4. I went to the shops, but I didn't buy _none_.
5. 'What did you buy?' _none_. I couldn't find _anything_ I wanted.
6. The town is still the same as it was years ago. _anything_ has changed.
7. Have you seen my watch? I can't find it _anywhere_.
8. There was complete silence in the room. _Nothing_ said _nothing_.

86.4 Choose the right word.

1. She didn't tell _nobody/anybody_ about her plans. _Anybody_ is correct.
2. The accident looked serious, but fortunately _nobody/anybody_ was badly injured.
3. I looked out of the window, but I couldn't see _no-one/anyone_.
4. My job is very easy. _Nobody/Anybody_ could do it.
5. 'What's in that box?' _Nothing/Anything_. It's empty.
6. The situation is uncertain. _Nothing/Anything_ could happen.
7. I don't know _nothing/anything_ about economics.
We use much and little with *uncountable* nouns:

- much time
- much luck
- little energy
- little money

We use many and few with *plural* nouns:

- many friends
- many people
- few cars
- few countries

We use a lot of / lots of / plenty of with both *uncountable* and *plural* nouns:

- a lot of luck
- lots of time
- plenty of money
- a lot of friends
- lots of people
- plenty of ideas

Plenty = more than enough:

☐ There’s no need to hurry. We’ve got plenty of time.

**Much** is unusual in positive sentences (especially in spoken English). Compare:

☐ We didn’t spend much money.

**but** We spent a lot of money. *(not We spent much money)*

☐ Do you see David much?

**but** I see David a lot. *(not I see David much)*

We use many and a lot of in all kinds of sentences:

☐ Many people drive too fast.  
☐ A lot of people drive too fast.

☐ Do you know many people?  
☐ Do you know a lot of people?

☐ There aren’t many tourists here.  
☐ There aren’t a lot of tourists here.

Note that we say *many years / many weeks / many days* *(not a lot of ...)*:

☐ We’ve lived here for many years. *(not a lot of years)*

**Little** and **few** *(without a)* are negative ideas *(= not much / not many)*:

☐ Gary is very busy with his job. He has little time for other things. *(= not much time, less time than he would like)*

☐ Vicky doesn’t like living in London. She has few friends there. *(= not many, not as many as she would like)*

You can say very little and very few:

☐ Gary has very little time for other things.

☐ Vicky has very few friends in London.

**A little** and a few have a more positive meaning.

**A little** = some, a small amount:

☐ Let’s go and have a coffee. We have a little time before the train leaves.

*a little time = some time, enough time to have a coffee*

☐ ‘Do you speak English?’ ‘A little.’ *(so we can talk a bit)*

**A few** = some, a small number:

☐ I enjoy my life here. I have a few friends and we meet quite often.

*a few friends = not many but enough to have a good time*  

☐ ‘When was the last time you saw Clare?’ ‘A few days ago.’ *(= some days ago)*

Compare:

☐ He spoke little English, so it was difficult to communicate with him.

He spoke a little English, so we were able to communicate with him.

☐ She’s lucky. She has few problems. *(= not many problems)*

Things are not going so well for her. She has a few problems. *(= some problems)*

You can say only a little and only a few:

☐ Hurry! We only have a little time. *(not only little time)*

☐ The village was very small. There were only a few houses. *(not only few houses)*
Exercises

87.1 In some of these sentences much is incorrect or unnatural. Change much to many or a lot of where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is correct.

1. We didn't spend much money.                          ____OK____
2. Sue drinks much tea.                                  ____a lot of tea____
3. Joe always puts much salt on his food.                _____________
4. We'll have to hurry. We haven't got much time.        _____________
5. It cost much to repair the car.                       _____________
6. Did it cost much to repair the car?                   _____________
7. I don't know much people in this town.               _____________
8. I use the phone much at work.                         _____________
9. There wasn't much traffic this morning.               _____________
10. You need much money to travel round the world.       _____________

87.2 Complete the sentences using plenty of + the following:

hotels    money    room    things to see    -time-    to learn

1. There's no need to hurry. There's _____________
2. He's got no financial problems. He's got _____________
3. Come and sit with us. There's _____________
4. She knows a lot, but she still has _____________
5. It's an interesting town to visit. There _____________
6. I'm sure we'll find somewhere to stay. _____________

87.3 Put in much/many/few/little (one word only).

1. She isn't very popular. She has _____________ friends.
2. Ann is very busy these days. She has _____________ free time.
3. Did you take _____________ photographs when you were on holiday?
4. I'm not very busy today. I haven't got _____________ to do.
5. This is a very modern city. There are _____________ old buildings.
6. The weather has been very dry recently. We've had _____________ rain.
7. ‘Do you know Rome?’ ‘No, I haven’t been there for _____________ years.’

87.4 Put in a where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already complete.

1. She's lucky. She has _____________ problems. _____________
2. Things are not going so well for her. She has _____________ problems. _____________
3. Can you lend me _____________ dollars? _____________
4. There was _____________ traffic, so the journey didn't take very long. _____________
5. I can't give you a decision yet. I need _____________ time to think. _____________
6. It was a surprise that he won the match. _____________ people expected him to win. _____________
7. I don't know much Spanish — _____________ words. _____________
8. I wonder how Sam is. I haven’t seen him for _____________ months. _____________

87.5 Put little / a little / few / a few.

1. Gary is very busy with his job. He has _____________ time for other things.
2. Listen carefully. I'm going to give you _____________ advice.
3. Do you mind if I ask you _____________ questions? _____________
4. It's not a very interesting place to visit, so _____________ tourists come here. _____________
5. I don't think Jill would be a good teacher. She's got _____________ patience. _____________
6. ‘Would you like milk in your coffee?’ ‘Yes, _____________.’ _____________
7. This is a very boring place to live. There's _____________ to do. _____________
8. ‘Have you ever been to Paris?’ ‘Yes, I've been there _____________ times.’
All / all of / most / most of / no / none of etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all</th>
<th>some</th>
<th>any</th>
<th>most</th>
<th>much/many</th>
<th>little/few</th>
<th>no</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

You can use the words in the box with a noun (some food / few books etc.):
- All cars have wheels.
- Some cars can go faster than others.
- (on a notice) NO CARS. (= no cars allowed)
- Many people drive too fast.
- I don’t go out very often. I’m at home most days.

You cannot say ‘all of cars’, ‘some of people’ etc. (see also Section B):
- Some people learn languages more easily than others. (not Some of people)

Note that we say most (not the most):
- Most tourists don’t visit this part of the town. (not The most tourists)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all</th>
<th>some</th>
<th>any</th>
<th>most</th>
<th>much/many</th>
<th>little/few</th>
<th>half</th>
<th>none</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

You can use the words in the box with of (some of / most of etc.).

We use some of / most of / none of etc. + the/this/that/these/those/my ... etc. So you can say ‘some of the people’, ‘some of those people’ (but not ‘some of people’):
- Some of the people I work with are not very friendly.
- None of this money is mine.
- Have you read any of these books?
- I was sick yesterday. I spent most of the day in bed.

You don’t need of after all or half. So you can say:
- All my friends live in Los Angeles. or All of my friends ...
- Half this money is mine. or Half of this money ...

Compare:
- All flowers are beautiful. (= all flowers in general)
  All (of) the flowers in this garden are beautiful. (= a specific group of flowers)
- Most problems have a solution. (= most problems in general)
  We were able to solve most of the problems we had. (= a specific group of problems)

You can use all of / some of / none of etc. + it/us/you/them:
- ‘How many of these people do you know?’ ‘None of them. / A few of them.’
- Do any of you want to come to a party tonight?
- ‘Do you like this music?’ ‘Some of it. Not all of it.’

We say: all of us / all of you / half of it / half of them etc. You cannot leave out of before it/us/you/them:
- All of us were late. (not all us)
- I haven’t finished the book yet. I’ve only read half of it. (not half it)

You can also use some/most etc. alone, without a noun:
- Some cars have four doors and some have two.
- A few of the shops were open, but most (of them) were closed.
- Half this money is mine, and half (of it) is yours. (not the half)
Exercises

88.1 Put in of where necessary. Leave the space empty if the sentence is already complete.

1. All ______ cars have wheels. (the sentence is already complete)
2. None ______ this money is mine.
3. Some ______ films are very violent.
4. Some ______ the films I've seen recently have been very violent.
5. Joe never goes to museums. He says that all ______ museums are boring.
6. I think some ______ people watch too much television.
7. 'Are any ______ those letters for me?' 'No, they're all for me.'
8. Kate has lived in London most ______ her life.
9. Jim has lived in Chicago all ______ his life.
10. Most ______ days I get up before 7 o'clock.

88.2 Choose from the list and complete the sentences. Use of (some of / most of etc) where necessary.

- accidents
- European countries
- my dinner
- the players
- birds
- her friends
- my spare time
- the population
- ears
- her opinions
- the buildings
- these books

1. I haven't read many ______ of these books.
2. All ______ cars have wheels.
3. I spend much ______ gardening.
4. Many ______ are caused by bad driving.
5. It's a historic town. Many ______ are over 400 years old.
6. When she got married, she kept it a secret. She didn't tell any ______.
7. Not many people live in the north of the country. Most ______ live in the south.
8. Not all ______ can fly. For example, the penguin can't fly.
9. Our team played badly and lost the game. None ______ played well.
10. Julia and I have very different ideas. I don't agree with many ______.
11. Sarah travels a lot in Europe. She has been to most ______.
12. I had no appetite. I could only eat half ______.

88.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. The building was damaged in the explosion. All ______ were broken.
2. We had a very lazy holiday. We spent most of ______ on the beach.
3. I went to the cinema by myself. None ______ wanted to come.
4. The test was difficult. I could only answer half ______.
5. Some of ______ you took at the wedding were very good.
6. 'Have you spent all ______? I gave you?' 'No, there's still some left.'

88.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

all of / some of / none of + it/them/us (all of it / some of them etc.)

1. These books are all Jane's. ______ belong to me.
2. 'How many of these books have you read?' ______. Every one.'
3. We all got wet in the rain because ______ had an umbrella.
4. Some of this money is yours and ______ is mine.
5. I asked some people for directions, but ______ was able to help me.
6. She invented the whole story from beginning to end. ______ was true.
7. Not all the tourists in the group were Spanish. ______ were French.
8. I watched most of the film, but not ______.
Both / both of neither / neither of either / either of

We use both/neither/either for two things. You can use these words with a noun (both books, neither book etc.).

For example, you are going out to eat. There are two possible restaurants. You say:
- Both restaurants are very good. (not The both restaurants)
- Neither restaurant is expensive.
- We can go to either restaurant. I don’t mind.
  (either = one or the other, it doesn’t matter which one)

Both of / neither of / either of

We use both of / neither of / either of + the/these/my/Tom’s … etc. So we say ‘both of the restaurants’, ‘both of those restaurants’ etc. (but not both of restaurants):
- Both of these restaurants are very good.
- Neither of the restaurants we went to was (or were) expensive.
- I haven’t been to either of those restaurants. (= I haven’t been to one or the other)

You don’t need of after both. So you can say:
- Both my parents are from London. or Both of my parents …

You can use both of / neither of / either of + us/you/them:
- (talking to two people) Can either of you speak Spanish?
- I asked two people the way to the station, but neither of them could help me.

You must say ‘both of’ before us/you/them:
- Both of us were very tired. (not Both us were …)

After neither of … a singular or a plural verb is possible:
- Neither of the children wants (or want) to go to bed.

You can also use both/neither/either alone, without a noun:
- I couldn’t decide which of the two shirts to buy. I liked both. (or I liked both of them.)
- ‘Is your friend British or American?’: ‘Neither. She’s Australian.’
- ‘Do you want tea or coffee?’ ‘Either. I don’t mind.’

You can say:

both … and …
- Both Chris and Pat were late.
- I was both tired and hungry when I arrived home.

neither … nor …
- Neither Chris nor Pat came to the party.
- Tom said he would contact me, but he neither wrote nor phoned.

either … or …
- I’m not sure where Maria’s from. She’s either Spanish or Italian.
- Either you apologise or I’ll never speak to you again.

Compare either/neither/both (two things) and any/none/all (more than two):

- There are two good hotels here. You could stay at either of them.
- We tried two hotels.
  - Neither of them had any rooms.
  - Both of them were full.
- There are many good hotels here. You could stay at any of them.
- We tried a lot of hotels.
  - None of them had any rooms.
  - All of them were full.
Exercises

89.1 Complete the sentences with both/neither/either.
1 ‘Do you want tea or coffee?’ ‘__________ . I really don’t mind.’
2 ‘What day is it today – the 18th or the 19th?’ ‘__________. It’s the 20th.’
3 A: Where did you go for your holidays – Scotland or Ireland?
   B: We went to __________ . A week in Scotland and a week in Ireland.
4 ‘When shall I phone, in the morning or afternoon?’ ‘__________ . I’ll be in all day.’
5 ‘Where’s Liz? Is she at work or at home?’ ‘__________ . She’s away on holiday.’

89.2 Complete the sentences with both/neither/either. Use of where necessary.
1 ______________ my parents are from London.
2 To get to the town centre, you can go along the footpath by the river or you can go along the road. You can go ______________ way.
3 I tried twice to phone George, but ______________ times he was out.
4 ______________ Tom’s parents is English. His father is Polish and his mother is Italian.
5 I saw an accident this morning. One car drove into the back of another. Fortunately ______________ driver was injured, but ______________ cars were badly damaged.
6 I’ve got two sisters and a brother. My brother is working, but ______________ my sisters are still at school.

89.3 Complete the sentences with both/neither/either + of us/them.
1 I asked two people the way to the station, but ______________ could help me.
2 I was invited to two parties last week, but I couldn’t go to ______________ .
3 There were two windows in the room. It was very warm, so I opened ______________ .
4 Sarah and I play tennis together regularly, but ______________ can play very well.
5 I tried two bookshops for the book I wanted, but ______________ had it.

89.4 Write sentences with both ... and ... / neither ... nor ... / either ... or ...
1 Chris was late. So was Pat. _______ Chris and Pat were late.
2 He didn’t write and he didn’t phone. _______ he neither wrote nor phoned.
3 Joe is on holiday and so is Sam. _______
4 Joe hasn’t got a car. Sam hasn’t got one either. _______
5 Brian doesn’t watch TV and he doesn’t read newspapers. _______

6 It was a boring film. It was long too.
   The film _______
7 Is that man’s name Richard? Or is it Robert? It’s one of the two.
   That man’s name _______
8 I haven’t got time to go on holiday. And I haven’t got the money.
   I’ve got _______
9 We can leave today or we can leave tomorrow – whichever you prefer.
   We _______

89.5 Complete the sentences with neither/either/none/any.
1 We tried a lot of hotels, but ______________ of them had any rooms.
2 I took two books with me on holiday, but I didn’t read ______________ of them.
3 I took five books with me on holiday, but I didn’t read ______________ of them.
4 There are a few shops at the end of the street, but ______________ of them sells newspapers.
5 You can phone me at ______________ time during the evening. I’m always at home.
6 I can meet you next Monday or Friday. Would ______________ of those days be convenient for you?
7 John and I couldn’t get into the house because ______________ of us had a key.
All, every and whole

A

All and everybody/everyone

We do not normally use all to mean everybody/everyone:

☐ Everybody enjoyed the party. (not All enjoyed)

But we say all of us/you/them (not everybody of ...):

☐ All of us enjoyed the party. (not Everybody of us)

B

All and everything

Sometimes you can use all or everything:

☐ I'll do all I can to help. or I'll do everything I can to help.

You can say 'all I can' / 'all you need' etc., but we do not normally use all alone:

☐ He thinks he knows everything. (not he knows all)

☐ Our holiday was a disaster. Everything went wrong. (not All went wrong)

But you can say all about:

☐ He knows all about computers.

We also use all (not everything) to mean 'the only thing(s)'

☐ All I've eaten today is a sandwich. (= the only thing I've eaten today)

C

Every / everybody / everyone / everything are singular words, so we use a singular verb:

☐ Every seat in the theatre was taken.

☐ Everybody has arrived. (not have arrived)

But you can use they/them/their after everybody/everyone:

☐ Everybody said they enjoyed themselves. (= he or she enjoyed himself or herself)

D

Whole and all

Whole = complete, entire. Most often we use whole with singular nouns:

☐ Did you read the whole book? (= all the book, not just a part of it)

☐ Emily has lived her whole life in Scotland.

☐ I was so hungry, I ate a whole packet of biscuits. (= a complete packet)

We use the/my/her etc. before whole. Compare whole and all:

the whole book / all the book her whole life / all her life

We do not normally use whole with uncountable nouns. We say:

☐ I've spent all the money you gave me. (not the whole money)

E

Every/all/whole with time words

We use every to say how often something happens (every day / every Monday / every ten minutes / every three weeks etc.):

☐ When we were on holiday, we went to the beach every day. (not all days)

☐ The bus service is excellent. There's a bus every ten minutes.

☐ We don't see each other very often - about every six months.

All day / the whole day = the complete day from beginning to end:

☐ We spent all day / the whole day on the beach.

☐ Dan was very quiet. He didn't say a word all evening / the whole evening.

Note that we say all day (not all the day), all week (not all the week) etc.

Compare all the time and every time:

☐ They never go out. They are at home all the time. (= always, continuously)

☐ Every time I see you, you look different. (= each time, on every occasion)
Exercises

90.1 Complete these sentences with all, everything or everybody/everyone.

1. It was a good party. Everybody enjoyed it.
2. All I've eaten today is a sandwich.
3. __________ has their faults. Nobody is perfect.
4. Nothing has changed. __________ is the same as it was.
5. Kate told me __________ about her new job. It sounds quite interesting.
6. Can __________ write their names on a piece of paper, please?
7. Why are you always thinking about money? Money isn't __________.
8. I didn't have much money with me. __________ I had was ten pounds.
9. When the fire alarm rang, __________ left the building immediately.
10. Sue didn't say where she was going. __________ she said was that she was going away.
11. We have completely different opinions. I disagree with __________ she says.
12. We all did well in the examination. __________ in our class passed.
13. We all did well in the examination. __________ of us passed.
14. Why are you so lazy? Why do you expect me to do __________ for you?

90.2 Write sentences with whole.

1. I read the book from beginning to end. __________
2. Everyone in the team played well. __________
3. Paul opened a box of chocolates. When he finished eating, there were no chocolates left in the box. He ate __________
4. The police came to the house. They were looking for something. They searched everywhere, every room. They __________
5. Everyone in Dave and Jane's family plays tennis. Dave and Jane play, and so do all their children. The __________
6. Ann worked from early in the morning until late in the evening. __________
7. Jack and Jill went on holiday to the seaside for a week. It rained from the beginning of the week to the end. __________

Now write sentences 6 and 7 again using all instead of whole.

8. __________
9. __________

90.3 Complete these sentences using every with the following:

five minutes ten minutes four hours six months four years

1. The bus service is very good. There's a bus every ten minutes.
2. Tom is ill. He has some medicine. He has to take it every hour.
3. The Olympic Games take place every four years.
4. We live near a busy airport. A plane flies over our house every five minutes.
5. Martin has a check-up with his dentist every six months.

90.4 Which is the correct alternative?

1. I've spent the whole money / all the money you gave me. (all the money is correct)
2. Sue works every day / all days except Sunday.
3. I'm tired. I've been working hard all the day / all day.
4. It was a terrible fire. Whole building / The whole building was destroyed.
5. I've been trying to phone her, but every time / all the time I phone the line is busy.
6. I don't like the weather here. It rains every time / all the time.
7. When I was on holiday, all my luggage / my whole luggage was stolen.
Each and every

Each and every are similar in meaning. Often it is possible to use each or every:

- Each time (or Every time) I see you, you look different.
- There's a telephone in each room (or every room) of the house.

But each and every are not exactly the same. Study the difference:

We use each when we think of things separately, one by one.
- Study each sentence carefully.
  (= study the sentences one by one)

\[
each = \times + \times + \times + \times
\]

Each is more usual for a small number:
- There were four books on the table. Each book was a different colour.
- (in a card game) At the beginning of the game, each player has three cards.

We use every when we think of things as a group. The meaning is similar to all.
- Every sentence must have a verb.
  (= all sentences in general)

\[
every = \times x \times x \times x \times x \times x \times x \times x \times x
\]

Every is more usual for a large number:
- Kate loves reading. She has read every book in the library. (= all the books)
- I would like to visit every country in the world. (= all the countries)

Each (but not every) can be used for two things:
- In a football match, each team has eleven players. (not every team)

We use every (not each) to say how often something happens:
- 'How often do you use your computer?' 'Every day.' (not Each day)
- There's a bus every ten minutes. (not each ten minutes)

Compare the structures we use with each and every:

You can use each with a noun:
- each book each student

You can use each alone (without a noun):
- None of the rooms was the same.
  Each (= each room) was different.

Or you can use each one:
- Each one was different.

You can say each of (the ... / these ... / them etc.):
- Read each of these sentences carefully.
- Each of the books is a different colour.
- Each of them is a different colour.

You can use every with a noun:
- every book every student

You can't use every alone, but you can say every one:
- A: Have you read all these books?
  B: Yes, every one.

You can say every one of ... (but not every of):
- I've read every one of those books.
  (not every of those books)
- I've read every one of them.

You can also use each in the middle or at the end of a sentence. For example:
- The students were each given a book. (= Each student was given a book.)
- These oranges cost 15 pence each.

Everyone and every one

Everyone (one word) is only for people (= everybody).

Every one (two words) is for things or people, and is similar to each one (see Section B).
- Everyone enjoyed the party. (= Everybody ...)
- Sarah is invited to lots of parties and she goes to every one. (= to every party)
91.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with each or every.

1. Each player has three cards.
2. Kate has read every book in the library.
3. Side of a square is the same length.
4. Seat in the theatre was taken.
5. There are six apartments in the building. One has a balcony.
6. There's a train to London hour.
7. She was wearing four rings – one finger.
8. Our football team is playing well. We've won game this season.

91.2 Put in each or every.

1. There were four books on the table. Each book was a different colour.
2. The Olympic Games are held every four years.
3. Parent worries about their children.
4. In a game of tennis there are two or four players. Player has a racket.
5. Nicola plays volleyball Thursday evening.
6. I understood most of what they said but not word.
7. The book is divided into five parts and of these has three sections.
8. I get paid four weeks.
9. We had a great weekend. I enjoyed minute of it.
10. I tried to phone her two or three times, but time there was no reply.
11. Car seat belts save lives. Driver should wear one.
12. (from an exam) Answer all five questions. Write your answer to question on a separate sheet of paper.

91.3 Complete the sentences using each.

1. The price of one of those oranges is 30 pence. Those oranges are 30 pence each.
2. I had ten pounds and so did Sonia. Sonia and I .
3. One of those postcards costs 80 pence. Those .
4. The hotel was expensive. I paid £120 and so did you. We .

91.4 Put in everyone (1 word) or every one (2 words).

1. Sarah is invited to a lot of parties and she goes to everyone.
2. As soon as had arrived, we began the meeting.
3. I asked her lots of questions and she answered correctly.
4. She's very popular. likes her.
5. I dropped a tray of glasses. Unfortunately broke.
Look at this example sentence:

The woman who lives next door is a doctor.

A *clause* is a part of a sentence. A relative clause tells us which person or thing (or what kind of person or thing) the speaker means:

- The woman who lives next door ... ("who lives next door" tells us which woman)
- People who live in the country ... ("who live in the country" tells us what kind of people)

We use *who* in a relative clause when we are talking about people (not things):

- The woman — she lives next door — is a doctor
- The woman who lives next door is a doctor.
- We know a lot of people — they live in the country
- We know a lot of people who live in the country.

- An architect is someone who designs buildings.
- What was the name of the person who phoned you?
- Anyone who wants to apply for the job must do so by Friday.

You can also use *that* (instead of *who*), but you can't use *which* for people:

- The woman that lives next door is a doctor. (*not* the woman which)

Sometimes you must use *who* (*not* that) for people — see Unit 95.

When we are talking about things, we use *that* or *which* (*not* who) in a relative clause:

- Where is the cheese? — it was in the fridge
- Where is the cheese that was in the fridge?

- I don't like stories that have unhappy endings. (*or* stories which have ...)
- Barbara works for a company that makes furniture. (*or* a company which makes furniture)
- The machine that broke down is working again now. (*or* The machine which broke down)

*That* is more usual than *which*, but sometimes you must use *which* — see Unit 95.

*What* = 'the thing(s) that'. Compare *what* and *that*:

- What happened was my fault. (= the thing that happened)
- Everything that happened was my fault. (*not* Everything what happened)
- The machine that broke down is now working again. (*not* The machine what broke down)

Remember that in relative clauses we use *who/that/which*, *not* he/she/they/it:

- I've never spoken to the woman who lives next door. (*not* the woman she lives)
## Exercises

### 92.1

In this exercise you have to explain what some words mean. Choose the right meaning from the box and then write a sentence with who. Use a dictionary if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she steals</td>
<td>from a shop</td>
<td>buys something from a shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she designs</td>
<td>buildings</td>
<td>pays rent to live in a house or flat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she doesn't</td>
<td>believe in God</td>
<td>breaks into a house to steal things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she is not</td>
<td>brave</td>
<td>expects the worst to happen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. (an architect) An architect is someone who designs buildings.
2. (a burglar) A burglar is someone
3. (a customer)
4. (a shoplifter)
5. (a coward)
6. (an atheist)
7. (a pessimist)
8. (a tenant)

### 92.2

Make one sentence from two. Use who/that/which.

1. A girl was injured in the accident. She is now in hospital.
   The girl who was injured in the accident is now in hospital.
2. A waitress served us. She was impolite and impatient.
   The
3. A building was destroyed in the fire. It has now been rebuilt.
   The
4. Some people were arrested. They have now been released.
   The
5. A bus goes to the airport. It runs every half hour.
   The

### 92.3

Complete the sentences. Choose the best ending from the box and change it into a relative clause.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>he invented the telephone</th>
<th>it makes furniture</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>she runs away from home</td>
<td>it gives you the meaning of words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they stole my car</td>
<td>it can support life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they were on the wall</td>
<td>it cannot be explained</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Barbara works for a company that makes furniture.
2. The book is about a girl
3. What happened to the pictures?
4. A mystery is something
5. The police have caught the men
6. A dictionary is a book
7. Alexander Bell was the man
8. It seems that the earth is the only planet

### 92.4

Are these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1. I don't like stories who have unhappy endings. stories that have
2. What was the name of the person who phoned you? OK
3. Where's the nearest shop who sells newspapers?
4. The driver which caused the accident was fined £500.
5. Do you know the person that took these photographs?
6. We live in a world what is changing all the time.
7. Dan said some things about me that were not true.
8. What was the name of the horse it won the race?
Relative clauses 2: clauses with and without who/that/which

Look at these example sentences from Unit 92:

- The woman who lives next door is a doctor. (or The woman that lives ...)
  - The woman lives next door. who (= the woman) is the subject

- Where is the cheese that was in the fridge? (or the cheese which was ...)
  - The cheese was in the fridge. that (= the cheese) is the subject

You must use who/that/which when it is the subject of the relative clause. So you cannot say ‘The woman lives next door is a doctor’ or ‘Where is the cheese was in the fridge?’.

Sometimes who/that/which is the object of the verb. For example:

- The woman who I wanted to see was away on holiday.
  - I wanted to see the woman who (= the woman) is the object
    - I is the subject

- Have you found the keys that you lost?
  - You lost the keys. that (= the keys) is the object
    - you is the subject

When who/that/which is the object, you can leave it out. So you can say:

- The woman I wanted to see was away. or The woman who I wanted to see ...

- Have you found the keys you lost? or ... the keys that you lost?

- The dress Liz bought doesn’t fit her very well. or The dress that Liz bought ...

- Is there anything I can do? or ... anything that I can do?

Note that we say:

- the keys you lost (not the keys you lost them)
- the dress Liz bought (not the dress Liz bought it)

Note the position of prepositions (in/to/for etc.) in relative clauses:

- Tom is talking to a woman – do you know her?
  - Do you know the woman (who/that) Tom is talking to?

- I slept in a bed last night – it wasn’t very comfortable
  - The bed (that/which) I slept in last night wasn’t very comfortable.

- Are these the books you were looking for? or ... the books that/which you were ...

- The woman he fell in love with left him after a month. or The woman who/that he ...
  - The man I was sitting next to on the plane talked all the time. or
  - The man who/that I was sitting next to ...

Note that we say:

- the books you were looking for (not the books you were looking for them)

You cannot use what in sentences like these (see also Unit 92C):

- Everything (that) they said was true. (not Everything what they said)
- I gave her all the money (that) I had. (not all the money what I had)

What = ‘the thing(s) that’:

- Did you hear what they said? (= the things that they said)
Exercises

93.1 In some of these sentences you need who or that. Correct the sentences where necessary.
1. The woman lives next door is a doctor.
2. Have you found the keys you lost?
3. The people we met last night were very nice.
4. The people work in the office are very nice.
5. The people I work with are very nice.
6. What have you done with the money I gave you?
7. What happened to the money was on the table?
8. What’s the worst film you’ve ever seen?
9. What’s the best thing it has ever happened to you?

93.2 What do you say in these situations? Complete each sentence with a relative clause.
1. Your friend lost some keys. You want to know if he has found them. You say:
   Have you found the keys you lost?
2. A friend is wearing a dress. You like it. You tell her:
   I like the dress you’re wearing.
3. A friend is going to see a film. You want to know the name of the film. You say:
   What’s the name of the film you’re going to see?
4. You wanted to visit a museum. It was shut when you got there. You tell a friend:
   The museum we planned to visit was shut when we got there.
5. You invited some people to your party. Some of them couldn’t come. You tell someone:
   Some of the people you invited couldn’t come.
6. Your friend had to do some work. You want to know if she has finished. You say:
   Have you finished the work you were supposed to do?
7. You hired a car. It broke down after a few miles. You tell a friend:
   The car that broke down after a few miles.
8. You stayed at a hotel. Tom had recommended it to you. You tell a friend:
   We stayed at a hotel Tom recommended.

93.3 Complete each sentence using a relative clause with a preposition. Choose from the box.

we went to a party last night  we were invited to a wedding
you can rely on Gary  you told me about a hotel
I work with some people  you saw with a man
you were looking for some books

1. Are these the books you were looking for?
2. Unfortunately we couldn’t go to the wedding.
3. I enjoy my job. I like the people.
4. What’s the name of that hotel?
5. The party wasn’t very enjoyable.
6. I didn’t get the job.
7. Gary is a good person to know. He’s somebody.
8. Who was that man in the restaurant?

93.4 Put in that or what where necessary. If the sentence is already complete, leave the space empty.
1. I gave her all the money I had. (all the money that I had is also correct)
2. Did you hear what they said?
3. They give their children everything they want.
4. Tell me what you want and I’ll try to get it for you.
5. Why do you blame me for everything goes wrong?
6. I won’t be able to do much, but I’ll do I can.
7. I won’t be able to do much, but I’ll do the best I can.
8. I don’t agree with you’ve just said.
9. I don’t trust him. I don’t believe anything he says.
Relative clauses 3: whose/whom/where

A

Whose

We use whose in relative clauses instead of his/her/their:

we saw some people – their car had broken down

→ We saw some people whose car had broken down.

We use whose mostly for people:

☐ A widow is a woman whose husband is dead. (her husband is dead)
☐ What's the name of the man whose car you borrowed? (you borrowed his car)
☐ I met someone whose brother I went to school with. (I went to school with his/her brother)

Compare who and whose:

☐ I met a man who knows you. (he knows you)
☐ I met a man whose sister knows you. (his sister knows you)

B

Whom

Whom is possible instead of who when it is the object of the verb in the relative clause (like the sentences in Unit 93B):

☐ The woman whom I wanted to see was away. (I wanted to see her)

You can also use whom with a preposition (to whom / from whom / with whom etc.):

☐ The people with whom I work are very nice. (I work with them)

But we do not often use whom in spoken English. We usually prefer who or that, or nothing (see Unit 93). So we usually say:

☐ The woman I wanted to see ... or The woman who/that I wanted to see ...
☐ The people I work with ... or The people who/that I work with ...

C

Where

You can use where in a relative clause to talk about a place:

the restaurant – we had dinner there – it was near the airport

→ The restaurant where we had dinner was near the airport.

☐ I recently went back to the town where I grew up.
   (or ... the town I grew up in or ... the town that I grew up in)
☐ I would like to live in a place where there is plenty of sunshine.

D

We say:

the day / the year / the time etc. { something happens or that something happens

☐ Do you remember the day (that) we went to the zoo?
☐ The last time (that) I saw her, she looked fine.
☐ I haven’t seen them since the year (that) they got married.

We say:

the reason { something happens or that/why something happens

☐ The reason I’m phoning you is to ask your advice.
   (or The reason that I’m phoning / The reason why I’m phoning)
Exercises

94.1 You met these people at a party:

1. My mother writes detective stories.
2. My wife is an English teacher.
3. I own a restaurant.
4. My ambition is to climb Everest.
5. We've just got married.
6. My parents used to work in a circus.

The next day you tell a friend about these people. Complete the sentences using who or whose.

1. I met somebody whose mother writes detective stories.
2. I met a man.
3. I met a woman.
4. I met somebody.
5. I met a couple.
6. I met somebody.

94.2 Read the situations and complete the sentences using where.

1. You grew up in a small town. You went back there recently. You tell someone this.
   I recently went back to the small town where I grew up.
2. You want to buy some postcards. You ask a friend where you can do this.
   Is there a shop near here?
3. You work in a factory. The factory is going to close down next month. You tell a friend:
   The factory is going to close down next month. Is there a shop near here?
4. Sue is staying at a hotel. You want to know the name of the hotel. You ask a friend:
   Do you know the name of the hotel?
5. You play football in a park on Sundays. You show a friend the park. You say:
   This is the park on Sundays.

94.3 Complete each sentence using who/whom/whose/where.

1. What's the name of the man whose car you borrowed?
2. A cemetery is a place where people are buried.
3. A pacifist is a person who believes that all wars are wrong.
4. An orphan is a child whose parents are dead.
5. What was the name of the person to whom you spoke on the phone?
6. The place where we spent our holidays was really beautiful.
7. This school is only for children whose first language is not English.
8. The woman with whom he fell in love left him after a month.

94.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. They are like the examples in Sections D and E.

1. I'll always remember the day I first met you.
2. I'll never forget the time.
3. The reason was that I didn't know your address.
4. Unfortunately I wasn't at home the evening.
5. The reason is that they don't need one.
6. was the year.
Relative clauses 4: extra information clauses (1)

There are two types of relative clause. In these examples, the relative clauses are underlined. Compare:

**Type 1**
- The woman who lives next door is a doctor.
- Barbara works for a company that makes furniture.
- We stayed at the hotel (that) you recommended.

In these examples, the relative clause tells you which person or thing (or what kind of person or thing) the speaker means:
- ‘The woman who lives next door’ tells us which woman.
- ‘A company that makes furniture’ tells us what kind of company.
- ‘The hotel (that) Ann recommended’ tells us which hotel.

We do not use commas (,) with these clauses:
- We know a lot of people who live in London.

**Type 2**
- My brother Rob, who lives in Australia, is a doctor.
- Colin told me about his new job, which he’s enjoying very much.
- We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended.

In these examples, the relative clauses do not tell you which person or thing the speaker means. We already know which thing or person is meant: ‘My brother Rob’, ‘Colin’s new job’ and ‘the Park Hotel’.

The relative clauses in these sentences give us extra information about the person or thing.

We use commas (,) with these clauses:
- My brother Rob, who lives in London, is a doctor.

In both types of relative clause we use who for people and which for things. But:

**Type 1**
- You can use that:
  - Do you know anyone who/that speaks French and Italian?
  - Barbara works for a company which/that makes furniture.

You can leave out who/which/that when it is the object (see Unit 93):  
- We stayed at the hotel (that/which) you recommended.
- This morning I met somebody (who/that) I hadn’t seen for ages.

We do not often use whom in this type of clause (see Unit 94B).

**Type 2**
- You cannot use that:
  - John, who (not that) speaks French and Italian, works as a tourist guide.
  - Colin told me about his new job, which (not that) he’s enjoying very much.

You cannot leave out who or which:
- We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended.
- This morning I met Chris, who I hadn’t seen for ages.

You can use whom for people (when it is the object):
- This morning I met Chris, whom I hadn’t seen for ages.

In both types of relative clause you can use whose and where:
- We met some people whose car had broken down.
- What’s the name of the place where you went on holiday?
- Liz, whose car had broken down, was in a very bad mood.
- Jill has just been to Sweden, where her daughter lives.
Exercises

Unit 95

95.1 Make one sentence from two. Use the sentence in brackets to make a relative clause (Type 2). You will need to use who(m)/whose/which/where.

1 Catherine is very friendly. (She lives next door.) Catherine, who lives next door, is very friendly.

2 We stayed at the Park Hotel. (A friend of ours had recommended it.) We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours had recommended.

3 We often go to visit our friends in Bristol. (It is not very far away.)

4 I went to see the doctor. (He told me to rest for a few days.)

5 John is one of my closest friends. (I have known him for a very long time.) John

6 Sheila is away from home a lot. (Her job involves a lot of travelling.)

7 The new stadium will be opened next month. (It can hold 90,000 people.)

8 Glasgow is the largest city in Scotland. (My brother lives there.)

9 A friend of mine helped me to get a job. (His father is the manager of a company.)

95.2 Read the information and complete each sentence. Use a relative clause of Type 1 or Type 2. Use commas where necessary.

1 There’s a woman living next door to me. She’s a doctor. The woman who lives next door to me is a doctor.

2 I’ve got a brother called Rob. He lives in Australia. He’s a doctor. My brother Rob, who lives in Australia, is a doctor.

3 There was a strike at the car factory. It began ten days ago. It is now over. The strike at the car factory.

4 I was looking for a book this morning. I’ve found it now. I’ve found

5 London was once the largest city in the world, but the population is now falling. The population of London

6 A job was advertised. A lot of people applied for it. Few of them had the necessary qualifications. Few of

7 Amy has a son. She showed me a photograph of him. He’s a policeman. Amy showed me

95.3 Correct the sentences that are wrong and put in commas where necessary. If the sentence is correct, write ‘OK’.

1 Colin told me about his new job that he’s enjoying very much. Colin told me about his new job, which he’s enjoying very much.

2 My office that is on the second floor is very small.

3 The office I’m using at the moment is very small.

4 Ben’s father that used to be a teacher now works for a TV company.

5 The doctor that examined me couldn’t find anything wrong.

6 The sun that is one of millions of stars in the universe provides us with heat and light.
Prepositions + whom/which

You can use a preposition before whom (for people) and which (for things). So you can say:

- to whom / with whom / about which / without which etc.:
  - Mr Lee, to whom I spoke at the meeting, is very interested in our proposal.
  - Fortunately we had a map, without which we would have got lost.

In informal English we often keep the preposition after the verb in the relative clause. When we do this, we normally use who (not whom) for people:

- This is my friend from Canada, who I was telling you about.
- Yesterday we visited the City Museum, which I’d never been to before.

All of / most of etc. + whom/which

Study these examples:

Mary has three brothers. All of them are married. (2 sentences)

Mary has three brothers, all of whom are married. (1 sentence)

They asked me a lot of questions. I couldn’t answer most of them. (2 sentences)

They asked me a lot of questions, most of which I couldn’t answer. (1 sentence)

In the same way you can say:

- none of / neither of / any of / either of
- some of / many of / much of / (a) few of
- both of / half of / each of / one of / two of etc.

- + whom (people)
- + which (things)

- Martin tried on three jackets, none of which fitted him.
- Two men, neither of whom I had seen before, came into the office.
- They’ve got three cars, two of which they rarely use.
- Sue has a lot of friends, many of whom she was at school with.

You can also say the cause of which / the name of which etc.:

- The building was destroyed in a fire, the cause of which was never established.
- We stayed at a beautiful hotel, the name of which I can’t remember now.

Which (not what)

Study this example:

- Joe got the job. This surprised everybody. (2 sentences)
- Joe got the job, which surprised everybody. (1 sentence)

In this example, which = ‘the fact that he got the job’. You must use which (not what) in sentences like these:

- Sarah couldn’t meet us, which was a pity. (not what was a pity)
- The weather was good, which we hadn’t expected. (not what we hadn’t expected)

For what, see Units 92C and 93D.
Exercises

Unit 96

96.1 Write the relative clauses in a more formal way using a preposition + whom/which.
1 Yesterday we visited the City Museum, which I'd never been to before.
   Yesterday we visited the City Museum, to which I'd never been before.
2 My brother showed us his new car, which he's very proud of.
   My brother showed us his new car, of which he's very proud.
3 This is a photograph of our friends Chris and Sam, who we went on holiday with.
   This is a photograph of our friends Chris and Sam, with whom we went on holiday.
4 The wedding, which only members of the family were invited to, took place on Friday.
   The wedding, to which only members of the family were invited, took place on Friday.

96.2 Use the information in the first sentence to complete the second sentence. Use all of / most of etc. or the ... of + whom/which.
1 All of Mary's brothers are married.
   Mary has three brothers, all of whom are married.
2 Most of the information we were given was useless.
   We were given a lot of information, of which was useless.
3 Jane has received neither of the letters I sent her.
   I sent Jane two letters, neither of which she received.
4 None of the ten people who applied for the job was suitable.
   Ten people applied for the job, none of which was suitable.
5 Kate hardly ever uses one of her computers.
   Kate has got two computers, neither of which she uses.
6 Mike gave half of the £50,000 he won to his parents.
   Mike won £50,000, half of which he gave to his parents.
7 Both of Julia's sisters are teachers.
   Julia has two sisters, both of which are teachers.
8 I went to a party - I knew only a few of the people there.
   There were a lot of people at the party, only a few of whom I knew.
9 The sides of the road we drove along were lined with trees.
   We drove along the road, the sides of which were lined with trees.
10 The aim of the company's new business plan is to save money.
    The company has a new business plan, the aim of which is to save money.

96.3 Join sentences from the boxes to make new sentences. Use which.

1 Laura couldn't come to the party.
2 Jane doesn't have a phone.
3 Neil has passed his exams.
4 Our flight was delayed.
5 Kate offered to let me stay at her house.
6 The street I live in is very noisy at night.
7 Our car has broken down.

1 This was very kind of her.
   Laura couldn't come to the party, which was a pity.
2 This means we can't go away tomorrow.
   Jane doesn't have a phone.
3 This makes it difficult to contact her.
   Neil has passed his exams.
4 This makes it difficult to sleep sometimes.
   Our flight was delayed.
5 This was a pity.
   Kate offered to let me stay at her house.
6 This is good news.
   The street I live in is very noisy at night.
7 This meant we had to wait three hours at the airport.
   Our car has broken down.
-ing and -ed clauses (the woman talking to Tom, the boy injured in the accident)

A clause is a part of a sentence. Some clauses begin with -ing or -ed. For example:

Do you know the woman talking to Tom?

The boy injured in the accident was taken to hospital.

We use -ing clauses to say what somebody (or something) is (or was) doing at a particular time:

- Do you know the woman talking to Sam? (the woman is talking to Sam)
- Police investigating the crime are looking for three men. (police are investigating the crime)
- Who were those people waiting outside? (they were waiting)
- I was woken up by a bell ringing. (a bell was ringing)

You can also use an -ing clause to say what happens all the time, not just at a particular time. For example:

- The road connecting the two villages is very narrow. (the road connects the two villages)
- I have a large room overlooking the garden. (the room overlooks the garden)
- Can you think of the name of a flower beginning with T? (the name begins with T)

-ed clauses have a passive meaning:

- The boy injured in the accident was taken to hospital. (he was injured in the accident)
- George showed me some pictures painted by his father. (they had been painted by his father)

Injured and invited are past participles. Note that many past participles are irregular and do not end in -ed (stolen/made/written etc.):

- The police never found the money stolen in the robbery.
- Most of the goods made in this factory are exported.

You can use left in this way, with the meaning 'not used, still there':

- We've eaten nearly all the chocolates. There are only a few left.

We often use -ing and -ed clauses after there is / there was etc.:

- There were some children swimming in the river.
- Is there anybody waiting?
- There was a big red car parked outside the house.
Exercises

97.1 Make one sentence from two. Complete the sentences with an -ing clause.

1. A bell was ringing. I was woken up by it.
   I was woken up by a bell ringing.

2. A man was sitting next to me on the plane. I didn’t talk much to him.
   I didn’t talk much to the man sitting next to me.

3. A taxi was taking us to the airport. It broke down.
   The taxi taking us to the airport broke down.

4. There’s a path at the end of this street. The path leads to the river.
   At the end of the street there’s a path.

5. A factory has just opened in the town. It employs 500 people.
   A factory has just opened in the town has 500 employees.

6. The company sent me a brochure. It contained the information I needed.
   The company sent me a brochure containing the information I needed.

97.2 Make one sentence from two, beginning as shown. Each time make an -ed clause.

1. A boy was injured in the accident. He was taken to hospital.
   The boy injured in the accident was taken to hospital.

2. A gate was damaged in the storm. It has now been repaired.
   The gate damaged in the storm has now been repaired.

3. A number of suggestions were made at the meeting. Most of them were not very practical.
   Most of the suggestions made at the meeting were not very practical.

4. Some paintings were stolen from the museum. They haven’t been found yet.
   The paintings stolen from the museum haven’t been found yet.

5. A man was arrested by the police. What was his name?
   What was the name of the man arrested by the police?

97.3 Complete the sentences using the following verbs in the correct form:

- blow
- call
- invite
- live
- offer
- read
- ring
- sit
- study
- work

1. I was woken up by a bell ringing.

2. Some of the people invited to the party can’t come.

3. Life must be very unpleasant for people living near busy airports.

4. A few days after the interview, I received a letter offering me the job.

5. Somebody calling Jack phoned while you were out.

6. There was a tree blown down in the storm last night.

7. The waiting room was empty except for a young man sitting by the window reading a magazine.

8. Ian has a brother working in a bank in London and a sister studying economics at university in Manchester.

97.4 Use the words in brackets to make sentences using There is / There was etc.

1. That house is empty. (nobody / live / in it) There’s nobody living in it.

2. The accident wasn’t serious. (nobody / injure) There was nobody injured.

3. I can hear footsteps. (somebody / come)
   There sounds like somebody coming.

4. The train was full. (a lot of people / travel)
   There were too many people on the train.

5. We were the only guests at the hotel. (nobody else / stay there)
   We were the only guests at the hotel.

6. The piece of paper was blank. (nothing / write / on it)
   The piece of paper had nothing written on it.

7. The college offers English courses in the evening. (a course / begin / next Monday)
   The college offers English courses beginning next Monday.
Adjectives ending in -ing and -ed (boring/bored etc.)

There are many adjectives ending in -ing and -ed, for example: boring and bored. Study this example situation:

Jane has been doing the same job for a very long time. Every day she does exactly the same thing again and again. She doesn't enjoy her job any more and would like to do something different.

Jane's job is boring.
Jane is bored (with her job).

Somebody is bored if something (or somebody else) is boring. Or, if something is boring, it makes you bored. So:
- Jane is bored because her job is boring.
- Jane's job is boring, so Jane is bored. (not Jane is boring)

If a person is boring, this means that they make other people bored:
- George always talks about the same things. He's really boring.

Compare adjectives ending in -ing and -ed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ing</th>
<th>ed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>boring</td>
<td>interested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interesting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiring</td>
<td>depressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satisfying</td>
<td>depressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depressing</td>
<td>depressed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In these examples, the -ing adjective tells you about the job.

Compare these examples:

**interesting**
- Julia thinks politics is interesting.
- Did you meet anyone interesting at the party?

**surprising**
- It was surprising that he passed the exam.

**disappointing**
- The film was disappointing.
  We expected it to be much better.

**shocking**
- The news was shocking.

**interested**
- Julia is interested in politics.
  (not interesting in politics)
- Are you interested in buying a car?
  I'm trying to sell mine.

**surprised**
- Everybody was surprised that he passed the exam.

**disappointed**
- We were disappointed with the film.
  We expected it to be much better.

**shocked**
- I was shocked when I heard the news.
Exercises

Unit 98

98.1 Complete the sentences for each situation. Use the word in brackets + -ing or -ed.

1. The film wasn’t as good as we had expected. (disappoint...)
   a. The film was __________________.
   b. We were __________________ with the film.

2. Donna teaches young children. It’s a very hard job, but she enjoys it. (exhaust...)
   a. She enjoys her job, but it’s often ____________________________.
   b. At the end of a day’s work, she is often ____________________________.

3. It’s been raining all day. I hate this weather. (depress...)
   a. This weather is ____________________________.
   b. This weather makes me ____________________________.
   c. It’s silly to get ____________________________ because of the weather.

4. Clare is going to Mexico next month. She has never been there before. (excit...)
   a. It will be an ____________________________ experience for her.
   b. Going to new places is always ____________________________.
   c. She is really ____________________________ about going to Mexico.

98.2 Choose the correct word.

1. I was disappointing / disappointed with the film. I had expected it to be better.  
   (disappointed is correct)

2. Are you interesting / interested in football?

3. The football match was very exciting / excited. I enjoyed it.

4. It’s sometimes embarrassing / embarrassed when you have to ask people for money.

5. Do you easily get embarrassing / embarrassed?

6. I had never expected to get the job. I was really amazing / amazed when I was offered it.

7. She has really learnt very fast. She has made astonishing / astonished progress.

8. I didn’t find the situation funny. I was not amusing / amused.

9. It was a really terrifying / terrified experience. Afterwards everybody was very shocking / shocked.

10. Why do you always look so boring / bored? Is your life really so boring / bored?

11. He’s one of the most boring / bored people I’ve ever met. He never stops talking and he never 
    says anything interesting / interested.

98.3 Complete each sentence using a word from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amusing/amused</th>
<th>annoying/annoyed</th>
<th>boring/bored</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>confusing/confused</td>
<td>disgusting/disgusted</td>
<td>exciting/excited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exhausting/exhausted</td>
<td>interesting/interested</td>
<td>surprising/surprised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. He works very hard. It’s not ____________________________ that he’s always tired.

2. I’ve got nothing to do. I’m ____________________________.

3. The teacher’s explanation was ____________________________. Most of the students didn’t 
   understand it.

4. The kitchen hadn’t been cleaned for ages. It was really ____________________________.

5. I seldom visit art galleries. I’m not particularly ____________________________ in art.

6. There’s no need to get ____________________________ just because I’m a few minutes late.

7. The lecture was ____________________________. I fell asleep.

8. I’ve been working very hard all day and now I’m ____________________________.

9. I’m starting a new job next week. I’m very ____________________________ about it.

10. Steve is very good at telling funny stories. He can be very ____________________________.

11. Liz is a very ____________________________ person. She knows a lot, she’s travelled a lot and she’s done lots of different things.
Adjectives: a nice new house, you look tired

Sometimes we use two or more adjectives together:
- My brother lives in a nice new house.
- In the kitchen there was a beautiful large round wooden table.

Adjectives like new/large/round/wooden are fact adjectives. They give us factual information about age, size, colour etc.
Adjectives like nice/beautiful are opinion adjectives. They tell us what somebody thinks of something or somebody.
Opinion adjectives usually go before fact adjectives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>opinion</th>
<th>fact</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a nice</td>
<td>summer holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an interesting</td>
<td>young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delicious</td>
<td>man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a beautiful</td>
<td>large round wooden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>table</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes we use two or more fact adjectives together. Usually (but not always) we put fact adjectives in this order:

1. how big?
2. how old?
3. what colour?
4. where from?
5. what is it made of?

- a tall young man (1 → 2)
- big blue eyes (1 → 3)
- a small black plastic bag (1 → 3 → 5)
- a large wooden table (1 → 5)
- an old Russian song (2 → 4)
- an old white cotton shirt (2 → 3 → 5)

Adjectives of size and length (big/small/tall/short/long etc.) usually go before adjectives of shape and width (round/fat/thin/slim/wide etc.):
- a large round table
- a tall thin girl
- a long narrow street

When there are two or more colour adjectives, we use and:
- a black and white dress
- a red, white and green flag

This does not usually happen with other adjectives before a noun:
- a long black dress (not a long and black dress)

We use adjectives after be/get/become/seem:
- Be careful!
- I’m tired and I’m getting hungry.
- As the film went on, it became more and more boring.
- Your friend seems very nice.

We also use adjectives to say how somebody/something looks, feels, sounds, tastes or smells:
- You look tired. / I feel tired. / She sounds tired.
- The dinner smells good.
- This tea tastes a bit strange.

But to say how somebody does something you must use an adverb (see Units 100–101):
- Drive carefully! (not Drive careful)
- Susan plays the piano very well. (not plays ... very good)

We say ‘the first two days / the next few weeks / the last ten minutes’ etc.:
- I didn’t enjoy the first two days of the course. (not the two first days)
- They’ll be away for the next few weeks. (not the few next weeks)
Exercises

99.1 Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct position.
1. a beautiful table (wooden / round)  a beautiful round wooden table
2. an unusual ring (gold)
3. an old house (beautiful)
4. black gloves (leather)
5. an American film (old)
6. a long face (thin)
7. big clouds (black)
8. a sunny day (lovely)
9. an ugly dress (yellow)
10. a wide avenue (long)
11. a red car (old / little)
12. a new sweater (green / nice)
13. a metal box (black / small)
14. a big cat (fat / black)
15. a little village (old / lovely)
16. long hair (black / beautiful)
17. an old painting (interesting / French)
18. an enormous umbrella (red / yellow)

99.2 Complete each sentence with a verb (in the correct form) and an adjective from the boxes.

**feel** **look** **seem** **smell** **sound** **taste**
**awful** **fine** **interesting**
**nice** **upset** **wet**

1. Helen ___________ this morning. Do you know what was wrong?
2. I can’t eat this. I’ve just tried it and it ___________.
3. I wasn’t very well yesterday, but I ___________ today.
4. What beautiful flowers! They ___________ too.
5. You ___________. Have you been out in the rain?
6. Jim was telling me about his new job. It ___________ — much better than his old job.

99.3 Put in the correct word.
1. This tea tastes a bit ___________. (strange / strangely)
2. I always feel ___________ when the sun is shining. (happy / happily)
3. The children were playing ___________ in the garden. (happy / happily)
4. The man became ___________ when the manager of the restaurant asked him to leave.
   (violent / violently)
5. You look ___________.! Are you all right? (terrible / terribly)
6. There’s no point in doing a job if you don’t do it ___________. (proper / properly)
7. The soup tastes ___________. (good / well)
8. Hurry up! You’re always so ___________. (slow / slowly)

99.4 Write the following in another way using the first ... / the next ... / the last ...

1. the first day and the second day of the course
   the first two days of the course
2. next week and the week after
3. yesterday and the day before yesterday
4. the first week and the second week of May
5. tomorrow and a few days after that
6. questions 1, 2 and 3 in the exam
7. next year and the year after
8. the last day of our holiday and the two days before that
Adjectives and adverbs 1 (quick/quickly)

Look at these examples:
- Our holiday was too short – the time passed very quickly.
- Two people were seriously injured in the accident.

Quickly and seriously are adverbs. Many adverbs are formed from an adjective + -ly:
- Adjective: quick, serious, careful, quiet, heavy, bad
- Adverb: quickly, seriously, carefully, quietly, heavily, badly

For spelling, see Appendix 6.

Not all words ending in -ly are adverbs. Some adjectives end in -ly too, for example:
- friendly, lively, elderly, lonely, silly, lovely

Adjective or adverb?

Adjectives (quick/careful etc.) tell us about a noun (somebody or something). We use adjectives before nouns:
- Sam is a careful driver.
  (not a carefully driver)
- We didn’t go out because of the heavy rain.

Adverbs (quickly/carefully etc.) tell us about a verb (how somebody does something or how something happens):
- Sam drove carefully along the narrow road. (not drove careful)
- We didn’t go out because it was raining heavily. (not raining heavy)

Compare:
- She speaks perfect English.
  adjective + noun
- She speaks English perfectly.
  verb + noun + adverb

We also use adjectives after some verbs, especially be, and also look/feel/sound etc.

Compare:
- Please be quiet.
- I was disappointed that my exam results were so bad.
- Why do you always look so serious?
- I feel happy.
- Please speak quietly.
- I was unhappy that I did so badly in the exam. (not did so bad)
- Why do you never take me seriously?
- The children were playing happily.

We also use adverbs before adjectives and other adverbs. For example:
- Reasonably cheap (adverb + adjective)
- Terribly sorry (adverb + adjective)
- Incredibly quickly (adverb + adverb)

- It’s a reasonably cheap restaurant and the food is extremely good.
- I’m terribly sorry. I didn’t mean to push you. (not terrible sorry)
- Maria learns languages incredibly quickly.
- The examination was surprisingly easy.

You can also use an adverb before a past participle (injured/organised/written etc.):
- Two people were seriously injured in the accident. (not serious injured)
- The meeting was very badly organised.
Exercises

Unit 100

100.1 Complete each sentence with an adverb. The first letters of the adverb are given.
1. We didn’t go out because it was raining heavily.
2. Our team lost the game because we played very badly.
3. I had little difficulty finding a place to live. I found a flat quite easily.
4. We had to wait for a long time, but we didn’t complain. We waited patiently.
5. Nobody knew Steve was coming to see us. He arrived unexpectedly.
6. Mike keeps fit by playing tennis regularly.
7. I don’t speak French very well, but I can understand people if they speak slowly and clearly.

100.2 Put in the correct word.
1. Two people were seriously injured in the accident. (serious / seriously)
2. The driver of the car had serious injuries. (serious / seriously)
3. I think you behaved very selfishly. (selfish / selfishly)
4. Rose is terribly upset about losing her job. (terrible / terribly)
5. There was suddenly a change in the weather. (sudden / suddenly)
6. Everybody at the party was colourfully dressed. (colourful / colourfully)
7. Linda likes wearing colourful clothes. (colourful / colourfully)
8. Liz fell and hurt herself quite badly. (bad / badly)
9. Joe says he didn’t do well at school because he was taught badly. (bad / badly)
10. Don’t go up that ladder. It doesn’t look safely. (safe / safely)

100.3 Complete each sentence using a word from the box. Sometimes you need the adjective (careful etc.) and sometimes the adverb (carefully etc.).

| careful(ly) | complete(ly) | continuous(ly) | financial(ly) | fluent(ly) |
|            | happy/happily | nervous(ly) | perfect(ly) | quick(ly) | special(ly) |

1. Our holiday was too short. The time passed very quickly.
2. Steve doesn’t take risks when he’s driving. He’s always carefully.
3. Sue works extremely. She never seems to stop.
4. Rachel and Patrick are very happily married.
5. Maria’s English is very excellently although she makes a lot of mistakes.
6. I cooked this meal perfectly for you, so I hope you like it.
7. Everything was very quiet. There was silence.
8. I tried on the shoes and they fitted me well.
9. Do you usually feel unusually before examinations?
10. I’d like to buy a car, but it’s specially impossible for me at the moment.

100.4 Choose two words (one from each box) to complete each sentence.

| absolutely | badly | completely | changed | cheap | damaged | enormous | ill | long |
|           | reasonabiously | seriously | slightly |         |         |         |     |     |
| unnecessarily | unusually |         |         |         |         |         |     |     |

1. I thought the restaurant would be expensive, but it was reasonably cheap.
2. Steve’s mother is seriously in hospital.
3. What a big house! It’s enormous.
4. It wasn’t a serious accident. The car was only slightly damaged.
5. The children are normally very lively, but they’re unusually today.
6. When I returned home after 20 years, everything had changed considerably.
7. The film was completely planned. It could have been much shorter.
8. A lot went wrong during our holiday because it was badly booked.
Adjectives and adverbs 2
(well/fast/late, hard/hardly)

Good/well

Good is an adjective. The adverb is well:
- Your English is good. but You speak English well.
- Susan is a good pianist. but Susan plays the piano well.

We use well (not good) with past participles (dressed/known etc.):
- well-dressed
- well-known
- well-educated
- well-paid
- Gary’s father is a well-known writer.

But well is also an adjective with the meaning ‘in good health’:
- ‘How are you today? ’I’m very well, thanks.’

Fast/hard/late

These words are both adjectives and adverbs:
- adjective
  - Darren is a very fast runner.
  - Kate is a hard worker.
  - I was late.
- adverb
  - Darren can run very fast.
  - Kate works hard. (not works hardly)
  - I got up late this morning.

Lately = recently:
- Have you seen Tom lately?

Hardly

Hardly = very little, almost not. Study these examples:
- Sarah wasn’t very friendly at the party. She hardly spoke to me.
  (= she spoke to me very little, almost not at all)
- We’ve only met once or twice. We hardly know each other.

Hard and hardly are different. Compare:
- He tried hard to find a job, but he had no luck. (= he tried a lot, with a lot of effort)
- I’m not surprised he didn’t find a job. He hardly tried to find one. (= he tried very little)

You can use hardly + any/anybody/anyone/anything/anywhere:
- A: How much money have we got?
  B: Hardly any. (= very little, almost none)
- These two cameras are very similar. There’s hardly any difference between them.
- The exam results were very bad. Hardly anybody in our class passed. (= very few students passed)

Note that you can say:
- She said hardly anything. or She hardly said anything.
- We’ve got hardly any money. or We’ve hardly got any money.

I can hardly do something = it’s very difficult for me, almost impossible:
- Your writing is terrible. I can hardly read it. (= it is almost impossible to read it)
- My leg was hurting me. I could hardly walk.

Hardly ever = almost never:
- I’m nearly always at home in the evenings. I hardly ever go out.

Hardly also means ‘certainly not’. For example:
- It’s hardly surprising that you’re tired. You haven’t slept for three days.
  (= it’s certainly not surprising)
- The situation is serious, but it’s hardly a crisis. (= it’s certainly not a crisis)
Exercises

Unit 101

101.1 Put in good or well.
1 I play tennis but I’m not very ............ good ............ .
2 Your exam results were very ............ ............ .
3 You did ............ in your exams.
4 The weather was ............ while we were on holiday.
5 I didn’t sleep ............ last night.
6 How are you? Are you ............ ?
7 Lucy speaks German very ............ ............ .
8 Lucy’s German is very ............ ............ .
9 Our new business isn’t doing very ............ at the moment.
10 I like your hat. It looks ............ on you.
11 I’ve met her a few times, but I don’t know her ............ .

101.2 Complete these sentences using well + the following words:
behaved dressed informed kept known paid written
1 The children were very good. They were ............ well-behaved ............ .
2 I’m surprised you haven’t heard of her. She is quite ............ ............ .
3 Our neighbours’ garden is neat and tidy. It is very ............ ............ .
4 I enjoyed the book you lent me. It’s a great story and it’s very ............ ............ .
5 Tania knows a lot about many things. She is very ............ ............ .
6 Mark’s clothes are always smart. He is always ............ ............ .
7 Jane has a lot of responsibility in her job, but she isn’t very ............ ............ .

101.3 Are the underlined words right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.
1 I’m tired because I’ve been working hard. OK
2 I tried hard to remember her name, but I couldn’t.
3 This coat is practically unused. I’ve hardly worn it.
4 Judy is a good tennis player. She hits the ball hardly.
5 Don’t walk so fast! I can’t keep up with you.
6 I had plenty of time, so I was walking slow.

101.4 Complete the sentences. Use hardly + the following verbs (in the correct form):
change hear know recognise say sleep speak
1 Scott and Tracy have only met once before. They ............ hardly know ............ each other.
2 You’re speaking very quietly. I can ............ ............ you.
3 I’m very tired this morning. I ............ last night.
4 We were so shocked when we heard the news, we could ............ ............ .
5 Kate was very quiet this evening. She ............ a word.
6 You look the same now as you looked 15 years ago. You’ve ............ ............ .
7 I met Dave a few days ago. I hadn’t seen him for a long time and he looks very different now.
I ............ ............ him.

101.5 Complete these sentences with hardly + any/anybody/anything/anywhere/ever.
1 I’ll have to go shopping. There’s ............ anything ............ to eat.
2 It was a very warm day and there was ............ wind.
3 ‘Do you know much about computers?’ ‘No, ............ ’
4 The hotel was almost empty. There was ............ staying there.
5 I listen to the radio quite often, but I ............ watch television.
6 Our new boss is not very popular. ............ likes her.
7 It was very crowded in the room. There was ............ to sit.
8 We used to be good friends, but we ............ see each other now.
9 It was nice driving this morning. There was ............ traffic.
10 I hate this town. There’s ............ to do and ............ to go.
So and such

Compare so and such:

We use so + adjective/adverb:
so stupid  so quick
so nice  so quickly

☐ I didn’t like the book. The story was so stupid.
☐ I like Liz and Joe. They are so nice.

We use such + noun:
such a story  such people
We also use such + adjective + noun:
such a stupid story  such nice people

☐ I didn’t like the book. It was such a stupid story. (not a so stupid story)
☐ I like Liz and Joe. They are such nice people. (not so nice people)

We say such a ... (not a such):
such a big dog (not a such big dog)

So and such make the meaning of an adjective (or adverb) stronger:

☐ It’s a beautiful day, isn’t it? It’s so warm. (= really warm)
☐ It’s difficult to understand him because he talks so quietly.

You can use so ... that:
☐ The book was so good that I couldn’t put it down.
☐ I was so tired that I fell asleep in the armchair.

We usually leave out that:
☐ I was so tired I fell asleep.

☐ It was a great holiday. We had such a good time. (= a really good time)

You can use such ... that:
☐ It was such a good book that I couldn’t put it down.
☐ It was such nice weather that we spent the whole day on the beach.

We usually leave out that:
☐ It was such nice weather we spent ...

We also use so and such with the meaning ‘like this’:

☐ Somebody told me the house was built 100 years ago. I didn’t realize it was so old. (= as old as it is)
☐ I’m tired because I got up at six. I don’t usually get up so early.
☐ I expected the weather to be cooler. I’m surprised it is so warm.

☐ I didn’t realise it was such an old house.
☐ You know it’s not true. How can you say such a thing?

Note the expression no such ... :
☐ You won’t find the word ‘blind’ in the dictionary. There’s no such word.
(= this word does not exist)

Compare:

such a long time
☐ I haven’t seen her for such a long time. (not so long time)

such a long way
☐ I didn’t know it was such a long way.

such a lot (of)
☐ I’m sorry I’m late – there was such a lot of traffic.

so long
☒ I haven’t seen her for so long I’ve forgotten what she looks like.

so far
☒ I didn’t know it was so far.

so much, so many
☒ I’m sorry I’m late – there was so much traffic.

Not so ... as → Unit 107A  Such as → Unit 117B
Exercises

102.1 Put in so, such or such a.

1 It's difficult to understand him because he speaks __so__ quietly.
2 I like Liz and Joe. They're __such__ nice people.
3 It was a great holiday. We had __such a__ good time.
4 I was surprised that he looked __________ well after his recent illness.
5 Everything is __________ expensive these days, isn't it?
6 The weather is beautiful, isn't it? I didn't expect it to be __________ nice day.
7 I have to go. I didn't realise it was __________ late.
8 He always looks good. He wears __________ nice clothes.
9 It was __________ boring film that I fell asleep while I was watching it.
10 I couldn't believe the news. It was __________ shock.
11 I think she works too hard. She looks __________ tired all the time.
12 The food at the hotel was __________ awful. I've never eaten __________ awful food.
13 They've got __________ much money they don't know what to do with it.
14 I didn't realise you lived __________ long way from the city centre.
15 The party was really great. It was __________ pity you couldn't come.

102.2 Make one sentence from two. Use so or such.

1 She worked hard.
2 She made herself ill.
3 I was tired.
4 She speaks English well.
5 We had a good time on holiday.
6 I've got a lot to do.
7 The music was loud.
8 I had a big breakfast.
9 It was horrible weather.
10 I was surprised.

You could hear it from miles away.
You would think it was her native language.
We spent the whole day indoors.
She made herself ill.
I couldn't keep my eyes open.
I didn't eat anything else for the rest of the day.
We decided to go to the beach.
I didn't know what to say.
I don't know where to begin.
We didn't want to come home.

1 She worked so hard she made herself ill.
2 It was such a beautiful day we decided to go to the beach.
3 I was
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

102.3 Use your own ideas to complete these pairs of sentences.

1 a We enjoyed our holiday. It was so __relaxing__
   b We enjoyed our holiday. We had such __a good time__
2 a I like Catherine. She's so ____________________________
   b I like Catherine. She's such ____________________________
3 a I like New York. It's so ____________________________
   b I like New York. It's such ____________________________
4 a I wouldn't like to be a teacher. It's so ____________________________
   b I wouldn't like to be a teacher. It's such ____________________________
5 a It's great to see you again! I haven't seen you for so ____________________________
   b It's great to see you again! I haven't seen you for such ____________________________
Enough and too

A

Enough goes after adjectives and adverbs:
- I can't run very far. I'm not fit enough. (not enough fit)
- Let's go. We've waited long enough.
- Is Joe going to apply for the job? Is he experienced enough?

Compare too ... and not ... enough:
- You never stop working. You work too hard.
  (= more than is necessary)
- You're lazy. You don't work hard enough.
  (= less than is necessary)

Enough normally goes before nouns:
- I can't run very far. I haven't got enough energy. (not energy enough)
- Is Joe going to apply for the job? Does he have enough experience?
- We've got enough money. We don't need any more.
- Some of us had to sit on the floor because there weren't enough chairs.

Note that we say:
- We didn't have enough time. (not the time wasn't enough)
- There is enough money. (not the money is enough)

You can use enough alone (without a noun):
- We don't need any more money. We've got enough.

Compare too much/many and enough:
- There's too much furniture in this room. There's not enough space.
- There were too many people and not enough chairs.

C

We say enough/too ... for somebody/something:
- We haven't got enough money for a holiday.
- Is Joe experienced enough for the job?
- This shirt is too big for me. I need a smaller size.

But we say enough/too ... to do something (not for doing). For example:
- We haven't got enough money to go on holiday. (not for going)
- Is Joe experienced enough to do the job?
- They're too young to get married. / They're not old enough to get married.
- Let's get a taxi. It's too far to walk home from here.
- The bridge is just wide enough for two cars to pass each other.

D

We say:

The food was very hot. We couldn't eat it.
and The food was so hot that we couldn't eat it.
but The food was too hot to eat. (without it)

Some more examples like this:
- These boxes are too heavy to carry.
  (not too heavy to carry them)
- The wallet was too big to put in my pocket.
  (not too big to put it)
- This chair isn't strong enough to stand on.
  (not strong enough to stand on it)
Exercises

Unit 103

103.1 Complete the sentences using enough + the following words:
   big chairs cups fit milk money qualifications room time warm well
1 I can’t run very far. I’m not ___ fit enough ___.
2 Some of us had to sit on the floor because there weren’t enough chairs.
3 I’d like to buy a car, but I haven’t got ___ enough money ___ at the moment.
4 Have you got ___ enough milk ___ in your coffee or would you like some more?
5 Are you ___ enough qualifications ___? Or shall I switch on the heating?
6 It’s only a small car. There isn’t ___ enough room ___ for all of us.
7 Steve didn’t feel ___ enough time ___ to go to work this morning.
8 I enjoyed my trip to Paris, but there wasn’t ___ enough time ___ to do everything I wanted.
9 Do you think I’ve got ___ enough time ___ to apply for the job?
10 Try this jacket on and see if it’s ___ enough time ___ for you.
11 There weren’t ___ enough cups ___ for everybody to have coffee at the same time.

103.2 Complete the answers to the questions. Use too or enough + the word(s) in brackets.

1 Are they going to get married?
   (old) No, they’re not ___ old enough to ___ get married.
   (busy) Well, I’m afraid I’m ___ too busy ___ to get married.
2 I need to talk to you about something.
   (late) No, it’s ___ too late ___ to talk about it.
3 Let’s go to the cinema.
   (warm) It’s ___ too warm ___ outside.
4 Why don’t we sit outside?
   (shy) No, I’m ___ too shy ___ to sit outside.
5 Would you like to be a politician?
   (patience) No, I haven’t got ___ enough patience ___ to be a politician.
6 Would you like to be a teacher?
   (far away) No, we weren’t ___ far enough ___ from the school.
7 Did you hear what he was saying?
   (English) No, he doesn’t know ___ enough English ___.
8 Can he read a newspaper in English?

103.3 Make one sentence from two. Complete the new sentence using too or enough.

1 We couldn’t carry the boxes. They were too heavy.
   ___ The boxes were too heavy to carry ___.
2 I can’t drink this coffee. It’s too hot.
   ___ This coffee is too hot to drink ___.
3 Nobody could move the piano. It was too heavy.
   ___ The piano was too heavy to move ___.
4 Don’t eat these apples. They’re not ripe enough.
   ___ These apples aren’t ripe enough to eat ___.
5 I can’t explain the situation. It is too complicated.
   ___ The situation is too complicated to explain ___.
6 We couldn’t climb over the wall. It was too high.
   ___ The wall was too high to climb ___.
7 Three people can’t sit on this sofa. It isn’t big enough.
   ___ This sofa isn’t big enough for three people ___.
8 You can’t see some things without a microscope. They are too small.
   ___ Some things can’t be seen without a microscope ___.
Quite, pretty, rather and fairly

You can use quite/pretty/rather/fairly + adjectives or adverbs. So you can say:

- It's quite cold. It's pretty cold. It's rather cold. It's fairly cold.

Quite/pretty/rather/fairly = less than 'very' but more than 'a little'.

Quite and pretty are very similar in meaning:

- You'll need a coat when you go out. It's quite cold / pretty cold. (= less than 'very cold', but more than 'a little cold')
- I'm surprised you haven't heard of her. She's quite famous / pretty famous.
- Amanda lives quite near me, so we see each other pretty often.

Pretty is an informal word and is used mainly in spoken English.

Quite goes before a/an:

- We live in quite an old house. (not a quite old house)

Compare:

- Sally has quite a good job.
- Sally has a pretty good job.

You can also use quite (but not pretty) in the following ways:

quite a/an + noun (without an adjective):

- I didn't expect to see them. It was quite a surprise. (= quite a big surprise)

quite a lot (of ...):

- There were quite a lot of people at the meeting.

quite + verb, especially like and enjoy:

- I quite like tennis, but it's not my favourite sport.

Rather is similar to quite and pretty. We often use rather for negative ideas:

- The weather isn't so good. It's rather cloudy.
- Paul is rather shy. He doesn't talk very much.

Quite and pretty are also possible in these examples.

When we use rather for positive ideas (good/nice etc.), it means 'unusually' or 'surprisingly':

- These oranges are rather good. Where did you get them?

Fairly is weaker than quite/rather/pretty. For example, if something is fairly good, it is not very good and it could be better:

- My room is fairly big, but I'd prefer a bigger one.
- We see each other fairly often, but not as often as we used to.

Quite also means 'completely'. For example:

- 'Are you sure?' 'Yes, quite sure.' (= completely sure)

Quite means 'completely' with a number of adjectives, especially:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sure</th>
<th>right</th>
<th>true</th>
<th>clear</th>
<th>different</th>
<th>incredible</th>
<th>amazing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>certain</td>
<td>wrong</td>
<td>safe</td>
<td>obvious</td>
<td>unnecessary</td>
<td>extraordinary</td>
<td>impossible</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- She was quite different from what I expected. (= completely different)
- Everything they said was quite true. (= completely true)

We also use quite (= completely) with some verbs. For example:

- I quite agree with you. (= I completely agree)

Not quite = not completely:

- They haven't quite finished their dinner yet.
- I don't quite understand what you mean.
- 'Are you ready yet?' 'Not quite.' (= not completely)
Exercises

Unit 104

104.1 Complete the sentences using quite + the following:
- famous good hungry late noisy often old surprised

1 I’m surprised you haven’t heard of her. She’s quite famous.
2 I’m . Is there anything to eat?
3 ‘How were the photographs you took?’ ‘ . Better than usual.’
4 I go to the cinema — maybe once a month.
5 We live near a very busy road, so it’s often .
6 I didn’t expect Laura to contact me. I was when she phoned.
7 I went to bed last night, so I’m a bit tired this morning.
8 I don’t know exactly when these houses were built, but they’re .

104.2 Complete the sentences using quite + the following:
- a busy day a good voice a nice time a lot of traffic
- a nice day a long way a strong wind

1 The weather was better than we had expected. It was .
2 Tom often sings. He’s got .
3 The bus stop wasn’t very near the hotel. We had to walk .
4 It’s warm today, but there’s .
5 The journey took longer than I expected. There was .
6 I’m tired. I’ve had .
7 Our holiday was OK. We had .

104.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use rather + adjective.

1 The weather isn’t so good. It’s rather cloudy.
2 I enjoyed the film, but it was .
3 The hotel we stayed at wasn’t very good. I was .
4 I think it’s that Chris went away without telling anybody.
5 Lucy doesn’t like having to wait. Sometimes she’s .

104.4 What does quite mean in these sentences? Tick (✓) the right meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>more than a little, less than very (Section B)</th>
<th>completely (Section E)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 It’s quite cold. You’d better wear your coat.</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 ‘Are you sure?’ ‘Yes, quite sure.’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Maria’s English is quite good.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 I couldn’t believe it. It was quite incredible.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 My bedroom is quite big.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 I’m quite tired. I think I’ll go to bed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 I quite agree with you.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

104.5 Complete these sentences using quite + the following:
- different impossible right safe sure true unnecessary

1 I didn’t believe her at first, but in fact what she said was quite true.
2 You won’t fall. The ladder is .
3 I’m afraid I can’t do what you ask. It’s .
4 I couldn’t agree with you more. You are .
5 You can’t compare the two things. They are .
6 You needn’t have done that. It was .
7 I think I saw them go out, but I’m not .
Comparison 1
(cheaper, more expensive etc.)

A

Study these examples:

How shall we travel? By car or by train?
   Let's go by car. It's cheaper.
   Don't go by train. It's more expensive.

Cheaper and more expensive are comparative forms.

After comparatives you can use than (see Unit 107):
   □ It's cheaper to go by car than by train.
   □ Going by train is more expensive than going by car.

The comparative form is -er or more ...

We use -er for short words (one syllable):
   cheap → cheaper
   fast → faster
   large → larger
   thin → thinner

We also use -er for two-syllable words that end in -y (-y → -ier):
   lucky → luckier
   early → earlier
   easy → easier
   pretty → prettier

For spelling, see Appendix 6.

B

We use more ... for longer words (two syllables or more):
   more serious
   more often
   more expensive
   more comfortable

We also use more ... for adverbs that end in -ly:
   more slowly
   more seriously
   more quietly
   more carefully

Compare these examples:

   □ You're older than me.
   □ The exam was fairly easy - easier than I expected.
   □ Can you walk a bit faster?
   □ I'd like to have a bigger car.
   □ Last night I went to bed earlier than usual.

   □ You're more patient than me.
   □ The exam was quite difficult - more difficult than I expected.
   □ Can you walk a bit more slowly?
   □ I don't like to have a more reliable car.
   □ I don't play tennis much these days. I used to play more often.

You can use -er or more ... with some two-syllable adjectives, especially:
   clever
   narrow
   quiet
   shallow
   simple

   □ It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere quieter / more quiet?

C

A few adjectives and adverbs have irregular comparative forms:

good/well → better
   □ The garden looks better since you tidied it up.
   □ I know him well - probably better than anybody else knows him.

bad/badly → worse:
   □ 'How is your headache? Better?' 'No, it's worse.'
   □ He did very badly in the exam - worse than expected.

far → further (or farther):
   □ It's a long walk from here to the park - further than I thought. (or farther than)

Further (but not farther) can also mean 'more' or 'additional':
   □ Let me know if you hear any further news. (= any more news)
Exercises

Unit 105

105.1 Complete the sentences using a comparative form (older / more important etc.).
1 It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere quieter?
2 This coffee is very weak. I like it a bit
3 The hotel was surprisingly big. I expected it to be
4 The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be
5 The weather is too cold here. I'd like to live somewhere
6 My job is a bit boring sometimes. I'd like to do something
7 It's a pity you live so far away. I wish you lived
8 I was surprised how easy it was to use the computer. I thought it would be
9 Your work isn't very good. I'm sure you can do
10 Don't worry. The situation isn't so bad. It could be
11 I was surprised we got here so quickly. I expected the journey to take
12 You're talking very loudly. Can you speak a bit
13 You hardly ever phone me. Why don't you phone me
14 You're standing too near the camera. Can you move a bit away?
15 You were a bit depressed yesterday, but you look

105.2 Complete the sentences. Each time use the comparative form of one of the words in the box.
Use than wherever necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>big</th>
<th>crowded</th>
<th>early</th>
<th>easily</th>
<th>high</th>
<th>important</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>interested</td>
<td>peaceful</td>
<td>reliable</td>
<td>serious</td>
<td>simple</td>
<td>thin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 I was feeling tired last night, so I went to bed earlier than usual.
2 I'd like to have a more reliable car. The one I've got keeps breaking down.
3 Unfortunately her illness was worse than we thought at first.
4 You look thinner now. Have you lost weight?
5 I want a larger flat. We don't have enough space here.
6 He doesn't study very hard. He's better in having a good time.
7 Health and happiness are more important money.
8 The instructions were very complicated. They could have been easier.
9 There were a lot of people on the bus. It was more usual.
10 I like living in the countryside. It's quieter living in a town.
11 You'll find your way around the town easier if you have a good map.
12 In some parts of the country, prices are cheaper in others.

105.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences. Use a comparative form (-er or more ...).

1 Yesterday the temperature was six degrees. Today it's only three degrees.
   It's colder today than it was yesterday.
2 The journey takes four hours by car and five hours by train.
   It takes more
3 Dave and I went for a run. I ran ten kilometres. Dave stopped after eight kilometres.
   I ran farther
4 Chris and Joe both did badly in the test. Chris got 30%, but Joe only got 25%.
   Joe did worse
5 I expected my friends to arrive at about 4 o'clock. In fact they arrived at 2.30.
   My friends arrived earlier
6 You can go by bus or by train. The buses run every 30 minutes. The trains run every hour.
   The buses run more
7 We were very busy at work today. We're not usually as busy as that.
   We were more
Comparison 2 (much better / any better / better and better / the sooner the better)

A
Before comparatives you can use:  

- much a lot far (= a lot) a bit a little slightly (= a little)

- Let’s go by car. It’s much cheaper. (or a lot cheaper)
- ‘How do you feel?’ ‘Much better, thanks.’
- Don’t go by train. It’s a lot more expensive. (or much more expensive)
- Could you speak a bit more slowly? (or a little more slowly)
- This bag is slightly heavier than the other one.
- Her illness was far more serious than we thought at first. (or much more serious / a lot more serious)

B
You can use any and no + comparative (any longer / no bigger etc.):

- I’ve waited long enough. I’m not waiting any longer. (= not even a little longer)
- We expected their house to be very big, but it’s no bigger than ours. or ... it isn’t any bigger than ours. (= not even a little bigger)
- How do you feel now? Do you feel any better?
- This hotel is better than the other one, and it’s no more expensive.

C
Better and better / more and more etc.
We repeat comparatives (better and better etc.) to say that something changes continuously:

- Your English is improving. It’s getting better and better.
- The city is growing fast. It’s getting bigger and bigger.
- Cathy got more and more bored in her job. In the end she left.
- These days more and more people are learning English.

D
The ... the ...

You can say the (sooner/bigger/more etc.) the better:

- ‘What time shall we leave?’ ‘The sooner the better.’ (= as soon as possible)
- A: What sort of box do you want? A big one?  
  B: Yes, the bigger the better. (= as big as possible)
- When you’re travelling, the less luggage you have the better.

We also use the ... the ... to say that one thing depends on another thing:

- The warmer the weather, the better I feel. (= if the weather is warmer, I feel better)
- The sooner we leave, the earlier we will arrive.
- The younger you are, the easier it is to learn.
- The more expensive the hotel, the better the service.
- The more electricity you use, the higher your bill will be.
- The more I thought about the plan, the less I liked it.

E
Older and elder
The comparative of old is older:

- David looks older than he really is.

You can use elder (or older) when you talk about people in a family. You can say (my/your etc.) elder sister/brother/daughter/son:

- My elder sister is a TV producer. (or My older sister ...)

We say ‘my elder sister’, but we do not say that ‘somebody is elder’:

- My sister is older than me. (not elder than me)
Exercises

Unit 106

106.1 Use the words in brackets to complete the sentences. Use much / a bit etc. + a comparative form. Use than where necessary.

1. Her illness was much more serious than we thought at first. (much / serious)
2. This bag is too small. I need something _________________. (much / big)
3. I'm afraid the problem is _________________. It seems. (much / complicated)
4. It was very hot yesterday. Today it's _________________. (a bit / cool)
5. I enjoyed our visit to the museum. It was _________________. I expected. (far / interesting)
6. You're driving too fast. Can you drive _________________.? (a bit / slowly)
7. It's _________________. to learn a foreign language in a country where it is spoken. (a lot / easy)
8. I thought she was younger than me, but in fact she's _________________. (slightly / old)

106.2 Complete the sentences using any/no + comparative. Use than where necessary.

1. I've waited long enough. I'm not waiting _________________.
2. I'm sorry I'm a bit late, but I couldn't get here _________________.
3. This shop isn't expensive. The prices are _________________. anywhere else.
4. I need to stop for a rest. I can't walk _________________.
5. The traffic isn't particularly bad today. It's _________________. usual.

106.3 Complete the sentences using the structure in Section C (... and ...).

1. Cathy got _________________. in her job. In the end she left. (bored)
2. That hole in your sweater is getting _________________. (big)
3. My bags seemed to get _________________. as I carried them. (heavy)
4. As I waited for my interview, I became _________________. (nervous)
5. As the day went on, the weather got _________________. (bad)
6. Health care is becoming _________________. (expensive)
7. Since Anna went to Canada, her English has got _________________. (good)
8. As the conversation went on, Paul became _________________. (talkative)

106.4 These sentences are like those in Section D. Use the words in brackets (in the correct form) to complete the sentences.

1. I like warm weather.
   The warmer the weather, _________________. (feel)
2. I didn't really like him when we first met.
   But the more I got to know him, _________________. (like)
3. If you're in business, you want to make a profit.
   The more goods you sell, _________________. (profit)
4. It's hard to concentrate when you're tired.
   The more tired you are, _________________. (hard)
5. Kate had to wait a very long time.
   The longer she waited, _________________. (impatient / become)

106.5 Which is correct, older or elder? Or both of them?

1. My older / elder sister is a TV producer. (older and elder are both correct)
2. I'm surprised Diane is only 25. I thought she was older / elder.
3. Jane's younger sister is still at school. Her older / elder sister is a nurse.
4. Martin is older / elder than his brother.
Comparison 3 (as ... as / than)

Study this example situation:

Sarah, Joe and David are all very rich. Sarah has £20 million, Joe has £15 million and David has £10 million. So:
Joe is rich.
He is richer than David.
But he isn’t as rich as Sarah.
(= Sarah is richer than he is)

Some more examples of not as ... (as):
- Richard isn’t as old as he looks. (= he looks older than he is)
- The town centre wasn’t as crowded as usual. (= it is usually more crowded)
- Jenny didn’t do as well in the exam as she had hoped. (= she had hoped to do better)
- The weather is better today. It’s not as cold. (= yesterday was colder)
- I don’t know as many people as you do. (= you know more people)
- ‘How much did it cost? Fifty pounds?’ ‘No, not as much as that.’ (= less than fifty pounds)

You can also say not so ... (as):
- It’s not warm, but it isn’t so cold as yesterday. (= it isn’t as cold as ...)

Less ... than is similar to not as ... as:
- I spent less money than you. (= I didn’t spend as much money as you)
- The city centre was less crowded than usual. (= it wasn’t as crowded as usual)

We also use as ... as (but not so ... as) in positive sentences and in questions:
- I’m sorry I’m late. I got here as fast as I could.
- There’s plenty of food. You can have as much as you want.
- Let’s walk. It’s just as quick as taking the bus.
- Can you send me the money as soon as possible, please?

Also twice as ... as, three times as ... as etc.:
- Petrol is twice as expensive as it was a few years ago.
- Their house is about three times as big as ours.

We say the same as (not the same like):
- Laura’s salary is the same as mine. or Laura gets the same salary as me.
- David is the same age as James.
- ‘What would you like to drink?’ ‘I’ll have the same as you.’

Than me / than I am etc.

You can say:
- You’re taller than I am. or You’re taller than me.
- (not usually) You’re taller than I
- He’s not as clever as she is.
- They have more money than we have. or They have more money than us.
- I can’t run as fast as he can. or I can’t run as fast as him.
Exercises

Unit 107

107.1 Complete the sentences using as ... as.
1. I'm quite tall, but you are taller. I'm not as tall as you.
2. My salary is high, but yours is higher. My salary isn't as high as yours.
3. You know a bit about cars, but I know more.
   You don't.
4. It's still cold, but it was colder yesterday.
   It isn't.
5. I still feel quite tired, but I felt a lot more tired yesterday.
   I don't.
6. Our neighbours have lived here for quite a long time, but we've lived here longer.
   Our neighbours haven't.
7. I was a bit nervous before the interview, but usually I'm a lot more nervous.
   I wasn't.

107.2 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.
1. Richard is younger than he looks. Richard isn't as old as he looks.
2. I didn't spend as much money as you. You spent more money than me.
3. The station was nearer than I thought. The station wasn't.
4. The meal didn't cost as much as I expected. The meal cost...
5. I go out less than I used to. I don't.
6. Karen's hair isn't as long as it used to be. Karen used to.
7. I know them better than you do. You don't.
8. There are fewer people at this meeting than at the last one.
   There aren't.

107.3 Complete the sentences using as ... as + the following:
   bad comfortable fast long often quietly soon well well-qualified
1. I'm sorry I'm late. I got here as fast as I could.
2. It was a difficult question. I answered it as well as I could.
3. 'How long can I stay with you?' 'You can stay as long as you like.'
4. I need the information quickly, so let me know as soon as possible.
5. I like to keep fit, so I go swimming as often as I can.
6. I didn't want to wake anybody, so I came in as quietly as I could.

In the following sentences use just as ... as.
7. I'm going to sleep on the floor. It's just as uncomfortable as the bed.
8. Why did he get the job rather than me? I'm just as qualified as him.
9. At first I thought he was nice, but really he's just as nice as everybody else.

107.4 Write sentences using the same as.
1. David and James are both 22 years old. David is the same age as James.
2. You and I both have dark brown hair. Your hair is.
3. I arrived at 10.25 and so did you. I arrived at 10.25 just as.
4. My birthday is 5 April. Tom's birthday is 5 April too. My birthday is.

107.5 Complete the sentences with than ... or as ...
1. I can't reach as high as you. You are taller than me.
2. He doesn't know much. I know more than him.
3. I don't work particularly hard. Most people work as hard as me.
4. We were very surprised. Nobody was more surprised than us.
5. She's not a very good player. I'm a better player than her.
6. They've been very lucky. I wish we were as lucky as them.
Superlatives
(the longest / the most enjoyable etc.)

Study these examples:

What is the longest river in the world?
What was the most enjoyable holiday you've ever had?

Longest and most enjoyable are superlative forms.

The superlative form is -est or most ... In general, we use -est for short words and most ... for longer words. The rules are the same as those for the comparative — see Unit 105.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>long → longest</th>
<th>hot → hottest</th>
<th>easy → easiest</th>
<th>hard → hardest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>most famous</td>
<td>most boring</td>
<td>most difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>most expensive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A few adjectives are irregular:

good → best    bad → worst    far → furthest/farthest

For spelling, see Appendix 6.

We normally use the before a superlative (the longest / the most famous etc.):

☐ Yesterday was the hottest day of the year.
☐ The film was really boring. It was the most boring film I've ever seen.
☐ She is a really nice person – one of the nicest people I know.
☐ Why does he always come to see me at the worst possible moment?

Compare superlative and comparative:

☐ This hotel is the cheapest in town. (superlative)
  This hotel is cheaper than all the others in town. (comparative)

☐ He's the most patient person I've ever met.
  He's much more patient than I am.

Oldest and eldest

The superlative of old is oldest:

☐ That church is the oldest building in the town. (not the eldest)

We use eldest (or oldest) when we are talking about people in a family:

☐ My eldest son is 13 years old. (or My oldest son)
☐ Are you the eldest in your family? (or the oldest)

After superlatives we normally use in with places:

☐ What's the longest river in the world? (not of the world)
☐ We had a nice room. It was one of the best in the hotel. (not of the hotel)

We also use in for organisations and groups of people (a class / a company etc.):

☐ Who is the youngest student in the class? (not of the class)

For a period of time, we normally use of:

☐ What was the happiest day of your life?
☐ Yesterday was the hottest day of the year.

We often use the present perfect (I have done) after a superlative (see also Unit 8A):

☐ What's the most important decision you've ever had to make?
☐ That was the best holiday I've had for a long time.
Exercises

Unit 108

108.1 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (-est or most ...) + a preposition (of or in).

1. It's a very good room. It is the best room in the hotel.
2. It's a very cheap restaurant. It's the cheapest in the town.
3. It was a very happy day. It was the happiest of my life.
4. She's a very intelligent student. She is the most intelligent in the class.
5. It's a very valuable painting. It is the most valuable in the gallery.
6. Spring is a very busy time for me. It is the busiest time of the year.

In the following sentences use one of + a superlative + a preposition.

7. It's a very good room. It is one of the best rooms in the hotel.
8. He's a very rich man. He is one of the richest in the world.
9. It's a very big castle. It is one of the biggest in Britain.
10. She's a very good player. She is one of the best in the team.
11. It was a very bad experience. It is the worst of my life.
12. He's a very dangerous criminal. He is one of the most dangerous in the country.

108.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (-est or most ...) or a comparative (-er or more ...).

1. We stayed at the cheapest hotel in the town. (cheap)
2. Our hotel was cheaper than all the others in the town. (cheap)
3. The United States is very large, but Canada is larger. (large)
4. What's the smallest country in the world? (small)
5. I wasn't feeling well yesterday, but I feel a bit better today. (good)
6. It was an awful day. It was the worst day of my life. (bad)
7. What is the most popular sport in your country? (popular)
8. Everest is the highest mountain in the world. It is higher than any other mountain. (high)
9. We had a great holiday. It was one of the most enjoyable holidays we've ever had. (enjoyable)
10. I prefer this chair to the other one. It's more comfortable. (comfortable)
11. What's the fastest way of getting from here to the station? (quick)
12. Sue and Kevin have got three daughters. The oldest is 14 years old. (old)

108.3 What do you say in these situations? Use a superlative + ever. Use the words in brackets (in the correct form).

1. You've just been to the cinema. The film was extremely boring. You tell your friend:
   (boring / film / see) That's the most boring film I've ever seen.
2. Your friend has just told you a joke, which you think is very funny. You say:
   (funny / joke / hear) That's the funniest joke I've ever heard.
3. You're drinking coffee with a friend. It's really good coffee. You say:
   (good / coffee / taste) This coffee is the best I've ever tasted.
4. You are talking to a friend about Mary. Mary is very generous. You tell your friend about her:
   (generous / person / meet) She is the most generous person I've ever met.
5. You have just run ten kilometres. You've never run further than this. You say to your friend:
   (far / run) That run was the longest I've ever run.
6. You decided to give up your job. Now you think this was a bad mistake. You say to your friend:
   (bad / mistake / make) It was a mistake I'll never forget.
7. Your friend meets a lot of people, some of them famous. You ask your friend:
   (famous / person / meet?) Who is the most famous person you've ever met?
Word order 1: verb + object; place and time

A

Verb + object

The verb and the object normally go together. We do not usually put other words between them:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb + object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I like my job very much.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(not I like very much my job)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did you see your friends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yesterday?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liz often plays tennis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Study these examples. The verb and the object go together each time:

- Do you eat meat every day?  
  (not Do you eat every day meat?)
- Everybody enjoyed the party very much.  
  (not enjoyed very much the party)
- Our guide spoke English fluently.  
  (not spoke fluently English)
- I lost all my money and I also lost my passport.  
  (not I lost also my passport)
- At the end of the street you'll see a supermarket on your left.  
  (not see on your left a supermarket)

B

Place and time

Usually the verb and the place (where?) go together:

- go home
- live in a city
- walk to work etc.

If the verb has an object, the place comes after the verb + object:

- take somebody home
- meet a friend in the street

Time (when? / how often? / how long?) usually goes after place:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>place + time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ben walks to work every morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(not every morning to work)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sam has been in Canada since April.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We arrived at the airport early.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Study these examples. Time goes after place:

- I'm going to Paris on Monday.  
  (not I'm going on Monday to Paris)
- They have lived in the same house for a long time.  
  (not lived in the same house for a long time)
- Don't be late. Make sure you're here by 8 o'clock.
- Sarah gave me a lift home after the party.
- You really shouldn't go to bed so late.

It is often possible to put time at the beginning of the sentence:

- On Monday I'm going to Paris.
- Every morning Ben walks to work.

Some time words (for example, always/never/often) usually go with the verb in the middle of the sentence. See Unit 110.
Exercises

109.1 Is the word order right or wrong? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1. Everybody enjoyed the party very much.
2. Ben walks every morning to work.
3. Joe doesn’t like very much football.
4. I drink three or four cups of coffee every morning.
5. I ate quickly my breakfast and went out.
6. Are you going to invite to the party a lot of people?
7. I phoned Tom immediately after hearing the news.
8. Did you go late to bed last night?
9. Did you learn a lot of things at school today?
10. I met on my way home a friend of mine.

OK
Ben walks to work every morning.

109.2 Put the parts of the sentence in the correct order.

1. (the party / very much / everybody enjoyed) Everybody enjoyed the party very much.
2. (we won / easily / the game) ________________________________________________________________
3. (quietly / the door / I closed) ________________________________________________________________
4. (Diane / quite well / speaks / German) _________________________________________________________
5. (Sam / all the time / TV / watches) _____________________________________________________________
6. (again / please don’t ask / that question) _______________________________________________________
7. (football / every weekend / does Kevin play?) ___________________________________________________
8. (some money / I borrowed / from a friend of mine) _____________________________________________

109.3 Complete the sentences. Put the parts in the correct order.

1. (for a long time / have lived / in the same house)
   They __________________________________________________________.
2. (to the supermarket / every Friday / go)
   I ______________________________________________________________.
3. (home / did you come / so late)
   Why __________________________________________________________?
4. (her children / takes / every day / to school)
   Sarah __________________________________________________________.
5. (been / recently / to the cinema)
   I haven’t ______________________________________________________.
6. (at the top of the page / your name / write)
   Please _________________________________________________________.
7. (her name / after a few minutes / remembered)
   I ______________________________________________________________.
8. (around the town / all morning / walked)
   We ____________________________________________________________.
9. (on Saturday night / didn’t see you / at the party)
   I ______________________________________________________________.
10. (some interesting books / found / in the library)
    We ____________________________________________________________.
11. (her umbrella / last night / in a restaurant / left)
    Jackie ________________________________________________________.
12. (opposite the park / a new hotel / are building)
    They _________________________________________________________.
Word order 2: adverbs with the verb

Some adverbs (for example, always, also, probably) go with the verb in the middle of a sentence:
- Helen always drives to work.
- We were feeling very tired and we were also hungry.
- The concert will probably be cancelled.

Study these rules for the position of adverbs in the middle of a sentence. (They are only general rules, so there are exceptions.)

1. If the verb is one word (drives/fell/cooked etc.), the adverb usually goes before the verb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Helen</th>
<th>adverb</th>
<th>verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>always</td>
<td>drives</td>
<td>to work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>almost</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>as I was going down the stairs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I cleaned the house and also cooked the dinner. (not cooked also)
- Lucy hardly ever watches television and rarely reads newspapers.
- ‘Shall I give you my address?’ ‘No, I already have it.’

Note that these adverbs (always/often/also etc.) go before have to ...
- Joe never phones me. I always have to phone him. (not I have always to phone)

2. But adverbs go after am/is/are/was/were:
- We were feeling very tired and we were also hungry.
- Why are you always late? You’re never on time.
- The traffic isn’t usually as bad as it was this morning.

3. If the verb is two or more words (for example, can remember / doesn’t eat / will be cancelled), the adverb usually goes after the first verb (can/doesn’t/will etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I Clare</th>
<th>verb 1</th>
<th>adverb</th>
<th>verb 2</th>
<th>her name.</th>
<th>meat.</th>
<th>away next week?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>never</td>
<td>remember</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doesn’t</td>
<td>often</td>
<td>eating</td>
<td>going</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you</td>
<td>definitely</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>be</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>probably</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>be</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- You have always been very kind to me.
- Jack can’t cook. He can’t even boil an egg.
- Do you still work for the same company?
- The house was only built a year ago and it’s already falling down.

Note that probably goes before a negative (isn’t/won’t etc.). So we say:
- I probably won’t see you. or I will probably not see you. (not I won’t probably)

We also use all and both in these positions:
- We all felt ill after the meal. (not we felt all ill)
- My parents are both teachers. (not my parents both are teachers)
- Sarah and Jane have both applied for the job.
- We are all going out this evening.

Sometimes we use is/will/did etc. instead of repeating part of a sentence (see Unit 51). Note the position of always/never etc. in these sentences:
- He always says he won’t be late, but he always is. (= he is always late)
- I’ve never done it and I never will. (= I will never do it)

We normally put always/never etc. before the verb in sentences like these.
Exercises

Unit 110

110.1 Are the underlined words in the right position or not? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 Helen drives **always** to work. **Helen always drives to work.**
2 I cleaned the house and **also** cooked the dinner. **OK**
3 I have **usually** a shower in the morning. **usually**
4 We **soon** found the solution to the problem. **soon**
5 Steve gets **hardly ever** angry. **hardly ever**
6 I did some shopping and I went **also** to the bank. **also**
7 Jane has **always** to hurry in the morning. **always**
8 We **all** were tired, so we **all** fell asleep. **all**
9 She **always** says she'll phone me, but she **never** does. **always**

110.2 Rewrite the sentences to include the word in brackets.

1 Clare doesn’t eat meat. (often) **Clare doesn’t often eat meat.**
2 a We were on holiday in Spain. (all) **We were on holiday in Spain.**
   b We were staying at the same hotel. (all) **We were staying at the same hotel.**
   c We enjoyed ourselves. (all) **We enjoyed ourselves.**
3 Catherine is very generous. (always) **Catherine is very generous.**
4 I don’t have to work on Saturdays. (usually) **I don’t have to work on Saturdays.**
5 Do you watch TV in the evenings? (always) **Do you watch TV in the evenings?**
6 Martin is learning French, and he is learning Italian. (also)
   Martin is learning French and he **always**
7 a The new hotel is very expensive. (probably)
   b It costs a lot to stay there. (probably)
8 a I can help you. (probably)
   b I can’t help you. (probably)

110.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in brackets in the correct order.

1 I **can never remember** her name. (remember / never / can)
2 I **usually** sugar in coffee. (take / usually)
3 I **always** hungry when I get home from work. (am / usually)
4 A: Where’s Joe?
   B: He **probably** home early. (gone / has / probably)
5 Mark and Diane **both** in Manchester. (were / born)
6 Liz is a good pianist. She **sings** very well. (sing / also / can)
7 Our cat **sleeps** under the bed. (often / sleeps)
8 They live in the same street as me, but I **never** to them.
   (never / have / spoken)
9 We **have** a long time for the bus. (have / always / to wait)
10 My eyesight isn’t very good. I **read** with glasses. (read / can / only)
11 I **probably** early tomorrow. (probably / leaving / will / be)
12 I’m afraid I **won’t** able to come to the party. (probably / be / won’t)
13 It’s difficult to contact Sue. She **is** at home when I phone her. (is / hardly ever)
14 We **live** in the same place. We haven’t moved.
   (still / are / living)
15 If we hadn’t taken the same train, we **would** each other.
   (never / met / would / have)
16 A: Are you tired?
   B: Yes, I **am** at this time of day. (am / always)
Still, yet and already
Any more / any longer / no longer

A

Still
We use **still** to say that a situation or action is continuing. It hasn’t changed or stopped:
- It’s ten o’clock and Joe is **still** in bed.
- When I went to bed, Chris was **still** working.
- Do you **still** want to go away or have you changed your mind?

**Still** usually goes in the middle of the sentence with the verb (see Unit 110).

Any more / any longer / no longer

We use **not** ... **any more** or **not** ... **any longer** to say that a situation has changed. **Any more** and **any longer** go at the end of a sentence:
- Lucy doesn’t work here **any more** (or **any longer**). She left last month.
  (**not** Lucy doesn’t still work here.)
- We used to be good friends, but we aren’t **any more** (or **any longer**).

You can also use **no longer**. **No longer** goes in the middle of the sentence:
- Lucy **no longer** works here.

Note that we do not normally use **no more** in this way:
- We are **no longer** friends. (**not** We are no more friends.)

Compare **still** and **not** ... **any more**:
- Sally **still** works here, but Lucy doesn’t work here **any more**.

Yet

Yet = until now. We use **yet** mainly in **negative** sentences (**He isn’t** here yet?) and questions (**Is he** here yet?). **Yet** shows that the speaker is expecting something to happen.

**Yet** usually goes at the end of a sentence:
- It’s 10 o’clock and Joe isn’t here yet.
- **Have you** met your new neighbours **yet**?
- ‘Where are you going for your holidays?’ ‘We **don’t** know yet.’

We often use **yet** with the **present perfect** (**Have** you **met** ... **yet**?). See Unit 7C.

Compare **yet** and **still**:
- Mike lost his job six months ago and is **still** unemployed.
- Mike lost his job six months ago and **hasn’t found** another job yet.
- **Is it** still raining?
- **Has it** stopped raining **yet**?

**Still** is also possible in **negative** sentences (before the negative):
- She said she would be here an hour ago and she still hasn’t come.

This is similar to ‘she hasn’t come yet’. But **still** ... **not** shows a stronger feeling of surprise or impatience. Compare:
- I wrote to him last week. He hasn’t replied **yet**. (but I expect he will reply soon)
- I wrote to him months ago and he **still** hasn’t replied. (he should have replied before now)

Already

We use **already** to say that something happened sooner than expected. **Already** usually goes in the middle of a sentence (see Unit 110):
- ‘What time is Sue leaving?’ ‘She has **already** left.’ ( = sooner than you expected)
- Shall I tell Joe what happened or does he **already** know?
- I’ve only just had lunch and I’m **already** hungry.

Present perfect + already/yet → Unit 7C  Word order → Unit 110
111.1 Compare what Paul said a few years ago with what he says now. Some things are the same as before and some things have changed. Write sentences with still and any more.

Paul a few years ago

I travel a lot.
I work in a shop.
I write poems.
I want to be a teacher.
I'm interested in politics.
I'm single.
I go fishing a lot.

Paul now

I travel a lot.
I work in a hospital.
I gave up writing poems.
I want to be a teacher.
I'm not interested in politics.
I'm single.
I haven't been fishing for years.

1 (travel) He still travels a lot.
2 (shop) He doesn't work in a shop.
3 (poems) He stops writing poems.
4 (teacher) He stops wanting to be a teacher.
5 (politics) I'm still interested in politics.
6 (single) I'm still single.
7 (fishing) I go fishing.
8 (beard) I have a beard.

Now write three sentences about Paul using no longer.

9 He no longer works in a shop.
10 He no longer writes poems.
11 He no longer wants to be a teacher.

111.2 For each sentence (with still) write a sentence with a similar meaning using not ... yet + one of the following verbs:
decide, find, finish, go, stop, take off, wake up

It's still raining.
1 He hasn't stopped raining yet.

2 Gary is still here.
He hasn't arrived yet.

3 They're still repairing the road.
They haven't finished the repair yet.

4 The children are still asleep.
They haven't woken up yet.

5 Is Ann still looking for a place to live?
6 I'm still wondering what to do.
7 The plane is still waiting on the runway.

111.3 Put in still, yet, already or any more in the underlined sentence (or part of the sentence).
Study the examples carefully.

1 Mike lost his job a year ago and he is unemployed. He is still unemployed.

2 Shall I tell Joe what happened or does he know? Does he already know?

3 I'm hungry. Is dinner ready? Is dinner ready yet?

4 I was hungry earlier, but I'm not hungry. I'm not hungry any more.

5 Can we wait a few minutes? I don't want to go out.

6 Jenny used to work at the airport, but she doesn't work there.

7 I used to live in Amsterdam. I have a lot of friends there.

8 'Shall I introduce you to Joe?' 'There's no need. We've met.'

9 Do you live in the same place or have you moved?

10 Would you like to eat with us or have you eaten?

11 'Where's John?' 'He's not here. He'll be here soon.'

12 Tim said he'd be here at 8.30, but he isn't here.

13 Do you want to join the club or are you a member?

14 It happened a long time ago, but I can remember it very clearly.

15 'I've put on weight. These trousers don't fit me.'

16 'Have you finished with the paper?' 'No, I'm reading it.'
Even

Study this example situation:

Tina loves watching television.

She has a TV set in every room of the house – even the bathroom.

We use even to say that something is unusual or surprising. It is not usual to have a TV set in the bathroom.

Some more examples:

- These photographs are really awful. Even I take better photographs than these. (and I'm certainly not a good photographer)
- He always wears a coat – even in hot weather.
- Nobody would help her – not even her best friend.

or

- Not even her best friend would help her.

Very often we use even with the verb in the middle of a sentence (see Unit 110):

- Sue has travelled all over the world. She has even been to the Antarctic. (It's especially unusual to go to the Antarctic, so she must have travelled a lot.)
- They are very rich. They even have their own private jet.

Study these examples with not even:

- I can't cook. I can't even boil an egg. (and boiling an egg is very easy)
- They weren't very friendly to us. They didn't even say hello.
- Jenny is very fit. She's just run five miles and she's not even out of breath.

You can use even + comparative (cheaper / more expensive etc.):

- I got up very early, but Jack got up even earlier.
- I knew I didn't have much money, but I've got even less than I thought.
- We were surprised to get a letter from her. We were even more surprised when she came to see us a few days later.

Even though / even when / even if

You can use even though / even when / even if + subject + verb:

- Even though she can't drive, she has bought a car.

- He never shouts, even when he's angry.
- I'll probably see you tomorrow. But even if I don't see you tomorrow, we're sure to see each other before the weekend.

You cannot use even in this way (+ subject + verb). We say:

- Even though she can't drive, she has bought a car. (not Even she can't drive)
- I can't reach the shelf even if I stand on a chair. (not even I stand)

Compare even if and if:

- We're going to the beach tomorrow. It doesn't matter what the weather is like. We're going even if it's raining.
- We want to go to the beach tomorrow, but we won't go if it's raining.

If and when → Unit 250 Though / even though → Unit 113E
Exercises

112.1 Julie, Sarah and Amanda are three friends who went on holiday together. Use the information given about them to complete the sentences using even or not even.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Julie</th>
<th>Sarah</th>
<th>Amanda</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>usually happy</td>
<td>isn't very keen on art</td>
<td>is almost always late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usually on time</td>
<td>is usually miserable</td>
<td>is a keen photographer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>likes getting up early</td>
<td>usually hates hotels</td>
<td>loves staying in hotels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is very interested in art</td>
<td>hasn't got a camera</td>
<td>isn't very good at getting up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. They stayed at a hotel. Everybody liked it, __________._
2. They arranged to meet. They all arrived on time, __________._
3. They went to an art gallery. Nobody enjoyed it, __________._
4. Yesterday they had to get up early. They all managed to do this, __________._
5. They were together yesterday. They were all in a good mood, __________._
6. None of them took any photographs, __________._

112.2 Make sentences with even. Use the words in brackets.

1. Sue has been all over the world. (the Antarctic) __________._
2. We painted the whole room. (the floor) __________._
3. Rachel has met lots of famous people. (the prime minister) __________._
4. You could hear the noise from a long way away. (from the next street) __________._

In the following sentences you have to use not ... even.

5. They didn't say anything to us. (hello) __________._
6. I can't remember anything about her. (her name) __________._
7. There isn't anything to do in this town. (a cinema) __________._
8. He didn't tell anybody where he was going. (his wife) __________._
9. I don't know anyone in our street. (the people next door) __________._

112.3 Complete the sentences using even + comparative.

1. It was very hot yesterday, but today it's __________._
2. The church is 500 years old, but the house next to it is __________._
3. That's a very good idea, but I've got an __________._
4. The first question was very difficult to answer. The second one was __________._
5. I did very badly in the exam, but most of my friends did __________._
6. Neither of us was hungry. I ate very little and my friend ate __________._

112.4 Put in if, even, even if or even though.

1. __________. she can't drive, she has bought a car.
2. The bus leaves in five minutes, but we can still catch it __________. we run.
3. The bus leaves in two minutes. We won't catch it now __________. we run.
4. His Spanish isn't very good __________. after three years in Spain.
5. His Spanish isn't very good __________. he's lived in Spain for three years.
6. __________. with the heating on, it was very cold in the house.
7. I couldn't sleep __________. I was very tired.
8. I won't forgive them for what they did, __________. they apologise.
9. __________. I hadn't eaten anything for 24 hours, I wasn't hungry.

→ Additional exercise 32 (page 321)
Although / though / even though
In spite of / despite

Study this example situation:

Last year Paul and Joanne had a holiday by the sea.
It rained a lot, but they enjoyed themselves.

You can say:
Although it rained a lot, they enjoyed themselves.
(= It rained a lot, but they ...)
or
In spite of the rain, they enjoyed themselves.

After although we use a subject + verb:
☐ Although it rained a lot, we enjoyed our holiday.
☐ I didn’t get the job although I had the necessary qualifications.

Compare the meaning of although and because:
☐ We went out although it was raining.
☐ We didn’t go out because it was raining.

After in spite of or despite, we use a noun, a pronoun (this/that/what etc.) or -ing:
☐ In spite of the rain, we enjoyed our holiday.
☐ I didn’t get the job in spite of having the necessary qualifications.
☐ She wasn’t well, but in spite of this she went to work.
☐ In spite of what I said yesterday, I still love you.

Despite is the same as in spite of. We say in spite of, but despite (without of):
☐ She wasn’t well, but despite this she went to work. (not despite of this)

You can say in spite of the fact (that) ... and despite the fact (that) ...

☐ I didn’t get the job in spite of the fact (that) I had the necessary qualifications.

Compare in spite of and because of:
☐ We went out in spite of the rain. (or ... despite the rain.)
☐ We didn’t go out because of the rain.

Compare although and in spite of / despite:
☐ Although the traffic was bad, we arrived on time. (not In spite of the traffic was bad)
☐ I couldn’t sleep although I was very tired. (not despite I was tired)

Sometimes we use though instead of although:
☐ I didn’t get the job though I had the necessary qualifications.

In spoken English we often use though at the end of a sentence:
☐ The house isn’t very nice. I like the garden though. (= but I like the garden)
☐ I see them every day. I’ve never spoken to them though. (= but I’ve never spoken to them)

Even though (but not ‘even’ alone) is a stronger form of although:
☐ Even though I was really tired, I couldn’t sleep. (not Even I was really tired ...)
Exercises

Unit 113

113.1 Complete the sentences. Use **although** + a sentence from the box.

| I didn’t speak the language | he has a very important job |
| I had never seen her before | we don’t like them very much |
| it was quite cold | the heating was on |
| I’d met her twice before | we’ve known each other a long time |

1. Although **he has a very important job**, he isn’t particularly well-paid.
2. ______________________________________________, I recognised her from a photograph.
3. She wasn’t wearing a coat ..................................................
4. We thought we’d better invite them to the party ..............................................
5. ..........................................................................................., I managed to make myself understood.
6. ..........................................................................................., the room wasn’t warm.
7. I didn’t recognise her ..................................................
8. We’re not very good friends ..................................................

113.2 Complete the sentences with **although** / **in spite of** / **because** / **because of**.

1. **Although** it rained a lot, we enjoyed our holiday.
2. a .............................................................. all our careful plans, a lot of things went wrong.
   b .............................................................. we’d planned everything carefully, a lot of things went wrong.
3. a I went home early .............................................................. I was feeling unwell.
   b I went to work the next day .............................................................. I was still feeling unwell.
4. a She only accepted the job .............................................................. the salary, which was very high.
   b She accepted the job .............................................................. the salary, which was rather low.
5. a I managed to get to sleep .............................................................. there was a lot of noise.
   b I couldn’t get to sleep .............................................................. the noise.

**Use your own ideas to complete the following sentences:**

6. a He passed the exam **although** ..............................................................
   b He passed the exam **because** ..............................................................
7. a I didn’t eat anything **although** ..............................................................
   b I didn’t eat anything **in spite of** ..............................................................

113.3 Make one sentence from two. Use the word(s) in brackets in your sentences.

1. I couldn’t sleep. I was very tired. (despite)
   I couldn’t sleep **despite** being **very tired**.
2. They have very little money. They are happy. (in spite of)
   In spite ..............................................................
3. My foot was injured. I managed to walk to the nearest village. (although)
   ..............................................................
4. I enjoyed the film. The story was silly. (in spite of)
   ..............................................................
5. We live in the same street. We hardly ever see each other. (despite)
   ..............................................................
6. I got very wet in the rain. I was only out for five minutes. (even though)
   ..............................................................

113.4 Use the words in brackets to make a sentence with **though** at the end.

1. The house isn’t very nice. (like / garden)  I like the garden **though**.
2. It’s warm today. (very windy)  ..............................................................
3. We didn’t like the food. (ate)  ..............................................................
4. Liz is very nice. (don’t like / husband) I  ..............................................................
In case

Study this example situation:

Your car should have a spare wheel because it is possible you will have a puncture.

Your car should have a spare wheel in case you have a puncture.

In case you have a puncture = because it is possible you will have a puncture.

Some more examples of in case:

- I'll leave my mobile phone switched on in case Jane calls. (= because it is possible she will call)
- I'll draw a map for you in case you have difficulty finding our house. (= because it is possible you will have difficulty)
- I'll remind them about the meeting in case they've forgotten. (= because it is possible they have forgotten)

We use just in case for a smaller possibility:

- I don't think it will rain, but I'll take an umbrella just in case. (= just in case it rains)

Do not use will after in case. Use a present tense for the future (see Unit 25):

- I'll leave my phone switched on in case Jane calls. (not in case Jane will call)

In case is not the same as if. We use in case to say why somebody does (or doesn't do) something. You do something now in case something happens later.

Compare:

in case

- We'll buy some more food in case Tom comes. (= Perhaps Tom will come; we'll buy some more food now, whether he comes or not; then we'll already have the food if he comes.)
- I'll give you my phone number in case you need to contact me.
- You should insure your bike in case it is stolen.

if

- We'll buy some more food if Tom comes. (= Perhaps Tom will come; if he comes, we'll buy some more food; if he doesn't come, we won't buy any more food.)
- You can phone me at the hotel if you need to contact me.
- You should inform the police if your bike is stolen.

You can use in case + past to say why somebody did something:

- I left my phone switched on in case Jane called. (= because it was possible that Jane would call)
- I drew a map for Sarah in case she had difficulty finding the house.
- We rang the doorbell again in case they hadn't heard it the first time.

In case of is not the same as in case. In case of ... = if there is ... (especially on notices etc.):

- In case of fire, please leave the building as quickly as possible. (= if there is a fire)
- In case of emergency, telephone this number. (= if there is an emergency)
Exercises

114.1 Barbara is going for a long walk in the country. You think she should take:

- some chocolate  a map  an anorak  a camera  some water

You think she should take these things because:

- it's possible she'll get lost  she might get hungry
- perhaps she'll be thirsty  maybe it will rain
- she might want to take some photographs

What do you say to Barbara? Write sentences with in case.
1. Take some chocolate with you in case you get hungry.
2. Take .................................................................
3. .................................................................
4. .................................................................
5. .................................................................

114.2 What do you say in these situations? Use in case.
1. It's possible that Mary will need to contact you, so you give her your phone number.
   You say:  Here's my phone number  in case you need to contact me .................................................................
2. A friend of yours is going away for a long time. Maybe you won't see her again before she goes, so you decide to say goodbye now.
   You say:  I'll say goodbye now .................................................................
3. You are shopping in a supermarket with a friend. You think you have everything you need, but perhaps you've forgotten something. Your friend has the list. You ask her to check it.
   You say:  Can you .................................................................?
4. You are giving a friend some advice about using a computer. You think he should back up (= copy) his files because the computer might crash (and he would lose all his data).
   You say:  You should back up .................................................................

114.3 Write sentences with in case.
1. There was a possibility that Jane would call. So I left my phone switched on.
   I left  my phone switched on in case Jane called .................................................................
2. Mike thought that he might forget the name of the book. So he wrote it down.
   He wrote down .................................................................
3. I thought my parents might be worried about me. So I phoned them.
   I phoned .................................................................
4. I sent an email to Liz, but she didn't reply. So I sent another email because perhaps she hadn't received the first one.
   I sent .................................................................
5. I met some people when I was on holiday in France. They said they might come to London one day. I live in London, so I gave them my address.
   I gave .................................................................

114.4 Put in in case or if.
1. I'll draw a map for you  in case  you have difficulty finding our house.
2. You should tell the police  if  you have any information about the crime.
3. I hope you'll come to London sometime. ........................................... you come, you can stay with us.
4. This letter is for Susan. Can you give it to her ........................................... you see her?
5. Write your name and address on your bag ........................................... you lose it.
6. Go to the lost property office ........................................... you lose your bag.
7. The burglar alarm will ring ........................................... somebody tries to break into the house.
8. You should lock your bike to something ........................................... somebody tries to steal it.
9. I was advised to get insurance ........................................... I needed medical treatment while I was abroad.
Unless
Study this example situation:

The club is for members only.
You can’t go in unless you are a member.
This means:
You can’t go in except if you are a member. or
You can go in only if you are a member.
Unless = except if.

Some more examples of unless:
- I’ll see you tomorrow unless I have to work late. (= except if I have to work late)
- There are no buses to the beach. Unless you have a car, it’s difficult to get there.
  (= except if you have a car)
- ‘Shall I tell Liz what happened?’ ‘Not unless she asks you.’ (= only if she asks you)
- Sally hates complaining. She wouldn’t complain about something unless it was really bad.
  (= except if it was really bad)
- We can take a taxi to the restaurant – unless you’d prefer to walk. (= except if you’d
  prefer to walk)

Instead of unless it is often possible to say if ... not:
- Unless we leave now, we’ll be late. or If we don’t leave now, we’ll ...

As long as etc.

as long as or so long as
provided (that) or providing (that)

All these expressions mean ‘if’ or ‘on condition that’.

For example:
- You can borrow my car { as long as
  so long as } you promise not to drive too fast.
  (= you can borrow my car, but you must promise not to drive too fast – this is a condition)
- Travelling by car is convenient { provided (that)
  providing (that) } you have somewhere to park.
  (= but only if you have somewhere to park)
- Providing (that)
  Provided (that) the room is clean, I don’t mind which hotel we stay at.
  (= the room must be clean – otherwise I don’t mind)

When you are talking about the future, do not use will after unless / as long as / so long as /
provided / providing. Use a present tense (see Unit 25):
- I’m not going out unless it stops raining. (not unless it will stop)
- Providing the weather is good, we’re going to have a picnic. (not providing it will be good)
Exercises

115.1 Write a new sentence with the same meaning. Use unless in your sentence.

1 You must try a bit harder or you won’t pass the exam.
   You won’t pass the exam unless you try a bit harder.

2 Listen carefully or you won’t know what to do.
   You won’t know what to do

3 She must apologise to me or I’ll never speak to her again.

4 You have to speak very slowly or he won’t be able to understand you.

5 Business must improve soon, or the company will have to close.

115.2 Write sentences with unless.

1 The club isn’t open to everyone. You are allowed in only if you’re a member.
   You aren’t allowed in the club unless you’re a member.

2 I don’t want to go to the party alone. I’m going only if you go too.
   I’m not going

3 Don’t worry about the dog. It will attack you only if you move suddenly.
   The dog

4 Ben isn’t very talkative. He’ll speak to you only if you ask him something.
   Ben

5 Today is a public holiday. The doctor will see you only if it’s an emergency.
   The doctor

115.3 Choose the correct word or expression for each sentence.

1 You can borrow my car unless/as long as you promise not to drive too fast. (as long as is correct)
2 I’m playing tennis tomorrow unless/providing it rains.
3 I’m playing tennis tomorrow unless/providing it doesn’t rain.
4 I don’t mind if you come home late unless/as long as you come in quietly.
5 I’m going now unless/provided you want me to stay.
6 I don’t watch TV unless/as long as I’ve got nothing else to do.
7 Children are allowed to use the swimming pool unless/provided they are with an adult.
8 Unless/provided they are with an adult, children are not allowed to use the swimming pool.
9 We can sit here in the corner unless/as long as you’d rather sit over there by the window.
10 A: Our holiday cost a lot of money.
   B: Did it? Well, that doesn’t matter unless/as long as you enjoyed yourselves.

115.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 We’ll be late unless we get a taxi
2 I like hot weather as long as
3 It takes Kate about 20 minutes to drive to work provided
4 I don’t mind walking home as long as
5 I like to walk to work in the morning unless
6 We can meet tomorrow unless
7 You can borrow the money providing
8 You won’t achieve anything unless
As (As I walked along the street ... / As I was hungry ...)

As = at the same time as

You can use as when two things happen at the same time:
- We all waved goodbye to Liz as she drove away.  
  (We waved and she drove away at the same time)
- I watched her as she opened the letter.
- As I walked along the street, I looked in the shop windows.
- Can you turn off the light as you go out, please?

Or you can say that something happened as you were doing something else (in the middle of doing something else):
- Kate slipped as she was getting off the bus.
- We met Paul as we were leaving the hotel.

For the past continuous (was getting / were going etc.), see Unit 6.

You can also use just as (= exactly at that moment):
- Just as I sat down, the phone rang.
- I had to leave just as the conversation was getting interesting.

We also use as when two things happen together in a longer period of time:
- As the day went on, the weather got worse.
- I began to enjoy the job more as I got used to it.

Compare as and when:

We use as only if two things happen at the same time.
- As we walked home, we talked about what we would have for dinner.  
  (= at the same time)

Use when (not as) if one thing happens after another.
- When we got home, we started cooking the dinner.  
  (not As we got home)

As = because

As also means 'because':
- As I was hungry, I decided to find somewhere to eat.  (= because I was hungry)
- As it was a public holiday last Thursday, most of the shops were shut.  
  (= because it was a public holiday)
- As we have plenty of time before our flight, let's go and have a coffee.
- Yesterday we watched television all evening as we didn't have anything better to do.
- As I don't often watch television any more, I've decided to give my TV set to a friend of mine.

You can also use since in this way:
- Since we have plenty of time, let's go and have a coffee.

Compare as and when:

- I couldn't contact David as he was away on holiday and he doesn't have a mobile phone.  (= because he was away)
- As they lived near us, we used to see them quite often.  (= because they lived near us)

- David's passport was stolen when he was away on holiday.  
  (= during the time he was away)
- When they lived near us, we used to see them quite often.  
  (= at the time they lived near us)
Exercises

Unit 116

116.1 (Section A) Use as to join sentences from the boxes.

1 we all waved goodbye to Liz we were driving along the road
2 we all smiled I was taking a hot dish out of the oven
3 I burnt myself she drove away
4 the crowd cheered we posed for the photograph
5 a dog ran out in front of the car the two teams ran onto the field

We all waved goodbye to Liz as she drove away.

116.2 (Section B) Join sentences from the boxes. Begin each sentence with as.

1 it was a public holiday I went in
2 it was a nice day we came in very quietly
3 we didn’t want to wake anybody up most of the shops were shut
4 the door was open we didn’t know what time it was
5 none of us had a watch we went for a walk by the sea

As it was a public holiday, most of the shops were shut.

116.3 What does as mean in these sentences?

1 As they live near me, I see them quite often. because
2 Kate slipped as she was getting off the bus. at the same time as
3 As I was tired, I went to bed early. (check)
4 Unfortunately, as I was parking the car, I hit the car behind. (check)
5 As we climbed the hill, we got more and more tired. (check)
6 We decided to go out to eat as we had no food at home. (check)
7 As we don’t use the car very often, we’ve decided to sell it. (check)

116.4 In some of these sentences, you need when (not as). Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 Julia got married as she was 22. when she was 22
2 As the day went on, the weather got worse. OK
3 He dropped the glass as he was taking it out of the cupboard. (check)
4 My camera was stolen as I was asleep on the beach. (check)
5 As I left school, I went to work in a shop. (check)
6 The train slowed down as it approached the station. (check)
7 I used to live near the sea as I was a child. (check)

116.5 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 I saw you as
2 It started to rain just as
3 As I didn’t have enough money for a taxi,
4 Just as I took the photograph,
Like and as

A

Like = 'similar to', 'the same as'. You cannot use as in this way:

- What a beautiful house! It's like a palace. (not as a palace)
- 'What does Sandra do?' 'She's a teacher, like me.' (not as me)
- Be careful! The floor has been polished. It's like walking on ice. (not as walking)
- It's raining again. I hate weather like this. (not as this)

In these sentences, like is a preposition. So it is followed by a noun (like a palace), a pronoun (like me / like this) or -ing (like walking).

You can also say '... like (somebody/something) doing something':
- 'What's that noise?' 'It sounds like a baby crying.'

B

Sometimes like = for example:

- Some sports, like motor-racing, can be dangerous.

You can also use such as (= for example):

- Some sports, such as motor-racing, can be dangerous.

C

As = in the same way as, or in the same condition as. We use as before subject + verb:

- I didn't move anything. I left everything as it was.
- You should have done it as I showed you.

Like is also possible in informal spoken English:

- I left everything like it was.

Compare as and like:

- You should have done it as I showed you. (or like I showed you)
- You should have done it like this. (not as this)

Note that we say as usual / as always:

- You're late as usual.
- As always, Nick was the first to complain.

D

Sometimes as (+ subject + verb) has other meanings. For example, after do:

- You can do as you like. (= do what you like)
- They did as they promised. (= They did what they promised.)

We also say as you know / as I said / as she expected / as I thought etc.:

- As you know, it's Emma's birthday next week. (= you know this already)
- Andy failed his driving test, as he expected. (= he expected this before)

Like is not usual in these expressions, except with say (like I said):

- As I said yesterday, I'm sure we can solve the problem. or Like I said yesterday ...

E

As can also be a preposition, but the meaning is different from like. Compare:

- Sue Casey is the manager of a company.
  As the manager, she has to make many important decisions.
  (As the manager = in her position as the manager.)
- Mary Stone is the assistant manager.
  Like the manager (Sue Casey), she also has to make important decisions.
  (Like the manager = similar to the manager)

As (preposition) = in the position of, in the form of etc.:

- A few years ago I worked as a taxi driver. (not like a taxi driver)
- We haven't got a car, so we use the garage as a workshop.
- Many words, for example 'work' and 'rain', can be used as verbs or nouns.
- London is fine as a place to visit, but I wouldn't like to live there.
- The news of the tragedy came as a great shock.
Exercises

117.1 In some of these sentences, you need like (not as). Correct the sentences where necessary.

1. It’s raining again. I hate weather like this.
2. Andy failed his driving test, as he expected.
3. Do you think Caroline looks as her mother?
4. Tim gets on my nerves. I can’t stand people as him.
5. Why didn’t you do it as I told you to do it?
6. Brian is a student, as most of his friends.
7. You never listen. Talking to you is as talking to the wall.
8. As I said yesterday, I’m thinking of changing my job.
9. Tom’s idea seems a good one. Let’s do as he suggests.
10. I’ll phone you tomorrow as usual, OK?
11. Suddenly there was a terrible noise. It was as a bomb exploding.
12. She’s a very good swimmer. She swims as a fish.

117.2 Complete the sentences using like or as + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a beginner</th>
<th>blocks of ice</th>
<th>a palace</th>
<th>a birthday present</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a child</td>
<td>a church</td>
<td>winter</td>
<td>a tourist guide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. This house is beautiful. It’s like a palace.
2. My feet are really cold. They’re
3. I’ve been playing tennis for years, but I still play
4. Marion once had a part-time job
5. I wonder what that building with the tower is. It looks
6. My brother gave me this watch a long time ago.
7. It’s very cold for the middle of summer. It’s
8. He’s 22 years old, but he sometimes behaves

117.3 Put in like or as. Sometimes either word is possible.

1. We heard a noise like a baby crying.
2. Your English is very fluent. I wish I could speak you.
3. Don’t take my advice if you don’t want to. You can do you like.
4. You waste too much time doing things sitting in cafés all day.
5. I wish I had a car yours.
6. You don’t need to change your clothes. You can go out you are.
7. My neighbour’s house is full of lots of interesting things. It’s a museum.
8. We saw Kevin last night. He was very cheerful, always.
9. Sally has been working a waitress for the last two months.
10. While we were on holiday, we spent most of our time doing energetic things sailing, water skiing and swimming.
11. You’re different from the other people I know. I don’t know anyone you.
12. We don’t need all the bedrooms in the house, so we use one of them a study.
13. The news that Sue and Gary were getting married came a complete surprise to me.
14. her father, Catherine has a very good voice.
15. At the moment I’ve got a temporary job in a bookshop. It’s OK a temporary job, but I wouldn’t like to do it permanently.
16. you can imagine, we were very tired after such a long journey.
17. This tea is awful. It tastes water.
18. I think I prefer this room it was, before we decorated it.
As if / as though / like

You can use as if or as though to say how somebody or something looks/sounds/feels:
- That house looks as if it's going to fall down.
- Helen sounded as if she had a cold, didn't she?
- I've just come back from holiday, but I feel very tired. I don't feel as if I've just had a holiday.

You can use as though in all these examples:
- I don't feel as though I've just had a holiday.

In informal spoken English you can also use like:
- That house looks like it's going to fall down.

Compare:
- You look tired. (look + adjective)
  You look as if you haven't slept. (look as if + subject + verb)

You can say It looks as if ... / It sounds as if ...
- Sandra is very late, isn't she? It looks as if she isn't coming.
- We took an umbrella because it looked as if it was going to rain.
- Do you hear that music next door? It sounds as if they are having a party.

You can also use as though or like:
- It looks as though she isn't coming. or
  It looks like she isn't coming.

You can use as if or as though with other verbs to say how somebody does something:
- He ran as if he was running for his life.
- After the interruption, the speaker went on talking as if nothing had happened.
- When I told them my plan, they looked at me as though I was mad.

In informal spoken English, you can also use like in these examples.

After as if (or as though), we sometimes use the past when we are talking about the present. For example:
- I don't like Tim. He talks as if he knew everything.

The meaning is not past in this sentence. We use the past (as if he knew) because the idea is not real: Tim does not know everything. We use the past in the same way in if sentences and after wish (see Unit 39).

Some more examples:
- She's always asking me to do things for her – as if I didn't have enough to do already.
  (I do have enough to do)
- Gary's only 40. Why do you talk about him as if he was an old man? (he isn't an old man)

When you use the past in this way, you can use were instead of was:
- Why do you talk about him as if he were (or was) an old man?
- They treat me as if I were (or was) their own son. (I'm not their son)
Exercises

118.1 What do you say in these situations? Use look/sound/feel + as if ... . Use the words in brackets to make your sentence.

1 You meet Bill. He has a black eye and some plasters on his face. (be / a fight)
   You say to him: You look as if you’ve been in a fight.

2 Christine comes into the room. She looks absolutely terrified. (see / a ghost)
   You say to her: What’s the matter? You

3 Joe is on holiday. He’s talking to you on the phone and sounds very happy. (enjoy / yourself)
   You say to him: You

4 You have just run one kilometre. You are absolutely exhausted. (run / a marathon)
   You say to a friend: I

118.2 Make sentences beginning It looks as if ... / It sounds as if ...

you should see a doctor there’s been an accident they are having an argument
it’s going to rain she isn’t coming we’ll have to walk

1 Sandra said she would be here an hour ago.
   You say: It looks as if she isn’t coming.

2 The sky is full of black clouds.
   You say: It

3 You hear two people shouting at each other next door.
   You say:

4 You see an ambulance, some policemen and two damaged cars at the side of the road.
   You say:

5 You and a friend have just missed the last bus home.
   You say:

6 Dave isn’t feeling well. He tells you all about it.
   You say:

118.3 Complete the sentences with as if. Choose from the box, putting the verbs in the correct form.

she / enjoy / it I / go / be sick he / not / eat / for a week
he / need / a good rest she / hurt / her leg he / mean / what he / say
I / not / exist she / not / want / come

1 Mark looks very tired. He looks as if he needs a good rest

2 I don’t think Paul was joking. He looked

3 What’s the matter with Liz? She’s walking

4 Peter was extremely hungry and ate his dinner very quickly.
   He ate

5 Caroline had a bored expression on her face during the concert.
   She didn’t look

6 I’ve just eaten too many chocolates. Now I don’t feel well.
   I feel

7 I phoned Liz and invited her to the party, but she wasn’t very enthusiastic about it.
   She sounded

8 I went into the office, but nobody spoke to me or looked at me.
   Everybody ignored me

118.4 These sentences are like the ones in Section D. Complete each sentence using as if.

1 Brian is a terrible driver. He drives as if he were the only driver on the road.

2 I’m 20 years old, so please don’t talk to me I a child.

3 Steve has never met Nicola, but he talks about her his best friend.

4 It was a long time ago that we first met, but I remember it yesterday.
For and during

We use for + a period of time to say how long something goes on:
- for two hours
- for a week
- for ages

- We watched television for two hours last night.
- Diane is going away for a week in September.
- Where have you been? I've been waiting for ages.
- Are you going away for the weekend?

We use during + noun to say when something happens (not how long):
- during the film
- during our holiday
- during the night

- I fell asleep during the film.
- We met some really nice people during our holiday.
- The ground is wet. It must have rained during the night.

With 'time words' (for example: the morning / the afternoon / the summer), you can usually say in or during:
- It must have rained in the night. (or during the night)
- I'll phone you sometime during the afternoon. (or in the afternoon)

You cannot use during to say how long something goes on:
- It rained for three days without stopping. (not during three days)

Compare during and for:
- I fell asleep during the film. I was asleep for half an hour.

During and while

Compare:

We use during + noun:
- I fell asleep during the film.
- We met a lot of interesting people during our holiday.
- Robert suddenly began to feel ill during the exam.

We use while + subject + verb:
- I fell asleep while I was watching TV.
- We met a lot of interesting people while we were on holiday.
- Robert suddenly began to feel ill while he was doing the exam.

Some more examples of while:
- We saw Clare while we were waiting for the bus.
- While you were out, there was a phone call for you.
- Chris read a book while I watched television.

When you are talking about the future, use the present (not will) after while:
- I'll be in London next week. I hope to see Tom while I'm there. (not while I will be there)
- What are you going to do while you are waiting? (not while you will be waiting)

See also Unit 25.
Exercises

119.1 Put in for or during.
1 It rained ________ three days without stopping.
2 I fell asleep ________ the film.
3 I went to the theatre last night. I met Sue ________ the interval.
4 Martin hasn’t lived in Britain all his life. He lived in Brazil ________ four years.
5 Production at the factory was seriously affected ________ the strike.
6 I felt really ill last week. I could hardly eat anything ________ three days.
7 I waited for you ________ half an hour and decided that you weren’t coming.
8 Sarah was very angry with me. She didn’t speak to me ________ a week.
9 We usually go out at weekends, but we don’t often go out ________ the week.
10 Jack started a new job a few weeks ago. Before that he was out of work ________ six months.
11 I need a change. I think I’ll go away ________ a few days.
12 The president gave a long speech. She spoke ________ two hours.
13 We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn’t had anything to eat ________ the journey.
14 We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn’t had anything to eat ________ eight hours.

119.2 Put in during or while.
1 We met a lot of interesting people ________ we were on holiday.
2 We met a lot of interesting people ________ our holiday.
3 I met Mike ________ I was shopping.
4 ________ I was on holiday, I didn’t read any newspapers or watch TV.
5 ________ our stay in Paris, we visited a lot of museums and galleries.
6 The phone rang three times ________ we were having dinner.
7 The phone rang three times ________ the night.
8 I had been away for many years ________ that time, many things had changed.
9 What did they say about me ________ I was out of the room?
10 I went out for dinner last night. Unfortunately I began to feel ill ________ the meal and had to go home.
11 Please don’t interrupt me ________ I’m speaking.
12 There were many interruptions ________ the president’s speech.
13 Can you lay the table ________ I get the dinner ready?
14 We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn’t had anything to eat ________ we were travelling.

119.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.
1 I fell asleep while ________ I was watching television.
2 I fell asleep during ________ the film.
3 I hurt my arm while ________
4 Can you wait here while ________
5 Most of the students looked bored during ________
6 I was asked a lot of questions during ________
7 Don’t open the car door while ________
8 The lights suddenly went out while ________
9 It started to rain during ________
10 It started to rain while ________
By ( + a time) = not later than:

- I sent the letter to them today, so they should receive it by Monday. (= on or before Monday, not later than Monday)
- We'd better hurry. We have to be home by 5 o'clock. (= at or before 5 o'clock, not later than 5 o'clock)
- Where's Sarah? She should be here by now. (= now or before now – so she should have already arrived)

We use until (or till) to say how long a situation continues:

- 'Shall we go now?' 'No, let's wait until (or till) it stops raining.
- I couldn't get up this morning. I stayed in bed until half past ten.
- I didn't get up until half past ten.

Compare until and by:

Something continues until a time in the future:

- David will be away until Monday. (so he'll be back on Monday)
- I'll be working until 11.30. (so I'll stop working at 11.30)

Something happens by a time in the future:

- David will be back by Monday. (= he'll be back not later than Monday)
- I'll have finished my work by 11.30. (= I'll finish my work not later than 11.30.)

You can say 'by the time something happens'. Study these examples:

- It's too late to go to the bank now. By the time we get there, it will be closed. (= the bank will close between now and the time we get there)
- (from a postcard) Our holiday ends tomorrow. So by the time you receive this postcard, I'll be back home. (= I will arrive home between tomorrow and the time you receive this postcard)
- Hurry up! By the time we get to the cinema, the film will already have started.

You can say 'by the time something happened' (for the past):

- Karen's car broke down on the way to the party last night. By the time she arrived, most of the other guests had left. (= it took her a long time to get to the party and most of the guests left during this time)
- I had a lot of work to do yesterday evening. I was very tired by the time I finished. (= it took me a long time to do the work, and I became more and more tired during this time)
- We went to the cinema last night. It took us a long time to find somewhere to park the car. By the time we got to the cinema, the film had already started.

Also by then or by that time:

- Karen finally arrived at the party at midnight, but by then (or by that time), most of the guests had left.
Exercises

120.1 Make sentences with by.

1 We have to be home not later than 5 o’clock.
   We have to be home by 5 o’clock.

2 I have to be at the airport not later than 8.30.
   I have to be at the airport

3 Let me know not later than Saturday whether you can come to the party.
   Let me know

4 Please make sure that you’re here not later than 2 o’clock.
   Please make sure that

5 If we leave now, we should arrive not later than lunchtime.
   If we leave now,

120.2 Put in by or until.

1 Steve has gone away. He’ll be away until Monday.

2 Sorry, but I must go. I have to be home 5 o’clock.

3 I’ve been offered a job. I haven’t decided yet whether to accept it or not. I have to decide
   Friday.

4 I think I’ll wait Thursday before making a decision.

5 It’s too late to go shopping. The shops are open only 5.30. They’ll be closed
   now.

6 I’d better pay the phone bill. It has to be paid tomorrow.

7 Don’t pay the bill today. Wait tomorrow.

8 A: Have you finished redecorating your house?
   B: Not yet. We hope to finish the end of the week.

9 A: I’m going out now. I’ll be back about 10.30. Will you still be here?
   B: I don’t think so. I’ll probably have gone out then.

10 I’m moving into my new flat next week. I’m staying with a friend then.

11 I’ve got a lot of work to do. the time I finish, it will be time to go to bed.

12 If you want to take part in the competition, you have to apply 3 April.

120.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use by or until.

1 David is away at the moment. He’ll be away until Monday.

2 David is away at the moment. He’ll be back by Monday.

3 I’m just going out. I won’t be very long. Wait here

4 I’m going out to buy a few things. It’s 4.30 now. I won’t be long. I’ll be back

5 If you want to apply for the job, your application must be received

6 Last night I watched TV

120.4 Read the situations and complete the sentences using By the time ...

1 I was invited to a party, but I got there much later than I intended.
   By the time I got to the party, most of the other guests had left.

2 I intended to catch a train, but it took me longer than expected to get to the station.
   , my train had already left.

3 I wanted to go shopping after finishing my work. But I finished much later than expected.
   , it was too late to go shopping.

4 I saw two men who looked as if they were trying to steal a car. I called the police, but it was
   some time before they arrived.
   , the two men had disappeared.

5 We climbed a mountain and it took us a very long time to get to the top. There wasn’t
   much time to enjoy the view.
   , we had to come down again.
At/on/in (time)

A

Compare at, on and in:
- They arrived at 5 o'clock.
- They arrived on Friday.
- They arrived in October. / They arrived in 1968.

We use:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time Expression</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>at for the time of day</td>
<td>at 11.45, at midnight, at lunchtime, at sunset etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on for days and dates</td>
<td>on Friday / on Fridays, on 16 May 1999, on Christmas Day, on my birthday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in for longer periods</td>
<td>in October, in 1988, in the 18th century, in the past, in (the) winter, in the 1990s, in the Middle Ages, in (the) future</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use at in these expressions:

- at night
- at the weekend / at weekends
- at Christmas
- at the moment / at present
- at the same time

We say:

- in the morning(s) but on Friday morning(s)
- in the afternoon(s) on Sunday afternoon(s)
- in the evening(s) on Monday evening(s) etc.

- I'll see you in the morning.
- I'll see you on Friday morning.
- Do you work in the evenings?
- Do you work on Saturday evenings?

B

We do not use at/on/in before last/next/this/every:
- I'll see you next Friday. (not on next Friday)
- They got married last March.

In spoken English we often leave out on before days (Sunday/Monday etc.). So you can say:
- I'll see you on Friday. or I'll see you Friday.
- I don't go out on Monday mornings. or I don't go out Monday mornings.

C

In a few minutes / in six months etc.
- The train will be leaving in a few minutes. (= a few minutes from now)
- Andy has gone away. He'll be back in a week. (= a week from now)
- She'll be here in a moment. (= a moment from now)

You can also say 'in six months' time', 'in a week's time' etc.:
- They're getting married in six months' time. or ... in six months.

We also use in ... to say how long it takes to do something:
- I learnt to drive in four weeks. (= it took me four weeks to learn)
Exercises

121.1 Complete the sentences. Use at, on or in + the following:

| the evening | about 20 minutes | 1492 | the same time |
| the moment  | 21 July 1969     | the 1920s | night |
| Saturdays   | the Middle Ages  | 11 seconds |

1  Columbus made his first voyage from Europe to America __________ 1492__
2  If the sky is clear, you can see the stars ____________________________
3  After working hard during the day, I like to relax _______________________
4  Neil Armstrong was the first man to walk on the moon _____________________
5  It's difficult to listen if everyone is speaking _________________________
6  Jazz became popular in the United States ________________________________
7  I'm just going out to the shop. I'll be back _____________________________
8  (on the phone) 'Can I speak to Dan?' 'I'm afraid he's not here' _______________
9  Many of Europe's great cathedrals were built ___________________________
10 Ben is a very fast runner. He can run 100 metres _________________________
11 Liz works from Monday to Friday. Sometimes she also works ________________

121.2 Put in at, on or in.

1  Mozart was born in Salzburg __________ 1756.
2  I haven't seen Kate for a few days. I last saw her ____________ Tuesday.
3  The price of electricity is going up ____________ October.
4  ____________ weekends, we often go for long walks in the country.
5  I've been invited to a wedding ____________ 14 February.
6  Jonathan is 63. He'll be retiring from his job ____________ two years' time.
7  I'm busy just now, but I'll be with you ____________ a moment.
8  Jenny's brother is an engineer, but he doesn't have a job ____________ the moment.
9  There are usually a lot of parties ____________ New Year's Eve.
10 I don't like driving ____________ night.
11 My car is being repaired at the garage. It will be ready ____________ two hours.
12 The telephone and the doorbell rang ____________ the same time.
13 Mary and David always go out for dinner ____________ their wedding anniversary.
14 It was a short book and easy to read. I read it ____________ a day.
15 ____________ Saturday night I went to bed ____________ midnight.
16 We travelled overnight to Paris and arrived ____________ 5 o'clock ____________ the morning.
17 The course begins ____________ 7 January and ends sometime ____________ April.
18 I might not be at home ____________ Tuesday morning, but I'll be there ____________ the afternoon.

121.3 Which is correct: a, b, or both of them?

1  a  I'll see you on Friday.  b  I'll see you Friday.  both
2  a  I'll see you on next Friday.  b  I'll see you next Friday.  b
3  a  Paul got married in April.  b  Paul got married April.  a
4  a  They never go out on Sunday evenings.  b  They never go out Sunday evenings.  a
5  a  We often have a short holiday on Christmas.  b  We often have a short holiday at Christmas.  b
6  a  What are you doing the weekend?  b  What are you doing at the weekend?  a
7  a  Will you be here on Tuesday?  b  Will you be here Tuesday?  a
8  a  We were ill at the same time.  b  We were ill in the same time.  a
9  a  Sue got married at 18 May 1996.  b  Sue got married on 18 May 1996.  a
10 a  He left school last June.  b  He left school in last June.  a
On time and in time
At the end and in the end

On time and in time

On time = punctual, not late. If something happens on time, it happens at the time which was planned:
- The 11.45 train left on time. (= it left at 11.45)
- 'I'll meet you at 7.30.' 'OK, but please be on time.' (= don't be late, be there at 7.30)
- The conference was well-organised. Everything began and finished on time.

The opposite of on time is late:
- Be on time. Don't be late.

In time (for something / to do something) = soon enough:
- Will you be home in time for dinner? (= soon enough for dinner)
- I've sent Emma a birthday present. I hope it arrives in time (for her birthday).
  (= on or before her birthday)
- I'm in a hurry. I want to be home in time to see the game on television.
  (= soon enough to see the game)

The opposite of in time is too late:
- I got home too late to see the game on television.

You can say just in time (= almost too late):
- We got to the station just in time for our train.
- A child ran into the road in front of the car – I managed to stop just in time.

At the end and in the end

At the end (of something) = at the time when something ends. For example:
- at the end of the month  at the end of January  at the end of the game
- at the end of the film  at the end of the course  at the end of the concert

- I'm going away at the end of January / at the end of the month.
- At the end of the concert, there was great applause.
- The players shook hands at the end of the game.

You cannot say 'in the end of ...'. So you cannot say 'in the end of January' or 'in the end of the concert'.

The opposite of at the end (of ...) is at the beginning (of ...):
- I'm going away at the beginning of January. (not in the beginning)

In the end = finally.

We use in the end when we say what the final result of a situation was:
- We had a lot of problems with our car. We sold it in the end. (= finally we sold it)
- He got more and more angry. In the end he just walked out of the room.
- Alan couldn't decide where to go for his holidays. He didn't go anywhere in the end.
  (not at the end)

The opposite of in the end is usually at first:
- At first we didn't get on very well, but in the end we became good friends.
Exercises

122.1 Complete the sentences with on time or in time.
   1. The bus was late this morning, but it's usually ___________.
   2. The film was supposed to start at 8.30, but it didn't begin ___________.
   3. I like to get up _______________ to have a big breakfast before going to work.
   4. We want to start the meeting _______________, so please don't be late.
   5. I've just washed this shirt. I want to wear it this evening, so I hope it will be dry _______________.
   6. The train service isn't very good. The trains are rarely _______________.
   7. I nearly missed my flight this morning. I got to the airport just _______________.
   8. I nearly forgot that it was Joe's birthday. Fortunately I remembered _______________.
   9. Why are you never _______________? You always keep everybody waiting.

122.2 Read the situations and make sentences using just in time.
   1. A child ran into the road in front of your car. You saw the child at the last moment.
      (manage / stop) I _______________.
   2. You were walking home. Just after you got home, it started to rain very heavily.
      (get / home) I _______________.
   3. Tim was going to sit on the chair you had just painted. You said, 'Don't sit on that chair!'
      (stop / him) I _______________.
   4. You and a friend went to the cinema. You were late and you thought you would miss
      the beginning of the film. But the film began just as you sat down in the cinema.
      (get / cinema / beginning of the film)
      We _______________.

122.3 Complete the sentences using at the end + the following:
   - the course
   - the game
   - the interview
   - the month
   - the race
   1. The players shook hands _______________.
   2. I usually get paid _______________.
   3. The students had a party _______________.
   4. Two of the runners collapsed _______________.
   5. To my surprise, I was offered the job _______________.

122.4 Write sentences with In the end. Use the verb in brackets.
   1. We had a lot of problems with our car. (sell) In the end we sold it.
   2. Judy got more and more fed up with her job.
      (resign) In the end she _______________.
   3. I tried to learn German, but I found it too difficult.
      (give up) In the end I _______________.
   4. We couldn't decide whether to go to the party or not.
      (not / go) In the end we _______________.

122.5 Put in at or in.
   1. I'm going away _______________ the end of the month.
   2. It took me a long time to find a job. _______________ the end I got a job in a hotel.
   3. Are you going away _______________ the beginning of August or _______________ the end?
   4. I couldn't decide what to buy Laura for her birthday. I didn't buy her anything _______________ the end.
   5. We waited ages for a taxi. We gave up _______________ the end and walked home.
   6. I'll be moving to a new address _______________ the end of September.
   7. We had a few problems at first, but _______________ the end everything was OK.
   8. I'm going away _______________ the end of this week.
     B: Yes, you were in a difficult position. What did you do _______________ the end?
In/at/on (position) 1

**In**

- in a room
- in a building
- in a box
- in a garden
- in a town/country
- in the city centre
- in a pool
- in the sea
- in a river

- There's no-one in the room / in the building / in the garden.
- What have you got in your hand / in your mouth?
- When we were in Italy, we spent a few days in Venice.
- I have a friend who lives in a small village in the mountains.
- There were some people swimming in the pool / in the sea / in the river.

**At**

- at the bus stop
- at the door
- at the window
- at the roundabout
- at reception

- Do you know that man standing at the door / at the window?
- Turn left at the traffic lights / at the church / at the roundabout.
- We have to get off the bus at the next stop.
- When you leave the hotel, please leave your key at reception. (= at the reception desk)

**On**

- on the ceiling
- on the wall
- on the floor
- on the table
- on her nose
- on a page
- on an island

- I sat on the floor / on the ground / on the grass / on the beach / on a chair.
- There's a dirty mark on the wall / on the ceiling / on your nose / on your shirt.
- Have you seen the notice on the notice board / on the door?
- You'll find details of TV programmes on page seven (of the newspaper).
- The hotel is on a small island in the middle of the lake.

**Compare in and at:**

- There were a lot of people in the shop. It was very crowded.
  - Go along this road, then turn left at the shop.
- I'll meet you in the hotel lobby.
  - I'll meet you at the entrance to the hotel.

**Compare in and on:**

- There is some water in the bottle.
  - There is a label on the bottle.

**Compare at and on:**

- There is somebody at the door. Shall I go and see who it is?
  - There is a notice on the door. It says 'Do not disturb'.
Exercises

123.1 Answer the questions about the pictures. Use in, at or on with the words below the pictures.

1 Where’s the label? ________________ on the bottle.
2 Where’s the fly? ________________
3 Where is the car waiting? ________________
4 a Where’s the notice? ________________
   b Where’s the key? ________________
5 Where are the shelves? ________________
6 Where’s the Eiffel Tower? ________________
7 a Where’s the man standing? ________________
   b Where’s the bird? ________________
8 Where are the children playing? ________________

123.2 Complete the sentences. Use in, at or on + the following:

| the window | your coffee | the mountains | that tree |
| my guitar | the river | the island | the next garage |

1 Look at those people swimming ________________ in the river.
2 One of the strings ________________ is broken.
3 There’s something wrong with the car. We’d better stop ________________.
4 Would you like sugar ________________? 
5 The leaves ________________ are a beautiful colour.
6 Last year we had a wonderful skiing holiday ________________.
7 There’s nobody living ________________ . It’s uninhabited.
8 He spends most of the day sitting ________________ and looking outside.

123.3 Complete the sentences with in, at or on.

1 There was a long queue of people ________________ the bus stop.
2 Nicola was wearing a silver ring ________________ her little finger.
3 There was an accident ________________ the crossroads this morning.
4 I wasn’t sure whether I had come to the right office. There was no name ________________ the door.
5 There are some beautiful trees ________________ the park.
6 You’ll find the sports results ________________ the back page of the newspaper.
7 I wouldn’t like an office job. I couldn’t spend the whole day sitting ________________ a desk.
8 My brother lives ________________ a small village ________________ the south-west of England.
9 The man the police are looking for has a scar ________________ his right cheek.
10 The headquarters of the company are ________________ Milan.
11 I like that picture hanging ________________ the wall ________________ the kitchen.
12 If you come here by bus, get off ________________ the stop after the traffic lights.
In/at/on (position) 2

We say that somebody/something is:

- in a line / in a row / in a queue
- in the sky / in the world
- in an office / in a department
- in a book / in a (news)paper / in a magazine / in a letter
- in bed
- in the country / in the countryside
- in a photograph / in a picture

- When I go to the cinema, I like to sit in the front row.
- James isn’t up yet. He’s still in bed.
- It was a lovely day. There wasn’t a cloud in the sky.
- I’ve just started working in the sales department.
- Who is the woman in that photograph?
- Have you seen this picture in today’s paper?

- on the left / on the right
- on the left-hand side / right-hand side
- on the ground floor / on the first floor / on the second floor etc.
- on a map / on a menu / on a list
- on a farm

- In Britain we drive on the left. (or ... on the left-hand side.)
- Our flat is on the second floor of the building.
- Here’s a shopping list. Don’t buy anything that’s not on the list.
- Have you ever worked on a farm?

We say that a place is on a river / on a road / on the coast:
- Budapest is on the (river) Danube.
- Portsmouth is on the south coast of England.

*Also* on the way:
- We stopped at a small village on the way to London.

- at the top (of) / at the bottom (of) / at the end (of)
- Write your name at the top of the page.
- Jane’s house is at the other end of the street.

- in the front / in the back of a car
- I was sitting in the back (of the car) when we crashed.

- at the front / at the back of a building / theatre / group of people etc.
- The garden is at the back of the house.
- Let’s sit at the front (of the cinema).
- We were at the back, so we couldn’t see very well.

- on the front / on the back of a letter / piece of paper etc.
- I wrote the date on the back of the photograph.

- in the corner of a room
- The television is in the corner of the room.

- at the corner or on the corner of a street
- There is a post box at/on the corner of the street.
Exercises

124.1 Answer the questions about the pictures. Use in, at or on with the words below the pictures.

1 Where does Sue work? *In the sales department.*
2 Sue lives in this building. Where's her flat exactly? ........................................................................................................................................
3 Where is the woman standing? ........................................................................................................................................
4 Where is the man standing? ........................................................................................................................................
5 Where's the cat? ........................................................................................................................................................
6 Where's the dog? ........................................................................................................................................................
7 Liz is in this group of people. Where is she? ..................................................................................................................
8 Where's the post office? ..............................................................................................................................................
9 Gary is at the cinema. Where is he sitting? ..................................................................................................................
10 Where does Kate work? ..............................................................................................................................................

124.2 Complete the sentences. Use in, at or on + the following:

the west coast the world the back of the class the sky
the front row the right the back of this card the way to work

1 It was a lovely day. There wasn’t a cloud *in the sky.*
2 In most countries people drive *on the road.*
3 What is the tallest building *in the world?*
4 I usually buy a newspaper *at the corner.*
5 San Francisco is *on the west coast* of the United States.
6 We went to the theatre last night. We had seats *in the back row.*
7 I couldn’t hear the teacher. She spoke quietly and I was sitting *at the desk.*
8 I don’t have your address. Could you write it *on the envelope?*

124.3 Complete the sentences with in, at or on.

1 Write your name *at* the top of the page.
2 Is your sister *in* this photograph? I don’t recognise her.
3 I didn’t feel very well when I woke up, so I stayed *in bed.*
4 We normally use the front entrance to the building, but there’s another one *at the back.*
5 Is there anything interesting *in* the paper today?
6 There was a list of names, but my name wasn’t *in* the list.
7 *At the end of the street,* there is a path leading to the river.
8 I love to look up at the stars *at night.*
9 When I’m a passenger in a car, I prefer to sit *at the front.*
10 It’s a very small village. You probably won’t find it *on your map.*
11 Joe works *at* the furniture department of a large store.
12 Paris is *on* the river Seine.
13 I don’t like cities. I’d much prefer to live *in the country.*
14 My office is *at the top floor.* It’s *at the left as you come out of the lift.*
In/at/on (position) 3

A

In hospital / at home etc.

We say that somebody is in hospital / in prison / in jail:
- Ann's mother is in hospital.

We say that somebody is at home / at work / at school / at university / at college:
- I'll be at work until 5.30, but I'll be at home all evening.
- Julia is studying chemistry at university.

Also at sea (= on a voyage). Compare at sea and in the sea:
- It was a long voyage. We were at sea for 30 days.
- I love swimming in the sea.

B

At a party / at a concert etc.

We say that somebody is at an event (at a party / at a conference etc.):
- Were there many people at the party / at the meeting / at the wedding?
- I saw Steve at a football match / at a concert on Saturday.

C

In and at for buildings

You can often use in or at with buildings. For example, you can eat in a restaurant or at a restaurant; you can buy something in a supermarket or at a supermarket. We usually say at when we say where an event takes place (for example: a concert, a film, a party, a meeting):
- We went to a concert at the Royal Festival Hall.
- The meeting took place at the company's head office in Frankfurt.

We say at the station / at the airport:
- Don't meet me at the station. I can get a taxi.

We say at somebody's house:
- I was at Sue's house last night. or I was at Sue's last night.

Also at the doctor's, at the hairdresser's etc.

We use at when we are thinking about the building itself. Compare:
- We had dinner at the hotel.
  All the rooms in the hotel have air conditioning. (not at the hotel)
- I was at Sue's house last night.
  It's always cold in Sue's house. The heating doesn't work very well. (not at Sue's house)

D

In and at for towns etc.

We normally use in with cities, towns and villages:
- Sam's parents live in Nottingham. (not at Nottingham)
- The Louvre is a famous art museum in Paris. (not at Paris)

But you can use at or in when you think of the place as a point or station on a journey:
- Does this train stop at (or in) Nottingham? (= at Nottingham station)
- We stopped at (or in) a small village on the way to London.

E

On a bus / in a car etc.

We usually say on a bus / on a train / on a plane / on a ship but in a car / in a taxi:
- The bus was very full. There were too many people on it.
- Mary arrived in a taxi.

We say on a bike (= bicycle) / on a motorbike / on a horse:
- Jane passed me on her bike.

At school / in hospital etc. → Unit 74  In/at/on (position) → Units 123–24  To/at/in/into → Unit 126  By car / by bike etc. → Unit 1288
Exercises  Unit 125

125.1 Complete the sentences about the pictures. Use in, at or on with the words below the pictures.

1. You can hire a car ___________.
2. Dave is ___________.
3. Karen is ___________.
4. Martin is ___________.
5. Judy is ___________.
6. I saw Gary ___________.
7. We spent a few days ___________.
8. We went to a show ___________.

125.2 Complete the sentences. Use in, at or on + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sea</th>
<th>the plane</th>
<th>hospital</th>
<th>a taxi</th>
<th>the station</th>
<th>the cinema</th>
<th>the airport</th>
<th>the sports centre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. My train arrives at 11.30. Can you meet me ___________?  
2. We walked to the restaurant, but we went home ___________.  
3. I’d like to see a film. What’s on ___________ this week?  
4. Some people are ___________ for crimes that they did not commit.  
5. ‘What does your sister do? Has she got a job?’ ‘Yes, she’s still ___________.’  
6. I play basketball ___________ on Friday evenings.  
7. A friend of mine was injured in an accident a few days ago. She’s still ___________.  
8. Our flight was delayed. We had to wait ___________ for four hours.  
9. I enjoyed the flight, but the food ___________ wasn’t very nice.  
10. Bill works on ships. He is ___________ most of the time.

125.3 Complete these sentences with in, at or on.

1. We went to a concert ___________ the Royal Festival Hall.  
2. It was a very slow train. It stopped ___________ every station.  
3. My parents live ___________ a small village about 50 miles from London.  
4. I haven’t seen Kate for some time. I last saw her ___________ David’s wedding.  
5. We stayed ___________ a very nice hotel when we were ___________ Amsterdam.  
6. There were fifty rooms ___________ the hotel.  
7. I don’t know where my umbrella is. Perhaps I left it ___________ the bus.  
8. I wasn’t in when you phoned. I was ___________ my sister’s house.  
9. There must be somebody ___________ the house. The lights are on.  
10. The exhibition ___________ the Museum of Modern Art finished on Saturday.  
11. Shall we travel ___________ your car or mine?  
12. What are you doing ___________ home? I expected you to be ___________ work.  
13. ‘Did you like the film?’ ‘Yes, but it was too hot ___________ the cinema.’  
14. Paul lives ___________ Birmingham. He’s a student ___________ Birmingham University.
We say go/come/travel (etc.) to a place or event. For example:

| go to China | go to bed  | come to my house |
| go back to Italy | go to the bank | be taken to hospital |
| return to London | go to a concert | be sent to prison |
| welcome (somebody) to (a place) |  | drive to the airport |

- When are your friends going back to Italy? (not going back in Italy)
- Three people were injured in the accident and taken to hospital.
- Welcome to our country! (not Welcome in)

In the same way we say ‘a journey to / a trip to / a visit to / on my way to …’ etc.:
- Did you enjoy your trip to Paris / your visit to the zoo?

Compare to (for movement) and in/at (for position):
- They are going to France.  but  They live in France.
- Can you come to the party?  but  I’ll see you at the party.

Been to

We say ‘been to (a place)’:
- I’ve been to Italy four times, but I’ve never been to Rome.
- Amanda has never been to a football match in her life.

Get and arrive

We say get to (a place):
- What time did they get to London / to work / to the party?

But we say arrive in … or arrive at … (not arrive to).

We say arrive in a town or country:
- They arrived in London / in Spain a week ago.

For other places (buildings etc.) or events, we say arrive at:
- When did they arrive at the hotel / at the airport / at the party?

Home

We say: go home / come home / get home / arrive home / on the way home etc. (no preposition).

We do not say ‘to home’:
- I’m tired. Let’s go home now. (not go to home)
- I met Linda on my way home. (not my way to home)

Into

Go into, get into … etc. = enter (a room / a building / a car etc.):
- I opened the door, went into the room and sat down.
- A bird flew into the kitchen through the window.

With some verbs (especially go/get/put) we often use in (instead of into):
- She got in the car and drove away. (or She got into the car …)
- I read the letter and put it back in the envelope.

The opposite of into is out of:
- She got out of the car and went into a shop.

We usually say ‘get on/off a bus / a train / a plane’ (not usually get into/out of):
- She got on the bus and I never saw her again.
Exercises

126.1 Put in to/at/in/into where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1. Three people were taken __________ hospital after the accident.
2. I met Kate on my way __________ home. (no preposition)
3. We left our luggage __________ the station and went to find something to eat.
4. Shall we take a taxi __________ the station or shall we walk?
5. I have to go __________ the bank today to change some money.
6. The river Rhine flows __________ the North Sea.
7. ‘Have you got your camera?’ ‘No, I left it __________ home.’
8. Have you ever been __________ China?
9. I had lost my key, but I managed to climb __________ the house through a window.
10. We got stuck in a traffic jam on our way __________ the airport.
11. We had lunch __________ the airport while we were waiting for our plane.
12. Welcome __________ the hotel. We hope you enjoy your stay here.
13. We drove along the main road for about a kilometre and then turned __________ a narrow side street.
14. Did you enjoy your visit __________ the zoo?
15. I’m tired. As soon as I get __________ home, I’m going __________ bed.
16. Marcel is French. He has just returned __________ France after two years __________ Brazil.
17. Carl was born __________ Chicago, but his family moved __________ New York when he was three. He still lives __________ New York.

126.2 Have you been to these places? If so, how many times? Choose three of the places and write a sentence using been to.

 Athenes Australia Ireland Paris Rome Sweden Tokyo the United States

(examples answers) I’ve never been to Australia. / I’ve been to Ireland once.

1. __________________________
2. __________________________
3. __________________________
4. __________________________

126.3 Put in to/at/in where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1. What time does this train get __________ London?
2. What time does this train arrive __________ London?
3. What time did you get __________ home last night?
4. What time do you usually arrive __________ work in the morning?
5. When we got __________ the cinema, there was a long queue outside.
6. I arrived __________ home feeling very tired.

126.4 Write sentences using got + into / out of / on / off.

1. You were walking home. A friend passed you in her car. She saw you, stopped and offered you a lift. She opened the door. What did you do? I got into the car.
2. You were waiting for the bus. At last your bus came. The doors opened. What did you do then? I __________
3. You drove home in your car. You stopped outside your house and parked the car. What did you do then?
4. You were travelling by train to Manchester. When the train got to Manchester, what did you do?
5. You needed a taxi. After a few minutes a taxi stopped for you. You opened the door. What did you do then?
6. You were travelling by air. At the end of your flight, your plane landed at the airport and stopped. The doors were opened, you took your bag and stood up. What did you do then?
In/at/on (other uses)

Expressions with in

in the rain / in the sun (= sunshine) / in the shade / in the dark / in bad weather etc.
- We sat in the shade. It was too hot to sit in the sun.
- Don’t go out in the rain. Wait until it stops.

(write) in ink / in biro / in pencil
- When you do the exam, you’re not allowed to write in pencil.

Also (write) in words / in figures / in BLOCK CAPITALS etc.
- Please write your name in block capitals.
- Write the story in your own words. (= don’t copy somebody else)

(be/fall) in love (with somebody)
- Have you ever been in love with anybody?

in (my) opinion
- In my opinion, the film wasn’t very good.

At the age of ... etc.

We say ‘at the age of 16 / at 120 miles an hour / at 100 degrees etc.’:
- Tracy left school at 16. or ... at the age of 16.
- The train was travelling at 120 miles an hour.
- Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.

On holiday / on a tour etc.

We say: (be/go) on holiday / on business / on a trip / on a tour / on a cruise etc.
- I’m going on holiday next week.
- Emma’s away on business at the moment.
- One day I’d like to go on a world tour.

You can also say ‘go to a place for a holiday / for my holiday(s)’:
- Steve has gone to France for a holiday.

Other expressions with on

on television / on the radio
- I didn’t watch the news on television, but I heard it on the radio.

on the phone/telephone
- I’ve never met her, but I’ve spoken to her on the phone a few times.

(be/go) on strike
- There are no trains today. The drivers are on strike.

(be/go) on a diet
- I’ve put on a lot of weight. I’ll have to go on a diet.

(be) on fire
- Look! That car is on fire.

on the whole (= in general)
- Sometimes I have problems at work, but on the whole I enjoy my job.

on purpose (= intentionally)
- I’m sorry. I didn’t mean to annoy you. I didn’t do it on purpose.
Exercises

127.1 Complete the sentences using in + the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>block capitals</th>
<th>cold weather</th>
<th>love</th>
<th>my opinion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pencil</td>
<td>the rain</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Don’t go out __________. Wait until it stops.
2. Matt likes to keep warm, so he doesn’t go out much __________________________ .
3. If you write __________________________ and make a mistake, you can rub it out and correct it.
4. They fell __________________________ almost immediately and were married in a few weeks.
5. Please write your address clearly, preferably __________________________ .
6. It’s too hot in the sun. I’m going to sit __________________________ .
7. Amanda thought the restaurant was OK, but __________________________ it wasn’t very good.

127.2 Complete the sentences using on + the following:

| business purpose | a diet strike | fire television | holiday | the phone a tour | the whole |

1. Look! That car is __________! Somebody call the fire brigade.
2. Workers at the factory have gone __________________________ for better pay and conditions.
3. Soon after we arrived, we were taken __________________________ of the city.
4. I feel lazy this evening. Is there anything worth watching __________________________ ?
5. I’m sorry. It was an accident. I didn’t do it __________________________ .
6. Richard has put on a lot of weight recently. I think he should go __________________________ .
7. Jane’s job involves a lot of travelling. She often has to go away __________________________ .
8. A: I’m going __________________________ next week.
   B: Where are you going? Somewhere nice?
9. A: Is Sarah here?
   B: Yes, but she’s __________________________ at the moment. She won’t be long.
10. A: How was your exam?
    B: Well, there were some difficult questions, but __________________________ it was OK.

127.3 Complete the sentences with on, in, at or for.

1. Water boils __________ 100 degrees Celsius.
2. When I was 14, I went __________ a trip to France organised by my school.
3. There was panic when people realised that the building was __________ fire.
4. Julia’s grandmother died recently __________ the age of 79.
5. Can you turn the light __________, please? I don’t want to sit __________ the dark.
6. We didn’t go __________ holiday last year. We stayed at home.
7. I’m going to Switzerland __________ a short holiday next month.
8. I won’t be here next week. I’ll be __________ holiday.
9. Technology has developed __________ great speed.
10. Alan got married __________ 17, which is rather young to get married.
11. I heard an interesting programme __________ the radio this morning.
12. __________ my opinion, violent films should not be shown __________ television.
13. I wouldn’t like to go __________ a cruise. I think I’d get bored.
14. I mustn’t eat too much. I’m supposed to be __________ a diet.
15. I wouldn’t like his job. He spends most of his time talking __________ the phone.
16. The earth travels round the sun __________ 107,000 kilometres an hour.
17. ‘Did you enjoy your holiday?’ ‘Not every minute, but __________ the whole, yes.’
18. When you write a cheque, you have to write the amount __________ words and figures.
By

We use by in many expressions to say how we do something. For example, you can:
- send something by post    contact somebody by phone / by email / by fax
- do something by hand     pay by cheque / by credit card
- Can I pay by credit card?
- You can contact me by phone, by fax or by email.

But we say pay cash or pay in cash (not by cash).

We also say by mistake / by accident / by chance:
- We hadn’t arranged to meet. We met by chance.

But we say ‘do something on purpose’ (= you mean to do it):
- I didn’t do it on purpose. It was an accident.

Note that we say by chance, by cheque etc. (not by the chance / by a cheque). In these expressions we use by + noun without the or a.

In the same way we use by ... to say how somebody travels:
- by car / by train / by plane / by boat / by ship / by bus / by bike etc.
- by road / by rail / by air / by sea / by underground
- Joanne usually goes to work by bus.
- Do you prefer to travel by air or by train?

But we say on foot:
- Did you come here by car or on foot?

You cannot use by if you say my car / the train / a taxi etc. We use by + noun without ‘a/the/my’ etc. We say:
- by car but in my car (not by my car)
- by train but on the train (not by the train)

We use in for cars and taxis:
- They didn’t come in their car. They came in a taxi.

We use on for bicycles and public transport (buses, trains etc.):
- We travelled on the 6.45 train.

We say that ‘something is done by somebody/something’ (passive):
- Have you ever been bitten by a dog?
- The programme was watched by millions of people.

Compare by and with:
- The door must have been opened with a key. (not by a key)
- (= somebody used a key to open it)
- The door must have been opened by somebody with a key.

We say ‘a play by Shakespeare’ / ‘a painting by Rembrandt’ / ‘a novel by Tolstoy’ etc.:
- Have you read anything by Ernest Hemingway?

By also means ‘beside’:
- Come and sit by me. (= beside me)
- ‘Where’s the light switch?’ ‘By the door.’

Note the following use of by:
- Clare’s salary has just gone up from £2,000 a month to £2,200. So it has increased by £200 / by ten per cent.
- Carl and Mike had a race over 200 metres. Carl won by about three metres.

new salary → £2,200
increased by £200
old salary → £2,000
Exercises

128.1 Complete the sentences using by + the following:

- chance
- credit card
- hand
- mistake
- satellite

1. We hadn’t arranged to meet. We met \textit{by chance}.  
2. I didn’t intend to take your umbrella. I took it \textit{by mistake}.  
3. Don’t put the sweater in the washing machine. It has to be washed \textit{by hand}.  
4. I don’t need cash. I can pay the bill \textit{by credit card}.  
5. The two cities were connected \textit{by satellite} for a television programme.

128.2 Put in by, in or on.

1. Joanne usually goes to work \textit{by} bus.  
2. I saw Jane this morning. She was \textit{in} the bus.  
3. How did you get here? Did you come \textit{by} train?  
4. I decided not to go \textit{in} car. I went \textit{on} my bike instead.  
5. I didn’t feel like walking home, so I came home \textit{by} taxi.  
6. Sorry we’re late. We missed the bus, so we had to come \textit{on} foot.  
7. How long does it take to cross the Atlantic \textit{by} ship?

128.3 Write three sentences like the examples. Write about a song, a painting, a film, a book etc.

1. \textit{War and Peace} is a book by Tolstoy.  
2. \textit{Romeo and Juliet} is a play by Shakespeare.  
3. \textit{The Life of Pi} is a novel by Yann Martel.  
4. \textit{The Sound of Music} is a film by Robert Wise.  
5. \textit{The Starry Night} is a painting by Van Gogh.

128.4 Put in by, in, on or with.

1. Have you ever been bitten \textit{by} a dog?  
2. The plane was badly damaged \textit{by} lightning.  
3. We managed to put the fire out \textit{by} a fire extinguisher.  
4. Who is that man standing \textit{by} the window?  
5. These photographs were taken \textit{by} a friend of mine.  
6. I don’t mind going \textit{in} car, but I don’t want to go \textit{in} your car.  
7. There was a small table \textit{on} the bed, a lamp and a clock \textit{on} it.

128.5 All these sentences have a mistake. Correct them.

1. Did you come here \textit{by} Kate’s car or yours? \underline{in Kate’s car}  
2. I don’t like travelling \textit{on} bus.  
3. These photographs were taken \textit{by} a very good camera.  
4. I know this music \textit{is} from Beethoven, but I can’t remember what it’s \textit{called}.  
5. I couldn’t pay \textit{by} cash – I didn’t have any money \textit{on} me.  
6. We lost the game only because of a mistake \textit{of} one of \textit{our} players.

128.6 Complete the sentences using by.

1. Clare’s salary was £2,000 a month. Now it is £2,200. Her salary \textit{has increased by} £200 a month.  
2. My daily newspaper used to cost 60 pence. From today it costs 70 pence. The price has gone up \textit{by} 10 pence.  
3. There was an election. Helen won. She got 25 votes and Norman got 23. Helen won \textit{by} 2 votes.  
4. I went to Kate’s house to see her, but she had gone out five minutes before I arrived. I missed her \textit{by} five minutes.
Noun + preposition
(reason for, cause of etc.)

A

Noun + for ...

- a cheque FOR (a sum of money)
  - They sent me a cheque for £150.

- a demand / a need FOR ...
  - The company closed down because there wasn’t enough demand for its product.
  - There’s no excuse for behaviour like that. There’s no need for it.

- a reason FOR ...
  - The train was late, but nobody knew the reason for the delay. (not reason of)

B

Noun + of ...

- an advantage / a disadvantage OF ...
  - The advantage of living alone is that you can do what you like.
  - but there is an advantage in (or to) doing something
  - There are many advantages in living alone. (or ... to living alone)

- a cause OF ...
  - The cause of the explosion is unknown.

- a photograph / a picture / a map / a plan / a drawing (etc.) OF ...
  - Rachel showed me some photographs of her family.
  - I had a map of the town, so I was able to find my way around.

C

Noun + in ...

- an increase / a decrease / a rise / a fall IN (prices etc.)
  - There has been an increase in the number of road accidents recently.
  - Last year was a bad one for the company. There was a big fall in sales.

D

Noun + to ...

- damage TO ...
  - The accident was my fault, so I had to pay for the damage to the other car.

- an invitation TO ...
  - (a party / a wedding etc.)
  - Did you get an invitation to the party?

- a solution TO (a problem) / a key TO (a door) / an answer TO (a question) / a reply TO (a letter) / a reaction TO ...
  - I hope we’ll find a solution to the problem. (not a solution of the problem)
  - I was surprised at her reaction to my suggestion.

- an attitude TO ...
  - (or TOWARDS ...)
  - His attitude to his job is very negative. or His attitude towards his job ...

E

Noun + with ... / between ...

- a relationship / a connection / contact WITH ...
  - Do you have a good relationship with your parents?
  - The police want to question a man in connection with the robbery.

- but a relationship / a connection / contact / a difference BETWEEN two things or people
  - The police believe that there is no connection between the two crimes.
  - There are some differences between British and American English.
Exercises

129.1 Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first.
1. What caused the explosion? What was the cause of the explosion?
2. We’re trying to solve the problem. We’re trying to find a solution.
3. Sue gets on well with her brother. Sue has a good relationship with her brother.
4. The cost of living has gone up a lot. There has been a big increase.
5. I don’t know how to answer your question. I can’t think of an answer.
6. I don’t think that a new road is necessary. I don’t think there is any need.
7. I think that working at home has many advantages. I think that there are many advantages.
8. The number of people without jobs fell last month. Last month there was a fall.
9. Nobody wants to buy shoes like these any more. There is no demand.
10. In what way is your job different from mine? What is the difference?

129.2 Complete the sentences using the following nouns + the correct preposition:
cause connection contact damage invitation
key map pictures reason reply
1. On the wall there were some pictures and a map of the world.
2. Thank you for the connection to your party next week.
3. Since she left home two years ago, Sophie has had little contact with her family.
4. I can’t open this door. Have you got a key to the other door?
5. The agreement between the fire at the hotel last night is still unknown.
6. I emailed Jim last week, but I still haven’t received a reply to my message.
7. The two companies are completely independent. There is no connection between them.
8. Jane showed me some old pictures of the city as it looked 100 years ago.
9. Carol has decided to give up her job. I don’t know her reason for doing this.
10. It wasn’t a bad accident. The reply to the car wasn’t serious.

129.3 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.
1. There are some differences between British and American English.
2. Money isn’t the solution to every problem.
3. There has been an increase in the amount of traffic using this road.
4. When I opened the envelope, I was delighted to find a cheque for £500.
5. The advantage of having a car is that you don’t have to rely on public transport.
6. There are many advantages of being able to speak a foreign language.
7. Everything can be explained. There’s a reason for everything.
8. When Paul left home, his attitude towards his parents seemed to change.
9. Ben and I used to be good friends, but I don’t have much contact with him now.
10. There has been a sharp rise in property prices in the past few years.
11. What was Emma’s reaction to the news?
12. If I give you the camera, can you take a photograph of me?
13. The company has rejected the workers’ demands for a rise in pay.
14. What was the answer to question 3 in the test?
15. The fact that Jane was offered a job has no connection with the fact that she is a friend of the managing director.
Adjective + preposition 1

It was nice of you to ...

- nice / kind / good / generous / polite / stupid / silly etc. OF somebody (to do something)
  □ Thank you. It was very kind of you to help me.
  □ It is stupid of me to go out without a coat in such cold weather.
- but (be) nice / kind / good / generous / polite / rude / friendly / cruel etc. TO somebody
  □ They have always been very nice to me. (not with me)
  □ Why were you so unfriendly to Lucy?

Adjective + about / with

- angry / annoyed / furious
  □ It’s stupid to get angry about things that don’t matter.
  □ Are you annoyed with me for being late?
- excited / worried / upset / nervous / happy etc. ABOUT a situation
  □ Are you excited about going away next week?
  □ Lisa is upset about not being invited to the party.
- delighted / pleased / satisfied / happy / disappointed
  □ I was delighted with the present you gave me.
  □ Were you happy with your exam results?

Adjective + at / by / with

- surprised / shocked / amazed / astonished
  □ Everybody was surprised AT (or BY) the news.
  □ I hope you weren’t shocked BY (or AT) what I said.
- impressed
  □ I’m very impressed WITH (or by) her English. It’s very good.
- fed up / bored
  □ I don’t enjoy my job any more. I’m fed up with it. / I’m bored with it.

Sorry about / for

- sorry ABOUT a situation or something that happened
  □ I’m sorry about the mess. I’ll clear it up later.
  □ We’re all sorry about Julie losing her job.
- sorry FOR
  □ Alex is very sorry for what he said. (or sorry about what he said)
  □ I’m sorry for shouting at you yesterday. (or sorry about shouting)
You can also say ‘I’m sorry I (did something)’:
  □ I’m sorry I shouted at you yesterday.
- feel / be sorry FOR somebody who is in a bad situation
  □ I feel sorry for Matt. He’s had a lot of bad luck. (not I feel sorry about Matt)
Exercises

130.1 Write sentences using nice of ... , kind of ... etc.

1. I went out in the cold without a coat. (silly) That was silly of you.
2. Sue offered to drive me to the airport. (nice) That was her.
3. I needed money and Tom gave me some. (generous) That was generous.
4. They didn’t invite us to their party. (not very nice) That was not nice.
5. Can I help you with your luggage? (very kind) That was kind of you.
6. Kevin didn’t thank me for the present. (not very polite) That was not polite.
7. They’ve had an argument and now they refuse to speak to each other. (a bit childish) That was a bit childish.

130.2 Complete the sentences using the following adjectives + the correct preposition:

annoyed  annoyed  astonished  bored  excited  impressed  kind  sorry

1. Are you _______ about going away next week?
2. Thank you for all your help. You’ve been very _______ me.
3. I wouldn’t like to be in her position. I feel _______ her.
4. What have I done wrong? Why are you _______ me?
5. Why do you always get so _______ things that don’t matter?
6. I wasn’t very _______ the service in the restaurant. We had to wait ages before our food arrived.
7. Ben isn’t very happy at college. He says he’s _______ the course he’s doing.
8. I had never seen so many people before. I was _______ the crowds.

130.3 Put in the correct preposition.

1. I was delighted _______ the present you gave me.
2. It was very nice _______ you to do my shopping for me. Thank you very much.
3. Why are you always so rude _______ your parents? Can’t you be nice _______ them?
4. It was careless _______ you to leave the door unlocked when you went out.
5. They didn’t reply to our letter, which wasn’t very polite _______ them.
6. We always have the same food every day. I’m fed up _______ it.
7. I can’t understand people who are cruel _______ animals.
8. We enjoyed our holiday, but we were a bit disappointed _______ the hotel.
9. I was surprised _______ the way he behaved. It was completely out of character.
10. I’ve been trying to learn Spanish, but I’m not very satisfied _______ my progress.
11. Linda doesn’t look very well. I’m worried _______ her.
12. Are you angry _______ what happened?
13. I’m sorry _______ what I did. I hope you’re not angry _______ me.
14. The people next door are furious _______ us _______ making so much noise last night.
15. Jill starts her new job next week. She’s quite excited _______ it.
16. I’m sorry _______ the smell of paint in this room. I’ve just decorated it.
17. I was shocked _______ what I saw. I’d never seen anything like it before.
18. The man we interviewed for the job was intelligent, but we weren’t very impressed _______ his appearance.
19. Are you still upset _______ what I said to you yesterday?
20. He said he was sorry _______ the situation, but there was nothing he could do.
21. I felt sorry _______ the children when we went on holiday. It rained every day and they had to spend most of the time indoors.
Adjective + preposition 2

A

Adjective + of (1)

afraid / frightened / terrified / scared OF ...
  □ ‘Are you afraid of spiders?’ ‘Yes, I’m terrified of them.’
fond / proud / ashamed / jealous / envious OF ...
  □ Why are you always so jealous of other people?
suspicious / critical / tolerant OF ...
  □ He didn’t trust me. He was suspicious of my intentions.

B

Adjective + of (2)

aware / conscious OF ...
  □ ‘Did you know he was married?’ ‘No, I wasn’t aware of that.’
capable / incapable OF ...
  □ I’m sure you are capable of passing the examination.
full / short OF ...
  □ The letter I wrote was full of mistakes. (not full with)
  □ I’m a bit short of money. Can you lend me some?
typical OF ...
  □ He’s late again. It’s typical of him to keep everybody waiting.
tired / sick OF ...
  □ Come on, let’s go! I’m tired of waiting. (= I’ve had enough of waiting.)
certain / sure OF or ABOUT ...
  □ I think she’s arriving this evening, but I’m not sure of that. or ... sure about that.

C

Adjective + at / to / from / in / on / with / for

good / bad / brilliant / better / hopeless etc. AT ...
  □ I’m not very good at repairing things. (not good in repairing things)
mariied / engaged TO ...
  □ Linda is married to an American. (not married with)
  □ Linda is married with three children. (= she is married and has three children)
similar TO ...
  □ Your writing is similar to mine.
different FROM or different TO ...
  □ The film was different from what I’d expected. (or different to what I’d expected.)
interested IN ...
  □ Are you interested in art?
keen ON ...
  □ We stayed at home because Chris wasn’t very keen on going out.
dependent ON ... (but independent OF ...)
  □ I don’t want to be dependent on anybody.
crowded WITH (people etc.)
  □ The streets were crowded with tourists. (but full of tourists)
famous FOR ...
  □ The Italian city of Florence is famous for its art treasures.
responsible FOR ...
  □ Who was responsible for all that noise last night?
Exercises

131.1 Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first.

1. There were lots of tourists in the streets. The streets were crowded with tourists.
2. There was a lot of furniture in the room. The room was full of furniture.
3. I don’t like sport very much. I’m not very keen on sport.
4. We don’t have enough time. We’re a bit short of time.
5. I’m not a very good tennis player. I’m not very good at tennis.
6. Catherine’s husband is Russian. Catherine is married to a Russian.
8. My problem is not the same as yours. My problem is different from yours.

131.2 Complete the sentences using the following adjectives + the correct preposition:

afraid different interested proud responsible similar sure

1. I think she’s arriving this evening, but I’m not sure of that.
2. Your camera is mine, but it isn’t exactly the same.
3. Don’t worry. I’ll look after you. There’s nothing to be afraid of.
4. I never watch the news on television. I’m not interested in the news.
5. The editor is the person who is what appears in a newspaper.
6. Sarah is a keen gardener. She’s very her garden and loves showing it to visitors.
7. I was surprised when I met Lisa for the first time. She was what I expected.

131.3 Put in the correct preposition.

1. The letter I wrote was full of mistakes.
2. My home town is not an especially interesting place. It’s not famous for anything.
3. Kate is very fond of her younger brother.
4. I don’t like going up ladders. I’m scared of heights.
6. Did you know that Liz is engaged to a friend of mine?
7. I’m not ashamed of what I did. In fact I’m quite proud of it.
8. I suggested that we should all go out for a meal, but nobody else was keen on the idea.
9. These days everybody is aware of the dangers of smoking.
10. The station platform was crowded with people waiting for the train.
11. Sue is much more successful than I am. Sometimes I feel a bit jealous of her.
12. I’m tired of doing the same thing every day. I need a change.
13. Do you know anyone who might be interested in buying an old car?
14. We’ve got plenty to eat. The fridge is full of food.
15. She is a very honest person. I don’t think she is capable of telling a lie.
16. Helen works hard and she’s extremely good at her job.
17. I’m not surprised he changed his mind at the last moment. That’s typical of him.
18. Mark has no money of his own. He’s totally dependent on his parents.
19. We’re short of staff in our office at the moment. We need more people to do the work.

131.4 Write sentences about yourself. Are you good at these things or not? Use the following:

good quite good not very good hopeless

1. (repairing things) I’m not very good at repairing things.
2. (telling jokes) ________________________________
3. (mathematics) ________________________________
4. (remembering names) ________________________________

Additional exercise 35 (page 322)
Verb + to

talk / speak TO somebody (with is also possible but less usual)
  □ Who was that man you were talking to?

listen TO ...
  □ We spent the evening listening to music. (not listening music)

write (a letter) TO ...
  □ I wrote to the hotel complaining about the poor service we had received.

apologise TO somebody (for ...)
  □ They apologised to me for what happened. (not They apologised me)

explain something TO somebody
  □ Can you explain this word to me? (not explain me this word)

explain / describe (to somebody) what/how/why ...
  □ I explained to them why I was worried. (not I explained them)
  □ Let me describe to you what I saw. (not Let me describe you)

We do not use to with these verbs:

phone / telephone / call somebody
  □ Did you phone your father yesterday? (not phone to your father)

answer somebody/something
  □ He refused to answer my question. (not answer to my question)

ask somebody
  □ Can I ask you a question? (not ask to you)

thank somebody (for something)
  □ He thanked me for helping him. (not He thanked to me)

Verb + at

look / stare / glance AT ... , have a look / take a look AT ...
  □ Why are you looking at me like that?

laugh AT ...
  □ I look stupid with this haircut. Everybody will laugh at me.

aim / point (something) AT ... , shoot / fire (a gun) AT ...
  □ Don’t point that knife at me. It’s dangerous.
  □ We saw someone with a gun shooting at birds, but he didn’t hit any.

Some verbs can be followed by at or to, with a difference of meaning. For example:

shout AT somebody (when you are angry)
  □ He got very angry and started shouting at me.

shout TO somebody (so that they can hear you)
  □ He shouted to me from the other side of the street.

throw something AT somebody/something (in order to hit them)
  □ Somebody threw an egg at the minister.

throw something TO somebody (for somebody to catch)
  □ Lisa shouted ‘Catch!’ and threw the keys to me from the window.
Exercises

132.1 You ask somebody to explain things that you don't understand. Write questions beginning 
Can you explain ... ?
1 (I don't understand this word.)
   Can you explain this word to me?
2 (I don't understand what you mean.)
   Can you explain to me what you mean?
3 (I don't understand this question.)
   Can you explain
4 (I don't understand the problem.)
   Can
5 (I don't understand how this machine works.)

6 (I don't understand what I have to do.)

132.2 Put in to where necessary. If the sentence is already complete, leave the space empty.
1 I know who she is, but I've never spoken to her.
2 Why didn't you answer to my letter?
3 I like to listen to the radio while I'm having breakfast.
4 We'd better phone the restaurant to reserve a table.
5 'Did Mike apologise to you?' 'Yes, he said he was very sorry.'
6 I explained to everybody the reasons for my decision.
7 I thanked everybody for all the help they had given me.
8 Ask me what you like, and I'll try and answer your questions.
9 Mike described me exactly what happened.
10 Karen won't be able to help you, so there's no point in asking her.

132.3 Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs (in the correct form) + the correct preposition:
   explain glance laugh listen point speak throw

   1 I look stupid with this haircut. Everybody will laugh at me.
   2 I don't understand this. Can you explain it to me?
   3 Sue and Kevin had an argument and now they're not speaking to one another.
   4 Be careful with those scissors! Don't point them at me!
   5 I glanced at my watch to see what the time was.
   6 Please threw me! I've got something important to tell you.
   7 Don't throw stones at the birds! It's cruel.
   8 If you don't want that sandwich, throw it to the birds. They'll eat it.

132.4 Put in to or at.

   1 I wrote to the hotel complaining about the poor service we had received.
   2 Look at these flowers. Aren't they pretty?
   3 Please don't shout at me! Try to calm down.
   4 I saw Sue as I was cycling along the road. I shouted at her, but she didn't hear me.
   5 Don't listen to what he says. He doesn't know what he's talking about.
   6 What's so funny? What are you laughing to?
   7 Do you think I could have a look at your magazine, please?
   8 I'm a bit lonely. I need somebody to talk to.
   9 She was so angry she threw a book at the wall.
   10 The woman sitting opposite me on the train kept staring at me.
   11 Can I speak to you a moment? There's something I want to ask you.
Verb + preposition 2  about/for/of/after

Verb + about

- talk / read / know ABOUT ... , tell somebody ABOUT ...
  - We talked about a lot of things at the meeting.

- have a discussion ABOUT something, but discuss something (no preposition)
  - We had a discussion about what we should do.
  - We discussed a lot of things at the meeting. (not discussed about)

- do something ABOUT something = do something to improve a bad situation
  - If you’re worried about the problem, you should do something about it.

Care about, care for and take care of

care ABOUT somebody/something = think that somebody/something is important
  - He’s very selfish. He doesn’t care about other people.

We say ‘care what/where/how ...’ etc. (without about)
  - You can do what you like. I don’t care what you do.

care FOR somebody/something

(1) = like something (usually in questions and negative sentences)
  - Would you care for a cup of coffee? (= Would you like ... ?)
  - I don’t care for very hot weather. (= I don’t like ...)

(2) = look after somebody
  - Alan is 85 and lives alone. He needs somebody to care for him.

take care OF ... = look after
  - Have a nice holiday. Take care of yourself! (= look after yourself)

Verb + for

ask (somebody) FOR ...
  - I wrote to the company asking them for more information about the job.
  - ‘I asked him the way to ...’, ‘She asked me my name’ (no preposition)

apply (TO a person, a company etc.) FOR a job etc.
  - I think you’d be good at this job. Why don’t you apply for it?

wait FOR ...
  - Don’t wait for me. I’ll join you later.
  - I’m not going out yet. I’m waiting for the rain to stop.

search (a person / a place / a bag etc.) FOR ...
  - I’ve searched the house for my keys, but I still can’t find them.

leave (a place) FOR another place
  - I haven’t seen her since she left (home) for the office this morning.
  - (not left to the office)

Look for and look after

look FOR ...
  - = search for, try to find
    - I’ve lost my keys. Can you help me to look for them?

look AFTER ...
  - Alan is 85 and lives alone. He needs somebody to look after him. (not look for)
  - You can borrow this book, but you must promise to look after it.
Exercises

Unit 133

133.1 Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1. I’m not going out yet. I’m waiting for the rain to stop.
2. I couldn’t find the street I was looking for, so I stopped someone to ask directions.
3. I’ve applied for a job at the factory. I don’t know if I’ll get it.
4. I’ve applied to three colleges. I hope one of them accepts me.
5. I’ve searched everywhere for John, but I haven’t been able to find him.
6. I don’t want to talk about what happened last night. Let’s forget it.
7. I don’t want to discuss what happened last night. Let’s forget it.
8. We had an interesting discussion about the problem, but we didn’t reach a decision.
9. We discussed the problem, but we didn’t reach a decision.
10. I don’t want to go out yet. I’m waiting for the post to arrive.
11. Ken and Sonia are touring Italy. They’re in Rome at the moment, but tomorrow they leave for Venice.
12. The roof of the house is in very bad condition. I think we ought to do something about it.
13. We waited for Steve for half an hour, but he never came.
14. Tomorrow morning I have to catch a plane. I’m leaving my house for the airport at 7.30.

133.2 Complete the sentences with the following verbs (in the correct form) + preposition:

apply for, ask for, do about, look for, search for, talk about, wait for

1. Police are searching for the man who escaped from prison.
2. We’re still waiting for a reply to our letter. We haven’t heard anything yet.
3. I think Ben likes his job, but he doesn’t care about it much.
4. When I’d finished my meal, I looked for the waiter to pay the bill.
5. Cathy is unemployed. She has applied for several jobs, but she hasn’t had any luck.
6. If something is wrong, why don’t you ask for something about it?
7. Linda’s car is very old, but it’s in excellent condition. She looks after it very well.
8. Diane is from Boston, but now she lives in Paris. She looks after Boston when she was 19.

133.3 Put in the correct preposition after care. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1. He’s very selfish. He doesn’t care about other people.
2. Are you hungry? Would you care for something to eat?
3. She doesn’t care about the exam. She doesn’t care whether she passes or fails.
4. Please let me borrow your camera. I promise I’ll take good care of it.
5. ‘Do you like this coat?’ ‘Not really. I don’t care about the colour.’
6. Don’t worry about the shopping. I’ll take care of that.
7. I want to have a good holiday. I don’t care about the cost.
8. I want to have a good holiday. I don’t care how much it costs.

133.4 Complete the sentences with look for or look after. Use the correct form of look (looks/looked/looking).

1. I looked for my keys, but I couldn’t find them anywhere.
2. Kate is looking for a job. I hope she finds one soon.
3. Who looked after you when you were ill?
4. I’m looking after Elizabeth. Have you seen her?
5. The car park was full, so we had to look for somewhere else to park.
6. A babysitter is somebody who looks after other people’s children.

→ Additional exercise 36 (page 323)
dream ABOUT ... (when you are asleep)
  □ I dreamt about you last night.
dream OF/ABOUT being something / doing something = imagine
  □ Do you dream of/about being rich and famous?
(l) wouldn't dream OF doing something = I would never do it
  □ ‘Don’t tell anyone what I said.’ ‘No, I wouldn’t dream of it.’ (= I would never do it)

hear ABOUT ... = be told about something
  □ Did you hear about what happened at the club on Saturday night?
hear OF ... = know that somebody/something exists
  □ ‘Who is Tom Hart?’ ‘I have no idea. I’ve never heard of him.’ (not heard from him)
hear FROM ... = receive a letter, phone call or message from somebody
  □ ‘Have you heard from Jane recently?’ ‘Yes, she phoned a few days ago.’

think ABOUT ... and think OF ...
When you think ABOUT something, you consider it, you concentrate your mind on it:
  □ I’ve thought about what you said and I’ve decided to take your advice.
  □ ‘Will you lend me the money?’ ‘I’ll think about it.’
When you think OF something, the idea comes to your mind:
  □ He told me his name, but I can’t think of it now. (not think about it)
  □ That’s a good idea. Why didn’t I think of that? (not think about that)
We also use think of when we ask or give an opinion:
  □ ‘What did you think of the film?’ ‘I didn’t think much of it.’ (= I didn’t like it much)
The difference is sometimes very small and you can use of or about:
  □ When I’m alone, I often think of (or about) you.
You can say think of or think about doing something (for possible future actions):
  □ My sister is thinking of (or about) going to Canada. (= she is considering it)

remind somebody ABOUT ... = tell somebody not to forget
  □ I’m glad you reminded me about the meeting. I’d completely forgotten about it.
remind somebody OF ... = cause somebody to remember
  □ This house reminds me of the one I lived in when I was a child.
  □ Look at this photograph of Richard. Who does he remind you of?

complain (TO somebody) ABOUT ... = say that you are not satisfied
  □ We complained to the manager of the restaurant about the food.
complain OF a pain, an illness etc. = say that you have a pain etc.
  □ We called the doctor because George was complaining of a pain in his stomach.

warn somebody ABOUT a person or thing which is bad, dangerous, unusual etc.
  □ I knew he was a strange person. I had been warned about him. (not warned of him)
  □ Vicky warned me about the traffic. She said it would be bad.
warn somebody ABOUT/OF a danger, something bad which might happen later
  □ Scientists have warned us about/of the effects of global warming.
Exercises

Unit 134

134.1 Put in the correct preposition.
1 Did you hear about what happened at the party on Saturday?
2 ‘I had a strange dream last night.’ ‘Did you? What did you dream about?’
3 Our neighbours complained about the noise we made last night.
4 Kevin was complaining about pains in his chest, so he went to the doctor.
5 I love this music. It reminds me of a warm day in spring.
6 He loves his job. He thinks of his job all the time, he dreams about it, he talks about it and I’m fed up with hearing about it.
7 I tried to remember the name of the book, but I couldn’t think of it.
8 Jackie warned me about the water. She said it wasn’t safe to drink.
9 We warned our children about the dangers of playing in the street.

134.2 Complete the sentences using the following verbs (in the correct form) + the correct preposition:

complain dream hear remind remind think think warn
1 That’s a good idea. Why didn’t I think of that?
2 Bill is never satisfied. He is always dreaming of something.
3 I can’t make a decision yet. I need time to remind you of your proposal.
4 Before you go into the house, I must remind you of the dog. He is very aggressive sometimes, so be careful.
5 She’s not a well-known singer. Not many people have heard of her.
6 a: You wouldn’t go away without telling me, would you?
    b: Of course not. I wouldn’t think of it.
7 I would have forgotten my appointment if Jane hadn’t reminded me of it.
8 Do you see that man over there? Does he remind you of anybody you know?

134.3 Complete the sentences using hear or heard + the correct preposition (about/of/from).
1 I’ve never heard of Tom Hart. Who is he?
2 ‘Did you hear about the accident last night?’ ‘Yes, Vicky told me.’
3 Jill used to phone quite often, but I haven’t heard from her for a long time now.
4 a: Have you heard of a writer called William Hudson?
    b: No, I don’t think so. What sort of writer is he?
5 Thank you for your letter. It was good to hear from you again.
6 ‘Do you want to go to the country on holiday?’ ‘Not now. Tell me later.’

134.4 Complete the sentences using think about or think of. Sometimes both about and of are possible. Use the correct form of think (think/thinking/thought).
1 You look serious. What are you thinking about?
2 I like to have time to make decisions. I like to think about things carefully.
3 I don’t know what to get Sarah for her birthday. Can you think of anything?
4 a: I’ve finished reading the book you lent me.
    b: Have you? What did you think of it? Did you like it?
5 We’re thinking of going out for a meal this evening. Would you like to come?
6 I don’t really want to go out with Tom tonight. I’ll have to think of an excuse.
7 When I was offered the job, I didn’t accept immediately. I went away and thought about it for a while. In the end I decided to take the job.
8 I don’t think much of this coffee. It’s like water.
9 Carol is very homesick. She’s always thinking of her family back home.

Additional exercise 36 (page 323)
Verb + preposition 4  of/for/from/on

Verb + of

- accuse / suspect somebody OF ...
  - Sue accused me of being selfish.
  - Some students were suspected of cheating in the exam.
- approve / disapprove OF ...
  - His parents don’t approve of what he does, but they can’t stop him.
- die OF (or FROM) an illness etc.
  - ‘What did he die of?’ ‘A heart attack.’
- consist OF ...
  - We had an enormous meal. It consisted of seven courses.

Verb + for

- pay (somebody) FOR ...
  - I didn’t have enough money to pay for the meal. (not pay the meal)
- but pay a bill / a fine / tax / rent / a sum of money etc. (no preposition)
  - I didn’t have enough money to pay the rent.
- thank / forgive somebody FOR ...
  - I’ll never forgive them for what they did.
- apologise (to somebody) FOR ...
  - When I realised I was wrong, I apologised (to them) for my mistake.
- blame somebody/something FOR ..., somebody is to blame FOR ...
  - Everybody blamed me for the accident.
  - Everybody said that I was to blame for the accident.
- blame (a problem etc.) ON ...
  - Everybody blamed the accident on me.

Verb + from

- suffer FROM an illness etc.
  - The number of people suffering from heart disease has increased.
- protect somebody/something FROM (or AGAINST) ...
  - Sun block protects the skin from the sun. (or ... against the sun.)

Verb + on

- depend / rely ON ...
  - ‘What time will you be home?’ ‘I don’t know. It depends on the traffic.’
  - You can rely on Jill. She always keeps her promises.
- You can use depend + when/where/how etc. with or without on:
  - ‘Are you going to buy it?’ ‘It depends how much it is.’ (or It depends on how much)
- live ON money/food
  - Michael’s salary is very low. It isn’t enough to live on.
- congratulate / compliment somebody ON ...
  - I congratulated her ON her success in the exam.
Exercises

135.1 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1. Sue said I was selfish. Sue accused me of being selfish.
2. The misunderstanding was my fault, so I apologised.
   I apologised.
3. Jane won the tournament, so I congratulated her.
   I congratulated Jane.
4. He has enemies, but he has a bodyguard to protect him.
   He has a bodyguard to protect him.
5. There are eleven players in a football team.
   A football team consists of eleven players.
6. Sandra eats only bread and eggs. She lives.

135.2 Complete the second sentence using for or on. These sentences all have blame.

1. Liz said that what happened was Joe's fault. Liz blamed Joe for what happened.
2. You always say everything is my fault.
   You always blame me.
3. Do you think the economic crisis is the fault of the government?
   Do you blame the government?
4. I think the increase in violent crime is the fault of television.
   I blame the increase in violent crime.

Now rewrite sentences 3 and 4 using to blame for.

5. Do you think the government is to blame for the crisis?
6. I think that television is to blame for the increase in violent crime.

135.3 Complete the sentences using the following verbs (in the correct form) + the correct preposition:

   accuse, apologise, approve, congratulate, depend, live, pay

1. His parents don't approve of what he does, but they can't stop him.
2. When you went to the theatre with Paul, who approved of the tickets?
3. It's not very pleasant when you are something you didn't do.
4. A: Are you going to the beach tomorrow?
   B: I hope so. It the weather.
5. Things are very cheap there. You can very little money.
6. When I saw David, I congratulated him passing his driving test.
7. You were very rude to Liz. Don't you think you should her?

135.4 Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1. Some students were suspected of cheating in the exam.
2. Sally is often not well. She suffers very bad headaches.
3. You know that you can rely me if you ever need any help.
4. It is terrible that some people are dying hunger while others eat too much.
5. Are you going to apologise what you did?
6. The accident was my fault, so I had to pay the repairs.
7. I didn't have enough money to pay the bill.
8. I complimented her her English. She spoke very fluently and her pronunciation was excellent.
9. She hasn't got a job. She depends her parents for money.
10. I don't know whether I'll go out tonight. It depends how I feel.
11. They wore warm clothes to protect themselves the cold.
12. The apartment consists three rooms, a kitchen and bathroom.
Verb + in

believe IN ...
- Do you believe in God? (= Do you believe that God exists?)
- I believe in saying what I think. (= I believe it is right to say what I think)

but ‘believe something’ (= believe it is true), ‘believe somebody’ (= believe they are telling the truth)
- The story can’t be true. I don’t believe it. (not believe in it)

specialise IN ...
- Helen is a lawyer. She specialises in company law.

succeed IN ...
- I hope you succeed in finding the job you want.

Verb + into

break INTO ...
- Our house was broken into a few days ago, but nothing was stolen.

crash / drive / bump / run INTO ...
- He lost control of the car and crashed into a wall.

divide / cut / split something INTO two or more parts
- The book is divided into three parts.

translate a book etc. FROM one language INTO another
- Ernest Hemingway’s books have been translated into many languages.

Verb + with

collide WITH ...
- There was an accident this morning. A bus collided with a car.

fill something WITH ... (but full of ... – see Unit 131B)
- Take this saucepan and fill it with water.

provide / supply somebody WITH ...
- The school provides all its students with books.

Verb + to

happen TO ...
- What happened to that gold watch you used to have? (= where is it now?)

invite somebody TO a party / a wedding etc.
- They only invited a few people to their wedding.

prefer one thing/person TO another
- I prefer tea to coffee

Verb + on

concentrate ON ...
- Don’t look out of the window. Concentrate on your work.

insist ON ...
- I wanted to go alone, but some friends of mine insisted on coming with me.

spend (money) ON ...
- How much do you spend on food each week?

272
Exercises

136.1 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1. There was a collision between a bus and a car.
   A bus collided ________________________________.
2. I don't mind big cities, but I prefer small towns.
   I prefer ________________________________.
3. I got all the information I needed from Jane.
   Jane provided me ________________________________.
4. This morning I bought a pair of shoes, which cost £70.
   This morning I spent ________________________________.

136.2 Complete the sentences using the following verbs (in the correct form) + the correct preposition:

believe concentrate divide drive fill happen insist invite succeed

1. I wanted to go alone, but Sue ________________________________ coming with me.
2. I haven't seen Mike for ages. I wonder what has ________________________________ him.
3. We've been ________________________________ the party, but unfortunately we can't go.
4. It's a very large house. It's ________________________________ four flats.
5. I don't ________________________________ ghosts. I think people only imagine that they see them.
6. Steve gave me an empty bucket and told me to ________________________________ it water.
7. I was driving along when the car in front of me stopped suddenly. Unfortunately I couldn't stop in time and ________________________________ the back of it.
8. Don't try and do two things together. ________________________________ one thing at a time.
9. It wasn't easy, but in the end we ________________________________ finding a solution to the problem.

136.3 Put in the correct preposition. If the sentence is already complete, leave the space empty.

1. The school provides all its students ________________________________ books.
2. A strange thing happened ________________________________ me a few days ago.
3. Mark decided to give up sport so that he could concentrate ________________________________ his studies.
4. I don't believe ________________________________ working very hard. It's not worth it.
5. My present job isn't wonderful, but I prefer it ________________________________ what I did before.
6. I hope you succeed ________________________________ getting what you want.
7. As I was coming out of the room, I collided ________________________________ somebody who was coming in.
8. There was an awful noise as the car crashed ________________________________ a tree.
9. Patrick is a photographer. He specialises ________________________________ sports photography.
10. Do you spend much money ________________________________ clothes?
11. The country is divided ________________________________ six regions.
12. I prefer travelling by train ________________________________ driving. It's much more pleasant.
13. I was amazed when Joe walked into the room. I couldn't believe ________________________________ it.
14. Somebody broke ________________________________ my car and stole the radio.
15. I was quite cold, but Tom insisted ________________________________ having the window open.
16. Some words are difficult to translate ________________________________ one language ________________________________ another.
17. What happened ________________________________ the money I lent you? What did you spend it ________________________________ ?
18. The teacher decided to split the class ________________________________ four groups.
19. I filled the tank, but unfortunately I filled it ________________________________ the wrong kind of petrol.

136.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use a preposition.

1. I wanted to go out alone, but my friend insisted ________________________________ coming with me.
2. I spend a lot of money ________________________________.
3. I saw the accident. The car crashed ________________________________.
4. Chris prefers basketball ________________________________.
5. Shakespeare's plays have been translated ________________________________.
Phrasal verbs 1  Introduction

We often use verbs with the following words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in</th>
<th>on</th>
<th>up</th>
<th>away</th>
<th>round</th>
<th>about</th>
<th>over</th>
<th>by</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>out</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>down</td>
<td>back</td>
<td>through</td>
<td>along</td>
<td>forward</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So you can say look out / get on / take off / run away etc. These are phrasal verbs.

We often use on/off/out etc. with verbs of movement. For example:

- **get on** □ The bus was full. We couldn’t get on.
- **drive off** □ A woman got into the car and drove off.
- **come back** □ Sally is leaving tomorrow and coming back on Saturday.
- **turn round** □ When I touched him on the shoulder, he turned round.

But often the second word (on/off/out etc.) gives a special meaning to the verb. For example:

- **break down** □ Sorry I’m late. The car broke down. (= the engine stopped working)
- **look out** □ Look out! There’s a car coming. (= be careful)
- **take off** □ It was my first flight. I was nervous as the plane took off. (= went into the air)
- **get on** □ How was the exam? How did you get on? (= How did you do?)
- **get by** □ My French isn’t very good, but it’s enough to get by. (= manage)

For more phrasal verbs, see Units 138–145.

Sometimes a phrasal verb is followed by a preposition. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>preposition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>run away</strong></td>
<td>from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>keep up</strong></td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>look up</strong></td>
<td>at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>look forward</strong></td>
<td>to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

□ Why did you run away from me?
□ You’re walking too fast. I can’t keep up with you.
□ We looked up at the plane as it flew above us.
□ Are you looking forward to your holiday?

Sometimes a phrasal verb has an object. Usually there are two possible positions for the object. So you can say:

I turned on the light. or I turned the light on.

If the object is a pronoun (it/them/me/him etc.), only one position is possible:

I turned it on. (not I turned on it)

Some more examples:

□ Could you fill in this form?
□ fill this form in?

*but*  They gave me a form and told me to fill it in. (not fill in it)

□ Don’t throw away this postcard.
□ throw this postcard away.

*but*  I want to keep this postcard, so don’t throw it away. (not throw away it)

□ I’m going to take off my shoes.
□ take my shoes off.

*but*  These shoes are uncomfortable. I’m going to take them off. (not take off them)

□ Don’t wake up the baby.
□ wake the baby up.

*but*  The baby is asleep. Don’t wake her up. (not wake up her)
Exercises

Unit 137

137.1 Complete each sentence using a verb from A (in the correct form) + a word from B. You can use a word more than once.

A | fly | get | go | look | sit | speak |
---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
B | away | by | down | on | out | round | up |

1 The bus was full. We couldn’t _______ get on _______.
2 I’ve been standing for the last two hours. I’m going to _____________________ for a bit.
3 A cat tried to catch the bird, but it _____________________ just in time.
4 We were trapped in the building. We couldn’t _____________________.
5 I can’t hear you very well. Can you _____________________ a little?
6 ‘Do you speak German?’ ‘Not very well, but I can _____________________.’
7 House prices are very high. They’ve _____________________ a lot in the last few years.
8 I thought there was somebody behind me, but when I _____________________, there was nobody there.

137.2 Complete the sentences using a word from A and a word from B. You can use a word more than once.

A | away | back | forward | in | up |
---|---|---|---|---|---|
B | at | through | to | with |

1 You’re walking too fast. I can’t keep _____________________ up with you.
2 My holidays are nearly over. Next week I’ll be _____________________ work.
3 We went _____________________ the top floor of the building to admire the view.
4 Are you looking _____________________ the party next week?
5 There was a bank robbery last week. The robbers got _____________________ £50,000.
6 I love to look _____________________ the stars in the sky at night.
7 I was sitting in the kitchen when suddenly a bird flew _____________________ the open window.

137.3 Complete the sentences using the following verbs + it/them/me: fill-in | get out | give back | switch on | take off | wake up

1 They gave me a form and told me to _____________________ fill it in _______.
2 I’m going to bed now. Can you _____________________ at 6.30?
3 I’ve got something in my eye and I can’t _____________________.
4 I don’t like it when people borrow things and don’t _____________________.
5 I want to use the kettle. How do I _____________________?
6 My shoes are dirty. I’d better _____________________ before going into the house.

137.4 Use your own ideas to complete the sentences. Use a noun (this newspaper etc.) or a pronoun (it/them etc.) + the word in brackets (away/up etc.).

1 Don’t throw _____________________ away this newspaper _______. I want to keep it. (away)
2 ‘Do you want this postcard?’ ‘No, you can throw _____________________ it away _______.’ (away)
3 I borrowed these books from the library. I have to take _____________________ tomorrow. (back)
4 We can turn _____________________. Nobody is watching it. (off)
5 A: How did the vase get broken?
   B: I’m afraid I knocked _____________________ while I was cleaning. (over)
6 Shh! My mother is asleep. I don’t want to wake _____________________. (up)
7 It’s quite cold. You should put _____________________ if you’re going out. (on)
8 It was only a small fire. I was able to put _____________________ quite easily. (out)
9 A: Is this hotel more expensive than when we stayed here last year?
   B: Yes, they’ve put _____________________. (up)
10 It’s a bit dark in this room. Shall I turn _____________________? (on)
Phrasal verbs 2  in/out

Compare in and out:

**in** = into a room, a building, a car etc.
- How did the thieves get in?
- Here's a key, so you can let yourself in.
- Sally walked up to the edge of the pool and dived in. (= into the water)
- I've got a new flat. I'm moving in on Friday.
- As soon as I got to the airport, I checked in.

In the same way you can say go in, come in, walk in, break in etc.

**out** = out of a room, building, a car etc.
- He just stood up and walked out.
- I had no key, so I was locked out.
- She swam up and down the pool, and then climbed out.
- Tim opened the window and looked out.
- (at a hotel) What time do we have to check out?

In the same way you can say go out, get out, move out, let somebody out etc.

Compare in and into:
- I'm moving in next week.
- I'm moving into my new flat on Friday.

Compare out and of:
- He walked out.
- He walked out of the room.

Other verbs + in

drop in / call in = visit somebody for a short time without arranging to do this
- I dropped in to see Chris on my way home.

join in = take part in an activity that is already going on
- We're playing a game. Why don't you join in?

plug in an electrical machine = connect it to the electricity supply
- The fridge isn't working because you haven't plugged it in.

fill in a form, a questionnaire etc. = write the necessary information on a form
- Please fill in the application form and send it to us by 28 February.
You can also say fill out a form.

take somebody in = deceive somebody
- The man said he was a policeman and I believed him. I was completely taken in.

Other verbs + out

eat out = eat at a restaurant, not at home
- There wasn't anything to eat at home, so we decided to eat out.

drop out of college / university / a course / a race = stop before you have completely finished a course / race etc.
- Gary went to university but dropped out after a year.

get out of something that you arranged to do = avoid doing it
- I promised I'd go to the wedding. I don't want to go, but I can't get out of it now.

cut something out (of a newspaper etc.)
- There was a beautiful picture in the magazine, so I cut it out and kept it.

leave something out = omit it, not include it
- In the sentence 'She said that she was ill', you can leave out the word 'that'.

cross something out / rub something out
- Some of the names on the list had been crossed out.
Exercises

138.1 Complete each sentence using a verb in the correct form.

1. Here's a key so that you can _________ yourself in.
2. Liz doesn't like cooking, so she _______________ out a lot.
3. Eve isn't living in this flat any more. She _______________ out a few weeks ago.
4. If you're in our part of town, you must _______________ in and see us.
5. When I _______________ in at the airport, I was told my flight would be delayed.
6. There were some advertisements in the paper that I wanted to keep, so I _______________ them out.
7. I wanted to iron some clothes, but there was nowhere to _______________ the iron in.
8. I hate _______________ in questionnaires.
9. Steve was upset because he'd been _______________ out of the team.
10. Be careful! The water's not very deep here, so don't _______________ in.
11. If you write in pencil and you make a mistake, you can _______________ it out.
12. Paul started doing a Spanish course, but he _______________ out after a few weeks.

138.2 Complete the sentences with in, into, out or out of.

1. I've got a new flat. I'm moving _______________ on Friday.
2. We checked _______________ the hotel as soon as we arrived.
3. As soon as we arrived at the hotel, we checked _______________.
4. The car stopped and the driver got _______________.
5. Thieves broke _______________ the house while we were away.
6. Why did Sarah drop _______________ college? Did she fail her exams?

138.3 Complete each sentence using a verb + in or out (of).

1. Sally walked to the edge of the pool, _______________ and swam to the other end.
2. Not all the runners finished the race. Three of them _______________.
3. I went to see Joe and Sue in their new house. They _______________ last week.
4. I've told you everything you need to know. I don't think I've _______________ anything.
5. Some people in the crowd started singing. Then a few more people _______________ and soon everybody was singing.
6. We go to restaurants a lot. We like _______________.
7. Don't be _______________ by him. If I were you, I wouldn't believe anything he says.
8. I _______________ to see Laura a few days ago. She was fine.
9. A: Can we meet tomorrow morning at ten?
   B: Probably. I'm supposed to go to another meeting, but I think I can _______________ it.

138.4 Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets in the correct form.

1. A: The fridge isn't working.
   B: That's because you haven't _______________ it in. (plug)
2. A: What do I have to do with these forms?
   B: _______________ and send them to this address. (fill)
3. A: I've made a mistake on this form.
   B: That's all right. Just _______________ and correct it. (cross)
4. A: Did you believe the story they told you?
   B: Yes, I'm afraid they completely _______________. (take)
5. A: Have you been to that new club in Bridge Street?
   B: We wanted to go there a few nights ago, but the doorman wouldn't _______________ because we weren't members. (let)
Phrasal verbs 3  out

out = not burning, not shining

go out

put out a fire / a cigarette / a light

turn out a light

blow out a candle

Suddenly all the lights in the building went out.
We managed to put the fire out.
I turned the lights out before leaving.
We don’t need the candle. You can blow it out.

work out

work out = do physical exercises

Rachel works out at the gym three times a week.

work out = develop, progress

Good luck for the future. I hope everything works out well for you.
A: Why did James leave the company?
B: Things didn’t work out. (= things didn’t work out well)

work out (for mathematical calculations)

The total bill for three people is £84.60. That works out at £28.20 each.
work something out = calculate, think about a problem and find the answer

345 × 76? I need to do this on paper. I can’t work it out in my head.

Other verbs + out

carry out an order / an experiment / a survey / an investigation / a plan etc.

Soldiers are expected to carry out orders.
An investigation into the accident will be carried out as soon as possible.

fall out (with somebody) = stop being friends

They used to be very good friends. I’m surprised to hear that they have fallen out.
David fell out with his father and left home.

find out that/what/when ... etc., find out about something = get information

The police never found out who committed the murder.
I’ve just found out that it’s Helen’s birthday today.
I called the tourist office to find out about hotels in the town.

give/hand things out = give to each person

At the end of the lecture, the speaker gave out information sheets to the audience.

point something out (to somebody) = draw attention to something

As we drove through the city, our guide pointed out all the sights.
I didn’t realise I’d made a mistake until somebody pointed it out to me.

run out (of something)

We ran out of petrol on the motorway. (= we used all our petrol)

sort something out = find a solution to, put in order

There are a few problems we need to sort out.
All these papers are mixed up. I’ll have to sort them out.

turn out to be ... / turn out good/nice etc. / turn out that ...

Nobody believed Paul at first, but he turned out to be right. (= it became clear in the end that he was right)
The weather wasn’t so good in the morning, but it turned out nice later.
I thought they knew each other, but it turned out that they’d never met.
	ry out a machine, a system, a new idea etc. = test it to see if it is OK

The company is trying out a new computer system at the moment.
Exercises

139.1 Which words can go together? Choose from the box.

a candle a cigarette a light a mess a mistake a new product an order

1 turn out a light
2 point out
3 blow out
4 carry out
5 put out
6 try out
7 sort out

139.2 Complete each sentence using a verb + out.

1 The company is trying out a new computer system at the moment.
2 Steve is very fit. He does a lot of sport and __________________________ regularly.
3 The road will be closed for two days next week while building work is __________________________ .
4 We didn’t manage to discuss everything at the meeting. We __________________________ of time.
5 You have to __________________________ the problem yourself. I can’t do it for you.
6 I phoned the station to __________________________ what time the train arrived.
7 The new drug will be __________________________ on a small group of patients.
8 I thought the two books were the same until a friend of mine __________________________ the difference.
9 They got married a few years ago but it didn’t __________________________ , and they separated.
10 There was a power cut and all the lights __________________________ .
11 We thought she was American at first, but she __________________________ to be Swedish.
12 Sometimes it __________________________ cheaper to eat in a restaurant than to cook at home.
13 I haven’t applied for the job yet. I want to __________________________ more about the company first.
14 It took the fire brigade two hours to __________________________ the fire.

139.3 For each picture, complete the sentence using a verb + out.

1 They’ve run out of petrol.
2 The man with the beard is __________________________ leaflets.
3 earlier now
4 They’ve __________________________ .
5 One of Joe’s jobs in the office is __________________________ .
6 Lisa is trying to __________________________ how __________________________ .

139.4 Complete the sentences. Each time use a verb + out.

1 A: Shall I leave the light on?
   B: No, you can __________________________ .
2 A: This recipe looks interesting.
   B: Yes, let’s __________________________ .
3 A: How much money do I owe you exactly?
   B: Just a moment. I’ll have to __________________________ .
4 A: What happened about your problem with your bank?
   B: It’s OK now. I went to see them and we __________________________ .

→ Additional exercises 37–41 (pages 323–25) 279
Phrasal verbs 4  on/off (1)

A On and off for lights, machines etc.
We say: the light is on / put the light on / leave the light on etc.
\[
\text{turn the light on/off or switch the light on/off}
\]
- Shall I leave the lights on or turn them off?
- ‘Is the heating on?’ ‘No, I switched it off.’
- We need some boiling water, so I’ll put the kettle on.
Also put on some music / a CD / a video etc.
- I haven’t listened to this CD yet. Shall I put it on?

B On and off for events etc.
\[\text{go on} = \text{happen}\]
- What’s all that noise? What’s going on? (= what’s happening)
\[\text{call something off} = \text{cancel it}\]
- The open air concert had to be called off because of the weather.
\[\text{put something off, put off doing something} = \text{delay it}\]
- The wedding has been put off until January.
- We can’t put off making a decision. We have to decide now.

C On and off for clothes etc.
\[\text{put on} \text{ clothes, glasses, make-up, a seat belt etc.}\]
- My hands were cold, so I put my gloves on.
Also put on weight = get heavier
- I’ve put on two kilograms in the last month.
\[\text{try on clothes (to see if they fit)}\]
- I tried on a jacket in the shop, but it didn’t fit me very well.
\[\text{take off clothes, glasses etc.}\]
- It was warm, so I took off my jacket.

D Off = away from a person or place
\[\text{be off (to a place)}\]
- Tomorrow I’m off to Paris / I’m off on holiday.
  (= I’m going to Paris / I’m going on holiday)
\[\text{walk off / run off / drive off / ride off / go off} \text{ (similar to walk away / run away etc.)}\]
- Diane got on her bike and rode off.
- Mark left home at the age of eighteen and went off to Canada.
\[\text{set off} = \text{start a journey}\]
- We set off very early to avoid the traffic. (= We left early)
\[\text{take off} = \text{leave the ground (for planes)}\]
- After a long delay the plane finally took off.
\[\text{see somebody off} = \text{go with them to the airport/station to say goodbye}\]
- Helen was going away. We went to the station with her to see her off.
Exercises

140.1 Complete the sentences using put on + the following:

- a CD
- the heating
- the kettle
- the light
- the oven

1. It was getting dark, so I _______________________________.
2. It was getting cold, so I _______________________________.
3. I wanted to bake a cake, so I _______________________________.
4. I wanted to make some tea, so I _______________________________.
5. I wanted to listen to some music, so I _______________________________.

140.2 Complete the sentences. Each time use a verb + on or off.

1. It was warm, so I _______________________________ my jacket.
2. What are all these people doing? What's _______________________________?
3. The weather was too bad for the plane to _______________________________, so the flight was delayed.
4. I didn't want to be disturbed, so I _______________________________ my mobile phone.
5. Rachel got into her car and _______________________________ at high speed.
6. Tim has _______________________________ weight since I last saw him. He used to be quite thin.
7. A: What time are you leaving tomorrow?
   B: I'm not sure yet, but I'd like to _______________________________ as early as possible.
8. Don't _______________________________ until tomorrow what you can do today.
9. There was going to be a strike by bus drivers, but now they have been offered more money and the strike has been _______________________________.
10. Are you cold? Shall I get you a sweater to _______________________________?
11. When I go away, I prefer to be alone at the station or airport. I don't like it when people come to _______________________________ me _______________________________.

140.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. Her hands were cold, so she _______________________________.
2. The plane _______________________________ at 10.55.
3. Maria _______________________________, but it was too big for her.
4. The match _______________________________ because of the weather.
5. Mark's parents went to the airport to _______________________________.
6. He took his sunglasses out of his pocket and _______________________________.

→ Additional exercises 37–41 (pages 323–25)
Unit 141

Phrasal verbs 5 on/off (2)

Verb + on = continue doing something

drive on / walk on / play on = continue walking/driving/playing etc.
  □ Shall we stop at this petrol station or shall we drive on to the next one?
go on = continue
  □ The party went on until 4 o'clock in the morning.
go on / carry on (doing something) = continue (doing something)
  □ We can't go on spending money like this. We'll have nothing left soon.
  □ I don't want to carry on working here. I'm going to look for another job.
Also go on with / carry on with something
  □ Don't let me disturb you. Please carry on with what you're doing.
keep on doing something = do it continuously or repeatedly
  □ He keeps on criticising me. I'm fed up with it!

Get on

got on = progress
  □ How are you getting on in your new job? (= How is it going?)
get on (with somebody) = have a good relationship
  □ Joanne and Karen don't get on. They're always arguing.
  □ Richard gets on well with his neighbours. They're all very friendly.
get on with something = continue doing something you have to do, usually after an interruption
  □ I must get on with my work. I have a lot to do.

Verb + off

doze off / drop off / nod off = fall asleep
  □ The lecture wasn't very interesting. In fact I dropped off in the middle of it.
finish something off = do the last part of something
  □ A: Have you finished painting the kitchen?
     B: Nearly. I'll finish it off tomorrow.
go off = explode
  □ A bomb went off in the city centre, but fortunately nobody was hurt.
Also an alarm can go off = ring
  □ Did you hear the alarm go off?
put somebody off (doing something) = cause somebody not to want something or to do something
  □ We wanted to go to the exhibition, but we were put off by the long queue.
  □ What put you off applying for the job? Was the salary too low?
rip somebody off = cheat somebody (informal)
  □ Did you really pay £1,000 for that painting? I think you were ripped off.
     (= you paid too much)
show off = try to impress people with your ability, your knowledge etc.
  □ Look at that boy on the bike riding with no hands. He's just showing off.
tell somebody off = speak angrily to somebody because they did something wrong
  □ Clare's mother told her off for wearing dirty shoes in the house.
Exercises

141.1 Change the underlined words. Keep the same meaning, but use a verb + on or off.

1. Did you hear the bomb explode? Did you hear the bomb go off?
2. The meeting continued longer than I expected. The meeting continued longer than I expected.
3. We didn’t stop to rest. We continued walking. We didn’t stop to rest. We continued walking.
4. I fell asleep while I was watching TV. I fell asleep while I was watching TV.
5. Gary doesn’t want to retire. He wants to continue working. Gary doesn’t want to retire. He wants to continue working.
6. The fire alarm rang in the middle of the night. The fire alarm rang in the middle of the night.
7. Martin phones me continuously. It’s very annoying. Martin phones me continuously. It’s very annoying.

141.2 Complete each sentence using a verb + on or off.

1. We can’t go on spending money like this. We’ll have nothing left soon.
2. I was standing by the car when suddenly the alarm went off.
3. I’m not ready to go home yet. I have a few things to do.
4. ‘Shall I stop the car here?’ ‘No, I’ll go on for another mile.’
5. Bill paid too much for the car he bought. I think he was taken in.
6. ‘Is Emma enjoying her course at university?’ ‘Yes, she’s doing really well.’
7. I was very tired at work today. I nearly fell asleep at my desk a couple of times.
8. Ben was纪念碑 by his boss for being late for work repeatedly.
9. I really like working with my colleagues. We all get on really well together.
10. There was a very loud noise. It sounded like a bomb exploding.
11. I nearly make the same mistake. It’s very frustrating.
12. I’ve just had a coffee break, and now I must tell the secretary what I’ve been doing.
13. Peter is always trying to impress people. He’s always telling lies.
14. We decided not to go into the museum. We were put off by the cost of tickets.

141.3 Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs (in the correct form) + on or off. Sometimes you will need other words as well:

carry finish get get get go rip tell

A: How are you getting on in your new job?
B: Fine, thanks. It’s going very well.

A: Have you written the letter you had to write?
B: I’ve started it. I’ll continue writing it in the morning.

A: We took a taxi to the airport. It cost £40.
B: £40! Normally it costs about £20. You must have been ripped off.

A: Why were you late for work this morning?
B: I overslept. My alarm clock didn’t go off.

A: How are you getting on in your interview? Do you think you’ll get the job?
B: I hope so. The interview was OK.

A: Did you stop playing tennis when it started to rain?
B: No, we carried on playing. The rain wasn’t very heavy.

A: Some children at the next table in the restaurant were behaving very badly.
B: Why didn’t their parents get off their backsides?

A: Why does Paul want to leave his job?
B: Heripp off his boss.
**Phrasal verbs 6  up/down**

**A** Compare up and down:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>put something up (on a wall etc.)</th>
<th>take something down (from a wall etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I put some pictures up on the wall.</td>
<td>I didn’t like the picture, so I took it down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick something up</td>
<td>put something down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There was a letter on the floor.</td>
<td>I stopped writing and put down my pen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I picked it up and looked at it.</td>
<td>sit down / bend down / lie down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand up</td>
<td>I bent down to tie my shoelace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alan stood up and walked out.</td>
<td>turn something down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn something up (on a wall etc.)</td>
<td>The oven is too hot. Turn it down to 150 degrees.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can’t hear the TV. Can you turn it up a bit?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**B** Knock down etc.

knock down a building / blow something down / cut something down etc.

- Some old houses were knocked down to make way for the new shopping centre.
- Why did you cut down the tree in your garden?

Also be knocked down (by a car etc.)

- A man was knocked down by a car and taken to hospital.

**C** Down = getting less

slow down = go more slowly

- You’re driving too fast. Slow down.

calm (somebody) down = become calmer, make somebody calmer

- Calm down. There’s no point in getting angry.

cut down (on something) = eat, drink or do something less often

- I’m trying to cut down on coffee. I drink far too much of it.

**D** Other verbs + down

break down = stop working (for machines, cars, relationships etc.)

- The car broke down and I had to phone for help.
- Their marriage broke down after only a few months.

close down / shut down = stop doing business

- There used to be a shop at the end of the street; it closed down a few years ago.

let somebody down = disappoint somebody because you didn’t do what they hoped

- You can always rely on Pete. He’ll never let you down.

turn somebody/something down = refuse an application, an offer etc.

- I applied for several jobs, but I was turned down for each one.
- Rachel was offered the job, but she decided to turn it down.

write something down = write something on paper because you may need the information later

- I can’t remember Tim’s address. I wrote it down, but I can’t find it.
Exercises

Unit 142

142.1 Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs (in the correct form) + up or down:
calm  let  put  take  turn  turn

1 I don't like this picture on the wall. I'm going to .......................................................... .
2 The music is too loud. Can you .......................................................... ?
3 David was very angry. I tried to .......................................................... .
4 I've bought some new curtains. Can you help me .......................................................... ?
5 I promised I would help Anna. I don't want to .......................................................... .
6 I was offered the job, but I decided I didn't want it. So I .......................................................... .

142.2 For each picture, complete the sentences using a verb + up or down. In most sentences you will need other words as well.

1 [Image 1]
   before  now

2 [Image 2]
   before  now

3 [Image 3]

4 [Image 4]

5 [Image 5]

6 [Image 6]

7 [Image 7]

8 [Image 8]

   1 There used to be a tree next to the house, but we .......................................................... .
   2 There used to be some shelves on the wall, but I .......................................................... .
   3 The ceiling was so low, he couldn't .......................................................... straight.
   4 She couldn't hear the radio very well, so she .......................................................... .
   5 While they were waiting for the bus, they .......................................................... on the ground.
   6 A few trees .......................................................... in the storm last week.
   7 Sarah gave me her phone number. I .......................................................... on a piece of paper.
   8 Liz dropped her keys, so she .......................................................... and .......................................................... .

142.3 Complete each sentence using a verb (in the correct form) + down.

1 I stopped writing and .......................................................... my pen.
2 I was really angry. It took me a long time to .......................................................... .
3 The train .......................................................... as it approached the station.
4 Sarah applied to study medicine at university, but she .......................................................... .
5 Our car is very reliable. It has never .......................................................... .
6 I need to spend less money. I'm going to .......................................................... on things I don't really need.
7 I didn't play very well. I felt that I had .......................................................... the other players in the team.
8 The shop .......................................................... because it was losing money.
9 This is a very ugly building. Many people would like it to .......................................................... .
10 I can't understand why you .......................................................... the chance of working abroad for a year. It would have been a great experience for you.
11 A: Did you see the accident? What happened exactly?
   B: A man .......................................................... by a car as he was crossing the road.
12 Peter got married when he was 20, but unfortunately the marriage .......................................................... a few years later.

Additional exercises 37-41 (pages 323-25)
Phrasal verbs 7  up (1)

**A**
go up / come up / walk up (to ...) = approach
- A man came up to me in the street and asked me for money.
catch up (with somebody), catch somebody up = move faster than somebody in front of you so that you reach them
- I'm not ready to go yet. You go on and I'll catch up with you / I'll catch you up.
keep up (with somebody) = continue at the same speed or level
- You're walking too fast. I can't keep up (with you).
- You're doing well. Keep it up!

**B**
set up an organisation, a company, a business, a system, a website etc. = start it
- The government has set up a committee to investigate the problem.
take up a hobby, a sport, an activity etc. = start doing it
- Laura took up photography a few years ago. She takes really good pictures.
fix up a meeting etc. = arrange it
- We've fixed up a meeting for next Monday.

**C**
grow up = become an adult
- Sarah was born in Ireland but grew up in England.
bring up a child = raise, look after a child
- Her parents died when she was a child and she was brought up by her grandparents.

**D**
clean up / clear up / tidy up something = make it clean, tidy etc.
- Look at this mess! Who's going to tidy up? (or tidy it up)
wash up = wash the plates, dishes etc. after a meal
- I hate washing up. (or I hate doing the washing-up.)

**E**
end up somewhere, end up doing something etc.
- There was a fight in the street and three men ended up in hospital. (= that's what happened to these men in the end)
- I couldn't find a hotel and ended up sleeping on a bench at the station. (= that's what happened to me in the end)
give up = stop trying, give something up = stop doing it
- Don't give up. Keep trying!
- Sue got bored with her job and decided to give it up. (= stop doing it)
make up something / be made up of something
- Children under 16 make up half the population of the city. (= half the population are children under 16)
- Air is made up mainly of nitrogen and oxygen. (= Air consists of ...)
take up space or time = use space or time
- Most of the space in the room was taken up by a large table.
turn up / show up = arrive, appear
- We arranged to meet Dave last night, but he didn't turn up.
use something up = use all of it so that nothing is left
- I'm going to take a few more photographs. I want to use up the rest of the film.
Exercises

143.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use three words each time, including a verb from Section A.

1. A man __________ me in the street and asked me the way to the station.

2. Sue __________ the front door of the house and rang the doorbell.

3. Tom was a long way behind the other runners, but he managed to __________ them.

4. Tanya was running too fast for Paul. He couldn’t __________ her.

143.2 Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs (in the correct form) + up:

- end- end give give grow make take take turn use wash

1. I couldn’t find a hotel and __________ sleeping on a bench at the station.

2. I’m feeling very tired now. I’ve __________ all my energy.

3. After dinner I __________ and put the dishes away.

4. People often ask children what they want to be when they __________.

5. We invited Tim to the party, but he didn’t __________.

6. Two years ago Mark __________ his studies to be a professional footballer.

7. A: Do you do any sports?
   B: Not at the moment, but I’m thinking of __________ tennis.

8. You don’t have enough determination. You __________ too easily.

9. Karen travelled a lot for a few years and __________ in Canada, where she still lives.

10. I do a lot of gardening. It __________ most of my free time.

11. There are two universities in the city, and students __________ 20 per cent of the population.

143.3 Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs + up (with any other necessary words):

- bring catch fix give go keep keep make set tidy

1. Sue got bored with her job and decided to __________.

2. I’m not ready yet. You go on and I’ll __________ you.

3. The room is in a mess. I’d better __________.

4. We expect to go away on holiday sometime in July, but we haven’t __________ yet.

5. Stephen is having problems at school. He can’t __________ the rest of the class.

6. Although I __________ in the country, I have always preferred cities.

7. Our team started the game well, but we couldn’t __________ , and in the end we lost.

8. I saw Mike at the party, so I __________ him and said hello.

9. When I was on holiday, I joined a tour group. The group __________ two Americans, three Germans, five Italians and myself.

10. Helen has her own internet website. A friend of hers helped her to __________.
Phrasal verbs 8  up (2)

**bring up** a topic etc. = introduce it in a conversation
- I don't want to hear any more about this matter. Please don't bring it up again.

**come up** = be introduced in a conversation
- Some interesting matters came up in our discussion yesterday.

**come up with** an idea, a suggestion etc. = produce an idea
- Sarah is very creative. She's always coming up with new ideas.

**make something up** = invent something that is not true
- What Kevin told you about himself wasn't true. He made it all up.

**cheer up** = be happier, cheer somebody up = make somebody feel happier
- You look so sad! Cheer up!
- Helen is depressed at the moment. What can we do to cheer her up?

**save up** for something / to do something = save money to buy something
- Dan is saving up for a trip round the world.

**clear up** = become bright (for weather)
- It was raining when I got up, but it cleared up during the morning.

**blow up** = explode, blow something up = destroy it with a bomb etc.
- The engine caught fire and blew up.
- The bridge was blown up during the war.

**tear something up** = tear it into pieces
- I didn't read the letter. I just tore it up and threw it away.

**beat somebody up** = hit someone repeatedly so that they are badly hurt
- A friend of mine was attacked and beaten up a few days ago. He was badly hurt and had to go to hospital.

**break up / split up** (with somebody) = separate
- I'm surprised to hear that Sue and Paul have split up. They seemed very happy together when I last saw them.

**do up** a coat, a shoelace, buttons etc. = fasten, tie etc.
- It's quite cold. Do up your coat before you go out.

**do up** a building, a room etc. = repair and improve it
- The kitchen looks great now that it has been done up.

**look something up** in a dictionary/encyclopaedia etc.
- If you don't know the meaning of a word, you can look it up in a dictionary.

**put up with something** = tolerate it
- We live on a busy road, so we have to put up with a lot of noise from the traffic.

**hold up** a person, a plan etc. = delay
- Don't wait for me. I don't want to hold you up.
- Plans to build a new factory have been held up because of the company's financial problems.

**mix up** people/things, get people/things mixed up = you think one is the other
- The two brothers look very similar. Many people mix them up. (or ... get them mixed up)
Exercises

144.1 Which goes with which?

1. I'm going to tear up  
2. Jane came up with  
3. Paul is always making up  
4. I think you should do up  
5. I don't think you should bring up  
6. I'm saving up for  
7. We had to put up with  

A. a new camera  
B. a lot of bad weather  
C. your jacket  
D. an interesting suggestion  
E. excuses  
F. the letter  
G. that subject

144.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. You will need two or three words each time.

1. This morning  
The weather was horrible this morning, but it's cleared up now.

2. Linda  
Linda was late because she was in the traffic.

3. They bought an old house and  
It's really nice now.

4. Pete  
Pete was really depressed. We took him out for a meal to .

144.3 Complete the sentences. Each time use a verb (in the correct form) + up. Sometimes you will need other words as well.

1. Some interesting matters came up in our discussion yesterday.
2. The ship and sank. The cause of the explosion was never discovered.
3. Two men have been arrested after a man was outside a restaurant last night. The injured man was taken to hospital.
4. 'Is Robert still going out with Tina?' 'No, they've .'
5. I put my shoes on and the shoelaces.
6. The weather is horrible this morning, isn't it? I hope it later.
7. I wanted to phone Chris, but I dialled Laura's number by mistake. I got their phone numbers .

144.4 Complete the sentences. Each time use a verb + up. Sometimes you will need other words as well.

1. Don't wait for me. I don't want to hold you up.
2. I don't know what this word means. I'll have to .
3. There's nothing we can do about the problem. We'll just have to it.
4. 'Was that story true?' 'No, I .'
5. I think we should follow Tom's suggestion. Nobody has a better plan.
6. I hate this photograph. I'm going to .
7. I'm trying to spend less money at the moment. I'm a trip to Australia.

→ Additional exercises 37-41 (pages 323-25)
Phrasal verbs 9  away/back

Compare away and back:

away = away from home
- We're going away on holiday today.
- The woman got into her car and drove away.
- I tried to take a picture of the bird, but it flew away.
- I dropped the ticket and it blew away in the wind.
- The police searched the house and took away a computer.

In the same way you can say:
- walk away, run away, look away etc.

back = back home
- We'll be back in three weeks.

back = back to a place, a person etc.
- A: I'm going out now.
- B: What time will you be back?
- After eating at a restaurant, we walked back to our hotel.
- I've still got Jane's keys. I forgot to give them back to her.
- When you've finished with that book, can you put it back on the shelf?

In the same way you can say:
- go back, come back, get back, take something back etc.

Other verbs + away

get away = escape, leave with difficulty
- We tried to catch the thief, but he managed to get away.

get away with something = do something wrong without being caught
- I parked in a no-parking zone, but I got away with it.

keep away (from ...) = don't go near
- Keep away from the edge of the pool. You might fall in.

give something away = give it to somebody else because you don't want it any more
- 'Did you sell your old computer?' 'No, I gave it away.'

put something away = put it in the place where it is kept, usually out of sight
- When the children had finished playing with their toys, they put them away.

throw something away = put it in the rubbish
- I kept the letter, but I threw away the envelope.

Other verbs + back

wave back / smile back / shout back / write back / hit somebody back
- I waved to her and she waved back.

call/phone/ring (somebody) back = return a phone call
- I can't talk to you now. I'll call you back in ten minutes.

get back to somebody = reply to them by phone etc.
- I sent him an email, but he never got back to me.

look back (on something) = think about what happened in the past
- My first job was in a travel agency. I didn't like it very much at the time but, looking back on it, I learnt a lot and it was a very useful experience.

pay back money, pay somebody back
- If you borrow money, you have to pay it back.
- Thanks for lending me the money. I'll pay you back next week.
Exercises

145.1 Complete each sentence using a verb in the correct form.
1. The woman got into her car and drove away.
2. Here's the money you need. __________________ me back when you can.
3. Don't __________________ that box away. It could be useful.
4. Jane doesn't do anything at work. I don't know how she ________________ away with it.
5. I'm going out now. I'll __________________ back at about 10.30.
6. You should think more about the future; don't __________________ back all the time.
7. Gary is very generous. He won some money in the lottery and __________________ it all away.
8. I'll __________________ back to you as soon as I have the information you need.

145.2 Complete the sentences. Each time use a verb + away or back.
1. I was away all day yesterday. I __________________ very late.
2. I haven't seen our neighbours for a while. I think they must __________________ .
3. ‘I'm going out now.’ ‘OK. What time will you __________________ _ ?’
4. A man was trying to break into a car. When he saw me, he __________________ .
5. I smiled at him, but he didn't __________________ .
6. If you cheat in the exam, you might __________________ with it. But you might get caught.
7. Be careful! That's an electric fence. __________________ from it.

145.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. She waved to him and he __________________ .
2. It was windy. I dropped a twenty-pound note and it __________________ .
3. Sue opened the letter, read it and __________________ in the envelope.
4. He tried to talk to her, but she just __________________ .
5. Ellie threw the ball to Ben and he __________________ .
6. His shoes were worn out, so he __________________ .

145.4 Complete the sentences. Use the verb in brackets + away or back.
1. A: Do you still have my keys?
   B: No. Don't you remember? I __________________ to you yesterday? (give)
2. A: Do you want this magazine?
   B: No, I've finished with it. You can __________________ . (throw)
3. A: How are your new jeans? Do they fit you OK?
   B: No, I'm going to __________________ to the shop. (take)
4. A: Here's the money you asked me to lend you.
   B: Thanks. I'll __________________ as soon as I can. (pay)
5. A: What happened to all the books you used to have?
   B: I didn't want them any more, so I __________________ . (give)
6. A: Did you phone Sarah?
   B: She wasn't there. I left a message asking her to __________________ . (call)
1.1 Regular verbs

If a verb is regular, the past simple and past participle end in -ed. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>clean</th>
<th>finish</th>
<th>use</th>
<th>paint</th>
<th>stop</th>
<th>carry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past simple</td>
<td>cleaned</td>
<td>finished</td>
<td>used</td>
<td>painted</td>
<td>stopped</td>
<td>carried</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For spelling rules, see Appendix 6.

For the past simple (I cleaned / they finished / she carried etc.), see Unit 5.

We use the past participle to make the perfect tenses and all the passive forms.

*Perfect tenses (have/has/had cleaned):*
  - I have cleaned the windows. (*present perfect – see Units 7–8*)
  - They were still working. They hadn’t finished. (*past perfect – see Unit 15*)

*Passive (is cleaned / was cleaned etc.):*
  - He was carried out of the room. (*past simple passive*)
  - This gate has just been painted. (*present perfect passive*)

  see Units 42–44

1.2 Irregular verbs

When the past simple and past participle do not end in -ed (for example, I saw / I have seen), the verb is irregular.

With some irregular verbs, all three forms (infinitive, past simple and past participle) are the same. For example, hit:

  - Don’t hit me. (*infinitive*)
  - Somebody hit me as I came into the room. (*past simple*)
  - I’ve never hit anybody in my life. (*past participle – present perfect*)
  - George was hit on the head by a stone. (*past participle – passive*)

With other irregular verbs, the past simple is the same as the past participle (but different from the infinitive). For example, tell → told:

  - Can you tell me what to do? (*infinitive*)
  - She told me to come back the next day. (*past simple*)
  - Have you told anybody about your new job? (*past participle – present perfect*)
  - I was told to come back the next day. (*past participle – passive*)

With other irregular verbs, all three forms are different. For example, wake → woke/woken:

  - I’ll wake you up. (*infinitive*)
  - I woke up in the middle of the night. (past simple)
  - The baby has woken up. (*past participle – present perfect*)
  - I was woken up by a loud noise. (*past participle – passive*)

1.3 The following verbs can be regular or irregular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>burn</th>
<th>→</th>
<th>burned</th>
<th>or</th>
<th>burnt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>dreamed</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>dreamt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lean</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>leaned</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>leant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>learned</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>learnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>smell</th>
<th>→</th>
<th>smelled</th>
<th>or</th>
<th>smelt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>spell</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>spelled</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>spelt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spill</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>spilled</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>spilt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spoil</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>spoiled</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>spoilt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* pronunciation

So you can say:

  - I leant out of the window. or I leaned out of the window.
  - The dinner has been spoiled. or The dinner has been spoilt.

In British English the irregular form (burnt/learnt etc.) is more usual. For American English, see Appendix 7.
### List of irregular verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bend</td>
<td>bent</td>
<td>bent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bet</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burst</td>
<td>burst</td>
<td>burst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creep</td>
<td>crept</td>
<td>crept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal</td>
<td>dealt</td>
<td>dealt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dig</td>
<td>dug</td>
<td>dug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feed</td>
<td>fed</td>
<td>fed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flee</td>
<td>fled</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forbid</td>
<td>forbad</td>
<td>forbidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forgive</td>
<td>forgave</td>
<td>forgiven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>froze</td>
<td>frozen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang</td>
<td>hung</td>
<td>hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kneel</td>
<td>knelt</td>
<td>knelt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lay</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td>laid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>led</td>
<td>led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light</td>
<td>lit</td>
<td>lit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td>meant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read [red]*</td>
<td>read [red]*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>ridden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>rung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rise</td>
<td>rose</td>
<td>risen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seek</td>
<td>sought</td>
<td>sought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set</td>
<td>set</td>
<td>set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sew</td>
<td>sewed</td>
<td>sewn/sewed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shake</td>
<td>shook</td>
<td>shaken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shine</td>
<td>shine</td>
<td>shine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>shot</td>
<td>shot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>shown/showed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shrink</td>
<td>shrank</td>
<td>shrunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sink</td>
<td>sank</td>
<td>sunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slide</td>
<td>slid</td>
<td>slid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spit</td>
<td>spat</td>
<td>spat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>split</td>
<td>split</td>
<td>split</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spread</td>
<td>spread</td>
<td>spread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spring</td>
<td>sprung</td>
<td>sprung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stick</td>
<td>stuck</td>
<td>stuck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sting</td>
<td>stung</td>
<td>stung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stink</td>
<td>stank</td>
<td>stank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strike</td>
<td>struck</td>
<td>struck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swear</td>
<td>swore</td>
<td>sworn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweep</td>
<td>swept</td>
<td>swept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>sworn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swing</td>
<td>swung</td>
<td>swung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear</td>
<td>tore</td>
<td>torn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake</td>
<td>woke</td>
<td>woken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>worn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weep</td>
<td>wept</td>
<td>wept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* pronunciation
## Present and past tenses

| Present simple | Continuous
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I do</strong></td>
<td><strong>I am doing</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>present continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ann often plays tennis.</td>
<td>‘Where’s Ann?’ ‘She’s playing tennis.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I work in a bank, but I don’t enjoy it much.</td>
<td>Please don’t disturb me now. I’m working.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you like parties?</td>
<td>Hello. Are you enjoying the party?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It doesn’t rain so much in summer.</td>
<td>It isn’t raining at the moment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present perfect simple</th>
<th>Present perfect continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I have done</strong></td>
<td><strong>I have been doing</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>present continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ann has played tennis many times.</td>
<td>Ann is tired. She has been playing tennis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ve lost my key. Have you seen it anywhere?</td>
<td>You’re out of breath. Have you been running?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How long have you and Chris known each other?</td>
<td>How long have you been learning English?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: Is it still raining?</td>
<td>It’s still raining. It has been raining all day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: No, it has stopped.</td>
<td>I haven’t been feeling well recently. Perhaps I should go to the doctor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The house is dirty. I haven’t cleaned it for weeks.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past simple</th>
<th>Past continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I did</strong></td>
<td><strong>I was doing</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>past continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ann played tennis yesterday afternoon.</td>
<td>I saw Ann at the sports centre yesterday. She was playing tennis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I lost my key a few days ago.</td>
<td>I dropped my key when I was trying to open the door.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There was a film on TV last night, but we didn’t watch it.</td>
<td>The television was on, but we weren’t watching it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What did you do when you finished work yesterday?</td>
<td>What were you doing at this time yesterday?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past perfect</th>
<th>Past perfect continuous</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I had done</strong></td>
<td><strong>I had been doing</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>past perfect continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It wasn’t her first game of tennis. She had played many times before.</td>
<td>Ann was tired yesterday evening because she had been playing tennis in the afternoon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They couldn’t get into the house because they had lost the key.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The house was dirty because I hadn’t cleaned it for weeks.</td>
<td>George decided to go to the doctor because he hadn’t been feeling well.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the passive, see Units 42–44.
Appendix 3
The future

3.1 List of future forms:

- I'm leaving tomorrow.
- My train leaves at 9.30.
- I'm going to leave tomorrow.
- I'll leave tomorrow.
- I'll be leaving tomorrow.
- I'll have left by this time tomorrow.
- I hope to see you before I leave tomorrow.

| present continuous | (→ Unit 19A) |
| present simple | (→ Unit 19B) |
| (be) going to | (→ Units 20, 23) |
| will | (→ Units 21–23) |
| future continuous | (→ Unit 24) |
| future perfect | (→ Unit 24) |
| present simple | (→ Unit 25) |

3.2 Future actions

We use the present continuous (I'm doing) for arrangements:
- I'm leaving tomorrow. I've got my plane ticket. (already planned and arranged)
- 'When are they getting married?' 'On 24 July.'

We use the present simple (I leave / it leaves etc.) for timetables, programmes etc.:
- My train leaves at 11.30. (according to the timetable)
- What time does the film begin?

We use (be) going to ... to say what somebody has already decided to do:
- I've decided not to stay here any longer. I'm going to leave tomorrow. (or I'm leaving tomorrow.)
- 'Your shoes are dirty.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to clean them.'

We use will ('ll) when we decide or agree to do something at the time of speaking:
- A: I don't want you to stay here any longer.
  B: OK. I'll leave tomorrow. (B decides this at the time of speaking)
- That bag looks heavy. I'll help you with it.
- I won't tell anybody what happened. I promise. (won't = will not)

3.3 Future happenings and situations

Most often we use will to talk about future happenings ('something will happen') or situations ('something will be'):
- I don't think John is happy at work. I think he'll leave soon.
- This time next year I'll be in Japan. Where will you be?

We use (be) going to when the situation now shows what is going to happen in the future:
- Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain. (you can see the clouds now)

3.4 Future continuous and future perfect

Will be (doing = will be in the middle of (doing something):
- This time next week I'll be on holiday. I'll be lying on a beach or swimming in the sea.

We also use will be -ing for future actions (see Unit 24C):
- What time will you be leaving tomorrow?

We use will have (done) to say that something will already be complete before a time in the future:
- I won't be here this time tomorrow. I'll have already left.

3.5 We use the present (not will) after when/if/while/before etc. (see Unit 25):
- I hope to see you before I leave tomorrow. (not before I will leave)
- When you are in London again, come and see us. (not When you will be)
- If we don't hurry, we'll be late.
## Modal verbs (can/could/will/would etc.)

This appendix is a summary of modal verbs. For more information, see Units 21–41.

### 4.1 Compare can/could etc. for actions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modals</th>
<th>Sentence 1</th>
<th>Sentence 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>can</strong></td>
<td>I can go out tonight. (= there is nothing to stop me)</td>
<td>I can't go out tonight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>could</strong></td>
<td>I could go out tonight, but I'm not very keen.</td>
<td>I couldn't go out last night. (= I wasn't able)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>can or may</strong></td>
<td>Can I go out tonight? (= do you allow me)</td>
<td>May I go out tonight?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>will/won’t</strong></td>
<td>I think I’ll go out tonight.</td>
<td>I promise I won’t go out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>would</strong></td>
<td>I would go out tonight, but I have too much to do.</td>
<td>I promised I wouldn’t go out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>shall</strong></td>
<td>Shall I go out tonight? (do you think it is a good idea?)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>should or ought to</strong></td>
<td>I should go out tonight. (= it would be a good thing to do)</td>
<td>I ought to go out tonight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>must</strong></td>
<td>I must go out tonight. (= it is necessary)</td>
<td>I mustn’t go out tonight. (= it is necessary that I do not go out)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>needn’t</strong></td>
<td>I needn’t go out tonight. (= it is not necessary)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compare could have ... / would have ... etc.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modals</th>
<th>Sentence 1</th>
<th>Sentence 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>could</strong></td>
<td>I could have gone out last night, but I decided to stay at home.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>would</strong></td>
<td>I would have gone out last night, but I had too much to do.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>should or ought to</strong></td>
<td>I should have gone out last night. I'm sorry I didn't.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>must</strong></td>
<td>I must have gone out last night. (= it is necessary that I do not go out)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>needn’t</strong></td>
<td>I needn’t have gone out last night. (= I went out, but it was not necessary)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.2 We use will/would/may etc. to say whether something is possible, impossible, probable, certain etc. Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modals</th>
<th>Sentence 1</th>
<th>Sentence 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>will</strong></td>
<td>'What time will she be here?' 'She'll be here soon.'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>would</strong></td>
<td>She would be here now, but she's been delayed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>should or ought to</strong></td>
<td>She should or ought to be here soon. (= I expect she will be here soon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>may or might</strong></td>
<td>She may or might be here now. I'm not sure. (= it's possible that she is here)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>must</strong></td>
<td>She must be here. I saw her come in.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>can’t</strong></td>
<td>She can't possibly be here. I know for certain that she's away on holiday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compare would have ... / should have ... etc.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modals</th>
<th>Sentence 1</th>
<th>Sentence 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>will</strong></td>
<td>She will have arrived by now. (= before now)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>would</strong></td>
<td>She would have arrived earlier, but she was delayed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>should or ought to</strong></td>
<td>I wonder where she is. She should or ought to have arrived by now.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>may or might</strong></td>
<td>She may or might have arrived. I'm not sure. (= it's possible that she has arrived)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>must</strong></td>
<td>She must have arrived by now. (= I'm sure - there is no other possibility)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>can’t</strong></td>
<td>She can't possibly have arrived yet. It's much too early. (= it's impossible)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix 5

Short forms (I’m / you’ve / didn’t etc.)

5.1 In spoken English we usually say I’m / you’ve / didn’t etc. (short forms or contractions) rather than I am / you have / did not etc. We also use these short forms in informal writing (for example, a letter or message to a friend).

When we write short forms, we use an apostrophe (’) for the missing letter(s):

I’m = I am  you’ve = you have  didn’t = did not

5.2 List of short forms:

| ‘m = am | I’m | he’s | she’s | it’s |
| ‘s = is or has | you’re | we’re | they’re |
| ‘re = are | I’ve | you’ve | we’ve | they’ve |
| ‘ve = have | I’ll | he’ll | she’ll | you’ll | we’ll | they’ll |
| ‘ll = will | I’d | he’d | she’d | you’d | we’d | they’d |

’s can be is or has:

☐ She’s ill. (= She is ill.)
☐ She’s gone away. (= She has gone)

*but let’s = let us:

☐ Let’s go now. (= Let us go)

’d can be would or had:

☐ I’d see a doctor if I were you. (= I would see)
☐ I’d never seen her before. (= I had never seen)

We use some of these short forms (especially ‘s) after question words (who/what etc.) and after that/there/here:

☐ who’s what’s where’s how’s that’s there’s here’s who’ll there’ll who’d
☐ Who’s that woman over there? (= who is)
☐ What’s happened? (= what has)
☐ Do you think there’ll be many people at the party? (= there will)

We also use short forms (especially ‘s) after a noun:

☐ Catherine’s going out tonight. (= Catherine is)
☐ My best friend’s just got married. (= My best friend has)

You cannot use ‘m / ‘s / ‘re / ‘ve / ‘ll / ‘d at the end of a sentence (because the verb is stressed in this position):

☐ ‘Are you tired?’ ‘Yes, I am.’ (not Yes, I’m.)
☐ Do you know where she is? (not Do you know where she’s?)

5.3 Negative short forms

| isn’t (= is not) | don’t (= do not) | haven’t (= have not) |
| aren’t (= are not) | doesn’t (= does not) | hasn’t (= has not) |
| wasn’t (= was not) | didn’t (= did not) | hadn’t (= had not) |
| weren’t (= were not) | couldn’t (= could not) | mustn’t (= must not) |
| can’t (= cannot) | wouldn’t (= would not) | needn’t (= need not) |
| won’t (= will not) | shouldn’t (= should not) | daren’t (= dare not) |

Negative short forms for is and are can be:

he isn’t / she isn’t / it isn’t  or  he’s not / she’s not / it’s not

you aren’t / we aren’t / they aren’t  or  you’re not / we’re not / they’re not
6.1 Nouns, verbs and adjectives can have the following endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun + -s/-es (plural)</th>
<th>books</th>
<th>ideas</th>
<th>matches</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>verb + -s/-es (after he/she/it)</td>
<td>works</td>
<td>enjoys</td>
<td>washes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + -ing</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>enjoying</td>
<td>washing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb + -ed</td>
<td>worked</td>
<td>enjoyed</td>
<td>washed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjective + -er (comparative)</td>
<td>cheaper</td>
<td>quicker</td>
<td>brighter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjective + -est (superlative)</td>
<td>cheapest</td>
<td>quickest</td>
<td>brightest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjective + -ly (adverb)</td>
<td>cheaply</td>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>brightly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When we use these endings, there are sometimes changes in spelling. These changes are listed below.

6.2 Nouns and verbs + -s/-es

The ending is -es when the word ends in -s/-ss/-sh/-ch/-x:

- bus/buses
- miss/misses
- wash/washes
- match/matches
- search/searches
- box/boxes

Note also:

- potato/potatoes
- tomato/tomatoes
- do/does
- go/goes

6.3 Words ending in -y (baby, carry, easy etc.)

If a word ends in a *consonant* + y (-by/-ry/-sy/-vy etc.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>y changes to i before the ending -s:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baby/babies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurry/hurries</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>y changes to i before the ending -ed:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hurry/hurried</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>y changes to i before the endings -er and -est:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>easy/easiest/heavier/heaviest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>y changes to i before the ending -ly:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>easy/easily/heavy/heavily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

y does not change before -ing:

- hurrying
- studying
- applying
- trying

y does not change if the word ends in a *vowel* + y (-ay/-ey/-oy/-uy):

- play/plays/played
- monkey/monkeys
- enjoy/enjoys/enjoyed
- buy/buys

An exception is: day/daily

Note also: pay/paid lay/laid say/said

6.4 Verbs ending in -ie (die, lie, tie)

If a verb ends in -ie, ie changes to y before the ending -ing:

- die/dying
- lie/lying
- tie/tying

---

*a e i o u* are *vowel* letters.

The other letters (b c d f g etc.) are *consonant* letters.
6.5 Words ending in -e (hope, dance, wide etc.)

Verbs
If a verb ends in -e, we leave out e before the ending -ing:
  hope/hoping smile/smiling dance/dancing confuse/confusing

Exceptions are be/being
and verbs ending in -ee:
  see/seeing agree/agreeing

If a verb ends in -e, we add -d for the past (of regular verbs):
  hope/hoped smile/smiled dance/danced confuse/confused

Adjectives and adverbs
If an adjective ends in -e, we add -r and -st for the comparative and superlative:
  wide/wider/widest late/later/latest large/larger/largest

If an adjective ends in -e, we keep e before -ly in the adverb:
  polite/politely extreme/extremely absolute/absolutely

If an adjective ends in -le (simple, terrible etc.), the adverb ending is -ply, -bly etc.:
  simple/simply terrible/terribly reasonable/reasonably

6.6 Doubling consonants (stop/stopping/stopped, wet/wetter/wettest etc.)

Sometimes a word ends in *vowel + consonant*. For example:
  stop plan rub big wet thin prefer regret

Before the endings -ing/-ed/-er/-est, we double the consonant at the end. So p → pp,
  n → nn etc. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>doubled consonant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td>p → pp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan</td>
<td>n → nn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rub</td>
<td>b → bb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>g → gg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wet</td>
<td>t → tt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thin</td>
<td>n → nn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td>stopping stopped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan</td>
<td>planning planned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rub</td>
<td>rubbing rubbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>bigger biggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wet</td>
<td>wetter wettest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thin</td>
<td>thinner thinnest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the word has more than one syllable (*prefer, begin* etc.), we double the consonant at the end
only if the final syllable is stressed:
  prefer / preferring / preferred
  regret / regretting / regretted

If the final syllable is not stressed, we do *not* double the final consonant:
  visit / visiting / visited
  happen / happening / happened

In British English, verbs ending in -l have -ll- before -ing and -ed whether the final syllable is
stressed or not:
  travel / travelling / travelled
cancel / cancelling / cancelled

For American spelling, see Appendix 7.

Note that
we do *not* double the final consonant if the word ends in *two* consonants (-rt, -lp, -ng etc.):
  start / starting / started
  help / helping / helped
  long / longer / longest

we do *not* double the final consonant if there are *two* vowel letters before it (-oil, -eed etc.):
  boil / boiling / boiled
  need / needing / needed
  cheap / cheaper / cheapest
  loud / louder / loudest
  quiet / quieter / quietest

we do *not* double y or w at the end of words. (At the end of words y and w are not
consonants.)
  stay / staying / stayed
  grow / growing
  new / newer / newest
There are a few grammatical differences between British English and American English:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>BRITISH</th>
<th>AMERICAN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7A–B</td>
<td>The <em>present perfect</em> is used for an action in the past with a result now:</td>
<td>The <em>present perfect OR past simple</em> can be used:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13A</td>
<td>□ I've lost my key. <em>Have you seen it?</em></td>
<td>□ I've lost my key. <em>Have you seen it?</em> or I lost my key. Did you see it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ Sally isn’t here. She’s gone out.</td>
<td>□ Sally isn’t here. She’s gone out. She went out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The <em>present perfect</em> is used with <em>just, already and yet:</em></td>
<td>The <em>present perfect OR past simple</em> can be used:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ I’m not hungry. I’ve just <em>had</em> lunch.</td>
<td>□ I’m not hungry. I’ve just <em>had lunch</em>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|        | □ A: What time is Mark leaving?  
  B: He has already left.                                                                                                                                                                                                 | □ A: What time is Mark leaving?  
  B: He has already left.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|        | □ **Have you finished** your work yet?                                                                                                                                                                  | □ **Have you finished** your work yet? or **Did you finish** your work yet?                                                                                                                           |
| 17C    | British speakers usually say:                                                                                                                                                                          | American speakers say:                                                                                                                                                                               |
|        | *have a bath*    *have a shower*                                                                                                                                                                       | *take a bath*    *take a shower*                                                                                                                                                                       |
|        | *have a break*    *have a holiday*                                                                                                                                                                       | *take a break*    *take a vacation*                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 21D    | Will or *shall* can be used with *I/we:*                                                                                                                                                                 | Shall is unusual:                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 22D    | □ I will/shall be late this evening.  
  *Should I ... ? and shall we ... ?* are used to ask for advice etc.:                                                                                     | □ I will be late this evening.  
  *Should I ... ? and should we ... ?* are more usual to ask for advice etc.:                                                                 | |
|        | □ Which way shall we go?                                                                                                                                                                                  | □ Which way *should we go?*                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 28     | British speakers use *can’t* to say they believe something is not probable:                                                                                                                               | American speakers use **must not** in this situation:                                                                                                                                                 |
|        | □ Sue hasn’t contacted me. She can’t have got my message.                                                                                                                                               | □ Sue hasn’t contacted me. She **must not** have gotten my message.                                                                                                                                    |
| 32     | You can use *needn’t* or *don’t need to:*                                                                                                                                                               | Needn’t is unusual. The usual form is don’t need to:                                                                                                                                                 |
|        | □ We needn’t hurry.  
  or We **don’t need** to hurry.                                                                                                                                                  | □ We don’t need to hurry.                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 34A–B  | After demand, insist etc. you can use *should:*                                                                                                                                                         | The *subjunctive* is normally used. *Should* is unusual after demand, insist etc.:                                                                                                                    |
|        | □ I demanded that he *should* apologise.  
  We insisted that something *should be* done about the problem.                                                                                          | □ I demanded that he *apologize.*                                                                                                                                                                    |
|        | □ We insisted that something *be* done about the problem.                                                                                                                                               | □ We insisted that something *be* done about the problem.                                                                                                                                             |
| 51B    | British speakers generally use *Have you? / Isn’t she? etc.*                                                                                                                                             | American speakers generally use *You have? / She isn’t? etc.*                                                                                                                                       |
|        | □ A: Liz isn’t feeling well.  
  B: *Isn’t she? What’s wrong with her?*                                                                                                                             | □ A: Liz isn’t feeling well.  
  B: *She isn’t? What’s wrong with her?*                                                                                                                                 |
| 70B    | **Accommodation** is usually uncountable:                                                                                                                                                              | **Accommodation** can be countable:                                                                                                                                                                    |
|        | □ There isn’t enough accommodation.                                                                                                                                                                     | □ There aren’t enough **accommodations.**                                                                                                                                                             |

* Many verbs ending in -ise in British English (apologise/organise/specialise etc.) are spelt with -ize (apologize/organize/specialize etc.) in American English.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>BRITISH</th>
<th>AMERICAN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>74B</td>
<td><strong>BRITISH</strong></td>
<td><strong>AMERICAN</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to/in hospital (without the):</td>
<td>to/in the hospital:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ Three people were injured and taken to hospital.</td>
<td>□ Three people were injured and taken to the hospital.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79C</td>
<td>Nouns like government/team/family etc. can have a singular or plural verb:</td>
<td>These nouns normally take a singular verb in American English:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ The team is/are playing well.</td>
<td>□ The team is playing well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121B</td>
<td>at the weekend / at weekends:</td>
<td>on the weekend / on weekends:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ Will you be here at the weekend?</td>
<td>□ Will you be here on the weekend?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>124D</td>
<td>at the front / at the back (of a group etc.):</td>
<td>in the front / in the back (of a group etc.):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ Let’s sit at the front (of the cinema).</td>
<td>□ Let’s sit in the front (of the movie theater).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131C</td>
<td><strong>different from</strong> or <strong>different to:</strong></td>
<td><strong>different from</strong> or <strong>different than:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ It was different from/to what I’d expected.</td>
<td>□ It was different from/than what I’d expected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132A</td>
<td>write to somebody:</td>
<td>write (to) somebody (with or without to):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ Please write to me soon.</td>
<td>□ Please write (to) me soon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>137A</td>
<td>British speakers use both round and around:</td>
<td>American speakers use around (not usually ‘round’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ He turned round. or</td>
<td>□ He turned around.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He turned around.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>137C</td>
<td>British speakers use both fill in and fill out:</td>
<td>American speakers use fill out:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ Can you fill in this form? or</td>
<td>□ Can you fill out this form?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can you fill out this form?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141B</td>
<td><strong>get on</strong> = progress</td>
<td>American speakers do not use get on in this way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ How are you getting on in your new job?</td>
<td>get along (with somebody):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>get on</strong> (with somebody):</td>
<td>□ Richard gets along well with his new neighbors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ Richard gets on well with his new neighbours.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144D</td>
<td>do up a room etc. :</td>
<td>do over a room etc. :</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>□ The kitchen looks great now that it has been done up.</td>
<td>□ The kitchen looks great now that it has been done over.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Appendix 1.3**

The verbs in this section (burn, spell etc.) can be regular or irregular (burned or burnt, spelled or spelt etc.).

The past participle of get is got:

□ Your English has got much better. (= has become much better)

**Have got** is also an alternative to have:

□ I’ve got two brothers. (= I have two brothers.)

**6.6**

British spelling:

- travel → travelling / travelled
- cancel → cancelling / cancelled

**AMERICAN**

The verbs in this section are normally regular (burned, spelled etc.).

The past participle of get is gotten:

□ Your English has gotten much better.

**Have got** = have (as in British English):

□ I’ve got two brothers.

American spelling:

- travel → traveling / traveled
- cancel → canceling / canceled
Present and past  

**Units 1–6, Appendix 2**

1. Put the verb into the correct form: present simple (I do), present continuous (I am doing), past simple (I did) or past continuous (I was doing).

1. We can go out now. It **isn’t raining** (not / rain) any more.
2. Catherine **was waiting** (wait) for me when I **arrived** (arrive).
3. I **get** (get) hungry. Let’s go and have something to eat.
4. What **you / do** (you / do) in your spare time? Do you have any hobbies?
5. The weather was horrible when we **arrived** (arrive). It was cold and it **rained** (rain) hard.
6. Louise usually **phones** (phone) me on Fridays, but she **phone** (phone) last Friday.
7. A: When I last saw you, you **thought** (think) of moving to a new flat.
   B: That’s right, but in the end I **decided** (decide) to stay where I was.
8. Why **look** (you / look) at me like that? What’s the matter?
9. It’s usually dry here at this time of the year. It **rained** (not / rain) much.
10. The phone **rang** (ring) three times while we **had** (have) dinner last night.
11. Linda was busy when we **went** (go) to see her yesterday. She had an exam today and she **was preparing** (prepare) for it. We **not / wanted** (not / want) to disturb her, so we **not / stayed** (not / stay) very long.
12. When I first **believed** (believe) that Tom the news, he **told** (tell) Tom the news, he **not / believed** (not / believe) me. He **asked** (ask) me to let him tell the story.
2 Which is correct?

1 Everything is going well. We didn't have / haven't had any problems so far. (haven't had is correct)
2 Lisa didn't go / hasn't gone to work yesterday. She wasn't feeling well.
3 Look! That man over there wears / is wearing the same sweater as you.
4 Your son is much taller than when I last saw him. He grew / has grown a lot.
5 I still don't know what to do. I didn't decide / haven't decided yet.
6 I wonder why Jim is / is being so nice to me today. He isn't usually like that.
7 Jane had a book open in front of her, but she didn't read / wasn't reading it.
8 I wasn't very busy. I didn't have / wasn't having much to do.
9 It begins / It's beginning to get dark. Shall I turn on the light?
10 After leaving school, Tim got / has got a job in a factory.
11 When Sue heard the news, she wasn't / hasn't been very pleased.
12 This is a nice restaurant, isn't it? Is this the first time you are / you've been here?
13 I need a new job. I'm doing / I've been doing the same job for too long.
14 'Anna has gone out.' 'Oh, has she? What time did she go / has she gone?'
15 'You look tired.' 'Yes, I've played / I've been playing basketball.'
16 Where are you coming / do you come from? Are you American?
17 I'd like to see Tina again. It's a long time since I saw her / that I didn't see her.
18 Robert and Maria have been married since 20 years / for 20 years.

3 Complete each question using a suitable verb.

1 A: I'm looking for Paul. Have you seen him?
   B: Yes, he was here a moment ago.
2 A: Why did you go to bed so early last night?
   B: I was feeling very tired.
3 A: Where ........................................... ?
   B: Just to the post box. I want to post these letters. I'll be back in a few minutes.
4 A: ........................................................ television every evening?
   B: No, only if there's something special on.
5 A: Your house is very beautiful. How long ........................................... here?
   B: Nearly ten years.
6 A: How was your holiday? ........................................... a nice time?
   B: Yes, thanks. It was great.
7 A: ........................................... Julie recently?
   B: Yes, I met her a few days ago.
8 A: Can you describe the woman you saw? What ........................................... ?
   B: A red sweater and black jeans.
9 A: I'm sorry to keep you waiting. ........................................... long?
   B: No, only about ten minutes.
10 A: How long ........................................... you to get to work in the morning?
    B: Usually about 45 minutes. It depends on the traffic.
11 A: ........................................... with that magazine yet?
    B: No, I'm still reading it. I won't be long.
12 A: ........................................... to the United States?
    B: No, never, but I went to Canada a few years ago.
Additional exercises

4 Use your own ideas to complete B's sentences.

1 A: What's the new restaurant like? Is it good?
   B: I've no idea. I've never been there.

2 A: How well do you know Bill?
   B: Very well. We've known each other since we were children.

3 A: Did you enjoy your holiday?
   B: Yes, it was really good. It's the best holiday I've ever had.

4 A: Is David still here?
   B: No, I'm afraid he isn't. He left about ten minutes ago.

5 A: I like your suit. I haven't seen it before.
   B: It's new. It's the first time I've worn it.

6 A: How did you cut your knee?
   B: I slipped and fell when I was playing tennis.

7 A: Do you ever go swimming?
   B: Not these days. I haven't been swimming for a long time.

8 A: How often do you go to the cinema?
   B: Very rarely. It's nearly a year since I last went.

9 A: I've bought some new shoes. Do you like them?
   B: Yes, they're very nice. Where did you buy them?

---

Present and past

Units 1–17, 110, Appendix 2

5 Put the verb into the correct form: past simple (I did), past continuous (I was doing), past perfect (I had done) or past perfect continuous (I had been doing).

1

Yesterday afternoon Sarah went (go) to the station to meet Paul. When she got (get) there, Paul was already / wait) for her. His train arrived (arrive) early.

2

When I got home, Bill was lying (lie) on the sofa. The television was on, but he was not / watching (not / watch) it. He was fast asleep and was snoring (snore) loudly. I turned (turn) the television off and just then he woke (wake) up.
Additional exercises

3  
Last night I ___________________________ (just / go) to bed and ___________________________ (read) a book when suddenly I ___________________________ (hear) a noise. I ___________________________ (get) up to see what it was, but I ___________________________ (not / see) anything, so I ___________________________ (go) back to bed.

4  
Lisa had to go to New York last week, but she almost ___________________________ (miss) the plane. She ___________________________ (stand) in the queue at the check-in desk when she suddenly ___________________________ (realise) that she ___________________________ (leave) her passport at home. Fortunately she lives near the airport, so she ___________________________ (have) time to take a taxi home to get it. She ___________________________ (get) back to the airport just in time for her flight.

5  
I ___________________________ (meet) Peter and Lucy yesterday as I ___________________________ (walk) through the park. They ___________________________ (be) to the Sports Centre where they ___________________________ (play) tennis. They ___________________________ (go) to a café and ___________________________ (invite) me to join them, but I ___________________________ (not / have) time.

6  
Make sentences from the words in brackets. Put the verb into the correct form: present perfect (I have done), present perfect continuous (I have been doing), past perfect (I had done) or past perfect continuous (I had been doing).

1  Amanda is sitting on the ground. She's out of breath.  
   (she / run) She has been running.

2  Where's my bag? I left it under this chair.  
   (somebody / take / it)

3  We were all surprised when Jenny and Andy got married last year.  
   (they / only / know / each other / a few weeks)

4  It's still raining. I wish it would stop.  
   (it / rain / all day)

5  Suddenly I woke up. I was confused and didn’t know where I was.  
   (I / dream)
6 I wasn’t hungry at lunchtime, so I didn’t have anything to eat.
   (I / have / a big breakfast)

7 Every year Robert and Tina spend a few days at the same hotel by the sea.
   (they / go / there for years)

8 I’ve got a headache.
   (I / have / it / since I got up)

9 Next week Gary is going to run in a marathon.
   (he / train / very hard for it)

7 Put the verb into the correct form.

Julia and Kevin are old friends. They meet by chance at a rail station.
JULIA: Hello, Kevin. (1) (I / not / see) you for ages. How are you?
KEVIN: I’m fine. How about you?
   (2) (you / look) well.

JULIA: Yes, I’m very well thanks.
   So, (3) (you / go) somewhere or (4) (you / meet) somebody off a train?
KEVIN: (5) (I / go) to London for a business meeting.
JULIA: Oh. (6) (you / often / go) away on business?
KEVIN: Quite often, yes. And you? Where (7) (you / go)?
JULIA: Nowhere. (8) (I / meet) a friend. Unfortunately her train (9) (be) delayed – (10) (I / wait) here for nearly an hour.
KEVIN: How are your children?
JULIA: They’re all fine, thanks. The youngest (11) (just / start) school.
KEVIN: How (12) (she / get) on?
   (13) (she / like) it?
JULIA: Yes, (14) (she / think) it’s great.
KEVIN: (15) (you / work) at the moment? When I last (16) (speak) to you, (17) (you / work) in a travel agency.
JULIA: That’s right. Unfortunately the company (18) (go) out of business a couple of months after (19) (I / start) work there, so (20) (I / lose) my job.
KEVIN: And (21) (you / not / have) a job since then?
JULIA: Not a permanent job. (22) (I / have) a few temporary jobs. By the way, (23) (you / see) Joe recently?
KEVIN: Joe? He’s in Canada.
JULIA: Really? How long (24) (he / be) in Canada?
KEVIN: About a year now. (25) (I / see) him a few days before (26) (he / go). (27) (he / be) unemployed for months, so (28) (he / decide) to try his luck somewhere else. (29) (he / really / look forward) to going.
JULIA: So, what (30) (he / do) there?
KEVIN: I’ve no idea. (31) (I / not / hear) from him since (32) (he / leave). Anyway, I must go and catch my train. It was really nice to see you again.
KEVIN: Thanks. Bye.
8 Put the verb into the most suitable form.

1 Who ___________________ (invent) the bicycle?
2 ‘Do you still have a headache?’ ‘No ___________________ (it / go). I’m all right now.’
3 I was the last to leave the office yesterday evening. Everybody else ___________________ (go) home when I ___________________ (leave).
4 What ___________________ (you / do) last weekend? ___________________ (you / go) away?
5 I like your car. How long ___________________ (you / have) it?
6 It’s a pity the trip was cancelled. I ___________________ (look) forward to it.
7 Jane is an experienced teacher. ___________________ (she / teach) for 15 years.
8 ___________________ (I / buy) a new jacket last week, but ___________________ (I / not / wear) it yet.
9 A few days ago ___________________ (I / see) a man at a party whose face ___________________ (be) very familiar. At first I couldn’t think where ___________________ (I / see) him before. Then suddenly ___________________ (I / remember) who ___________________ (it / be).
10 ___________________ (you / hear) of Agatha Christie? ___________________ (she / be) a writer who ___________________ (die) in 1976. ___________________ (she / write) more than 70 detective novels. ___________________ (you / read) any of them?
11 A: What ___________________ (this word / mean)?
    B: I’ve no idea. ___________________ (I / never / see) it before. Look it up in the dictionary.
12 A: ___________________ (you / get) to the theatre in time for the play last night?
    B: No, we were late. By the time we got there, ___________________ (it / already / begin).
13 I went to Sarah’s room and ___________________ (knock) on the door, but there ___________________ (be) no answer. Either ___________________ (she / go) out or ___________________ (she / not / want) to see anyone.
14 Patrick asked me how to use the photocopier. ___________________ (he / never / use) it before, so ___________________ (he / not / know) what to do.
15 Liz ___________________ (go) for a swim after work yesterday. ___________________ (she / need) some exercise because ___________________ (she / sit) in an office all day in front of a computer.

---

Past continuous and used to

9 Complete the sentences using the past continuous (was/were -ing) or used to .... Use the verb in brackets.

1 I haven’t been to the cinema for ages now. We ___________________ a lot. (go)
2 Ann didn’t see me wave to her. She ___________________ in the other direction. (look)
3 I ___________________ a lot but, I don’t use my car very much these days. (drive)
4 I asked the taxi driver to slow down. She ___________________ too fast. (drive)
5 Rosemary and Jonathan met for the first time when they ___________________ in the same bank. (work)
6 When I was a child, I ___________________ a lot of bad dreams. (have)
7 I wonder what Joe is doing these days. He ___________________ in Spain when I last heard from him. (live)
8 ‘Where were you yesterday afternoon?’ ‘I ___________________ volleyball.’ (play)
9 ‘Do you do any sports?’ ‘Not these days, but I ___________________ volleyball.’ (play)
10 George looked very nice at the party. He ___________________ a very smart suit. (wear)
The future

10 What do you say to your friend in these situations? Use the words given in brackets. Use the present continuous (I am doing), going to or will (I'll).

1 You have made all your holiday arrangements. Your destination is Jamaica.
   FRIEND: Have you decided where to go for your holiday yet?
   YOU: ___________________________ (I / go)

2 You have made an appointment with the dentist for Friday morning.
   FRIEND: Shall we meet on Friday morning?
   YOU: ___________________________ (I / go)

3 You and some friends are planning a holiday in Britain. You have decided to hire a car, but you haven’t arranged this yet.
   FRIEND: How do you plan to travel round Britain? By train?
   YOU: ___________________________ (we / hire)

4 Your friend has two young children. She wants to go out tomorrow evening. You offer to look after the children.
   FRIEND: I want to go out tomorrow evening, but I haven't got a babysitter.
   YOU: ___________________________ (I / look after)

5 You have already arranged to have lunch with Sue tomorrow.
   FRIEND: Are you free at lunchtime tomorrow?
   YOU: ___________________________ (have lunch)

6 You are in a restaurant. You and your friend are looking at the menu. Maybe your friend has decided what to have. You ask her/him.
   YOU: ___________________________ ? (you / have)
   FRIEND: I don’t know. I can’t make up my mind.

7 You and a friend are reading. It's getting a bit dark and your friend is having trouble reading. You decide to turn on the light.
   FRIEND: It's getting a bit dark, isn’t it? It’s difficult to read.
   YOU: ___________________________ (I / turn on)

8 You and a friend are reading. It's getting a bit dark and you decide to turn on the light. You stand up and walk towards the light switch.
   FRIEND: What are you doing?
   YOU: ___________________________ (I / turn on)

11 Put the verb into the most suitable form. Use a present tense (simple or continuous), will (I'll) or shall.

Conversational 1 (in the morning)

JENNY: (1) ___________________________ (you / do) anything tomorrow evening, Helen?

HELEN: No, why?

JENNY: Well, do you fancy going to the cinema? Strangers on a Plane is on. I want to see it, but I don’t want to go alone.

HELEN: OK, (2) ___________________________ (I / come) with you. What time
   (3) ___________________________ (we / meet)?

JENNY: Well, the film (4) ___________________________ (begin) at 8.45, so
   (5) ___________________________ (I / meet) you at about 8.30 outside the cinema, OK?

HELEN: Fine. (6) ___________________________ (I / see) Tina later this evening.
   (7) ___________________________ (I / ask) her if she wants to come too?

JENNY: Yes, do that. (8) ___________________________ (I / see) you tomorrow then. Bye.
Conversation 2 (later the same day)

HELEN: Jenny and I (9) _______________ (go) to the cinema tomorrow night to see Strangers on a Plane. Why don’t you come too?

TINA: I’d love to come. What time (10) _______________ (the film / begin)?

HELEN: 8.45.

TINA: (11) _______________ (you / meet) outside the cinema?

HELEN: Yes, at 8.30. Is that OK for you?

TINA: Yes, (12) _______________ (I / be) there at 8.30.

12 Put the verb into the most suitable form. Sometimes there is more than one possibility.

1 A has decided to learn a language.

A: I’ve decided to try and learn a foreign language.
B: Have you? Which language (1) _______________ are you going to learn _______________ (you / learn)?
A: Spanish.
B: (2) _______________ (you / do) a course?
A: Yes, (3) _______________ (it / start) next week.
B: That’s great. I’m sure (4) _______________ (you / enjoy) it.
A: I hope so. But I think (5) _______________ (it / be) quite difficult.

2 A wants to know about B’s holiday plans.

A: I hear (1) _______________ (you / go) on holiday soon.
B: That’s right. (2) _______________ (we / go) to Finland.
A: I hope (3) _______________ (you / have) a nice time.
B: Thanks. (4) _______________ (I / send) you a postcard and (5) _______________ (I / get) in touch with you when (6) _______________ (I / phone) you during the week.

3 A invites B to a party.

A: (1) _______________ (I / have) a party next Saturday. Can you come?
B: On Saturday? I’m not sure. Some friends of mine (2) _______________ (come) to stay with me next week, but I think (3) _______________ (they / go) by Saturday. But if (4) _______________ (they / be) still here,
(5) _______________ (I / not / be) able to come to the party.
A: OK. Well, tell me as soon as (6) _______________ (you / know).
B: Right. (7) _______________ (I / phone) you during the week.

4 A and B are two secret agents arranging a meeting. They are talking on the phone.

A: Well, what time (1) _______________ (we / meet)?
B: Come to the café by the station at 4 o’clock.
(2) _______________ (I / wait) for you when (3) _______________ (you / arrive).
(4) _______________ (I / sit) by the window and (5) _______________ (I / wear) a bright green sweater.
A: OK? (6) _______________ (Agent 307 / come) too?
B: No, she can’t be there.
A: Oh. (7) _______________ (I / bring) the documents?
B: Yes. (8) _______________ (I / explain) everything when (9) _______________ (I / see) you. And don’t be late.
A: OK. (10) _______________ (I / try) to be on time.
13 Put the verb into the correct form. Choose from the following:

- present continuous (I am doing)
- present simple (I do)
- going to (I'm going to do)
- will ('ll) / won't
- shall

1. I feel a bit hungry. I think ........................................ (I / have) something to eat.
2. Why are you putting on your coat? ........................................ (you / go) somewhere?
3. What time ........................................ (I / phone) you this evening? About 7.30?
4. Look! That plane is flying towards the airport. ........................................ (it / land).
5. We must do something soon, before ........................................ (it / be) too late.
6. I'm sorry you've decided to leave the company. ........................................
    (I / miss) you when ........................................ (you / go).
7. ........................................ (I / give) you my address? If ........................................
    (I / give) you my address, ........................................ (you / send) me a postcard?
8. Are you still watching that programme? What time ........................................ (it / end)?
9. ........................................ (I / go) to London next weekend for a wedding.
    My sister ........................................ (get) married.
10. I'm not ready yet. ........................................ (I / tell) you when ........................................
    (I / be) ready. I promise ........................................ (I / not / be) very long.
11. A: Where are you going?
    B: To the hairdresser's. ........................................ (I / have) my hair cut.
12. She was very rude to me. I refuse to speak to her again until ........................................
    (she / apologise).
13. I wonder where ........................................ (we / live) ten years from now?
14. What do you plan to do when ........................................ (you / finish) your course at college?

Past, present and future

14 Use your own ideas to complete B's sentences.

1. A: How did the accident happen?
   B: I ........................................ too fast and couldn't stop in time.
2. A: Is that a new camera?
   B: No, I ........................................ it a long time.
3. A: Is that a new computer?
   B: Yes, I ........................................ it a few weeks ago.
4. A: I can't talk to you right now. You can see I'm very busy.
   B: OK. I ........................................ back in about half an hour.
5. A: This is a nice restaurant. Do you come here often?
   B: No, it's the first time I ........................................ here.
6. A: Do you do any sport?
   B: No, I ........................................ football, but I gave it up.
7. A: I'm sorry I'm late.
   B: That's OK. I ........................................ long.
8. A: When you went to the US last year, was it your first visit?
   B: No, I ........................................ there twice before.
9. A: Do you have any plans for the weekend?
   B: Yes, I ........................................ to a party on Saturday night.
10. A: Do you know what Steve's doing these days?
    B: No, I ........................................ him for ages.
11. A: Will you still be here by the time I get back?
    B: No, I ........................................ by then.
Robert is travelling in North America. He sends an email to a friend in Winnipeg (Canada). Put the verb into the most suitable form.

Hi

(1) I’ve just arrived. (I / just / arrive) in Minneapolis. (2) (I / travel) for more than a month now, and (3) (I / begin) to think about coming home. Everything (4) (I / see) so far (5) (be) really interesting, and (6) (I / meet) some really kind people.

(7) (I / leave) Kansas City a week ago. (8) (I / stay) there with Emily, the aunt of a friend from college. She was really helpful and hospitable and although (9) (I / plan) to stay only a couple of days, (10) (I / end up) staying more than a week.

(11) (I / enjoy) the journey from Kansas City to here. (12) (I / take) the Greyhound bus and (13) (meet) some really interesting people – everybody was really friendly.

So now I’m here, and (14) (I / stay) here for a few days before (15) (I / continue) up to Canada. I’m not sure exactly when (16) (I / get) to Winnipeg – it depends what happens while (17) (I / be) here. But (18) (I / let) you know as soon as (19) (I / know) myself.

(20) (I / stay) with a family here – they’re friends of some people I know at home. Tomorrow (21) (we / visit) some people they know who (22) (build) a house in the mountains. It isn’t finished yet, but (23) (it / be) interesting to see what it’s like.

Anyway, that’s all for now. (24) (I / be) in touch again soon.

Robert

Modal verbs (can/must/would etc.)

16 Which alternatives are correct? Sometimes only one alternative is correct, and sometimes two of the alternatives are possible.

1 ‘What time will you be home tonight?’ ‘I’m not sure. I A or B late.’
   A may be B might be C can be (both A and B are correct)
2 I can’t find the theatre tickets. They A out of my pocket.
   A must have fallen B should have fallen C had to fall
3 Somebody ran in front of the car as I was driving. Fortunately I A just in time.
   A could stop B could have stopped C managed to stop
4 We’ve got plenty of time. We A yet.
   A mustn’t leave B needn’t leave C don’t need to leave
5 I A but I didn’t feel like it, so I stayed at home.
   A could go B could have gone C must have gone
6 I’m sorry I ___________ come to your party last week.
A couldn’t come  B couldn’t have come  C wasn’t able to come
7 ‘What do you think of my theory?’ ‘I’m not sure. You ___________ right.’
A could be  B must be  C might be
8 I couldn’t wait for you any longer. I ___________ , and so I went.
A must go  B must have gone  C had to go
9 ‘Do you know where Liz is?’ ‘No. I suppose she ___________ shopping.’
A should have gone  B may have gone  C could have gone
10 At first they didn’t believe me when I told them what had happened, but in the end
I ___________ them that I was telling the truth.
A was able to convince  B managed to convince  C could convince
11 I promised I’d phone Gary this evening. I ___________ .
A mustn’t forget  B needn’t forget  C don’t have to forget
12 Why did you leave without me? You ___________ for me.
A must have waited  B had to wait  C should have waited
13 Lisa phoned me and suggested ___________ lunch together.
A we have  B we should have  C to have
14 You look nice in that jacket, but you hardly ever wear it. ___________ it more often.
A You’d better wear  B You should wear  C You ought to wear
15 Shall I buy a car? What’s your advice? What ___________ ?
A will you do  B would you do  C shall you do

17 Make sentences from the words in brackets.
1 Don’t phone them now. (they might / have / lunch)
   ________________________________
   They might be having lunch.
2 I ate too much. Now I feel sick. (I shouldn’t / eat / so much)
   ________________________________
   I shouldn’t have eaten so much.
3 I wonder why Tom didn’t phone me. (he must / forget)
   ______________ ________________________
4 Why did you go home so early? (you needn’t / go / home so early)
   ________________________________
5 You’ve signed the contract. (it / can’t / change / now)
   ________________________________
6 ‘What’s Linda doing?’ ‘I’m not sure.’ (she may / watch / television)
   ________________________________
7 Laura was standing outside the cinema. (she must / wait / for somebody)
   ________________________________
8 He was in prison at the time that the crime was committed. (he couldn’t / do / it)
   ________________________________
9 Why weren’t you here earlier? (you ought / be / here earlier)
   ________________________________
10 Why didn’t you ask me to help you? (I would / help / you)
   ________________________________
11 I’m surprised you weren’t told that the road was dangerous. (you should / warn / about it)
   ________________________________
12 Gary was in a strange mood yesterday. (he might not / feel / very well)
18 Complete B's sentences using can/could/might/must/should/would + the verb in brackets. In some sentences you need to use have: must have ... / should have ... etc. In some sentences you need the negative (can't/couldn't etc).

1 A: I'm hungry.  
   B: But you've just had lunch. You can't be hungry already. (be)

2 A: I haven't seen our neighbours for ages.  
   B: No. They must have gone away. (go)

3 A: What's the weather like? Is it raining?  
   B: Not at the moment, but it will rain later. (rain)

4 A: Where has Julia gone?  
   B: I'm not sure. She has gone to the bank. (go)

5 A: I didn't see you at Michael's party last week.  
   B: No, I had to work that night, so I didn't go. (go)

6 A: I saw you at Michael's party last week.  
   B: No, you didn't see him. I didn't go to Michael's party. (see)

7 A: What time will we get to Sue's house?  
   B: Well, it takes about one and a half hours, so if we leave at 3 o'clock, we should get there by 4.30. (get)

8 A: When was the last time you saw Bill?  
   B: Years ago. I hadn't seen him if I saw him now. (recognise)

9 A: Did you hear the explosion?  
   B: What explosion?  
   A: There was a loud explosion about an hour ago. You must have heard it. (hear)

10 A: We weren't sure which way to go. In the end we turned right.  
    B: You went the wrong way. You must have gone left. (turn)

---

19 Put the verb into the correct form.

1 If you found a wallet in the street, what would you do with it? (find)

2 I must hurry. My friend will be annoyed if I'm not on time. (not / be)

3 I didn't realise that Gary was in hospital. If I had known he was in hospital, I would have gone to visit him. (know)

4 If the phone rang, can you answer it? (ring)

5 I can't decide what to do. What would you do if you were in my position? (be)

6 A: What shall we do tomorrow?  
   B: Well, if it's a nice day, we can go to the beach. (be)

7 A: Let's go to the beach.  
   B: No, it's too cold. If it were warmer, I wouldn't mind going. (be)

8 A: Did you go to the beach yesterday?  
   B: No, it was too cold. If it were warmer, we might have gone. (be)

9 If you had enough money to go anywhere in the world, where would you go? (have)

10 I'm glad we had a map. I'm sure we would have got lost if we hadn't had one. (not / have)

11 The accident was your fault. If you had been more careful, it wouldn't have happened. (drive)

12 A: Why do you read newspapers?  
   B: Well, if I read newspapers, I wouldn't know what was happening in the world. (not / read)
Addtional exercises

20 Complete the sentences.

1 Liz is tired all the time. She shouldn't go to bed so late.
   If she didn't go to bed so late, she wouldn't be tired all the time.

2 It’s rather late. I don’t think Sarah will come to see us now.
   I’d be surprised if Sarah

3 I’m sorry I disturbed you. I didn’t know you were busy.
   If I’d known you were busy, I

4 I don’t want them to be upset, so I’ve decided not to tell them what happened.
   They’d ____________________ if ____________________

5 The dog attacked you, but only because you frightened it.
   If ____________________

6 Unfortunately I didn’t have an umbrella and so I got very wet in the rain.
   I ____________________

7 Martin failed his driving test last week. He was very nervous and that’s why he failed.
   If he ____________________

21 Use your own ideas to complete the sentences.

1 I’d go out this evening if ____________________

2 I’d have gone out last night if ____________________

3 If you hadn’t reminded me, ____________________

4 We wouldn’t have been late if ____________________

5 If I’d been able to get tickets, ____________________

6 Who would you phone if ____________________

7 Cities would be nicer places if ____________________

8 If there was no television, ____________________

22 Put the verb into the most suitable passive form.

1 There’s somebody behind us. I think we ____________________ (follow).

2 A mystery is something that ____________________ (can’t / explain).

3 We didn’t play football yesterday. The match ____________________ (cancel).

4 The television ____________________ (repair). It’s working again now.

5 In the middle of the village there is a church which ____________________ (restore) at the moment. The work is almost finished.

6 The tower is the oldest part of the church. It ____________________ (believe) to be over 600 years old.

7 If I didn’t do my job properly, I ____________________ (would / sack).

8 A: I left a newspaper on the desk last night and it isn’t there now.
   B: It ____________________ (might / throw) away.

9 I learnt to swim when I was very young. I ____________________ (teach) by my mother.

10 After ____________________ (arrest), I was taken to the police station.

11 ‘______________________ (you / ever / arrest)?’ ‘No, never.’

12 Two people ____________________ (report) to ____________________ (injure) in an explosion at a factory in Birmingham early this morning.
23 Put the verb into the correct form, active or passive.

1. This house is quite old. It ________ built (build) over 100 years ago.
2. My grandfather was a builder. He ________ (build) this house many years ago.
3. ‘Is your car still for sale?’ ‘No, I ________________________ (sell) it.’
4. a: Is the house at the end of the street still for sale?
   b: No, it ________________________ (sell).
5. Sometimes mistakes ________________________ (make). It’s inevitable.
6. I wouldn’t leave your car unlocked. It ________________________ (might / steal).
7. My bag has disappeared. It ________________________ (must / steal).
8. I can’t find my hat. Somebody ________________________ (must / take) it by mistake.
9. It’s a serious problem. I don’t know how it ________________________ (can / solve).
10. We didn’t leave early enough. We ________________________ (should / leave) earlier.
11. Nearly every time I travel by plane, my flight ________________________ (delay).
12. A new bridge ________________________ (build) across the river. Work started last year and the bridge ________________________ (expect) to open next year.

24 Read these newspaper reports and put the verbs into the most suitable form.

1. **Castle Fire**
   Winton Castle (1) ________ damaged (damage) in a fire last night. The fire, which (2) ________ (discover) at about 9 o’clock, spread very quickly. Nobody (3) ________ (injure), but two people had to (4) ________ (rescue) from an upstairs room. A number of paintings (5) ________ (believe / destroy). It (6) ________ (not / know) how the fire started.

2. **SHOP ROBBERY**
   In Paxham yesterday a shop assistant (1) ________ (force) to hand over £500 after (2) ________ (threaten) by a man with a knife. The man escaped in a car which (3) ________ (steal) earlier in the day.
   The car (4) ________ (later / find) in a car park where it (5) ________ (abandon) by the thief. A man (6) ________ (arrest) in connection with the robbery and (7) ________ (still / question) by the police.

3. **ROAD DELAYS**
   Repair work started yesterday on the Paxham–Longworth road. The road (1) ________ (resurface) and there will be long delays. Drivers (2) ________ (ask) to use an alternative route if possible. The work (3) ________ (expect) to last two weeks. Next Sunday the road (4) ________ (close), and traffic (5) ________ (divert).

4. **Accident**
   A woman (1) ________ (take) to hospital after her car collided with a lorry near Norstock yesterday. She (2) ________ (allow) home later after treatment. The road (3) ________ (block) for an hour after the accident, and traffic had to (4) ________ (divert). A police inspector said afterwards: ‘The woman was lucky. She could (5) ________ (kill).’
Additional exercises

Reported speech

25 Complete the sentences using reported speech.

1. Can I speak to Paul, please? I'll try again later.
   Paul has gone out. I don't know when he'll be back.
   Do you want to leave a message?

A woman phoned at lunchtime yesterday and asked **if she could speak to Paul**. I told
   ............................................................................................................................
   I asked ...................................................................................................................
   ............................................................................................................................
   later. But she never did.

2. We have no record of any reservation in your name.
   We're sorry, but the hotel is full.
   Do you have any rooms free anyway?

I went to London recently, but my visit didn't begin well. I had reserved a hotel room, but
   ............................................................................................................................
   When I asked ...................................................................................................
   they said .............................................................................................................
   There was nothing I could do. I just had to look for somewhere else to stay.

3. Why are you visiting the country?
   How long do you intend to stay?
   Where will you be staying during your visit?
   We're on holiday.

After getting off the plane, we had to queue for an hour to get through immigration. Finally
   it was our turn. The immigration official asked us ............................................................................................................................
   and we told ............................................................................................................................
   He seemed satisfied with our answers, checked our passports and wished us a pleasant stay.

4. I'll phone you from the airport when I arrive.
   Don't come to the airport. I'll take the bus.

   A: What time is Sue arriving this afternoon?
   B: About three. She said ............................................................................................................................

   A: Aren't you going to meet her?
   B: No, she said ............................................................................................................................
      She said
A few days ago a man phoned from a marketing company and started asking me questions. He wanted to know and asked . I don’t like people phoning and asking questions like that, so I told and I put the phone down.

Louise and Sarah are in a restaurant waiting for Paul.
Louise: I wonder where Paul is. He said .
Sarah: Maybe he’s got lost.
Louise: I don’t think so. He said . And I told .

JANE: Is there anything to eat?
J oe: Well, I am now. I’d love a banana.

Put the verb into the correct form.

1. How old were you when you learnt to drive? (drive)
2. I don’t mind walking home, but I’d rather get a taxi. (walk, get)
3. I can’t make a decision. I keep my mind. (change)
4. He had made his decision and refused his mind. (change)
5. Why did you change your decision? What made you your mind? (change)
6. It was a really good holiday. I really enjoyed by the sea again. (be)
7. Did I really tell you I was unhappy? I don’t remember that. (say)
8. ‘Remember Tom tomorrow.’ ‘OK. I won’t forget.’ (phone)
9. The water here is not very good. I’d avoid it if I were you. (drink)
Additional exercises

10 I pretended ___________________ interested in the conversation, but really it was very boring. (be)
11 I got up and looked out of the window ___________________ what the weather was like. (see)
12 I have a friend who claims ___________________ able to speak five languages. (be)
13 I like ___________________ carefully about things before ___________________ a decision. (think, make)
14 I had a flat in the centre of town but I didn’t like ___________________ there, so I decided ___________________ . (live, move)
15 Steve used ___________________ a footballer. He had to stop ___________________ because of an injury. (be, play)
16 After ___________________ by the police, the man admitted ___________________ the car but denied ___________________ at 100 miles an hour. (stop, steal, drive)
17 A: How do you make this machine ___________________ ? (work)
   A: I’m not sure. Try ___________________ that button and see what happens. (press)

27 Make sentences from the words in brackets.

1 I can’t find the tickets. (I / seem / lose / them)
   I seem to have lost them.

2 I haven’t got far to go. (it / not / worth / take / a taxi)
   It’s not worth taking a taxi.

3 I’m feeling a bit tired. (I / not / fancy / go / out)

4 Tim isn’t very reliable. (he / tend / forget / things)

5 I’ve got a lot of luggage. (you / mind / help / me?)

6 There’s nobody at home. (everybody / seem / go out)

7 We don’t like our flat. (we / think / move)

8 The vase was very valuable. (I / afraid / touch / it)

9 Bill never carries money with him. (he / afraid / robbed)

10 I wouldn’t go to see the film. (it / not / worth / see)

11 I’m very tired after that long walk. (I / not / used / walk / so far)

12 Sue is on holiday. I received a postcard from her yesterday. (she / seem / enjoy / herself)

13 Dave had lots of photographs he’d taken while on holiday. (he / insist / show / them to me)

14 I don’t want to do the shopping. (I’d rather / somebody else / do / it)
28 Complete the second sentence so that the meaning is similar to the first.

1. I was surprised I passed the exam.
   I didn’t expect to pass the exam.

2. Did you manage to solve the problem?
   Did you succeed in solving the problem?

3. I don’t read newspapers any more.
   I’ve given up reading newspapers any more.

4. I’d prefer not to go out tonight.
   I’d rather stay at home.

5. He can’t walk very well.
   He has difficulty walking.

6. Shall I phone you this evening?
   Do you want me to phone you this evening?

7. Nobody saw me come in.
   I came in without being noticed.

8. They said I was a cheat.
   I was accused of cheating.

9. It will be good to see them again.
   I’m looking forward to seeing them again.

10. What do you think I should do?
    What do you advise me to do?

11. It’s a pity I couldn’t go out with you.
    I’d like to go out with you.

12. I’m sorry that I didn’t take your advice.
    I regret not taking your advice.

---

a/an and the

29 Put in a/an or the where necessary. Leave the space empty if the sentence is already complete.

1. I don’t usually like staying at ___ hotels, but last summer we spent a few days at ___ a very nice hotel by ___ sea.

2. ___ tennis is my favourite sport. I play once or twice ___ week if I can, but I’m not ___ very good player.

3. I won’t be home for ___ dinner this evening. I’m meeting some friends after ___ work and we’re going to ___ cinema.

4. ___ unemployment is increasing at the moment and it’s getting difficult for ___ people to find ___ work.

5. There was ___ accident as I was going ___ home last night. Two people were taken to ___ hospital. I think ___ most accidents are caused by ___ people driving too fast.

6. Carol is ___ economist. She used to work in ___ investment department of ___ Lloyds Bank. Now she works for ___ American bank in ___ United States.

7. A: ___ name of ___ hotel where you’re staying?
   B: ___ Imperial. It’s in ___ Queen Street in ___ city centre. It’s near ___ station.

8. I have two brothers. ___ older one is training to be ___ pilot with ___ British Airways. ___ younger one is still at ___ school. When he leaves ___ school, he wants to go to ___ university to study ___ law.
### Pronouns and determiners

30 Which alternatives are correct? Sometimes only one alternative is correct, and sometimes two alternatives are possible.

1. I don’t remember ______ about the accident. (A is correct)
   A anything    B something    C nothing
2. Chris and I have known __________________ for quite a long time.
   A us    B each other    C ourselves
3. ‘How often do the buses run?’ ‘________________ twenty minutes.’
   A All    B Each    C Every
4. I shouted for help, but __________________ came.
   A nobody    B no-one    C anybody
5. Last night we went out with some friends of __________________.
   A us    B our    C ours
6. It didn’t take us a long time to get here. __________________ traffic.
   A It wasn’t much    B There wasn’t much    C It wasn’t a lot
7. Can I have __________________ milk in my coffee, please?
   A a little    B any    C some
8. Sometimes I find it difficult to __________________.
   A concentrate    B concentrate me    C concentrate myself
9. There’s __________________ on at the cinema that I want to see, so there’s no point in going.
   A something    B anything    C nothing
10. I drink __________________ water every day.
    A much    B a lot of    C lots of
11. __________________ in the city centre are open on Sunday.
    A Most of shops    B Most of the shops    C The most of the shops
12. There were about twenty people in the photo. I didn’t recognise __________________ of them.
    A any    B none    C either
13. I’ve been waiting __________________ for Sarah to phone.
    A all morning    B the whole morning    C all the morning
14. I can’t afford to buy anything in this shop. __________________ so expensive.
    A All is    B Everything is    C All are

### Adjectives and adverbs

31 There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Correct the sentences where necessary. Write ‘OK’ if the sentence is already correct.

1. The building was total destroyed in the fire. ________________
   totally destroyed
2. I didn’t like the book. It was such a stupid story. ________________
   OK
3. The city is very polluted. It’s the more polluted place I’ve ever been to.
4. I was disappointing that I didn’t get the job. I was well-qualified and the interview went well.
5. It’s warm today, but there’s quite a strong wind.
6. Joe works hardly, but he doesn’t get paid very much.
7. The company’s offices are in a modern large building.
8. Dan is a very fast runner. I wish I could run as fast as him.
9. I missed the three last days of the course because I was ill.
10. You don’t look happy. What’s the matter?
Additional exercises

11 The weather has been unusual cold for the time of the year.
12 The water in the pool was too dirty to swim in it.
13 I got impatient because we had to wait so long time.
14 Is this box big enough or do you need a bigger one?
15 This morning I got up more early than usual.

Conjunctions

32 Which is correct?
1 I'll try to be on time, but don’t worry if / when I’m late. (if is correct)
2 Don't throw that bag away. If / When you don't want it, I'll have it.
3 Please report to reception if / when you arrive at the hotel.
4 We've arranged to play tennis tomorrow, but we won't play if / when it's raining.
5 Jennifer is in her final year at school. She still doesn’t know what she's going to do if / when she leaves.
6 What would you do if / when you lost your keys?
7 I hope I'll be able to come to the party, but I'll let you know if / unless I can't.
8 I don’t want to be disturbed, so don’t phone me if / unless it’s something important.
9 Please sign the contract if / unless you're happy with the conditions.
10 I like travelling by ship as long as / unless the sea is not rough.
11 You might not remember the name of the hotel, so write it down if / in case you forget it.
12 It's not cold now, but take your coat with you if / in case it gets cold later.
13 Take your coat with you and then you can put it on if / in case it gets cold later.
14 They always have the television on, even if / if nobody is watching it.
15 Even / Although we played very well, we lost the match.
16 Despite / Although we've known each other a long time, we're not particularly close friends.
17 'When did you leave school?' 'As / When I was 17.'
18 I think Ann will be very pleased as / when she hears the news.

Prepositions (time)

33 Put in one of the following: at on in during for since by until
1 Jack has gone away. He'll be back in a week.
2 We're having a party Saturday. Can you come?
3 I've got an interview next week. It's Tuesday morning.
4 Sue isn't usually here weekends. She goes away.
5 The train service is very good. The trains are nearly always time.
6 It was a confusing situation. Many things were happening the same time.
7 I couldn't decide whether or not to buy the sweater. the end I decided to leave it.
8 The road is busy all the time, even night.
9 I met a lot of nice people my stay in New York.
10 I saw Helen Friday, but I haven't seen her then.
11 Brian has been doing the same job five years.
12 Lisa's birthday is the end of March. I'm not sure exactly which day it is.
13 We have some friends staying with us the moment. They're staying Friday.
14 If you're interested in applying for the job, your application must be received Friday.
15 I'm just going out. I won't be long - I'll be back ten minutes.
**Prepositions (position and other uses)**

34 Put in the missing preposition.

1. I'd love to be able to visit every country __________ the world.
2. Jessica White is my favourite author. Have you read anything __________ her?
3. 'Is there a bank near here?' 'Yes, there's one __________ the end of this road.'
4. Tim is away at the moment. He's __________ holiday.
5. We live __________ the country, a long way from the nearest town.
6. I've got a stain __________ my jacket. I'll have to have it cleaned.
7. We went __________ a party __________ Linda's house on Saturday.
8. Boston is __________ the east coast of the United States.
9. Look at the leaves __________ that tree. They're a beautiful colour.
10. 'Have you ever been __________ Tokyo?' 'No, I've never been __________ Japan.'
11. Mozart died __________ Vienna in 1791 __________ the age of 35.
12. 'Are you __________ this photograph?' 'Yes, that's me, __________ the left.'
13. We went __________ the theatre last night. We had seats __________ the front row.
14. 'Where's the light switch?' 'It's __________ the wall __________ the door.'
15. It was late when we arrived __________ the hotel.
16. I couldn't decide what to eat. There was nothing __________ the menu that I liked.
17. We live __________ a tower block. Our flat is __________ the fifteenth floor.
18. A: What did you think of the film?
   B: Some parts were a bit stupid, but __________ the whole I enjoyed it.
19. 'When you paid the hotel bill, did you pay cash?' 'No, I paid __________ credit card.'
20. 'How did you get here?' __________ the bus? 'No, __________ car.'
21. A: I wonder what's __________ television this evening. Have you got a newspaper?
   B: Yes, the TV programmes are __________ the back page.
22. Helen works for a telecommunications company. She works __________ the customer services department.
23. Anna spent two years working __________ London before returning __________ Italy.
24. 'Did you enjoy your trip __________ the beach?' 'Yes, it was great.'
25. Next summer we're going __________ a trip to Canada.

**Noun/adjective + preposition**

35 Put in the missing preposition.

1. The plan has been changed, but nobody seems to know the reason __________ this.
2. Don't ask me to decide. I'm not very good __________ making decisions.
3. Some people say that Sue is unfriendly, but she's always very nice __________ me.
4. What do you think is the best solution __________ the problem?
5. There has been a big increase __________ the price of land recently.
6. He lives a rather lonely life. He doesn't have much contact __________ other people.
7. Paul is a keen photographer. He likes taking pictures __________ people.
8. Michael got married __________ a woman he met when he was studying at college.
9. He's very brave. He's not afraid __________ anything.
10. I'm surprised __________ the amount of traffic today. I didn't think it would be so busy.
11. Thank you for lending me the guidebook. It was full __________ useful information.
12. Please come in and sit down. I'm sorry __________ the mess.
**Verb + preposition**

Complete each sentence with a preposition where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1. She works quite hard. You can't accuse her ________ being lazy.
2. Who's going to look ________ your children while you're at work?
3. The problem is becoming serious. We have to discuss ________ it.
4. The problem is becoming serious. We have to do something ________ it.
5. I prefer this chair ________ the other one. It's more comfortable.
6. I must phone ________ the office to tell them I won't be at work today.
7. The river divides the city ________ two parts.
8. 'What do you think ________ your new boss?' 'She's all right, I suppose.'
9. Can somebody please explain ________ me what I have to do?
10. I said hello to her, but she didn't answer ________ me.
11. 'Do you like staying at hotels?' 'It depends ________ the hotel.'
12. 'Have you ever been to Borla?' 'No, I've never heard ________ it. Where is it?'
13. You remind me ________ somebody I knew a long time ago. You look just like her.
14. This is wonderful news! I can't believe ________ it.
15. George is not an idealist—he believes ________ being practical.
16. What's funny? What are you laughing ________?
17. What have you done with all the money you had? What did you spend it ________?
18. If Kevin asks ________ you ________ money, don't give him any.
19. I apologised ________ Sarah ________ keeping her waiting so long.
20. Lisa was very helpful. I thanked ________ her ________ everything she'd done.

**Phrasal verbs**

A says something and B replies. Which goes with which?

A) 1. I've made a mistake on this form.
   2. I'm too warm with my coat on.
   3. This jacket looks nice.
   4. My phone number is 576920.
   5. This room is in a mess.
   6. What's 45 euros in dollars?
   7. How did you find the mistake?
   8. I'm not sure whether to accept their offer or not.
   9. I need a place to stay when I'm in London.
  10. It's a subject he doesn't like to talk about.
  11. I don't know what this word means.

B) a. Don't worry. I'll tidy it up.
   b. No problem. I can fix it up.
   c. Kate pointed it out.
   d. That's OK. Just cross it out and correct it.
   e. Yes, why don't you try it on?
   f. OK, I won't bring it up.
   g. Just a moment. I'll work it down.
   h. Why don't you take it off then?
   i. You can look it up.
   j. I think you should turn it down.
   k. Give me a moment to work it out.

1. ________
2. ________
3. ________
4. ________
5. ________
6. ________
7. ________
8. ________
9. ________
10. ________
11. ________
38 Only one alternative is correct. Which is it?
1 Nobody believed Paul at first but he ______ to be right. (B is correct)
   A came out    B turned out    C worked out    D carried out
2 Here’s some good news. It will ____________
   A turn you up    B put you up    C blow you up    D cheer you up
3 I was annoyed with the way the children were behaving, so I ____________
   A told them up    B told them off    C told them out    D told them over
4 The club committee is ____________ of the president, the secretary and seven other members.
   A set up    B made up    C set out    D made out
5 You were going to apply for the job, and then you decided not to. So what ____________?
   A put you off    B put you out    C turned you off    D turned you away
6 I had no idea that he was lying to me. I was completely ____________
   A taken in    B taken down    C taken off    D taken over
7 Barbara started a course at college, but she ____________ after six months.
   A went out    B fell out    C turned out    D dropped out
8 You can’t predict everything. Often things don’t ____________ as you expect.
   A make out    B break out    C work out    D get out
9 Why are all these people here? What’s ____________?
   A going off    B getting off    C going on    D getting on
10 It’s a very busy airport. There are planes ____________ or landing every few minutes.
   A going up    B taking off    C getting up    D driving off
11 The traffic was moving slowly because a bus had ____________ and was blocking the road.
   A broken down    B fallen down    C fallen over    D broken up
12 How are you ____________ in your new job? Are you enjoying it?
   A keeping on    B going on    C carrying on    D getting on

39 Complete the sentences. Use two words each time.
1 Keep ____________ the edge of the pool. You might fall in.
2 I didn’t notice that the two pictures were different until Liz pointed it ____________ me.
3 I asked Dan if he had any suggestions about what we should do, but he didn’t come ____________ anything.
4 I’m glad Sarah is coming to the party. I’m really looking ____________ seeing her again.
5 Things are changing all the time. It’s difficult to keep ____________ all these changes.
6 Unfortunately I ran ____________ film, so I couldn’t take any more photographs.
7 Don’t let me interrupt you. Carry ____________ your work.
8 Steve was very happy in his job until he fell ____________ his boss. After that, it was impossible for them to work together, and Steve decided to leave.
9 I’ve had enough of being treated like this. I’m not going to put ____________ it any more.
10 I didn’t enjoy the trip very much at the time, but when I look ____________ it now, I realise it was a good experience and I’m glad I went on it.
11 The wedding was supposed to be a secret, so how did you find ____________ it?
   Did Jenny tell you?
12 There is a very nice atmosphere in the office where I work. Everybody gets ____________ everybody else.
40 Complete each sentence using a phrasal verb that means the same as the words in brackets.

1. The football match had to be **cancelled off** because of the weather.  
   (cancelled)
2. The story Kate told wasn’t true. She **made it up**.  
   (invented it)
3. A bomb **exploded** near the station, but no-one was injured.  
   (exploded)
4. George finally **arrived** nearly an hour late.  
   (arrived)
5. Here’s an application form. Can you **complete it** and sign it, please?  
   (complete it)
6. A number of buildings are going to be **demolished** to make way for the new road.  
   (demolished)
7. I’m having a few problems with my computer which need to be **put right** as soon as possible.  
   (put right)
8. Be positive! You must never **stop trying**!  
   (stop trying)
9. I was very tired and **fell asleep** in front of the television.  
   (fell asleep)
10. After eight years together, they’ve decided to **separate**.  
    (separate)
11. The noise is terrible. I can’t **tolerate it** any longer.  
    (tolerate it)
12. We don’t have a lot of money, but we have enough to **manage**.  
    (manage)
13. I’m sorry I’m late. The meeting **continued** later than I expected.  
    (continued)
14. We need to make a decision today at the latest. We can’t **delay it** any longer.  
    (delay it)

41 Complete the sentences. Use one word each time.

1. You’re driving too fast. Please **slow** down.
2. It was only a small fire and I managed to **put out** it with a bucket of water.
3. The house is empty at the moment, but I think the new tenants are **in** next week.
4. I’ve **put on** weight. My clothes don’t fit any more.
5. Their house is really nice now. They’ve **changed it up** really well.
6. I was talking to the woman sitting next to me on the plane, and it **came out** that she works for the same company as my brother.
7. ‘Do you know what happened?’ ‘Not yet, but I’m going to **figure it out**.’
8. There’s no need to get angry. **Stay down**!
9. If you’re going on a long walk, plan your route carefully before you **go off**.
10. Sarah has just phoned to say that she’ll be late. She’s been **stuck up**.
11. You’ve written my name wrong. It’s Martin, not Marin – you **spelled it out** the T.
12. Three days at £45 a day – that **works out** at £135.
13. We had a really interesting discussion, but Jane didn’t **agree** in. She just listened.
14. Jonathan is pretty fit. He **goes out** in the gym every day.
15. Come and see us more often. You must **come in** any time you like.
16. We are still discussing the contract. There are still a couple of things to **discuss out**.
17. My alarm clock **went off** in the middle of the night and **woke** me up.
**Study guide**

This guide is to help you decide which units you need to study. The sentences in the guide are grouped together (Present and past, Articles and nouns etc.) in the same way as the units in the Contents (pages iii–vi).

Each sentence can be completed using one or more of the alternatives (A, B, C etc.). There are between two and five alternatives each time. IN SOME SENTENCES MORE THAN ONE ALTERNATIVE IS POSSIBLE.

If you don't know or if you are not sure which alternatives are correct, then you probably need to study the unit(s) in the list on the right. You will also find the correct sentence in this unit. (If two or three units are listed, you will find the correct sentence in the first one.)

There is a key to this study guide on page 372.

### IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

#### Present and past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>STUDY UNIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>At first I didn’t like my job, but ____________ to enjoy it now.</td>
<td>A I'm beginning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>I don’t understand this sentence. What ________________?</td>
<td>A does mean this word</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>Robert ____________ away two or three times a year.</td>
<td>A is going usually</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>How ________________ now? Better than before?</td>
<td>A you are feeling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>It was a boring weekend. ________________ anything.</td>
<td>A I didn't</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>Matt ________________ while we were having dinner.</td>
<td>A phoned</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Present perfect and past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>STUDY UNIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>Jim is on holiday. He ____________ to Italy.</td>
<td>A is gone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>Everything is going well. We ________________ any problems so far.</td>
<td>A didn’t have</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>Sarah has lost her passport again. It’s the second time this ________________ .</td>
<td>A has happened</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>You’re out of breath. ________________ ?</td>
<td>A Are you running</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>Where’s the book I gave you? What ________________ with it?</td>
<td>A have you done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>________________ each other for a long time? ‘Yes, since we were at school.’</td>
<td>A Do you know</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>Sally has been working here ________________ .</td>
<td>A for six months</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>326</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

2.8 It's two years _______________ Joe.
A that I don't see   B that I haven't seen   C since I didn't see
D since I last saw

2.9 It _______________ raining for a while, but now it's raining again.
A stopped     B has stopped     C was stopped

2.10 My mother _______________ in Scotland.
A grew up     B has grown up     C had grown up

2.11 _______________ a lot of sweets when you were a child?
A Have you eaten     B Had you eaten     C Did you eat

2.12 Ian _______________ in Scotland for ten years. Now he lives in London.
A lived     B has lived     C has been living

2.13 The man sitting next to me on the plane was very nervous. He _______________ before.
A hasn't flown     B didn't fly     C hadn't flown     D wasn't flying

2.14 Cathy was sitting in an armchair resting. She was tired because
_______________ very hard.
A she was working     B she's been working     C she'd been working

2.15 _______________ a car when you were living in London?
A Had you     B Were you having     C Have you had     D Did you have

2.16 I _______________ tennis a lot, but I don't play very often now.
A was playing     B was used to play     C used to play

Future

3.1 I'm tired. _______________ to bed now. Goodnight.
A I go     B I'm going

3.2 _______________ tomorrow, so we can go out somewhere.
A I'm not working     B I don't work     C I won't work

3.3 That bag looks heavy. _______________ you with it.
A I'm helping     B I help     C I'll help

3.4 I think the weather _______________ be nice this afternoon.
A will     B shall     C is going to

3.5 'Ann is in hospital.' 'Yes, I know. _______________ her this evening.'
A I visit     B I'm going to visit     C I'll visit

3.6 We're late. The film _______________ by the time we get to the cinema.
A will already start     B will be already started     C will already have started

3.7 Don't worry _______________ late tonight.
A if I'm     B when I'm     C when I'll be     D if I'll be
### IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

#### Modals

4.1 The fire spread through the building very quickly, but fortunately everybody

| A was able to escape | B managed to escape | C could escape |

4.2 I’m so tired I ____________________ for a week.

| A can sleep | B could sleep | B could have slept |

4.3 The story ____________________ be true, but I don’t think it is.

| A might | B can | C could | D may |

4.4 Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in Paris? You ____________________ with Julia.

| A can stay | B could stay | C could have stayed |

4.5 ‘I’ve lost one of my gloves.’ ‘You ____________________ it somewhere.’

| A must drop | B must have dropped | C must be dropping | D must have been dropping |

4.6 ‘I was surprised that Kate wasn’t at the meeting yesterday.’ ‘She ____________________ about it.’

| A might not know | B may not know | C might not have known | D may not have known |

4.7 What was the problem? Why ____________________ leave early?

| A had you to | B did you have to | C must you | D you had to |

4.8 We’ve got plenty of time. We ____________________ hurry.

| A don’t need to | B mustn’t | C needn’t |

4.9 You missed a great party last night. You ____________________ . Why didn’t you?

| A must have come | B should have come | C ought to have come | D had to come |

4.10 Jane ____________________ a car with the money I’d won in the lottery.

| A suggested that I buy | B suggested that I should buy | C suggested me to buy | D suggested that I bought |

4.11 You’re always at home. You ____________________ out more often.

| A should go | B had better go | C had better to go |

4.12 It’s late. It’s time ____________________ home.

| A we go | B we must go | C we should go | D we went | E to go |

4.13 ____________________ a bit longer, but I really have to go now.

| A I’d stay | B I’ll stay | C I can stay | D I’d have stayed |

#### If and wish

5.1 I’m not tired enough to go to bed. If I ____________________ to bed now, I wouldn’t sleep.

| A go | B went | C had gone | D would go |

5.2 If I were rich, ____________________ a yacht.

| A I’ll have | B I can have | C I’d have | D I had |

5.3 I wish I ____________________ have to work tomorrow, but unfortunately I do.

| A don’t | B didn’t | C wouldn’t | D won’t |
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

5.4 The view was wonderful. If ____________ a camera with me, I would have taken some photographs.
A I had B I would have C I would have had D I'd had

5.5 The weather is horrible. I wish it ____________ raining.
A would stop B stopped C stops D will stop

Passive

6.1 We ____________ by a loud noise during the night.
A woke up B are woken up C were woken up D were waking up

6.2 A new supermarket is going to ____________ next year.
A build B be build C be building D building

6.3 There's somebody walking behind us. I think ____________.
A we are following B we are being following C we are followed D we are being followed

6.4 ‘Where ____________?’ ‘In London.’
A were you born B are you born C have you been born D did you born

6.5 There was a fight at the party, but nobody ____________.
A was hurt B got hurt C hurt

6.6 Jane ____________ to phone me last night, but she didn’t.
A supposed B is supposed C was supposed

6.7 Where ____________? Which hairdresser did you go to?
A did you cut your hair B have you cut your hair C did you have cut your hair D did you have your hair cut

Reported speech

7.1 Paul left the room suddenly. He said he ____________ to go.
A had B has C have

7.2 Hello, Joe. I didn’t expect to see you today. Sonia said you ____________ in hospital.
A are B were C was D should be

7.3 Ann ____________ and left.
A said goodbye to me B said me goodbye C told me goodbye

Questions and auxiliary verbs

8.1 ‘What time ____________?’ ‘At 8.30.’
A begins the film B does begin the film C does the film begin

8.2 ‘Do you know where ____________?’ ‘No, he didn’t say.’
A Tom has gone B has Tom gone C has gone Tom

8.3 The police officer stopped us and asked us where ____________.
A were we going B are we going C we are going D we were going
**If You Are Not Sure Which Is Right**

8.4  ‘Do you think it will rain?’

A I hope not.  B I don’t hope.  C I don’t hope so.

8.5  ‘You don’t know where Karen is, _____________?’  ‘Sorry, I have no idea.’

A don’t you  B do you  C is she  D are you

**-ing and the infinitive**

9.1  You can’t stop me _____________ what I want.

A doing  B do  C to do  D that I do

9.2  I must go now. I promised _____________ late.

A not being  B not to be  C to not be  D I wouldn’t be

9.3  Do you want _____________ with you or do you want to go alone?

A me coming  B me to come  C that I come  D that I will come

9.4  I know I locked the door. I clearly remember _____________ it.

A locking  B to lock  C to have locked

9.5  She tried to be serious, but she couldn’t help _____________.

A laughing  B to laugh  C that she laughed  D laugh

9.6  Paul lives in Berlin now. He likes _____________ there.

A living  B to live

9.7  It’s not my favourite job, but I like _____________ the kitchen as often as possible.

A cleaning  B clean  C to clean  D that I clean

9.8  I’m tired. I’d rather _____________ out this evening, if you don’t mind.

A not going  B not to go  C don’t go  D not go

9.9  ‘Shall I stay here?’  ‘I’d rather _____________ with us.’

A you come  B you to come  C you came  D you would come

9.10  Are you looking forward _____________ on holiday?

A going  B to go  C to going  D that you go

9.11  When Lisa came to Britain, she had to get used _____________ on the left.

A driving  B to driving  C to drive

9.12  I’m thinking _____________ a house. Do you think that’s a good idea?

A to buy  B of to buy  C of buying

9.13  I had no _____________ a place to live. In fact it was surprisingly easy.

A difficulty to find  B difficulty finding  C trouble to find  D trouble finding

9.14  A friend of mine phoned _____________ me to a party.

A for invite  B to invite  C for inviting  D for to invite

9.15  Jim doesn’t speak very clearly. _____________

A It is difficult to understand him.  B He is difficult to understand.

C He is difficult to understand him.
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

9.16 The path was icy, so we walked very carefully. We were afraid ...........................................
A of falling  B from falling  C to fall  D to falling

9.17 I didn’t hear you ........................................ in. You must have been very quiet.
A come  B to come  C came

9.18 ........................................ a hotel, we looked for somewhere to have dinner.
A Finding  B After finding  C Having found  D We found

Articles and nouns

10.1 It wasn’t your fault. It was ........................................
A accident  B an accident  C some accident

10.2 Where are you going to put all your ........................................
A furniture  B furnitures

10.3 ‘Where are you going?’ ‘I’m going to buy ........................................’
A a bread  B some bread  C a loaf of bread

10.4 Sandra is ........................................ . She works at a large hospital.
A nurse  B a nurse  C the nurse

10.5 Helen works six days ........................................ week.
A in  B for  C a  D the

10.6 There are millions of stars in ........................................
A space  B a space  C the space

10.7 Every day ........................................ begins at 9 and finishes at 3.
A school  B a school  C the school

10.8 ........................................ a problem in most big cities.
A Crime is  B The crime is  C The crimes are

10.9 When ........................................ invented?
A was telephone  B were telephones  C were the telephones
D was the telephone

10.10 Have you been to ........................................ ?
A Canada or United States  B the Canada or the United States
C Canada or the United States  D the Canada or United States

10.11 On our first day in Moscow, we visited ........................................
A Kremlin  B a Kremlin  C the Kremlin

10.12 What time ........................................ on television?
A is the news  B are the news  C is news  D is the new

10.13 It took us quite a long time to get here. It was ........................................ journey.
A three hour  B a three-hours  C a three-hour

10.14 This isn’t my book. It’s ........................................
A my sister  B my sister’s  C from my sister  D of my sister
E of my sister’s
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

Pronouns and determiners

11.1 What time shall we ___________ tomorrow?
   A meet  B meet us  C meet ourselves

11.2 I’m going to a wedding on Saturday. ___________ is getting married.
   A A friend of me  B A friend of mine  C One my friends

11.3 They live on a busy road. ___________ a lot of noise from the traffic.
   A It must be  B It must have  C There must have  D There must be

11.4 He’s lazy. He never does ___________ work.
   A some  B any  C no

11.5 ‘What would you like to eat?’ ‘I don’t mind. ___________ – whatever you have.’
   A Something  B Anything  C Nothing

11.6 We couldn’t buy anything because ___________ of the shops were open.
   A all  B no-one  C none  D nothing

11.7 We went shopping and spent ___________ money.
   A a lot of  B much  C lots of  D many

11.8 ___________ don’t visit this part of the town.
   A The most tourists  B Most of tourists  C Most tourists

11.9 I asked two people the way to the station, but ___________ of them could help me.
   A none  B either  C both  D neither

11.10 ___________ enjoyed the party. It was great.
   A Everybody  B All  C All of us  D Everybody of us

11.11 The bus service is excellent. There’s a bus ___________ ten minutes.
   A each  B every  C all

Relative clauses

12.1 I don’t like stories ___________ have unhappy endings.
   A that  B they  C which  D who

12.2 I didn’t believe them at first, but in fact everything ___________ was true.
   A they said  B that they said  C what they said

12.3 What’s the name of the man ___________?
   A you borrowed his car  B which car you borrowed
   C whose car you borrowed  D his car you borrowed

12.4 Colin told me about his new job, ___________ very much.
   A that he’s enjoying  B which he’s enjoying  C he’s enjoying
   D he’s enjoying it

12.5 Sarah couldn’t meet us, ___________ was a pity.
   A that  B it  C what  D which

12.6 George showed me some pictures ___________ by his father.
   A painting  B painted  C that were painted  D they were painted

STUDY UNIT

82  83  84  85  86  87  88  89  90  90, 91

332


**IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT**

### Adjectives and adverbs

13.1 Jane doesn’t enjoy her job any more. She’s ________________ because every day she does exactly the same thing.
   A boring  B bored

13.2 Lisa was carrying a ________________ bag.
   A black small plastic  B small and black plastic  C small black plastic  D plastic small black

13.3 Maria’s English is excellent. She speaks ________________ .
   A perfectly English  B English perfectly  C perfect English  D English perfect

13.4 He ________________ to find a job, but he had no luck.
   A tried hard  B tried hardly  C hardly tried

13.5 I haven’t seen her for ________________, I’ve forgotten what she looks like.
   A so long  B so long time  C a such long time  D such a long time

13.6 We haven’t got ________________ on holiday at the moment.
   A money enough to go  B enough money to go  C money enough for going  D enough money for going

13.7 Sally is doing OK at the moment. She has ________________ .
   A a quite good job  B quite a good job  C a pretty good job

13.8 The exam was fairly easy – ________________ I expected.
   A more easy that  B more easy than  C easier than  D easier as

13.9 The more electricity you use, ________________ .
   A your bill will be higher  B will be higher your bill  C the higher your bill will be  D higher your bill will be

13.10 Patrick is a fast runner. I can’t run as fast as ________________ .
   A he  B him  C he can

13.11 The film was really boring. It was ________________ I’ve ever seen.
   A most boring film  B the more boring film  C the film more boring  D the most boring film

13.12 Ben likes walking. ________________
   A Every morning he walks to work.  B He walks to work every morning.
   C He walks every morning to work.  D He every morning walks to work.

13.13 Joe never phones me. ________________
   A Always I have to phone him.  B I always have to phone him.
   C I have always to phone him.  D I have to phone always him.

13.14 Lucy ________________. She left last month.
   A still doesn’t work here  B doesn’t still work here
   C no more works here  D doesn’t work here any more.

13.15 ________________ she can’t drive, she has bought a car.
   A Even  B Even when  C Even if  D Even though
**IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT**

**Conjunctions and prepositions**

14.1 I couldn’t sleep __________ very tired.
   A although I was B despite I was C despite of being D in spite of being
   113

14.2 You should insure your bike __________ stolen.
   A in case it will be B if it will be C in case it is D if it is
   114

14.3 The club is for members only. You __________ you’re a member.
   A can’t go in if B can go in only if C can’t go in unless D can go in unless
   115

14.4 Yesterday we watched television all evening __________ we didn’t have anything better to do.
   A when B as C while D since
   116

14.5 ‘What’s that noise?’ ‘It sounds __________ a baby crying.’
   A as B like C as if D as though
   117, 118

14.6 They are very kind to me. They treat me __________ their own son.
   A like I’m B as if I’m C as if I was D as if I were
   118

14.7 I’ll be in London next week. I hope to see Tom __________ there.
   A while I’ll be B while I’m C during my visit D during I’m
   119

14.8 David is away at the moment. I don’t know exactly when he’s coming back, but I’m sure he’ll be back __________ Monday.
   A by B until

**Prepositions**

15.1 Goodbye! I’ll see you __________.
   A at Friday morning B on Friday morning C in Friday morning D Friday morning
   121

15.2 I’m going away __________ the end of January.
   A at B on C in
   122

15.3 When we were in Italy, we spent a few days __________ Venice.
   A at B to C in
   123, 125

15.4 Our flat is __________ the second floor of the building.
   A at B on C in D to
   124

15.5 I saw Steve __________ a concert on Saturday.
   A at B on C in D to
   125

15.6 When did they __________ the hotel?
   A arrive to B arrive at C arrive in D get to E get in
   126

15.7 I’m going __________ holiday next week. I’ll be away for two weeks.
   A at B on C in D for
   127

15.8 We travelled __________ 6.45 train, which arrived at 8.30.
   A in the B on the C by the D by
   128

15.9 ‘Have you read anything __________ Ernest Hemingway?’ ‘No, what sort of books did he write?’
   A of B from C by
   128
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

15.10 The accident was my fault, so I had to pay for the damage
A of B for C to D on E at

15.11 I like them very much. They have always been very nice
A of B for C to D with

15.12 I'm not very good repairing things.
A at B for C in D about

15.13 I don't understand this sentence. Can you?
A explain to me this word B explain me this word
C explain this word to me

15.14 If you're worried about the problem, you should do something
A for B about C against D with

15.15 'Who is Tom Hart?' 'I have no idea. I've never heard
A about B from C after D of

15.16 'What time will you be home?' 'I don't know. It depends
A of B for C from D on

15.17 I prefer tea coffee.
A to B than C against D over

Phrasal verbs

16.1 These shoes are uncomfortable. I'm going to
A take off B take them off C take off them

16.2 We're playing a game. Why don't you?
A join in B come in C get in D break in

16.3 Nobody believed Paul at first, but he to be right.
A worked out B came out C found out D turned out

16.4 We can't making a decision. We have to decide now.
A put away B put over C put off D put out

16.5 'Have you finished painting the kitchen?' 'Nearly. I'll
tomorrow.'
A finish it up B finish it over C finish it off

16.6 You can always rely on Pete. He'll never
A put you up B let you down C take you over D see you off

16.7 Children under half the population of the city.
A make up B put up C take up D bring up

16.8 I'm surprised to hear that Sue and Paul have . They seemed very
happy together when I last saw them.
A broken up B ended up C finished up D split up

16.9 I parked in a no-parking zone, but I
A came up with B got away with C made off with D got on with
Key to Exercises

In some of the exercises you have to use your own ideas to write sentences. Example answers are given in the Key. If possible, check your answers with somebody who speaks English well.

UNIT 1

1.1
1 I'm looking / am looking
2 I'm getting / is getting
3 I'm staying / are staying
4 I'm losing
5 I'm starting / is starting
6 I'm making / am making ...
7 I'm trying / am trying
8 I'm happening / is happening

1.2
3 I'm not listening / am not listening
4 I'm having / is having
5 I'm not eating / am not eating
6 I'm learning / is learning
7 I'm not speaking / re not speaking / are not speaking
8 I'm getting / am getting
9 I'm not working / is not working

1.3
1 What's / What is he studying
2 He's studying / his studying
3 He's not enjoying / he's not enjoying
4 He's beginning / he is beginning

1.4
2 I'm changing
3 I'm getting / is getting
4 I'm rising
5 I'm beginning

UNIT 2

2.1
2 drink
3 opens
4 causes
5 live
6 take
7 connects

2.2
2 do the banks close
3 don't use
4 does Martin come
5 do you do
6 takes ... does it take
7 does this word mean
8 doesn't do
9 doesn't believe
10 translates
11 don't tell
12 flows

2.4
2 Does your sister play tennis?
3 Which newspaper do you read?
4 What does your brother do?
5 How often do you go to the cinema?
6 Where do your grandparents live?

2.5
2 I promise
3 I insist
4 I apologise
5 I recommend

UNIT 3

3.1
3 I'm trying
4 Are they talking
5 OK
6 It's getting / It is getting
7 OK
8 I'm coming / I am coming
9 are you getting
10 He always gets
11 OK

3.2
3 I'm waiting / is waiting
4 Are you listening
5 Do you listen
6 flows
7 I'm flowing / is flowing
8 grow ... aren't growing / re not growing / are not growing
9 I'm improving / is improving
10 I'm staying / is staying ...
11 I'm starting / am starting
12 I'm learning / am learning ...'s teaching / is teaching
13 finish ... I'm working / am working
14 live ... do your parents live
15 I'm looking / is looking ... I'm staying / is staying
16 does your brother do ... isn't working / not working / is not working
17 enjoy ... I'm not enjoying / am not enjoying

3.3
2 It's always breaking down.
3 I'm always making the same mistake. / ... that mistake.

UNIT 4

4.1
2 Do you believe
3 OK
4 It tastes
5 I think

4.2
2 What are you doing?
3 I'm thinking.
4 Who does this umbrella belong to?
5 The dinner smells good.
6 Is anybody sitting there?
7 These gloves don't fit me.

4.3
2 I'm using / am using
3 need
4 does he want
5 is he looking
6 believes
7 don't remember / do not remember or can't remember
8 I'm thinking / am thinking
9 think ... don't use
10 consists

4.4
2 I'm being / is being
3 I'm / is
4 are you being
5 Is he

UNIT 5

5.1
2 had
3 She walked to work
4 It took her (about) half an hour
5 She started work
6 She didn't have (any) lunch. / ... (any) lunch.
7 She finished work
8 She was tired when she got home.
9 She cooked
10 She didn't go
11 She went to bed
12 She slept

5.2
2 taught
3 sold
4 fell ... hurt
5 threw ... caught
6 spent ... bought ... cost
5.3
2 Did you travel / did you go
3 Did it take (you) / were you there
4 Did you stay
5 Was the weather good/nice? or Did you have good/nice weather?
6 Did you go to / Did you see / Did you visit

5.4
3 didn't disturb
4 left
5 didn't sleep
6 flew
7 didn't cost
8 didn't have
9 were

UNIT 6

6.1
Example answers:
3 I was working.
4 I was in bed asleep.
5 I was getting ready to go out.
6 I was watching TV at home.

6.2
Example answers:
2 was having a shower
3 were waiting for the bus
4 was reading the paper
5 was watching it

6.3
didn't see ... was looking
2 met ... were going ... was going ... had ... were waiting / waited
3 was cycling ... stepped ... was going ... managed ... didn't hit

6.4
2 were you doing
3 Did you go
4 were you driving ... happened
5 took ... wasn't looking
6 didn't know
7 saw ... was trying
8 was walking ... heard ... was following ... started
9 wanted
10 dropped ... was doing ... didn't break

UNIT 7

7.1
2 She's broken her leg. / She has broken ...
3 The bus fare has gone up.
4 Her English has improved.
5 He's grown a beard. / He has grown ...
6 The letter has arrived.
7 The temperature has fallen.

UNIT 8

8.1
2 Have you ever been to California?
3 Have you ever run (in) a marathon?
4 Have you ever spoken to a famous person?
5 What's the most beautiful place you've ever visited?

8.2
2 haven't seen
3 haven't eaten
4 I haven't played (it)
5 I've had / I have had
6 I haven't read
7 I've never been / I haven't been
8 's been / has been
9 I've never tried / I haven't tried or I've never eaten / I haven't eaten
10 it's happened / it has happened or that's happened / that has happened
11 I've never seen / I haven't seen

8.3
2 haven’t read one / haven't read a newspaper
3 it's made a loss / it has made a loss / it hasn't made a profit
4 she hasn't worked hard this term
5 it hasn't snowed (much) this winter

UNIT 9

9.1
2 's been watching television / has been watching television
3 've been playing tennis / have been playing tennis
4 's been running / has been running

9.2
2 Have you been waiting long?
3 What have you been doing?
4 How long have you been working there?
5 How long have you been selling computers?

9.3
2 've been waiting / have been waiting
3 've been learning Spanish / have been learning Spanish
4 She's been working there / She has been working there
5 They've been going there / They have been going there

UNIT 10

10.1
2 She's been travelling for three months. / She has been travelling ...
3 She's visited six countries so far. / She has visited ...
3 He's won the national championships four times. / He's has won ... He's been playing tennis since he was ten. / He's been playing ...
4 They've made five films since they left college. / They have made ... They've been making films since they left college. / They have been making ...

10.2
2 Have you been waiting long?
3 Have you caught any fish?
4 How many people have you invited?
5 How long have you been teaching?
6 How many books have you written?
7 How long have you been saving?
8 How much money have you saved?

10.3
2 Somebody's broken / Somebody has broken
3 Have you been working
4 Have you ever worked
5 has she gone
6 He's appeared / He has appeared
7 I haven't been waiting
8 it's stopped / it has stopped
9 I've lost / I have lost ... Have you seen
10 I've been reading / I have been reading ... I haven't finished
11 I've read / I have read

UNIT 11

11.1
3 have been married
4 OK
5 It's been raining / It has been raining
6 have you been living
7 has been working
8 OK
9 I haven't drunk
10 have you had

11.2
2 How long have you been teaching English? / How long have you taught ...
3 How long have you known Caroline?
4 How long has your brother been in Australia?

5 How long have you had that jacket?
6 How long has Joe been working at the airport? / How long has Joe worked ...
7 How long have you been learning to drive?
8 Have you always lived in Chicago?

11.3
3 's been / has been
4 've been waiting / have been waiting
5 've known / have known
6 haven't played
7 've been watching / has been watching
8 haven't watched
9 've had / have had
10 hasn't been
11 've been feeling / have been feeling or 've felt / have felt
12 's lived / has lived or 's been living / has been living
13 haven't been
14 've always wanted / have always wanted

UNIT 12

12.1
2 since
3 for
4 for
5 since
6 for
7 since
8 since
9 for

12.2
2 How long has Kate been learning Japanese?
3 When did Kate start learning Japanese?
4 How long have you known Simon?
5 When did you first meet Simon? / When did you and Simon first meet?
6 How long have Rebecca and David been married?
7 When did Rebecca and David get married? / When did Rebecca and David marry?

12.3
3 He has been ill since Sunday.
4 He has been ill for a few days.
5 She got married a year ago.
6 I've had a headache since I woke up.
7 She went to Italy three weeks ago.
8 I've been working in a hotel for six months. / I've worked in a hotel for six months.

12.4
2 No, I haven't seen Sarah/her for about a month.
3 No, I haven't been to the cinema for a long time.
4 No, I haven't eaten in a restaurant for ages. / No, I haven't been to a restaurant for ages.
5 No, it's about a month since I last saw Sarah/her. / No, it's been about a month since ...
6 No, it's a long time since I last went to the cinema. / No, it's been a long time since ...
7 No, it's ages since I last ate in a restaurant. / No, it's been ages since ... or ... since I went to a restaurant.

UNIT 13

13.1
2 has gone
3 forgot
4 went
5 had
6 has broken

13.2
3 've forgotten / have forgotten
4 arrested
5 's improved / has improved
6 've finished / have finished
7 applied
8 was
9 's been / has been
10 broke or 's broken / has broken ... did (that) happen ...
11 fell

13.3
3 did Shakespeare write
4 OK
5 OK
6 The Chinese invented
7 were you born
8 OK
9 Albert Einstein was ... who developed

UNIT 14

14.1
3 OK
4 I bought
5 Where were you
6 Lucy left school
7 OK
8 OK
9 OK
10 When was this book published?

14.2
2 The weather has been cold recently.
3 It was cold last week.
14.3
2 got ... was ... went
3 Have you finished or Did you finish
4 wasn't / was not
5 worked
6 's lived / has lived
7 Did you go ... was ... was
8 died ... never met
9 've never met / have never met
10 's gone / has gone or went ... did he go
11 have you lived / have you been living ... did you live ... did you live

14.4
Example answers:
2 I haven't bought anything today.
3 I didn't watch TV yesterday.
4 I went out with some friends yesterday evening.
5 I haven't been to the cinema recently.
6 I've read a lot of books recently.

UNIT 15

15.1
2 It had changed a lot.
3 She'd arranged to do something else. / She had arranged ...
4 The film had already begun.
5 I hadn't seen him for five years.
6 She'd just had breakfast. / She had just had ...

15.2
2 I'd never seen her before. / I had never seen ...
3 He'd never played (tennis) before. / He had never played ...
4 We'd never been there before. / We had never been ...

15.3
1 called the police
2 there was ... had gone
3 He'd just come back from / He had just come back from
He looked

UNIT 16

16.1
2 They'd been playing football. / They had been playing ...
3 I'd been looking forward to it. / I had been looking forward ...
4 She'd been dreaming. / She had been dreaming.
5 He'd been watching a film. / He had been watching ...

16.2
2 I'd been waiting for 20 minutes when I (suddenly) realised that I was in the wrong restaurant. or ... that I had come to the wrong restaurant.
3 At the time the factory closed down, Sarah had been working there for five years.
4 The orchestra had been playing for about ten minutes when a man in the audience started shouting.

Example answer:
I'd been walking along the road for about ten minutes when a car suddenly stopped just behind me.

16.3
3 was walking
4 'd been running / had been running
5 were eating
6 'd been eating / had been eating
7 was looking
8 was waiting ... 'd been waiting / had been waiting ...
9 'd had / had had
10 'd been travelling / had been travelling

UNIT 17

17.1
3 I haven't got a ladder. / I don't have a ladder.
4 We didn't have enough time.
5 He didn't have a map.
6 She hasn't got any money. / She doesn't have any money.
7 I haven't got enough energy. / I don't have enough energy.
8 They didn't have a camera.

17.2
2 Have you got / Do you have
3 Did you have
4 Have you got / Do you have
5 Have you got / Do you have
6 did you have
7 Did you have

17.3
Example answers:
2 I haven't got a bike (now).
3 I had a bike (ten years ago).
4 I've got a mobile phone (now).
5 I didn't have a mobile phone (ten years ago).
6 I've got a dog (now).
7 I didn't have a dog (ten years ago).
8 I've got a guitar (now).
9 I had a guitar (ten years ago).
10 I haven't got long hair (now).
11 I didn't have long hair (ten years ago).
12 I've got a driving licence (now).
13 I didn't have a driving licence (ten years ago).

17.4
2 has a break
3 had a party
4 have a look
5 's having / is having a nice time
6 had a chat
7 Did you have difficulty
8 had a baby
9 was having a shower
10 Did you have a good flight?

UNIT 18

18.1
2 used to have/ride
3 used to live
4 used to eat/like/love
5 used to be
6 used to take
7 used to be
8 did you use to go

18.2
3-6
He used to go to bed early.
He didn't use to go out in the evening.
He used to run three miles every morning.
He didn't use to spend much money. / ... a lot of money.
18.3
2-10
She used to have lots of friends, but she doesn't know many people these days.
She used to be very lazy, but she works very hard these days.
She didn't use to like cheese, but she eats lots of cheese now.
She used to be a hotel receptionist, but she works in a bookshop now.
She used to play the piano, but she hasn't played the piano for years.
She never used to read newspapers, but she reads a newspaper every day now.
She didn't use to drink tea, but she likes it now.
She used to have a dog, but it died two years ago.
She used to go to a lot of parties, but she hasn't been to a party for ages.

UNIT 19
19.1
2 How long are you going for?
3 When are you leaving?
4 Are you going alone?
5 Are you travelling by car?
6 Where are you staying?
19.2
2 I'm working late. I'm working till 9 o'clock.
3 I'm going to the theatre.
4 I'm meeting Julia.
19.3
Example answers:
2 I'm working tomorrow morning.
3 I'm not doing anything tomorrow evening.
4 I'm playing football next Sunday.
5 I'm going to a party this evening.
19.4
3 're having / are having
4 finishes
5 'm not going / am not going... 'm staying / am staying
6 Are you doing
7 're going / are going... starts
8 'm leaving / am leaving
9 're meeting / are meeting
10 does this train get
11 'm going / am going... Are you coming
12 does it end
13 'm not using / am not using

UNIT 20
20.1
2 What are you going to wear?
3 Where are you going to put it?
4 Who are you going to invite?
20.2
2 I'm going to take it back.
3 I'm not going to accept it.
4 I'm going to phone her tonight.
5 I'm going to complain.
20.3
2 He's going to be late.
3 The boat is going to sink.
4 They're going to run out of petrol.
20.4
2 was going to buy
3 were going to play
4 was going to phone
5 was going to give up
6 were going to have

UNIT 21
21.1
2 I'll turn / I'll switch / I'll put
3 I'll go
4 I'll do
5 I'll show / I'll teach
6 I'll have
7 I'll send
8 I'll give / I'll bring
9 I'll stay / I'll wait
21.2
2 I'll go to bed.
3 I think I'll walk.
4 I'll play tennis (today).
5 I don't think I'll go swimming.
21.3
2 I'll meet
3 I'll lend
4 I'm having
5 I won't forget
6 does your train leave
8 won't tell
9 Are you doing
10 Will you come

UNIT 22
22.1
2 I'm going
3 will get
4 is coming
5 we're going
6 it won't hurt
22.2
2 will look
3 'll like / will like
4 'll get / will get
5 will live
6 'll meet / will meet
7 'll come / will come
8 will be
22.3
2 won't
3 'll / will
4 won't
5 'll / will
6 won't
22.4
Example answers:
2 I'll be in bed.
3 I'll be at work.
4 I'll probably be at home.
5 I don't know where I'll be this time next year.
22.5
2 Do you think it will rain?
3 When do you think it will end?
4 How much do you think it will cost?
5 Do you think they'll get married? / ... they will get married?
6 What time do you think you'll be back? / ... you will be back?
7 What do you think will happen?

UNIT 23
23.1
2 I'll lend
3 I'll get
4 I'm going to wash
5 are you going to paint
6 I'm going to buy
7 I'll show
8 I'll have
9 I'll do
10 it's going to fall
11 He's going to have... he's going to do
23.2
2 I'm going to take... I'll join
3 you'll find
4 I'm not going to apply
5 You'll wake
6 I'll take... we'll leave...
7 Liz is going to take

340
UNIT 24

24.1
2 b is true
3 a and c are true
4 b and d are true
5 c and d are true
6 c is true

24.2
2 We'll have finished
3 we'll be playing
4 I'll be working
5 the meeting will have ended
6 he'll have spent
7 you'll still be doing
8 she'll have travelled
9 I'll be staying
10 Will you be seeing

UNIT 25

25.1
2 goes
3 'll tell / will tell ... come
4 see ... won't recognise / will not recognise
5 Will you be ... 'm/am
6 's/is
7 'll wait / will wait ... 're/are
8 'll be / will be ... gets
9 is
10 phones ... 'm/am

25.2
2 I'll give you my address when
3 I find somewhere to live. or
4 ... when I've found
5 somewhere to live.
6 I'll come straight back home
7 after I do the shopping. or
8 ... after I've done the
9 shopping.
10 Let's go home before it gets
11 dark.
12 I won't speak to her until she
13 apologises. or ... until she
14 has apologised.

25.3
2 you go / you leave
3 you decide or you've decided / you have decided
4 you're in New York / you go to New York
5 finish the new road / 've
6 finished the new road / have
7 finished the new road
8 or build the new road / 've
9 built the new road / have built
10 the new road

25.4
2 If
3 When
4 if
5 If
6 when
7 if

UNIT 26

26.1
3 can
4 be able to
5 been able to
6 can
7 be able to

26.2
Example answers:
2 I used to be able to run fast.
3 I'd like to be able to play the
4 piano.
5 I've never been able to get up
6 early.

26.3
2 could run
3 can wait
4 couldn't eat
5 can't hear
6 couldn't sleep

26.4
2 was able to finish it
3 were able to find it
4 was able to get away

26.5
4 couldn't
5 managed to
6 could
7 managed to
8 could
9 managed to
10 couldn't

UNIT 27

27.1
2 We could have fish.
3 You could phone (her) now.
4 You could give her a book.
5 We could hang it in the
6 kitchen.

27.2
3 I could kill him!
4 OK - could have is also
5 possible
6 I could stay here all day
7 it could be in the car
8 (may/might are also possible)
9 OK
10 OK - could borrow is also
11 possible
12 it could change later
13 (may/might are also possible)

27.3
2 could have come/gone
3 could apply
4 could have been
5 could have got/taken
6 could come

27.4
3 couldn't wear
4 couldn't have found
5 couldn't get
6 couldn't have been
7 couldn't have come/gone

UNIT 28

28.1
2 must
3 can't
4 must
5 must
6 can't
7 must
8 must
9 can't

28.2
3 be
4 have been
5 be
6 go or have been
7 be going
8 have taken / have stolen / have
9 moved
10 have been
11 be following

28.3
3 It must have been very
4 expensive.
5 They must have gone away.
6 I must have left it in the
7 restaurant last night.
8 He can't have seen me. or
9 He couldn't have seen me.
10 He must have been waiting
11 for somebody
12 She can't have understood
13 what I said. or She
14 couldn't have understood
15 what I said.
16 I must have forgotten to
17 lock it.
18 The neighbours must have
19 been having a party.
20 The driver can't have seen the
21 red light. or The driver
22 couldn't have seen ...

UNIT 29

29.1
2 She might be busy.
3 She might be working.
4 She might want to be alone.
5 She might have been ill
6 yesterday.
7 She might have gone home
8 early.
9 She might have had to go
10 home early.
11 She might have been working
12 yesterday.
13 She might not want to see me.
Key to Exercises

10. She might not be working today.
11. She might not have been feeling well yesterday.
You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

29.2
2 be
3 have been
4 be waiting
5 have

29.3
2 a She might be watching TV in her room.
  b She might have gone out.
3 a It might be in the car.
  b You might have left it in the restaurant last night.
4 a He might have gone to bed early.
  b He might not have heard the doorbell.
  c He might have been in the shower.
You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

29.4
3 might not have received it
4 couldn't have been an accident
5 couldn't have tried
6 might not have been American

UNIT 30

30.1
2 I might buy a Mercedes.
3 I might go to London.
4 He might come on Saturday.
5 I might hang it in the dining room.
6 She might go to university.
You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

30.2
2 might wake
3 might bite
4 might need
5 might slip
6 might break
You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

30.3
2 might be able to meet/see
3 might have to work
4 might have to go/leave
You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

30.4
2 I might not go out this evening.
3 We might not get tickets for the concert.
4 Sue might not be able to come out with us this evening.

You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

30.5
2 I might as well go to the concert.
3 We might as well paint the bathroom.
4 We might as well watch the film.
You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

UNIT 31

31.1
3 We had to close
4 She has to leave
5 do you have to be
6 I have to hurry
7 Does he have to travel
8 do you have to go
9 did you have to wait
10 had to do

31.2
3 have to make
4 don't have to do
5 had to ask
6 don't have to pay
7 didn't have to go
8 has to make
9 will have to drive

31.3
3 OK (have to is also correct)
4 He has to work.
5 I had to work late yesterday evening.
6 OK (have to is also correct)
7 She had to wear glasses since she was very young. (For the present perfect (has had) with for and since, see Units 11–12.)

31.4
3 don't have to
4 mustn't
5 don't have to
6 mustn't
7 doesn't have to
8 mustn't
9 mustn't
10 don't have to

UNIT 32

32.1
2 needn't come
3 needn't walk
4 needn't ask
5 needn't tell
6 needn't explain

32.2
3 needn't
4 must
5 mustn't

32.3
2 She needn't have bought (any) eggs.
3 You needn't have shouted at me.
4 He needn't have sold his car.
5 We needn't have taken the camcorder (with us).
6 I needn't have rushed (to the station).

32.4
2 You needn't have walked home. You could have taken a taxi.
3 You needn't have stayed at a hotel. You could have stayed with us.
4 She needn't have phoned me in the middle of the night. She could have waited until the morning.
5 You needn't have left without saying anything. You could have said goodbye.

UNIT 33

33.1
2 You should look for another job.
3 He shouldn't go to bed so late.
4 You should take a photograph.
5 She shouldn't use her car so much.
6 He should put some pictures on the walls.

33.2
2 I don't think you should go out. I think you should stay at home.
3 I think you should apply for it. / ... for the job.
4 I don't think the government should increase taxes.

33.3
3 should come
4 should do
5 should have done
6 should win
7 should have won
8 should be
9 should have arrived

33.4
3 We should have reserved a table.
4 The shop should be open (now). / The shop should have opened by now. or It should ...
UNIT 34
34.1
2 I should stay / I stay / I stayed
   a little longer
3 they should visit / they visit
   a / they visited the museum after
   lunch
4 we should pay / we pay / we
   paid the rent by Friday
5 I should go / I go / I went
   away for a few days
34.2
1 b OK
   c OK
   d wrong
2 a OK
   b wrong
   c OK
34.3
2 should say
3 should worry
4 should leave
5 should ask
6 should listen
34.4
2 If it should rain
3 If there should be
4 If anyone should ask
5 Should there be any problems
6 Should anyone ask (where I'm
   going)
34.5
2 I should keep
3 I should phone
4 I should buy
UNIT 35
35.1
2 You'd better put a plaster on it.
3 We'd better reserve a table.
4 You'd better not go to work.
5 I'd better pay the phone bill
   (soon).
6 I'd better not go out (yet).
7 We'd better take/get a taxi.
35.2
3 'd better
4 should
5 should
6 'd better
7 would
8 would
35.3
1 b 'd had
   c close/shut
   d hadn't
2 a did
   b was done
   c thought
35.4
2 It's time I had a holiday.
3 It's time the train left.
4 It's time we had a party.
5 It's time some changes were
   made.
6 It's time he tried something
   else.
UNIT 36
36.1
Example answers:
2 I wouldn't like to be a teacher.
3 I'd love to learn to fly a plane.
4 It would be nice to have a big
   garden.
5 I'd like to go to Mexico.
36.2
2 'd enjoy / would enjoy
3 'd have enjoyed / would have
   enjoyed
4 would you do
5 'd have stopped / would have
   stopped
6 would have been
7 'd be / would be
8 'd have passed / would have
   passed
9 would have
36.3
2 e
3 b
4 f
5 a
6 d
36.4
2 He promised he'd phone. / ... he
   would phone.
3 You promised you wouldn't
tell her.
4 They promised they'd wait
   (for us). / ... they would wait.
36.5
2 wouldn't tell
3 wouldn't speak
4 wouldn't let
36.6
2 would shake
3 would always help
4 would share
5 would always forget
UNIT 37
37.1
2 Can/Could I leave a message
   (for her)? or Can/Could
   you give her a message?
3 Can/Could you tell me how to
   get to the station? or ...
   the way to the station? or ...
   where the station is?
4 Can/Could I try on these
   trousers? or Can/Could I
   try these (trousers) on?
5 Can I give/offer you a lift?
37.2
3 Do you think you could check
   this letter (for me)? / ... check
   my letter?
4 Do you mind if I leave work
   early?
5 Do you think you could turn
   the music down? / ... turn it
   down?
6 Is it OK if I close the
   window?
7 Do you think I could have a
   look at your newspaper?
37.3
2 Can/Could/Would you show
   me? or Do you think you
   could show me? or ... do it
   for me?
3 Would you like to sit down?
   or Would you like a seat?
   or Can I offer you a seat?
4 Can/Could/Would you slow
   down? or Do you think
   you could ...?
5 Can/Could/May I/we have the
   bill, please? or Do you
   think I/we could have ... ?
6 Would you like to borrow it?
UNIT 38
38.1
3 'd take / would take
4 closed down
5 wouldn't get
6 pressed
7 did
8 'd be / would be
9 didn't come
10 borrowed
11 walked
12 would understand
38.2
2 What would you do if you
   lost your passport?
3 What would you do if there
   was/were a fire in the building?
Key to Exercises

4 What would you do if you were in a lift and it stopped between floors?

38.3
2 If he took his driving test, he'd fail it. / ... he would fail it.
3 If we stayed at a hotel, it would cost too much.
4 If she applied for the job, she wouldn't get it.
5 If we told them the truth, they wouldn't believe us.
6 If we invited Bill, we'd have to invite his friends too. / ... we would have to ...

38.4
Example answers:
2 I'd be very angry if somebody broke into my house.
3 If I didn't go to work tomorrow, I'd have a much nicer day than usual.
4 Would you go to the party if you were invited?
5 If you bought some new clothes, you'd feel much better.
6 Would you mind if I didn't go out with you this evening?

UNIT 39

39.1 'd help / would help
lived
'd live / would live
would taste
were/was
wouldn't wait .... 'd go / would go
9 didn't go
10 weren't .... wouldn't be

39.2
2 I'd buy it / I would buy it if it weren't/wasn't so expensive. or ... if it were/was cheaper.
3 We'd go out / We would go out more often if we could afford it.
4 If I didn't have to work late, I could meet you tomorrow. or ... I'd meet / I would meet .... or ... I'd be able to meet ...
5 We could have lunch outside if it weren't raining / wasn't raining.
6 If I wanted his advice, I'd ask for it / I would ask for it.

39.3
2 I wish Helen were here.
3 I wish it weren't/wasn't (so) cold.
5 I wish I didn't live in a big city.
6 I wish I could go to the party.
7 I wish I didn't have to work tomorrow.
8 I wish I knew something about cars.
9 I wish I were feeling / was feeling better.

39.4
Example answers:
1 I wish I was at home.
2 I wish I had a big garden.
3 I wish I could tell jokes.
4 I wish I was taller.

UNIT 40

40.1
2 If he'd missed / he had missed the train, he'd have missed / he would have missed his flight.
3 I'd have forgotten / I would have forgotten ... you hadn't reminded
4 I'd had / I had had ... I'd have sent / I would have sent
5 we'd have enjoyed / we would have enjoyed ... the weather had been
6 It would have been ... I'd walked / I had walked
7 I were / I was
8 I'd been / I had been

40.2
2 If the road hadn't been icy, the accident wouldn't have happened.
3 If I'd known / If I had known (that Joe had to get up early), I'd have woken / I would have woken him up.
4 If Jane hadn't lent me the money, I wouldn't have been able to buy the car. or ... I couldn't have bought the car.
5 If Karen hadn't been wearing a seat belt, she'd have been injured / she would have been injured (in the crash).
6 If you'd had / If you had had (some) breakfast, you wouldn't be hungry now.
7 If I'd had / If I had had (some) money, I'd have got / I would have got a taxi.

40.3
2 I wish I'd applied / I wish I had applied for it. or ... for the job.
3 I wish I'd learned / I wish I had learned to play a musical instrument (when I was younger).
4 I wish I hadn't painted it red. or ... the gate red.
5 I wish I'd brought / I wish I had brought my camera.

UNIT 41

41.1
2 hope
3 wish
4 wished
5 hope
6 wish ... hope

41.2
2 I wish Jane/she would come. or ... would hurry up.
3 I wish somebody would give me a job.
4 I wish the/that baby would stop crying.
5 I wish you would buy some new clothes. or ... I wish you would get some new clothes.
6 I wish you wouldn't drive so fast.
7 I wish you wouldn't leave the door open (all the time).
8 I wish people wouldn't drop litter in the street.

41.3
2 OK
3 I wish I had more free time.
4 I wish our flat was/were a bit bigger.
5 OK
6 OK
7 I wish everything wasn't/weren't so expensive.

41.4
3 I knew
5 I'd taken / I had taken
5 I could come
6 I wasn't / I weren't
7 they'd hurry / they would hurry
8 we didn't have
9 we could have stayed
10 it wasn't / weren't
11 he'd decide / he would decide
12 we hadn't gone

UNIT 42

42.1
2 is made
3 was damaged
4 were invited
5 are shown
6 are held
7 was written ... was translated
8 were overtaken
9 is surrounded
42.2
2 When was television invented?
3 How are mountains formed?
4 When was Pluto discovered?
5 What is silver used for?

42.3
3 covers
4 is covered
5 are locked
6 was posted ... arrived
7 sank ... was rescued
8 died ... were brought up
9 grew up
10 was stolen
11 disappeared
12 did Sue resign
13 was Bill sacked
14 is owned
15 called ... was injured ...
16 were these photographs taken ...
17 ’m not bothered / am not bothered

42.4
2 All flights were cancelled because of fog.
3 This road isn’t used much.
4 I was accused of stealing money.
5 How are languages learned/learnt?
6 We were warned not to go out alone.

UNIT 44

44.1
2 I was asked some difficult questions at the interview.
3 Linda was given a present by her colleagues when she retired.
4 I wasn’t told about the meeting.
5 How much will you be paid for your work?
6 I think Tom should have been offered the job.
7 Have you been shown what to do?

44.2
2 being invited
3 being given
4 being knocked down
5 being treated
6 being stuck

44.3
2–6 Beethoven was born in 1770.
   Agatha Christie was born in 1890.
   Galileo was born in 1564.
   Mahatma Gandhi was born in 1869.
   Martin Luther King was born in 1929.
   Elvis Presley was born in 1935.
   Leonardo da Vinci was born in 1452.
   William Shakespeare was born in 1564.
7 I was born in ...

44.4
2 got stung
3 get used
4 got stolen
5 get paid
6 got stopped
7 get damaged
8 get asked

UNIT 45

45.1
2 The weather is expected to be good tomorrow.
3 The thieves are believed to have got in through a window in the roof.
4 Many people are reported to be homeless after the floods.
5 The prisoner is thought to have escaped by climbing over a wall.
6 The man is alleged to have been driving at 110 miles an hour.
7 The building is reported to have been badly damaged by the fire.
8 a The company is said to be losing a lot of money.
   b The company is believed to have lost a lot of money last year.
   c The company is expected to make a loss this year.

45.2
2 He is supposed to know a lot of famous people.
3 He is supposed to be very rich.
4 He is supposed to have twelve children.
5 He is supposed to have been an actor when he was younger.

45.3
2 You’re / You are supposed to be my friend.
3 I’m / I am supposed to be on a diet.
4 It was supposed to be a joke.
5 Or maybe it’s / it is supposed to be a flower.
6 You’re / You are supposed to be working.

45.4
2 ’re / are supposed to start
3 was supposed to phone
4 aren’t / ’re not / are not supposed to block
5 was supposed to arrive

UNIT 46

46.1
1 b
2 a
3 a
4 b

46.2
2 To have my jacket cleaned.
3 To have my watch repaired.
4 To have my eyes tested.
4 What would you do if you were in a lift and it stopped between floors?

38.3
2 If he took his driving test, he'd fail (it). \...\ he would fail (it).
3 If we stayed at a hotel, it would cost too much.
4 If she applied for the job, she wouldn't get it.
5 If we told them the truth, they wouldn't believe us.
6 If we invited Bill, we'd have to invite his friends too. \...\ we would have to ...

38.4
Example answers:
2 I'd be very angry if somebody broke into my house.
3 If I didn't go to work tomorrow, I'd have a much nicer day than usual.
4 Would you go to the party if you were invited?
5 If you bought some new clothes, you'd feel much better.
6 Would you mind if I didn't go out with you this evening?

UNIT 39

39.1
3'd help / would help
4 lived
5'd live / would live
6 would taste
7 were/was
8 wouldn't wait \...\'d go / would go
9 didn't go
10 weren't \...\ wouldn't be

39.2
2 I'd buy it / I would buy it if it weren't/ wasn't so expensive. \or\ ... if it were/ was cheaper.
3 We'd go out / We would go out more often if we could afford it.
4 If I didn't have to work late, I could see you tomorrow. \or\ ... I'd meet / I would meet ... \or\ ... I'd be able to meet ...
5 We could have lunch outside if it weren't raining / wasn't raining.
6 If I wanted his advice, I'd ask for it / I would ask for it.

39.3
2 I wish I had a mobile phone.
3 I wish Helen were/was here.
4 I wish it weren't/ wasn't (so) cold.
5 I wish I didn't live in a big city.
6 I wish I could go to the party.

7 I wish I didn't have to work tomorrow.
8 I wish I knew something about cars.
9 I wish I were feeling / was feeling better.

39.4
Example answers:
1 I wish I was at home.
2 I wish I had a big garden.
3 I wish I could tell jokes.
4 I wish I was taller.

UNIT 40

40.1
2 If he'd missed / he had missed the train, he'd have missed his flight.
3 I'd have forgotten / I would have forgotten ... you hadn't reminded
4 I'd had / I had had ... I'd have sent / I would have sent
5 we'd have enjoyed / we would have enjoyed ... the weather had been
6 It would have been \...\ I'd walked / I had walked
7 I were / I was
8 I'd been / I had been

40.2
2 If the road hadn't been icy, the accident wouldn't have happened.
3 If I'd known / If I had known (that Joe had to get up early), I'd have woken / I would have woken him up.
4 If Jane hadn't lent me the money, I wouldn't have been able to buy the car. \or\ ... I couldn't have bought the car.
5 If Karen hadn't been wearing a seat belt, she'd have been injured (in the crash).
6 If you'd had / If you had had (some) breakfast, you wouldn't be hungry now.
7 If I'd had / If I had had (some) money, I'd have got / I would have got a taxi.

40.3
2 I wish I'd applied / I wish I had applied for it. \or\ ... for the job.
3 I wish I'd learned / I wish I had learned to play a musical instrument (when I was younger).
4 I wish I hadn't painted it red. \or\ ... the gate red.
5 I wish I'd brought / I wish I had brought my camera.

6 I wish they'd phoned / I wish they had phoned first (to say they were coming). \or\ I wish I'd known / I wish I had known they were coming.

UNIT 41

41.1
2 hope
3 wish
4 wished
5 hope
6 wish ... hope

41.2
2 I wish Jane/she would come. \or\ ... would hurry up.
3 I wish somebody would give me a job.
4 I wish the/that baby would stop crying.
5 I wish you would buy some new clothes. \or\ I wish you would get some new clothes.
6 I wish you wouldn't drive so fast.
7 I wish you wouldn't leave the door open (all the time).
8 I wish people wouldn't drop litter in the street.

41.3
2 OK
3 I wish I had more free time.
4 I wish our flat was/were a bit bigger.
5 OK
6 OK
7 I wish everything wasn't/ weren't so expensive.

41.4
3 I knew
4 I'd taken / I had taken
5 I could come
6 I wasn't / I weren't
7 they'd hurry / they would hurry
8 we didn't have
9 we could have stayed
10 it wasn't / weren't
11 he'd decide / he would decide
12 we hadn't gone

UNIT 42

42.1
2 is made
3 was damaged
4 were invited
5 are shown
6 are held
7 was written \...\ was translated
8 were overtaken
9 is surrounded
UNIT 43

43.1
2 it can't be broken
3 it can be eaten
4 it can't be used
5 it can't be seen
6 it can be carried

43.2
3 be made
4 be spent
5 have been repaired
6 be carried
7 have been caused
8 be woken up
9 have been arrested

43.3
2 The meeting has been postponed.
3 The computer is being used at the moment.
4 I didn't realise that our conversation was being recorded.
5 ... we found that the game had been cancelled.
6 A new ring road is being built round the city.
7 A new hospital has been built near the airport.

43.4
3 It's been stolen! It has been stolen!
4 Somebody has taken it. or... taken my umbrella.
5 He's been promoted. / He has been promoted.
6 It's being redecorated. / It is being redecorated.
7 It's working again. / It is working again. ... It's been repaired. / It has been repaired.
8 The furniture had been moved.
9 He hasn't been seen since then.
10 I haven't seen her for ages.
11 Have you ever been mugged?

UNIT 44

44.1
2 I was asked some difficult questions at the interview.
3 Linda was given a present by her colleagues when she retired.
4 I wasn't told about the meeting.
5 How much will you be paid for your work?
6 I think Tom should have been offered the job.
7 Have you been shown what to do?

44.2
2 being invited
3 being given
4 being knocked down
5 being treated
6 being stuck

44.3
2-6 Beethoven was born in 1770.
Agatha Christie was born in 1890.
Galileo was born in 1543.
Mahatma Gandhi was born in 1869.
Martin Luther King was born in 1929.
Elvis Presley was born in 1935.
Leonardo da Vinci was born in 1452.
William Shakespeare was born in 1564.
7 I was born in ...

44.4
2 got stung
3 get used
4 got stolen
5 get paid
6 got stopped
7 get damaged
8 get asked

UNIT 45

45.1
2 The weather is expected to be good tomorrow.
3 The thieves are believed to have got in through a window in the roof.
4 Many people are reported to be homeless after the floods.
5 The prisoner is thought to have escaped by climbing over a wall.
6 The man is alleged to have been driving at 110 miles an hour.
7 The building is reported to have been badly damaged by the fire.
8 a The company is said to be losing a lot of money.
b The company is believed to have lost a lot of money last year.
c The company is expected to make a loss this year.

45.2
2 He is supposed to know a lot of famous people.
3 He is supposed to be very rich.
4 He is supposed to have twelve children.
5 He is supposed to have been an actor when he was younger.

45.3
2 You're / You are supposed to be my friend.
3 I'm / I am supposed to be on a diet.
4 It was supposed to be a joke.
5 Or maybe it's / it is supposed to be a flower.
6 You're / You are supposed to be working.

45.4
2 're / are supposed to start
3 was supposed to phone
4 aren't / 're not / are not supposed to block
5 was supposed to arrive

UNIT 46

46.1
1 b
2 a
3 a
4 b

46.2
2 To have my jacket cleaned.
3 To have my watch repaired.
4 To have my eyes tested.
46.3
2 I had it cut.
3 They had it painted.
4 He had it built.
5 I had them delivered.

46.4
2 have another key made
3 had your hair cut
4 Do you have a newspaper delivered
5 ’re having / are having a garage built
6 haven’t had the film developed
7 have it cleaned
8 have your ears pierced
9 ’ve had it repaired / have had it repaired / or had it repaired
11 had her handbag stolen
12 had his car vandalised

UNIT 47
47.1
2 He said (that) his father wasn’t very well.
3 He said (that) Rachel and Mark were getting married next month.
4 He said (that) his sister had had a baby.
5 He said (that) he didn’t know what Frank was doing.
6 He said (that) he’d seen / he had seen Helen at a party in June and she’d seemed / she had seemed fine. or He said (that) he saw Helen ... and she seemed ...
7 He said (that) he hadn’t seen Diane recently.
8 He said (that) he wasn’t enjoying his job very much.
9 He said (that) I could come and stay at his place if I was ever in London.
10 He said (that) his car had been stolen a few days ago. or ... his car was stolen a few days ago.
11 He said (that) he wanted to go on holiday, but (he) couldn’t afford it.
12 He said (that) he’d tell / he would tell Chris he’d seen / he had seen me. or ... he saw me.

47.2
Example answers:
2 she wasn’t coming / ... she was going somewhere else / ... she was staying at home
3 she didn’t like him
4 you didn’t know anybody
5 she wouldn’t be here / ... she would be away / ... she was going away
6 you were staying at home / ... you weren’t going out
7 you couldn’t speak (any) French
8 you went to the cinema last week / ... you had been gone to the cinema last week

UNIT 48
48.1
2 But you said you didn’t like fish.
3 But you said you couldn’t drive.
4 But you said she had a very well-paid job.
5 But you said you didn’t have any brothers or sisters.
6 But you said you’d / you had never been to the United States.
7 But you said you were working tomorrow evening.
8 But you said she was a friend of yours.

48.2
2 Tell
3 Say
4 said
5 told
6 said
7 tell ... said
8 tell ... say
9 told
10 said

48.3
2 her to slow down
3 her not to worry
4 asked Tom to give me a hand or ... to help me
5 asked me to open my bag
6 asked him to get a newspaper
7 told him to mind his own business
8 asked her to marry him
9 told her not to wait (for me) if I was late

UNIT 49
49.1
2 Were you born there?
3 Are you married?
4 How long have you been married?
5 Have you got (any) children? or Do you have (any) children?
6 How old are they?
7 What do you do?
8 What does your wife do?
92 Who paid the bill?
4 What happened?
5 What did she / Diane say?
6 Who does it / this book belong to?
7 Who lives in that house? / Who lives there?
8 What did you fall over?
9 What fell on the floor?
10 What does it / this word mean?
11 Who did you borrow it / the money from?
12 What are you worried about?

49.3
2 How is cheese made?
3 When was the computer invented?
4 Why isn’t Sue working today?
5 What time are your friends coming?
6 Why was the concert cancelled?
7 Where was your mother born?
8 Why didn’t you come to the party?
9 How did the accident happen?
10 Why doesn’t this machine work?

49.4
2 Don’t you like him?
3 Isn’t it good?
4 Haven’t you got any? or Don’t you have any?

UNIT 50
50.1
2 Could you tell me where the post office is?
3 I wonder what the time is.
4 I want to know what this word means.
5 Do you know what time they left?
6 I don’t know if / whether Sue is going out tonight.
7 Do you have any idea where Caroline lives?
8 I can’t remember where I parked the car.
9 Can you tell me if / whether there is a bank near here?
10 Tell me what you want.
11 I don’t know why Kate didn’t come to the party.
12 Do you know how much it costs to park here?
13 I have no idea who that woman is.
14 Do you know if / whether Liz got my letter?
15 Can you tell me how far it is to the airport?
50.2
1 Do you know where she has gone?
2 I don't suppose you know when she'll be back / she will be back.
3 Do you happen to know if/whether she went out alone?

50.3
2 He asked me where I'd been. / ... where I had been.
3 He asked me how long I'd been back. / ... how long I had been back.
4 He asked me what I was doing now.
5 He asked me why I'd come back. / ... why I had come back. or ... why I came back.
6 He asked me where I was living.
7 He asked me if/whether I was glad to be back.
8 He asked me if/whether I had any plans to go away again.
9 He asked me if/whether I could lend him some money.

UNIT 51

51.1
3 doesn't
4 was
5 will
6 am ... isn't or 'm not ... is
7 should
8 won't
9 could
10 would ... could ... can't

51.2
3 Do you? I don't.
4 Didn't you? I did.
5 Haven't you? I have.
6 Did you? I didn't.

51.3
Example answers:
3 So did I. or Did you? What did you watch?
4 Neither will I. or Won't you? Where will you be?
5 So do I. or Do you? What sort of books do you like?
6 So would I. or Would you? Where would you like to live?
7 Neither can I. or Can't you? Why not?

51.4
2 I hope so.
3 I expect so.
4 I don't think so.
5 I'm afraid not.
6 I'm afraid so.
7 I suppose so.
8 I hope not.
9 I think so.

UNIT 52

52.1
3 haven't you
4 were you
5 does she
6 isn't he
7 hasn't she
8 can't you
9 will he
10 aren't there
11 shall we
12 is it
13 aren't I
14 would you
15 hasn't she
16 should I
17 had he
18 will you

52.2
2 It's (very) expensive, isn't it?
3 The course was great, wasn't it?
4 You've had your hair cut, haven't you?
5 She has a good voice, hasn't she? or She's got / She has got ...
6 It doesn't look very good, does it?
7 This bridge isn't very safe, is it?

52.3
2 Joe, you couldn't get (me) some stamps, could you?
3 Kate, you don't know where Diane is, do you? or ... you haven't seen Diane, have you?
4 Helen, you haven't got a bicycle pump, have you? or ... you don't have a bicycle pump, do you?
5 Ann, you couldn't take me to the station, could you? or ... you couldn't give me a lift to the station, could you?
6 Robert, you haven't seen my keys, have you?

UNIT 53

53.1
2 making
3 listening
4 applying
5 reading
6 living
7 using
8 forgetting
9 writing
10 being
11 trying
12 losing

53.2
2 playing tennis
3 driving too fast
4 going for a swim
5 breaking the CD player
6 waiting a few minutes

53.3
2 travelling during the rush hour
3 painting the kitchen until next weekend
4 turning the radio down
5 not interrupting me all the time

53.4
Example answers:
2 going out
3 sitting on the floor
4 having a picnic
5 laughing
6 breaking down

UNIT 54

54.1
2 to help him
3 to carry her bag (for her)
4 to meet at 8 o'clock
5 to tell him her name / to give him her name
6 not to tell anyone

54.2
2 to get
3 to buy / to have / to rent / to hire
4 (how) to use / (how) to operate
5 to make
6 say or to say

54.3
2 to go
3 going
4 waiting
5 to go
6 barking
7 to call
8 having
9 missing
10 to find

54.4
2 Tom appears to be worried about something.
3 You seem to know a lot of people.
4 My English seems to be getting better.
5 That car appears to have broken down.
6 David tends to forget things.
7 They claim to have solved the problem.

54.5
2 how to use
3 what to do
4 how to ride
5. what to say / what to do
6. whether to go

UNIT 55

55.1
2. do you want me to lend you some
3. or would you like me to shut it
4. or would you like me to show you
5. or do you want me to repeat it
6. or do you want me to wait

55.2
2. to stay with them
3. him use her phone
4. him to be careful
5. her to give him a hand

55.3
2. I didn’t expect it to rain.
3. Let him do what he wants.
4. Tim’s glasses make him look older.
5. I want you to know the truth.
6. Remind me to phone my sister.
7. Sarah persuaded me to apply for the job.
8. My lawyer advised me not to say anything to the police.
9. I was warned not to believe everything he says.
10. Having a car enables you to get around more easily.

55.4
2. to go
3. to do
4. cry
5. to study
6. eating
7. read
8. to make
9. think

UNIT 56

56.1
2. driving
3. to go
4. to go
5. raining
6. to win
7. asking
8. asking
9. to answer
10. breaking
11. to pay
12. losing or to lose
13. to tell
14. crying or to cry
15. to get
16. meeting ... to see

56.2
2. He can remember going to Paris when he was eight.

56.3
1. b. lending
c. to phone / to call
d. to give
e. leaving / putting
2. a. saying
b. to say
c. to become
b. working
2. reading

UNIT 57

57.1
2. Try turning it the other way.
3. Have you tried moving the aerial?
4. Why don’t you try phoning his office?
5. Have you tried taking an aspirin?

57.2
2. It needs painting.
3. It needs cutting.
4. They need tightening.
5. It needs emptying.

57.3
1. b. knocking
c. to put
d. asking
e. to reach
f. to concentrate
2. a. to go
b. looking
c. cleaning
d. cutting
e. You don’t need to iron ...
It doesn’t need ironing
3. a. overhearing
b. get or to get
c. smiling
d. make or to make

UNIT 58

58.1
Example answers:
2. I don’t mind playing cards.
3. I don’t like being alone. or ... to be alone.
4. I enjoy going to museums.
5. I love cooking. or I love to cook.

58.2
2. She likes teaching biology.

58.3
2. to sit
3. waiting
4. going or to go
5. to get
6. being
7. to come / to go
8. living
9. to talk
10. to have / to know / to get / to hear / to be told

58.4
2. I would like / I’d like to have seen the programme.
3. I would hate / I’d hate to have lost my watch.
4. I would love / I’d love to have met your parents.
5. I wouldn’t like to have been alone.
6. I would prefer / I’d prefer to have travelled by train. or I would have preferred to travel ...

UNIT 59

59.1
Example answers:
2. I prefer basketball to football.
3. I prefer sending emails to phoning people.
4. I prefer going to the cinema to watching videos at home.
5. I prefer to send emails rather than phone people.
7. I prefer to go to the cinema rather than watch videos at home.

59.2
3. I’d rather listen to some music.
4. I’d prefer to eat at home.
5. I’d rather wait a few minutes.
6. I’d rather go for a swim.
7. I’d prefer to think about it for a while.
8. I’d rather stand.
9. I’d prefer to go alone.
11. I’d prefer to go for a swim rather than play tennis.
12. I’d rather eat at home than go to a restaurant.
13. I’d prefer to think about it for a while rather than decide now.
UNIT 60

60.1
2 applying for the job
3 remembering names
4 passing the exam
5 being late
6 eating at home, we went to a
7 having to queue or queuing
8 playing well

60.2
2 by standing on a chair
3 by turning a key
4 by borrowing too much money
5 by driving too fast
6 by putting some pictures on the walls

60.3
2 paying/settling
3 going
4 using
5 going
6 being/travelling/sitting
7 asking/telling/consulting
8 doing/having
9 turning-going
10 taking

60.4
2 I'm looking forward to seeing
   her/Diane.
3 I'm not looking forward to going to the dentist
   (tomorrow).
4 She's looking forward to leaving school (next summer).
5 I'm looking forward to playing tennis (tomorrow).

UNIT 61

61.1
1 When Juan first went to England, he wasn't used to having dinner so early, but after some time he got used to it. Now he finds it normal. He is used to eating / is used to having dinner at 6 o'clock.

2 She wasn't used to working nights and it took her a few months to get used to it. Now, after a year, she's quite happy. She is used to working nights.

61.2
2 No, I'm used to sleeping on the floor.
3 I'm used to working long hours.
4 Yes, I'm not used to going to bed so late.

61.3
2 They soon got used to her. / ... to the new teacher.
3 She had to get used to living in a much smaller house.
4 (example answers) They'll have to get used to the weather / to the food / ... to speaking a foreign language.

61.4
3 drink
4 eating
5 having
6 have
7 go
8 be
9 being

UNIT 62

62.1
2 doing
3 coming/going
4 doing/trying
5 buying/having
6 hearing
7 going
8 having/using
9 being
10 watching
11 inviting/asking

62.2
2 in solving
3 of living
4 of causing
5 (from) walking
6 of interrupting
7 of spending
8 from escaping
9 on carrying
10 to seeing

62.3
2 on driving Ann to the station
3 on getting married
4 Sue for coming to see her
5 (to me) for not phoning earlier
6 me of being selfish

UNIT 63

63.1
2 There's no point in working if you don't need money.
3 There's no point in trying to study if you feel tired.
4 There's no point in hurrying if you've got plenty of time.

63.2
2 asking Dave
3 in going out
4 phoning her/Liz
5 complaining (about what happened)
6 of time reading newspapers
7 keeping

63.3
2 remembering people's names
3 difficulty getting a job
4 difficulty getting a ticket for the game

63.4
2 reading
3 packing / getting ready
4 watching
5 going/climbing/walking
6 applying
7 getting / being

63.5
2 went swimming
3 went skiing
4 goes riding
5 gone shopping

UNIT 64

64.1
2 I had to go to the bank to get some money.
3 I'm saving money to go to Canada.
4 I went into hospital to have an operation.
5 I'm wearing two sweaters to keep warm.
6 I phoned the police to report that my car had been stolen.

64.2
2 to read
3 to walk / to go on foot
4 to drink
5 to put / to carry
6 to discuss / to consider / to talk about
7 to buy / to get
8 to talk / to speak
9 to wear / to put on
10 to celebrate
11 to help / to assist

64.3
2 for
3 to
350

UNIT 65

65.1
2 This machine is easy to use.
3 The window was very difficult to open.
4 Some words are impossible to translate.
5 A car is expensive to maintain.
6 That chair isn’t safe to stand on.

65.2
2 It’s an easy mistake to make.
3 It’s a nice place to live. or a nice place to live in.
4 It was a good game to watch.

65.3
2 It’s careless of you to make the same mistake again and again.
3 It was nice of them to invite me (to stay with them). It was nice of Dan and Jenny to...
4 It’s insconsiderate of them to make so much noise (at night). It’s insconsiderate of the neighbours to...

65.4
2 I’m/am glad to hear or was glad to hear
3 were surprised to see
4 I’m/am sorry to hear or was sorry to hear

65.5
2 Paul was the last (person) to arrive.
3 Fiona was the only student to pass (the exam). the only one to pass (the exam).
4 I was the second customer/person to complain.
5 Neil Armstrong was the first person/man to walk on the moon.

UNIT 66

66.1
3 I’m afraid of losing it.
4 I was afraid to tell her.
5 We were afraid of missing our train.
6 We were afraid to look.
7 I was afraid of dropping it.
8 a I was afraid to eat it.
   b I was afraid of getting sick.

66.2
2 in staring
3 to read
4 in getting
5 to know
6 in looking

66.3
2 sorry to hear
3 sorry for saying/sorry about saying
4 sorry to disturb
5 sorry for losing/sorry about losing

66.4
1 b to leave
   c from leaving
2 a to solve
   b in solving
3 a of/about going
   b to go
   c to go
   d to going
4 a to buy
   b to buy
   c on buying
   d of buying

UNIT 67

67.1
2 arrive
3 take it / to do it
4 it ring
5 him play / him playing
6 you lock it / you do it
7 her fall

67.2
2 We saw Dave and Helen playing tennis.
3 We saw Clare eating in a restaurant. having a meal in a restaurant.
4 We heard Bill playing his guitar.
5 We could smell the dinner burning.
6 We saw Linda jogging/running.

67.3
3 tell
4 crying
5 riding
6 say
7 run ... climb
8 explode
9 crawling
10 slam
11 sleeping

UNIT 68

68.1
2 Diane was sitting in an armchair reading a book.
3 Sue opened the door carefully trying not to make a noise.
4 Sarah went out saying she would be back in an hour.
5 Linda was in London for two years working as a tourist guide.
6 Mary walked around the town looking at the sights and taking photographs.

68.2
2 I fell asleep watching television.
3 A friend of mine slipped and fell getting off a bus.
4 I got very wet walking home in the rain.
5 Laura had an accident driving to work yesterday.
6 Two firefighters were overcome by smoke trying to put out the fire.

68.3
2 Having bought our tickets, we went into the theatre.
3 Having had dinner, they continued their journey.
4 Having done the shopping, I went for a cup of coffee.

68.4
2 Thinking they might be hungry, I offered them something to eat.
3 Being a foreigner, she needs a visa to work in this country.
4 Not knowing his phone number, I wasn’t able to contact him.
5 Having travelled a lot, Sarah knows a lot about other countries.
UNIT 69

69.1
3 We went to a very nice restaurant ...
4 OK
5 I use a toothbrush ...
6 ... if there's a bank near here?
7 ... for an insurance company
8 OK
9 OK
10 ... we stayed in a big hotel.
11 ... I hope we come to a petrol station soon.
12 ... I have a problem.
13 ... It's a very interesting idea.
14 John has got an interview for a job tomorrow.
15 ... It's a good game.
16 OK
17 Jane was wearing a beautiful necklace.

69.2
3 a key
4 a coat
5 sugar
6 a biscuit
7 electricity
8 an interview
9 blood
10 a question
11 a moment
12 a decision

69.3
2 days
3 meat
4 a queue
5 letters
6 friends
7 people
8 air
9 patience
10 an umbrella
11 languages
12 space

UNIT 69

69.1
3 We went to a very nice restaurant ...
4 OK
5 I use a toothbrush ...
6 ... if there's a bank near here?
7 ... for an insurance company
8 OK
9 OK
10 ... we stayed in a big hotel.
11 ... I hope we come to a petrol station soon.
12 ... I have a problem.
13 ... It's a very interesting idea.
14 John has got an interview for a job tomorrow.
15 ... It's a good game.
16 OK
17 Jane was wearing a beautiful necklace.

UNIT 70

70.1
2 a a paper
  b paper
3 a a light
  b Light
4 a time
  b a wonderful time
5 a nice room
6 advice
7 nice weather
8 bad luck
9 job
10 journey
11 total chaos
12 some
13 doesn't
14 Your hair is ... it
15 The damage

70.2
3 chairs
4 furniture
5 hair
6 progress
7 job
8 work
9 permission
10 advice
11 experience
12 experiences

70.3
2 I'd like some information about places to see in the town.
3 Can you give me some advice about which courses to do? / ... courses I can do?
4 What time is the pews on (TV)?
5 It's a beautiful view, isn't it?
6 What horrible/awful weather!

UNIT 71

71.1
3 It's a vegetable.
4 It's a game. / It's a board game.
5 They're musical instruments.
6 It's a (tall/high) building.
7 They're planets.
8 It's a flower.
9 They're rivers.
10 They're birds.
12 He was a writer / a poet / a playwright / a dramatist.
13 He was a scientist / a physicist.
14 They were U.S. presidents / American presidents / presidents of the U.S.
15 She was an actress / a film actress / a film star.
16 They were singers.
17 They were painters / artists.

71.2
2 He's a waiter.
3 She's a travel agent.
4 He's a surgeon.
5 He's a chef.
6 She's a journalist.
7 He's a plumber.
8 She's an interpreter.

71.3
4 a
5 an
6 - (Do you collect stamps?)
7 a

UNIT 72

72.1
1 ... and a magazine. The newspaper is in my bag, but I can't remember where I put the magazine.
2 I saw an accident this morning. A car crashed into a tree. The driver of the car wasn't hurt, but the car was badly damaged.
3 ... a blue one and a grey one. The blue one belongs to my neighbours; I don't know who the owner of the grey one is.
4 My friends live in an old house in a small village. There is a beautiful garden behind the house. I would like to have a garden like that.

72.2
2 a a
  b the
  c the
3 a a
  b a
  c the
4 a an ... The
  b the
  c the

72.3
2 the dentist
3 the door
4 a mistake
5 the bus station
6 a problem
7 the post office
8 the floor
9 the book
10 a job in a bank
11 a small flat in the city centre
12 a supermarket at the end of the street
Key to Exercises

72.4
Example answers:
3 About once a month.
4 Once or twice a year.
5 50 kilometres an hour.
6 About seven hours a night.
7 Two or three times a week.
8 About two hours a day.

UNIT 73

73.1
2 a nice holiday ... the best holiday
3 the nearest shop ... the end of this street
4 listen to the radio ... I haven’t got a radio
5 to travel in space ... go to the moon
6 go to the cinema ... on television
7 a nice day ... by the sea
8 for breakfast ... eat breakfast
9 where is Room 25 ... on the second floor
10 the most expensive hotel ... a cheaper hotel

73.2
2 the ground ... the sky
3 watching television
4 The television
5 the same time
6 had dinner
7 the information ... the top of page 15
8 the capital

73.3
2 in a small village in the country
3 The moon goes round the earth every 27 days.
4 the same thing
5 a very hot day ... the hottest day of the year
6 usually have lunch ... eat a good breakfast
7 live in a foreign country ... learn the language
8 on the wrong platform
9 The next train ... from Platform 3

73.4
2 the sea
3 question 8
4 the cinema
5 breakfast
6 the gate
7 Gate 21

UNIT 74

74.1
2 to school
3 at home

UNIT 75

75.1
Example answers:
2–5 I like cats.
1 I don’t like zoos.
4 I don’t mind fast food restaurants.
7 I’m not interested in football.

UNIT 76

76.1
1 b the cheetah
c the kangaroo (and the rabbit)
2 a the swan
b the penguin
c the owl
3 a the wheel
b the laser
c the telescope
4 a the rupee
b the (Canadian) dollar
c the ... 76.2
2 a
3 the
4 a
5 the
6 the
7 a
8 The

76.3
2 the injured
3 the unemployed
4 the sick
5 the rich ... the poor

76.4
2 a German Germans
3 a Frenchman/Frenchwoman
4 a Russian Russians
5 a Chinese ... the Chinese
6 a Brazilian Brazilians
7 an Englishman/Englishwoman
8 ... 77.1
2 the
3 the ... the
4 – (President Kennedy was assassinated in 1963.)
5 the
6 – (Do you know Professor Brown’s phone number?)

77.2
3 OK
4 the United States
5 The south of England ... the north
UNIT 79

79.1
3 shorts
4 a means
5 means
6 some scissors or a pair of scissors
7 a series
8 series
9 species

79.2
2 politics
3 economics
4 athletics
5 physics
6 gymnastics
7 electronics

79.3
2 don't
3 want
4 was
5 aren't
6 wasn't
7 does or do
8 isn't
9 they are
10 are
11 Do
12 is

79.4
3 ... wearing black jeans.
4 OK (Brazil is playing is also correct)
5 ... very nice people.
6 Ten pounds isn't
7 ... buy some new pyjamas, or ... buy a new pair of pyjamas.
8 OK (The committee hasn't is also correct)
9 There was a police officer / a policeman / a policewoman ...
10 What are the police ...
11 These scissors aren't ...

UNIT 80

80.1
3 a computer magazine
4 (your) holiday photographs
5 milk chocolate
6 a factory inspector
7 a race horse
8 a horse race
9 a central London hotel
10 (your) exam results
11 the dining room carpet
12 an oil company scandal
13 car factory workers
14 a road improvement scheme
15 a five-day course
16 a two-part question
17 a seven-year-old girl

80.2
2 room number
3 seat belt
4 credit card
5 weather forecast
6 newspaper editor
7 shop window

80.3
3 20-pound
4 15-minute
5 60 minutes
6 two-hour
7 five courses
8 two-year
9 500-year-old
10 five days
11 six miles
12 six-mile

UNIT 81

81.1
3 your friend's umbrella
4 OK
5 Charles's daughter
6 Mary and Dan's son
7 OK
8 yesterday's newspaper
9 OK
10 OK
11 Your children's friends
12 Our neighbours' garden
13 OK
14 Bill's hair
15 Catherine's party
16 OK
17 Mike's parents' car
18 OK
19 OK (the government's economic policy is also correct)

81.2
2 a boy's name
3 children's clothes
4 a girls' school
5 a bird's nest
6 a women's magazine

81.3
2 Last week's storm caused a lot of damage.
3 The town's only cinema has closed down.
4 Britain's weather is very changeable.
5 The region's main industry is tourism.

81.4
2 twenty minutes' walk
3 two weeks' holiday / fourteen days' holiday / a fortnight's holiday
4 an/one hour's sleep
UNIT 82

82.1
2 hurt himself 
3 blame herself 
4 put yourself 
5 enjoyed themselves 
6 burn yourself 
7 express myself 

82.2
2 me 
3 myself 
4 us 
5 yourself 
6 you 
7 ourselves 
8 themselves 
9 them 

82.3
2 feel 
3 dried myself 
4 concentrate 
5 defend yourself 
6 meeting 
7 relax 
8 wash 

82.4
2 themselves 
3 each other 
4 each other 
5 themselves 
6 each other 
7 ourselves 
8 each other
9 introduced ourselves to each other 

82.5
2 He cuts it himself. 
3 No, I’ll post / do it myself. 
4 Linda told me herself. / Linda herself told me. / Linda did herself. 
5 Why can’t you phone him yourself? / ... do it yourself? 

UNIT 83

83.1
2 We met a relative of yours. 
3 Henry borrowed a book of mine. 
4 Liz invited some friends of hers to her flat. 
5 We had dinner with a neighbour of ours. 
6 I went on holiday with two friends of mine. 
7 Is that man a friend of yours? 
8 I met a friend of Jane’s at the party. 

83.2
2 his own opinions 
3 her own business 
4 its own (private) beach 
5 our own words 

83.3
2 your own fault 
3 her own ideas 
4 your own problems 
5 his own decisions 

83.4
2 makes her own clothes 
3 bake / make our own bread 
4 writes his own songs 

83.5
2 my own 
3 myself 
4 himself 
5 themselves 
6 herself 
7 their own 
8 yourself 
9 our own 
10 her own 

UNIT 84

84.1
3 Is there ... there’s / there is 
4 there was ... It was 
5 It was 
6 There was 
7 is it 
8 It was 
9 It’s / It is 
10 there wasn’t 
11 Is it ... it’s / it is 
12 there was ... There was 
13 It was 
14 There wasn’t 
15 There was ... it wasn’t 

84.2
2 There is a lot of salt in the soup. 
3 There was nothing in the box. 
4 There was a lot of violence in the film. / There was a lot of fighting ... 
5 There were a lot of people in the shops. 
6 There is a lot to do in this town. / There is a lot happening in this town. 

84.3
2 There may be 
3 there will be / there’ll be or there are going to be 
4 There’s going to be / There is going to be 
5 There used to be 
6 there should be 
7 there wouldn’t be 

84.4
2 and there was a lot of snow 
3 There used to be a church here 
4 There must have been a reason. 
5 OK 
6 There’s sure to be a car park somewhere. 

UNIT 85

85.1
2 some 
3 any 
4 any ... some 
5 some 
6 any 
7 any 
8 some 
9 any 
10 any 

85.2
2 somebody / someone 
3 anybody / anyone 
4 anything 
5 something 
6 somebody / someone ... 
7 something ... anybody / anyone 
8 anybody / Anyone 
9 anybody / anyone 
10 anywhere 
11 somewhere 
12 anywhere 
13 anybody / anyone 
14 something 
15 anybody / anyone 
16 something 
17 anybody / anyone ... anything 

85.3
2 Any day 
3 Anything 
4 anywhere 
5 Any job or Anything 
6 Any time 
7 anybody / Anyone 
8 Any newspaper or Any one 

UNIT 86

86.1
3 no 
4 any 
5 No 
6 none 
7 No 
8 any 
9 any 
10 none 
11 no 

86.2
2 Nobody / No one. 
3 None 
4 Nowhere 
5 None 
6 Nothing 
8 I wasn’t talking to anybody / anyone.
UNIT 88

88.1
3 –
4 of
5 –
6 –
7 of
8 of
9 – (of is also correct)
10 –

88.2
3 of my spare time
4 accidents
5 of the buildings
6 of her friends
7 of the population
8 birds
9 of the players
10 of her opinions
11 European countries
12 (of) my dinner

88.3
Example answers:
2 the time
3 my friends
4 (of) the questions
5 the photos / the photographs / the pictures
6 (of) the money

88.4
2 All of them
3 none of us
4 some of it
5 none of them
6 None of it
7 Some of them
8 all of it

UNIT 89

89.1
2 Neither
3 both
4 Either
5 Neither

89.2
2 either
3 both
4 Neither of
5 neither driver … both / both
   the / both of the cars
6 both / both of

89.3
2 either of them
3 both of them
4 neither of us
5 neither of them

89.4
3 Both Joe and Sam are on holiday.
4 Neither Joe nor Sam has (got) a car.
5 Brian neither watches TV nor reads newspapers.

UNIT 90

90.1
3 Everybody / Everyone
4 Everything
5 all
6 everybody / everyone
7 everything
8 All
9 everybody / everyone
10 All
11 everything / all
12 Everybody / Everyone
13 All
14 everything

90.2
2 The whole team played well.
3 He ate the whole box (of chocolates).
4 They searched the whole house.
5 The whole family play / plays tennis.
6 Ann / She worked the whole day.
7 It rained the whole week.
8 Ann worked all day.
9 It rained all week.

90.3
2 every four hours
3 every four years
4 every five minutes
5 every six months

90.4
2 every day
3 all day
4 The whole building
5 every time
6 all the time
7 all my luggage

UNIT 91

91.1
3 Each
4 Every
5 Each
6 every
7 each
8 every
91.2
3 Every
4 Each
5 every
6 every
7 each
8 every
9 every
10 each
11 Every
12 each

91.3
2 Sonia and I had ten pounds each. / Sonia and I each had ten pounds.
3 Those postcards cost 80 pence each. / Those postcards are 80 pence each.
4 We paid £120 each. / We each paid £120.

91.4
2 everyone
3 every one
4 Everyone
5 every one

UNIT 92

92.1
2 A burglar is someone who breaks into a house to steal things.
3 A customer is someone who buys something from a shop.
4 A shoplifter is someone who steals from a shop.
5 A coward is someone who is not brave.
6 An atheist is someone who doesn't believe in God.
7 A pessimist is someone who expects the worst to happen.
8 A tenant is someone who pays rent to live in a house of flat.

92.2
2 The waitress who/that served us was impolite and impatient.
3 The building that/which was destroyed in the fire has now been rebuilt.
4 The people who/that were arrested have now been released.
5 The bus that/which goes to the airport runs every half hour.

92.3
2 who/that runs away from home
3 that/which were on the wall
4 that/which cannot be explained
5 who/that stole my car

6 that/which gives you the meaning of words
7 who/that invented the telephone
8 that/which can support life

92.4
3 that/which sells
4 who/that caused
5 OK (who took is also correct)
6 that/which is changing
7 OK (which were is also correct)
8 that/which won

UNIT 93

93.1
3 OK (the people who/that we met is also correct)
4 The people who work in the office
5 OK (the people who/that I work with is also correct)
6 OK (the money that/which I gave you is also correct)
7 the money that/which was on the table
8 OK (the worst film that/which you've ever seen is also correct)
9 the best thing that/which has ever happened to you

93.2
2 you're wearing or that/which you're wearing
3 you're going to see or that/which you're going to see
4 I/we wanted to visit or that/which I/we wanted to visit
5 I/we invited to the party or who/whom that we invited ...
6 you had to do or that/which you had to do
7 I/we hired or that/which I/we hired
8 Tom had recommended to us or that/which Tom had recommended ...

93.3
2 we were invited to or that/which we were invited to
3 I work with or who/that I work with
4 you told me about or that/which you told me about
5 we went to last night or that/which we went to ...
6 I applied for or that/which I applied for
7 you can rely on or who/that you can rely on
8 I saw you with or who/that I saw you with

93.4
3 (that is also correct)
4 what
5 that
6 what
7 (that is also correct)
8 what
9 (that is also correct)

UNIT 94

94.1
2 whose wife is an English teacher
3 who owns a restaurant
4 whose ambition is to climb Everest
5 who have just got married
6 whose parents used to work in a circus

94.2
2 where I can buy some postcards
3 where I work
4 where Sue is staying
5 where I/we play football

94.3
2 where
3 who
4 whose
5 whom
6 where
7 whose
8 whom

94.4
Example answers:
2 I'll never forget the time we got stuck in a lift.
3 The reason I didn't write to you was that I didn't know your address.
4 Unfortunately I wasn't at home the evening you phoned.
5 The reason they don't have a car is that they don't need one.
6 1996 was the year Amanda got married.

UNIT 95

95.1
3 We often go to visit our friends in Bristol, which is not very far away.
4 I went to see the doctor, who told me to rest for a few days.
5 John, whom/whom I've known for a very long time, is one of my closest friends.
6 Sheila, whose job involves a lot of travelling, is away from home a lot.
7 The new stadium, which can hold 90,000 people, will be opened next month.
Glasgow, where my brother  
lives, is the largest city in  
Scotland.

A friend of mine, whose  
father is the manager of a  
company, helped me to get a  
job.

The strike at the car factory,  
which began ten days ago, is  
now over.

I've found the book I was  
looking for this morning, or  
... the book that/which I was  
looking for.

The population of London,  
which was once the largest  
city in the world, is now  
falling.

Few of the people who/that  
applied for the job had the  
necessary qualifications.

Amy showed me a  
photograph of her son, who is  
a policeman.

My office, which is on the  
second floor, is very small.

OK (The office that/which I'm  
using ... is also correct)

Ben's father, who used to be a  
teacher, now works for a TV  
company.

OK (The doctor who  
examined me ... is also  
correct)

The sun, which is one of  
millions of stars in the  
universe, provides us with  
heat and light.

of which he's very proud

with whom we went on  
holiday

to which only members of the  
family were invited

most of which was useless

neither of which she has  
received

none of whom was suitable

one of which she hardly ever  
uses

half of which he gave to his  
parents

both of whom are teachers

only a few of whom I knew  
(these) sides of which were lined  
with trees

the aim of which is to save  
money

Jane doesn't have a phone,  
which makes it difficult to  
contact her.

Neil has passed his exams,  
which is good news.

Our flight was delayed, which  
meant we had to wait three  
hours at the airport.

Kate offered to let me stay at  
her house, which was very  
kind of her.

The street I live in is very  
noisy at night, which makes it  
difficult to sleep sometimes.

Our car has broken down,  
which means we can't go  
away tomorrow.

the man sitting next to me on  
the plane

The taxi taking us to the  
airport

a path leading to the river

A factory employing 500  
people

a brochure containing the  
information I needed

damaged in the storm

Most of the suggestions made  
at the meeting

The paintings stolen from the  
museum

the man arrested by the police

living

offering

called

blown

sitting ... reading

working ... studying

There's somebody coming.

There were a lot of people  
travelling.

There was nobody else staying  
there.

There was nothing written on  
it.

There's a course beginning  
next Monday.

the last two days

the first two weeks of May
Key to Exercises

5 the next few days
6 the first three questions (in the exam)
7 the next two years
8 the last three days of our holiday

UNIT 100

100.1
2 badly
3 easily
4 patiently
5 unexpectedly
6 regularly
7 perfectly ... slowly ... clearly

100.2
3 selfishly
4 terribly
5 suddenly
6 colourfully
7 colourful
8 badly
9 badly
10 safe

100.3
3 carefully
4 continuously
5 happily
6 fluently
7 completely
8 perfectly
9 nervously
10 financially or completely

100.4
2 seriously ill
3 absolutely enormous
4 slightly damaged
5 unusually quiet
6 completely changed
7 unnecessarily long
8 badly planned

UNIT 101

101.1
2 good
3 well
4 good
5 well
6 well (good is also possible here)
7 well
8 good
9 well
10 good
11 well

101.2
2 well-known
3 well-kept
4 well-written
5 well-informed
6 well-dressed
7 well-paid

101.3
2 OK
3 OK
4 hard
5 OK
6 slowly

101.4
2 hardly hear
3 hardly slept
4 hardly speak
5 hardly said
6 hardly changed
7 hardly recognised

101.5
2 hardly any
3 hardly anything
4 hardly anybody/anyone
5 hardly ever
6 Hardly anybody/anyone
7 hardly anywhere
8 hardly or hardly ever
9 hardly any
10 hardly anything ... hardly anywhere

UNIT 102

102.1
4 so
5 so
6 such a
7 so
8 such
9 such a
10 such a
11 so
12 so ... such
13 so
14 such a
15 such a

102.2
3 I was so tired (that) I couldn’t keep my eyes open.
4 We had such a good time on holiday (that) we didn’t want to come home.
5 She speaks English so well (that) you would think it was her native language, or She speaks such good English (that) ...
6 I’ve got such a lot to do (that) I don’t know where to begin.
7 The music was so loud (that) you could hear it from miles away.
8 I had such a big breakfast (that) I didn’t eat anything else for the rest of the day.
9 It was such horrible weather (that) we spent the whole day indoors.
10 I was so surprised (that) I didn’t know what to say.

UNIT 103

103.1
3 enough money
4 enough milk
5 warm enough
6 enough room
7 well enough
8 enough time
9 enough qualifications
10 big enough
11 enough cups

103.2
2 too busy to talk
3 too late to go
4 warm enough to sit
5 too shy to be
6 enough patience to be
7 too far away to hear
8 enough English to read

103.3
2 This coffee is too hot to drink.
3 The piano was too heavy to move.
4 These apples aren’t / are not ripe enough to eat.
5 The situation is too complicated to explain.
6 The wall was too high to climb over.
7 This sofa isn’t / is not big enough for three people to sit on.
8 Some things are too small to see without a microscope.

UNIT 104

104.1
2 quite hungry
3 Quite good
4 quite often
5 quite noisy
6 quite surprised
7 quite late
8 quite old

104.2
2 quite a good voice
3 quite a long way
4 quite a strong wind
5 quite a lot of traffic
6 quite a busy day
7 quite a nice time
104.3
Example answers:
2 rather long
3 rather disappointed
4 rather strange
5 rather impatient
104.4
3 more than a little ...
4 completely
5 more than a little ...
6 more than a little ...
7 completely
104.5
2 quite safe
3 quite impossible
4 quite right
5 quite different
6 quite unnecessary
7 quite sure
UNIT 105
105.1
2 stronger
3 smaller
4 more expensive
5 warmer/hotter
6 more interesting / more exciting
7 nearer
8 more difficult / more complicated
9 better
10 worse
11 longer
12 more quietly
13 more often
14 further/farther
15 happier / more cheerful
105.2
3 more serious than
4 thinner
5 bigger
6 more interested
7 more important than
8 simpler / more simple
9 more crowded than
10 more peaceful than
11 more easily
12 higher than
105.3
2 It takes longer by train than by car.
3 I ran farther/farther than Dave.
4 Joe did worse than Chris (in the test).
5 My friends arrived earlier than I expected.
6 The buses run more often than the trains. or The buses run more frequently than ... or The buses are more frequent than ...
7 We were busier than usual (at work today). or We were busier at work today than usual.
UNIT 106
106.1
2 much bigger
3 much more complicated than
4 a bit cooler
5 far more interesting than
6 a bit more slowly
7 a lot easier
8 slightly older
106.2
2 any sooner / any earlier
3 no higher than / no more expensive than
4 any further/farther
5 no worse than
106.3
2 bigger and bigger
3 heavier and heavier
4 more and more nervous
5 worse and worse
6 more and more expensive
7 better and better
8 more and more talkative
106.4
2 the more I liked him or the more I got to like him
3 the more profit you (will) make or the higher your profit (will be) or the more your profit (will be)
4 the harder it is to concentrate
5 the more impatient she became
106.5
2 older
3 older or elder
4 older
UNIT 107
107.1
2 My salary isn’t as high as yours.
3 You don’t know as much about cars as me. or ... as I do.
4 It isn’t as cold as it was yesterday.
5 I don’t feel as tired as I did yesterday. or ... as I felt yesterday.
6 Our neighbours haven’t lived here as long as us. or ... as we have.
7 I wasn’t as nervous (before the interview) as I usually am. or ... as usual.
107.2
3 The station wasn’t as far as I thought.
4 The meal cost less than I expected.
5 I don’t go out as much as I used to. or ... as often as I used to.
6 Karen used to have longer hair.
7 You don’t know them as well as me. or ... as I do.
8 There aren’t as many people at this meeting as at the last one.
107.3
2 as well as
3 as long as
4 as soon as
5 as often as
6 as quietly as
7 just as comfortable as
8 just as well-qualified as
9 just as bad as
107.4
2 Your hair is the same colour as mine.
3 I arrived at the same time as you (did)."
Key to Exercises

108.2
3 larger
4 the smallest
5 better
6 the worst
7 the most popular
8 ... the highest mountain in the world ... It is higher than ...
9 the most enjoyable
10 more comfortable
11 the quickest
12 The oldest or The eldest

108.3
2 That’s the funniest joke I’ve ever heard.
3 This is the best coffee I’ve ever tasted.
4 She’s the most generous person I’ve ever met.
5 That’s the furthest/farthest I’ve ever run.
6 It’s the worst mistake I’ve ever made. or It was the worst ...
7 Who’s the most famous person you’ve ever met?

UNIT 109

109.1
3 Joe doesn’t like football very much.
4 OK
5 I ate my breakfast quickly and ...
6 ... a lot of people to the party?
7 OK
8 Did you go to bed late last night?
9 OK
10 I met a friend of mine on my way home.

109.2
2 We won the game easily.
3 I closed the door quietly.
4 Diane speaks German quite well.
5 Sam watches TV all the time.
6 Please don’t ask that question again.
7 Does Kevin play football every weekend?
8 I borrowed some money from a friend of mine.

109.3
2 I go to the supermarket every Friday.
3 Why did you come home so late?
4 Sarah takes her children to school every day.
5 I haven’t been to the cinema recently.
6 Please write your name at the top of the page.
7 I remembered her name after a few minutes.
8 We walked around the town all morning.
9 I didn’t see you at the party on Saturday night.
10 We found some interesting books in the library.
11 Jackie left her umbrella in a restaurant last night.
12 They are building a new hotel opposite the park.

UNIT 110

110.1
3 I usually have ...
4 OK
5 Steve hardly ever gets angry.
6 ... and I also went to the bank.
7 Jane always has to hurry ...
8 We were all tired, so ...
9 OK

110.2
2 a We were all on holiday in Spain.
   b We were all staying at the same hotel.
   c We all enjoyed ourselves.
3 Catherine is always very generous.
4 I don’t usually have to work on Saturdays.
5 Do you always watch TV in the evenings?
6 ... he is also learning Italian.
7 a The new hotel is probably very expensive.
   b It probably costs a lot to stay there.
8 a I can probably help you.
   b I probably can’t help you.

110.3
2 usually take
3 am usually
4 has probably gone
5 were both born
6 can also sing
7 often sleeps
8 have never spoken
9 always have to wait
10 can only read
11 will probably be leaving
12 probably won’t be
13 is hardly ever
14 are still living
15 would never have met
16 always am

UNIT 111

111.1
3 He doesn’t write poems any more.
4 He still wants to be a teacher.

5 He isn’t / He’s not interested in politics any more.
6 He’s still single.
7 He doesn’t go fishing any more.
8 He hasn’t got a beard any more. or He doesn’t have ...
9–12 He no longer writes poems. He is / He’s no longer interested in politics. He no longer goes fishing. He’s no longer got a beard. / He no longer has a beard.

111.2
2 He hasn’t gone yet.
3 They haven’t finished (repairing the road) yet.
4 They haven’t woken up yet.
5 Has she found a place to live yet?
6 I haven’t decided (what to do) yet.
7 It hasn’t taken off yet.

111.3
5 I don’t want to go out yet.
6 she doesn’t work there any more
7 I still have a lot of friends there. or I’ve still got ...
8 We’ve already met.
9 Do you still live in the same place
10 have you already eaten
11 He’s not here yet.
12 he still isn’t here (he isn’t here yet is also possible)
13 are you already a member
14 I can still remember it very clearly
15 These trousers don’t fit me any more.
16 ‘Have you finished with the paper yet?’ ‘No, I’m still reading it.’

UNIT 112

112.1
2 even Amanda
3 not even Julie
4 even Amanda
5 even Sarah
6 not even Amanda

112.2
2 We even painted the floor.
3 She’s even met the prime minister.
4 You could even hear it from the next street. or You could even hear the noise from ...
5 I can’t even remember her name.
6 There isn’t even a cinema.
UNIT 113

113.1
2 Although I had never seen her before
3 although it was quite cold
4 although we don’t like them very much
5 Although I didn’t speak the language
6 Although the heating was on
7 although I’d met her twice before
8 although we’ve known each other a long time

113.2
2 a In spite of (or Despite)
b Although
3 a because
b although
4 a because of
b in spite of (or despite)
5 a although
b because of

Example answers:
6 a he hadn’t studied very hard
b he had studied very hard
7 a I was hungry
b being hungry / my hunger / the fact (that) I was hungry

113.3
2 In spite of having very little money, they are happy. or
In spite of the fact (that) they have very little money ...
3 Although my foot was injured, I managed to walk to the nearest village. or
I managed to walk to the nearest village although my ...
Key to Exercises

4 As the door was open, I went in.
5 As none of us had a watch, we didn’t know what time it was.

116.3
3 because
4 at the same time as
5 at the same time as
6 because
7 because

116.4
3 OK
4 when I was asleep on the beach
5 When I left school
6 OK
7 when I was a child

116.5
Example answers:
1 I saw you as you were getting into your car.
2 It started to rain just as we started playing tennis.
3 As I didn’t have enough money for a taxi, I had to walk home.
4 Just as I took the photograph, somebody walked in front of the camera.

UNIT 117

117.1
3 like her mother
4 people like him
5 OK
6 like most of his friends
7 like talking to the wall
8 OK
9 OK
10 OK
11 like a bomb exploding
12 like a fish

117.2
2 like blocks of ice
3 like a beginner
4 as a tourist guide
5 like a church
6 as a birthday present
7 like winter
8 like a child

117.3
2 like
3 as
4 like
5 like
6 as (like is also possible)
7 like
8 as
9 as
10 like
11 like
12 as
13 as

14 Like
15 as
16 As
17 like
18 as (like is also possible)

UNIT 118

118.1
2 You look as if you’ve seen a ghost.
3 You sound as if you’re enjoying yourself.
4 I feel as if I’ve (just) run a marathon.

118.2
2 It looks as if it’s going to rain.
3 It sounds as if they’re having an argument.
4 It looks as if there’s been an accident.
5 It looks as if we’ll have to walk.
6 It sounds as if you should see a doctor.

118.3
2 as if he meant what he said
3 as if she’s hurt her leg / as if she hurt her leg
4 as if he hadn’t eaten for a week
5 as if she was enjoying it
6 as if I’m going to be sick
7 as if she didn’t want to come
8 as if I didn’t exist

118.4
2 as if I was/were
3 as if she was/were
4 as if it was/were

UNIT 119

119.1
3 during
4 for
5 during
6 for
7 for
8 for
9 during
10 for
11 for
12 for
13 during
14 for

119.2
3 while
4 While
5 During
6 while
7 during
8 During
9 while
10 during
11 while

12 during
13 while
14 while

119.3
Example answers:
3 I hurt my arm while I was doing the housework.
4 Can you wait here while I make a quick phone call?
5 Most of the students looked bored during the lesson.
6 I was asked a lot of questions during the interview.
7 Don’t open the car door while the car is moving.
8 The lights suddenly went out while we were having dinner.
9 It started to rain during the game.
10 It started to rain while we were walking home.

UNIT 120

120.1
2 I have to be at the airport by 8.30.
3 Let me know by Saturday whether you can come to the party.
4 Please make sure that you’re here by 2 o’clock.
5 If we leave now, we should arrive by lunchtime.

120.2
2 by
3 by
4 until
5 until 5.30 ... by now
6 by
7 until
8 by
9 by
10 until
11 By
12 by

120.3
Example answers:
3 until I come back
4 by 5 o’clock
5 by next Friday
6 until midnight

120.4
2 By the time I got to the station / By the time I’d got to the station
3 By the time I finished (my work) / By the time I’d finished (my work)
4 By the time the police arrived / By the time the police had arrived
5 By the time we got to the top / By the time we’d got to the top
UNIT 121
121.1
2 at night
3 in the evening
4 on 21 July 1969
5 at the same time
6 in the 1920s
7 in about 20 minutes
8 at the moment
9 in the Middle Ages
10 in 11 seconds
11 (on) Saturdays

121.2
2 I last saw her on Tuesday. or
I last saw her Tuesday.
3 in
4 At
5 on
6 in
7 in
8 at
9 on
10 at
11 in
12 at
13 on
14 in
15 On Saturday night or
Saturday night ... at midnight
16 at 5 o'clock in the morning
17 on 7 January ... in April
18 at home on Tuesday morning
or at home Tuesday morning
... in the afternoon

121.3
3 a
4 both
5 b
6 b
7 both
8 a
9 b
10 a

UNIT 122
122.1
2 on time
3 in time
4 on time
5 in time
6 on time
7 in time
8 in time
9 on time

122.2
2 I got home just in time.
3 I stopped him just in time.
4 I got to the cinema just in time for the beginning of the
film.

122.3
2 at the end of the month
3 at the end of the course

122.4
2 In the end she resigned (from
her job).
3 In the end I gave up (trying to
learn German).
4 In the end we decided not to
go (to the party). or
In the end we didn't go (to the party).

UNIT 123
123.1
2 On his arm. or
On the man's arm.
3 At the traffic lights.
4 a On the door.
 b In the door.
5 On the wall.
6 In Paris.
7 a At the gate.
 b On the gate.
8 On the beach.

123.2
2 on my guitar
3 at the next garage
4 in your coffee
5 on that tree
6 in the mountains
7 on the island
8 at the window

123.3
2 on
3 at
4 on
5 in
6 on
7 at
8 in a small village in the south-
west
9 on
10 in
11 on the wall in the kitchen
12 at

UNIT 124
124.1
2 On the second floor.
3 At/On the corner.
4 In the corner.
5 At the top of the stairs.
6 In the back of the car.
7 At the front.

8 On the left.
9 In the back row.
10 On a farm.

124.2
2 on the right
3 in the world
4 on the way to work
5 on the west coast
6 in the front row
7 at the back of the class
6 on the back of this card

124.3
2 in
3 in
4 at
5 in
6 on
7 At
8 in
9 in
10 on
11 in
12 on
13 in
14 on ... on

UNIT 125
125.1
2 on a train
3 at a conference
4 in hospital
5 at the hairdresser's
6 on his bike
7 in New York
8 at the Savoy Theatre

125.2
2 in a taxi
3 at the cinema
4 in prison
5 at school
6 at the sports centre
7 in hospital
8 at the airport
9 on the plane
10 at sea

125.3
2 at
3 in
4 at
5 at/in a very nice hotel ... in
Amsterdam
6 in
7 on
8 ar
9 in
10 at
11 in
12 at ... at
13 in
14 in Birmingham ... at
Birmingham University
UNIT 126
126.1
3 at
4 to
5 to
6 into
7 at
8 to
9 into
10 to
11 at
12 to
13 into
14 to
15 get home ... going to bed
16 returned to France ... two years in Brazil
17 born in Chicago ... moved to New York ... lives in New York

126.2
Example answers:
2–4 I've been to Sweden once.
I've never been to the United States.
I've been to Paris a few times.

126.3
2 in
3 –
4 at
5 to
6 –

126.4
2 I got on the bus.
3 I got off the train.
4 I got into the taxi. or I got in the taxi.
6 I got off the plane.

UNIT 127
127.1
2 in cold weather
3 in pencil
4 in love
5 in block capitals
6 in the shade
7 in my opinion

127.2
2 on strike
3 on a tour
4 on television
5 on purpose
6 on a diet
7 on business
8 on holiday
9 on the phone
10 on the whole

127.3
2 on
3 on
4 at

5 in
6 on
7 for or on
8 on
9 at
10 at
11 on
12 In my opinion ... on television
13 on
14 on
15 on
16 at
17 on
18 in

UNIT 128
128.1
2 by mistake
3 by hand
4 by credit card
5 by satellite

128.2
2 on
3 by
4 by car ... on my bike
5 in
6 on
7 by

128.3
Example answers:
3–5 Ulysses is a novel by James Joyce.
Yesterday is a song by Paul McCartney.
Guernica is a painting by Pablo Picasso.

128.4
2 by
3 with
4 by
5 by
6 by car ... in your car
7 by the bed with a lamp and a clock on it

128.5
2 travelling by bus or travelling on the bus or travelling on buses
3 taken with a very good camera
4 this music is by Beethoven
5 pay cash or pay in cash
6 a mistake by one of our players

128.6
2 The price has gone up by ten pence.
3 Helen won by two votes.
4 I missed her/Kate by five minutes.

UNIT 129
129.1
2 to the problem
3 with her brother
4 in the cost of living
5 to your question
6 for a new road
7 into working at home
8 in the number of people without jobs
9 for shoes like these any more
10 between your job and mine

129.2
2 invitation to
3 contact with
4 key to
5 cause of
6 reply to
7 connection between
8 pictures of
9 reason for
10 damage to

129.3
2 to
3 in
4 for
5 of
6 in or to
7 for
8 to or towards
9 with
10 in
11 to
12 of
13 for a rise in pay
14 to
15 with

UNIT 130
130.1
2 That was nice of her.
3 That was generous of him.
4 That wasn't very nice of them.
5 That's very kind of you.
6 That wasn't very polite of him.
7 That's a bit childish of them.

130.2
2 kind to
3 sorry for
4 annoyed with
5 annoyed about
6 impressed by/with
7 bored with (or bored by)
8 astonished at/by

130.3
2 of
3 to or to
4 of
5 of
6 with
7 to
8 with
9 at/by
10 with
11 about
12 about
13 sorry for/about ... angry with
14 furious with us for making
15 about
16 about
17 at/by
18 by/with
19 about
20 about
21 for

UNIT 131
131.1
2 of furniture
3 on sport
4 of time
5 at tennis
6 to a Russian (man)
7 of him / of Robert
8 from yours / to yours

131.2
2 similar to
3 afraid of
4 interested in
5 responsible for
6 proud of
7 different from/to

131.3
2 for
3 of
4 of
5 in
6 to
7 of ... of
8 on
9 of
10 with
11 of
12 of
13 in
14 of
15 of
16 at
17 of
18 on
19 of

Example answers:
2 I'm hopeless at telling jokes.
3 I'm not very good at mathematics.
4 I'm quite good at remembering names.

UNIT 132
132.1
3 Can you explain this question to me? / Can you explain it to me?
4 Can you explain the problem to me? / Can you explain it to me?

5 Can you explain to me how this machine works?
6 Can you explain to me what I have to do?

132.2
3 to
4 –
5 to
6 to
7 –
8 –
9 to
10 –

132.3
3 speaking to
4 point them at
5 glanced at
6 listen to
7 throw stones at
8 throw it to

132.4
2 at
3 at
4 to
5 to
6 at
7 at
8 to
9 at
10 at
11 to

UNIT 133
133.1
2 for
3 for
4 to
5 for
6 about
7 –
8 about
9 –
10 for
11 for
12 about
13 for
14 for

133.2
2 waiting for
3 talk about
4 asked the waiter for
5 applied for
6 do something about
7 looks after or has looked after
8 left Boston for

133.3
2 for
3 about
4 of
5 for
6 of
7 about
8 –

133.4
2 looking for
3 looked after
4 looking for
5 look for
6 looks after

UNIT 134
134.1
2 about
3 to us about
4 of
5 of
6 about ... about ... about ...
7 about
8 about
9 about/of

134.2
2 complaining about
3 think about
4 warn you about
5 heard of
6 dream of
7 reminded me about
8 remind you of

134.3
2 hear about
3 heard from
4 heard of
5 hear from
6 hear about
7 heard of

134.4
2 think about
3 think of
4 think of
5 thinking of/about
6 think of
7 thought about
8 think much of
9 thinking about/of

UNIT 135
135.1
2 for the misunderstanding
3 on winning the tournament
4 from/against his enemies
5 of eleven players
6 on bread and eggs

135.2
2 for everything
3 for the economic crisis
4 on television
5 is to blame for the economic crisis
6 television is to blame for the increase in violent crime

135.3
2 paid for
3 accused of
4 depends on
Key to Exercises

5 live on
6 congratulated him on
7 apologise to
135.4
2 from
3 on
4 off/from
5 for
6 for
7 –
8 on
9 on
10 – or on
11 from/against
12 of

UNIT 136

136.1
2 I prefer small towns to big
3 cities.
4 Jane provided me with all the
5 information I needed.
6 This morning I spent £70 on a
7 pair of shoes.

136.2
2 happened to
3 invited to
4 divided into
5 believe in
6 fill it with
7 drove into
8 Concentrate on
9 succeeded
10 in
136.3
2 to
3 on
4 in
5 to
6 in
7 with
8 into
9 in
10 on
11 into
12 to
13 –
14 into
15 on
16 from one language into
17 another
18 happened to … spend it on
19 into
20 with
136.4
Example answers:
2 on CDs
3 into a wall
4 to volleyball
5 into many languages

UNIT 137

137.1
2 sit down
3 flew away
4 get out
5 speak up
6 get by
7 gone up
8 looked round
137.2
2 back at
3 up to
4 forward to
5 away with
6 up at
7 in through
137.3
2 wake me up
3 get it out
4 give them back
5 switch it on
6 take them off
137.4
3 I have to take them back
4 We can turn the television
5 off or We can turn off the
6 television
7 (example answer) You should
8 put your coat on or You
9 should put on your coat.
10 I was able to put it out
11 (example answer) they’ve put
12 the price(s) up or they’ve
13 put up the price(s)
14 Shall I turn the light(s) on?
15 or Shall I turn on the
16 light(s)?

UNIT 138

138.1
2 eats
3 moved
4 drop/call
5 checked
6 cut
7 plug
8 filling / to fill
9 left
10 dive
11 rub
12 dropped
138.2
2 into
3 in
4 out
5 into
6 out of
138.3
2 dropped out
3 moved in
4 left out
5 joined in
6 eating out or to eat out
7 taken in
8 dropped in / called in
9 get out of

138.4
2 Fill them in or Fill them out
3 cross out
4 took me in
5 let us in

UNIT 139

139.1
2 a mistake
3 a candle
4 an order
5 a cigarette / a candle
6 a new product
7 a mess

139.2
2 works out
3 carried out
4 ran out
5 sort out
6 find out
7 tried out
8 pointed out
9 work out
10 went out
11 turned out
12 works out
13 find out
14 put out

139.3
2 giving/handling out
3 turned out nice/fine/sunny
4 fallen out
5 to sort out / sorting out the
6 work out how to use the
7 camera / her new camera

139.4
2 try it out
3 work it out
4 sorted it out

UNIT 140

140.1
2 put the heating on
3 put the oven on
4 put the kettle on
5 put a CD on

140.2
2 going on
3 take off
4 switched off / turned off
5 drove off / went off
6 put on
7 set off / be off
8 put off
9 called off
10 put on
11 see me off
Key to Exercises

UNIT 141

141.1
1. went on / carried on
2. walked on / carried on / carried on walking
3. dozed off / dropped off / dozed off
4. go on / carry on
5. went off
6. keep on phoning me
7. keeps on phoning me
8. went off
9. get on
10. going off
11. keep on
12. get on
13. showing off
14. put off

141.2
2. went off
3. finish off
4. drive on / carry on
5. ripped off
6. getting on
7. dozed off / dropped off / dozed off
8. told off
9. get on
10. going off
11. keep on
12. get on
13. showing off
14. put off

141.3
2. did you get on
3. were ripped off
4. go off
5. did you get on
6. carried on (playing) / went on (playing)
7. tell them off
8. doesn’t get on (well) with

UNIT 142

142.1
2. turn it down
3. calm him down
4. put them up
5. let her down
6. turned it down

142.2
2. took them down
3. stand up
4. turned it up
5. put their bags down
6. were blown down / fell down
7. wrote it down
8. bent down and picked them up

UNIT 143

143.1
2. went up to / walked up to
3. catch up with
4. keep up with

143.2
2. used up
3. washed up
4. grow up
5. turn up
6. gave up
7. taking up
8. give up
9. ended up
10. takes up
11. make up

143.3
3. tidy it up / tidy up
4. fixed it up
5. keep up with
6. was brought up
7. keep it up
8. went up to
9. was made up of
10. set it up / fix it up

UNIT 144

144.1
2. D
3. E
4. F
5. G
6. A
7. B

144.2
2. held up
3. did it up
4. cheer him up

144.3
2. blew up
3. beaten up
4. broken up / split up
5. did up
6. clears up
7. mixed up

144.4
2. look it up
3. put up with
4. made it up
5. come up with
6. tear it up
7. saving up for

UNIT 145

145.1
2. Pay
3. throw
4. gets
5. be
6. look
7. gave
8. get

145.2
2. be away / have gone away
3. be back
4. ran away
5. smile back
6. get away
7. Keep away

145.3
2. blew away
3. put it back
4. walked away
5. threw it back (to her)
6. throw them away

145.4
2. throw it away
3. take them back
4. pay you back / pay it back
5. gave them away
6. call back / call me back
Key to Additional exercises (see page 302)

1. 'm getting / am getting
do you do
5. arrived ... was raining
6. phones ... didn't phone
7. were thinking ... decided
8. are you looking
doesn't rain
10. rang ... were having
11. went ... was preparing ...
didn't want ... didn't stay
told ... didn't believe ...
thought ... was joking

2. didn't go
3. is wearing
4. has grown
5. haven't decided
6. is being
7. wasn't reading
didn't have
9. It's beginning
got
11. wasn't
12. you've been
13. I've been doing
did she go
15. I've been playing
do you come
17. since I saw her
18. for 20 years

3. are you going
4. Do you watch
5. have you lived / have you been living / have you been
6. Did you have
7. Have you seen
8. was she wearing
9. Have you been waiting / Have you been here
does it take
11. Have you finished
12. Have you (ever) been

4. I've known each other / have known each other or I've been friends / have been friends
3. I've ever had / I've ever been on / I've had for ages (etc.)
4. He went / He went home / He went out / He left
5. I've worn it
6. I was playing
7. been swimming for
8. since I've been / since I (last) went
did you buy / did you get

5. got ... was already waiting ...
had arrived

2. was lying ... wasn't watching ...
'd fallen / had fallen ... was snoring / turned / cried
'd just gone / had just gone ...
were reading ... heard ... got ...
didn't see ... went
4. missed ... was standing ...
realised ... 'd left / had left ...
had ...
5. met ... was walking ... 'd been / had been ... 'd been playing / had been playing ...
were going ... invited ... 'd arranged / had arranged ...
didn't have

6. Somebody has taken it.
3. They'd only known / They had only known each other (for) a few weeks.
4. It's been raining / It has been raining all day. / It's rained / It has rained all day.
5. I'd been dreaming / I had been dreaming.
6. I'd had / I had had a big breakfast.
7. They've been going / They have been going there for years.
8. I've had it / I have had it since I got up.
9. He's been training / He has been training very hard for it.

7. I haven't seen
2. You look / You're looking
3. are you going
4. are you meeting
5. I'm going
6. Do you often go
7. are you going
8. I'm meeting
9. has been
10. I've been waiting
11. has just started
12. is she getting
13. Does she like
14. she thinks
15. Are you working
16. spoke
17. you were working
18. went
19. I started / I had started
20. I lost
21. you haven't had
22. I've had
23. have you seen
24. has he been
25. I saw
26. he went
27. He'd been
28. he decided / he'd decided

29. He was really looking forward
30. is he doing
31. I haven't heard
32. he left

8. I invented
1. it's gone / it has gone
2. had gone / left
3. did you do ... Did you go
4. have you had
6. was looking
7. She's been teaching / She has been teaching
8. I bought ... I haven't worn
9. I saw ... was ... I'd seen / I had seen ... I remembered ...
it was
10. Have you heard ... She was ...
died ... She wrote ...

11. does this word mean ... I've never seen
12. Did you get ... it had already begun
13. knocked ... was ... she'd gone / she had gone ... she didn't want
14. He'd never used / He had never used ... he didn't know
15. went ... she needed ... she'd been sitting / she had been sitting

9. used to drive
4. was driving
5. were working
6. used to have
7. was living
8. was playing
9. used to play
10. was wearing

10. I'm going to the dentist.
3. No, we're going to hire a car.
4. I'll look after the children.
5. I'm having lunch with Sue.
6. What are you going to have?
7. I'll turn on the light.
8. I'm going to turn on the light.

11. I'll come
3. shall we meet
4. begins
5. I'll meet
6. I'm seeing
7. Shall I ask
8. I'll see
9. are going
10. does the film begin
11. Are you meeting
12. I'll be

368
Key to Additional exercises

12
1 (2) Are you going to do
(3) it starts
(4) you'll enjoy
(5) it will / it's going to be
2 (1) you're going
(2) We're going
(3) you have
(4) I'll send
(5) I'll get
(6) I get
3 (1) I'm having / I'm going to have
(2) are coming
(3) they'll have gone
(4) they're
(5) I won't be
(6) you know
(7) I'll phone
4 (1) shall we meet
(2) I'll be waiting
(3) you arrive
(4) I'll be sitting
(5) I'll be wearing
(6) Is Agent 307 coming / Is Agent 307 going to come / Will Agent 307 be coming
7 (1) Shall I bring
(2) I'll explain
(3) I see
(4) I'll try
13
1 I'll have
2 Are you going
3 shall I phone
4 It's going to land
5 it's / it is
6 I'll miss / I'm going to miss ... you go (or you've gone)
7 Shall I give ... I give ... will you send
8 does it end
9 I'm going ... is getting
10 I'll tell ... I'm ... I won't be
11 I'm going to have / I'm having
12 she apologises
13 we'll be living
14 you finish
14
2 I've had
3 I bought or I got
4 I'll come
5 I've been or I've eaten
6 I used to play
7 I haven't been waiting or I haven't been here
8 I'd been
9 I'm going
10 I haven't seen or I haven't heard from
11 I'll have gone or I'll have left
15
2 I've been travelling
3 I'm beginning
4 I've seen
5 has been
6 I've met
7 I left
8 I stayed or I was staying
9 I'd planned or I was planning
10 I ended up
11 I enjoyed
12 I took
13 met
14 I'm staying or I'm going to stay or I'll be staying or I'll stay
15 I continue
16 I'll get
17 I'm
18 I'll let
19 I know
20 I'm staying
21 we're going to visit or we're visiting
22 are building or have been building
23 it will be
24 I'll be
16
2 A
3 C
4 B or C
5 B
6 A or C
7 A or C
8 C
9 B or C
10 A or B
11 A
12 C
13 A or B
14 B or C
15 B
17
3 He must have forgotten.
4 You needed to have gone home so early.
5 It can't be changed now.
6 She may be watching television.
7 She must have been waiting for somebody.
8 He couldn't have done it.
9 You ought to have been there earlier.
10 I would have helped you.
11 You should have been warned about it.
12 He might not have been feeling very well. or He might not have felt ...
18
3 could rain / might rain
4 might have gone / could have gone
5 couldn't go
6 couldn't have seen / can't have seen
7 should get
8 wouldn't recognise / might not recognise
9 must have heard
10 should have turned
19
4 rings
5 were
6's is
7 was/were
8 had been
9 had
10 hadn't had
11 'd driven / had driven or 'd been driving / had been driving
12 didn't read
20
2 I'd be surprised if Sarah came (to see us now).
3 If I'd known you were busy, I wouldn't have disturbed you.
4 They'd be upset if I told them what happened.
5 If you hadn't frightened the dog, it wouldn't have attacked you.
6 I wouldn't have got (so) wet if I'd had an umbrella. or ... if I had had an umbrella.
7 If he hadn't been (so) nervous, he wouldn't have failed (his driving test).
21
Example answers:
1 I wasn't feeling so tired
2 I hadn't had so much to do
3 I would have forgotten Jane's birthday
4 you hadn't taken so long to get ready
5 I would have gone to the concert
6 you were in trouble
7 there was less traffic
8 people would go out more
22
3 was cancelled
4 has been repaired
5 is being restored
6's believed / is believed
7 'd be sacked / would be sacked
8 might have been thrown
9 was taught
10 being arrested / having been arrested
11 Have you ever been arrested
12 are reported ... have been injured
23
3've sold / have sold
4's been sold / has been sold
Key to Additional exercises

5  are made
6  might be stolen
7  must have been stolen
8  must have taken
9  can be solved
10 should have left
11 is delayed
12 is being built ... is expected

24
Castle Fire
2  was discovered
3  was injured
4  be rescued
5  are believed to have been destroyed
6  is not known

Shop robbery
1  was forced
2  being threatened
3  had been stolen
4  was later found
5  had been abandoned
6  has been arrested / was arrested
7  is still being questioned

Road delays
1  is being resurfaced
2  are asked / are being asked / have been asked
3  is expected
4  will be closed
5  will be diverted

Accident
1  was taken
2  was allowed
3  was blocked
4  be diverted
5  have been killed

25
1  I told her (that) Paul had gone out and I didn’t know when he’d be back. I asked (her) if/whether she wanted to leave a message, but she said (that) she’d try again later.
2  I had reserved a hotel room, but when I got to the hotel they told me (that) they had no record of any reservation in my name. When I asked (them) if/whether they had any rooms free anyway, they said (that) they were sorry, but the hotel was full.
3  The immigration official asked us why we were visiting the country, and we told him (that) we were on holiday. Then he wanted to know how long we intended to stay and where we would be staying during our visit.
4  She said (that) she’d phone us from the airport when she arrived. or She said (that)

she’ll phone us from the airport when she arrives.
No, she said not to come to the airport. She said (that) she’d take the bus. or She said (that) she’ll take the bus.
5  He wanted to know what my job was and asked (me) how much I earned. or He wanted to know what my job is and asked (me) how much I earn.
... so I told him to mind his own business and I put the phone down.
6  He said (that) he’d be at the restaurant at 7.30.
He said (that) he knew where the restaurant was. And I told him to phone me if there was any problem.
7  You just said (that) you weren’t hungry. But you said (that) you didn’t like bananas. You told me not to buy any.

26
3  changing
4  to change
5  change
6  being
7  saying
8  to phone
9  drinking
10 to be
11 to see
12 to be
13 to think ... making
14 living ... to move
15 to be ... playing
16 being stopped ... stealing ... driving
17 work ... pressing

27
3  I don’t fancy going out.
4  He tends to forget things.
5  Would you mind helping me? / Do you mind helping me?
6 Everybody seems to have gone out.
7 We’re thinking of moving.
8 I was afraid to touch it.
9 He’s / He is afraid of being robbed.
10 It’s not worth seeing.
11 I’m not used to walking so far.
12 She seems to be enjoying herself.
13 He insisted on showing them to me.
14 I’d rather somebody else did it.

28
3  I’ve given up reading newspapers.

4  I’d rather not go out tonight / ... stay at home tonight.
5  He has difficulty walking / ... difficulty in walking.
6  Do you want me to phone you this evening?
7  I came in without anybody seeing me / ... without being seen.
8  I was accused of being a cheat / ... of cheating.
9  I’m looking forward to seeing them again.
10 What do you advise me to do?
11 I’d like to have gone out with you.
12 I regret not taking your advice / ... that I didn’t take your advice.

29
2  Tennis ... twice a week ... a very good player
3  for dinner ... after work ... to the cinema
4  Unemployment ... for people ... find work
5  an accident ... going home ... taken to hospital ... I think most accidents ... by people driving
6  an economist ... in the investment department of Lloyds Bank ... for an American bank ... in the United States
7  the name of the hotel ... The Imperial ... in Queen Street in the city centre ... near the station
8  The older one ... a pilot with British Airways ... The younger one ... at school ... he leaves school ... go to university ... study law

30
2  B
3  C
4  A or B
5  C
6  B
7  A or C
8  A
9  C
10 B or C
11 B
12 A
13 A or B
14 B
15 A
16 B
17 C
18 A

31
3  It’s the most polluted place ...
4  I was disappointed that ...
5  OK
6  Joe works hard, but ...
7  in a large modern building.
8  OK (as fast as he can is also correct)
Key to Additional exercises

32
2 If
3 when
4 if
5 when
6 if
7 if
8 unless
9 if
10 as long as
11 in case
12 in case
13 if
14 even if
15 Although
16 Although
17 When
18 when

33
2 on
3 at 9.30 on Tuesday
4 at
5 on
6 at
7 In
8 at
9 during
10 on Friday... since then
11 for
12 at
13 at the moment ... until Friday
14 by
15 in

34
1 in
2 by
3 at
4 on
5 in
6 on
7 to a party at Linda’s house
8 on
9 on
10 to ... to
11 in Vienna ... at the age of 35
12 in this photograph ... on the left
13 to the theatre ... in the front row

35
1 for
2 at
3 to
4 to
5 in
6 with
7 of
8 to
9 of
10 at/b
11 of
12 about

36
1 of
2 after
3 – (no preposition)
4 about
5 to
6 – (no preposition)
7 into
8 of
9 to
10 – (no preposition)
11 on
12 of
13 of
14 – (no preposition)
15 in
16 at (about is also possible)
17 on
18 If Kevin asks you for money
19 I apologised to Sarah for keeping ...
20 I thanked her for everything

37
2 h
3 e
4 g
5 a
6 k
7 c
8 j
9 b
10 f
11 i

38
2 D
3 B
4 B
5 A
6 A
7 D
8 C
9 C
10 B
11 A
12 D

39
2 out to
3 up with
4 forward to
5 up with
6 out of
7 on with
8 out with
9 up with
10 back on
11 out about
12 on with

40
3 went off
4 turned up / showed up
5 fill it in / fill it out
6 knocked down / pulled down / torn down
7 sorted out
8 give up
9 dozed off / dropped off / nodded off
10 split up / break up
11 put up with it
12 get by
13 went on
14 put it off

41
2 put
3 moving
4 put
5 done
6 turned / turns
7 find
8 Calm
9 set
10 held
11 left or 've left / have left
12 works
13 join
14 works
15 drop / call
16 sort / work
17 went off ... woke me up
# Key to Study guide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present and past</th>
<th>Reported speech</th>
<th>Relative clauses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1 A</td>
<td>7.1 A</td>
<td>12.1 A, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 B</td>
<td>7.2 B</td>
<td>12.2 A, B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 C</td>
<td>7.3 A</td>
<td>12.3 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 B, C</td>
<td></td>
<td>12.4 B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 C</td>
<td>8.1 C</td>
<td>12.5 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6 A</td>
<td>8.2 A</td>
<td>12.6 B, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present perfect and past</td>
<td>Questions and auxiliary verbs</td>
<td>Adjectives and adverbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 B</td>
<td>8.3 D</td>
<td>13.1 B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 C</td>
<td>8.4 A</td>
<td>13.2 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3 A</td>
<td>8.5 B</td>
<td>13.3 B, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4 C</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.4 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5 A</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.5 A, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6 B</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.6 B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7 A</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.7 B, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.8 D</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.8 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.9 A</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.9 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.10 A</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.10 B, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.11 C</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.11 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.12 A</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.12 A, B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.13 C</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.13 B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.14 C</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.14 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.15 D</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.15 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.16 C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>-ing and the infinitive</td>
<td>Conjunctions and prepositions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1 B</td>
<td>9.1 A</td>
<td>14.1 A, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 A</td>
<td>9.2 B, D</td>
<td>14.2 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3 C</td>
<td>9.3 B</td>
<td>14.3 B, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4 A, C</td>
<td>9.4 A</td>
<td>14.4 B, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5 B</td>
<td>9.5 A</td>
<td>14.5 B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6 C</td>
<td>9.6 A</td>
<td>14.6 C, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7 A</td>
<td>9.7 C</td>
<td>14.7 B, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modals</td>
<td>9.8 D</td>
<td>14.8 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1 A, B</td>
<td>9.9 C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2 B</td>
<td>9.10 C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3 A, C, D</td>
<td>9.11 B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4 C</td>
<td>9.12 C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5 B</td>
<td>9.13 B, D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.6 C, D</td>
<td>9.14 B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7 B</td>
<td>9.15 A, B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.8 A, C</td>
<td>9.16 A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.9 B, C</td>
<td>9.17 A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.10 A, B, D</td>
<td>9.18 B, C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.11 A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.12 D, E</td>
<td>Articles and nouns</td>
<td>Prepositions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.13 A</td>
<td>10.1 B</td>
<td>15.1 B, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If and wish</td>
<td>10.2 A</td>
<td>15.2 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1 B</td>
<td>10.3 B, C</td>
<td>15.3 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2 C</td>
<td>10.4 B</td>
<td>15.4 B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3 B</td>
<td>10.5 C</td>
<td>15.5 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4 D</td>
<td>10.6 A</td>
<td>15.6 B, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5 A</td>
<td>10.7 A</td>
<td>15.7 B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td>10.8 A</td>
<td>15.8 B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1 C</td>
<td>10.9 D</td>
<td>15.9 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2 B</td>
<td>10.10 C</td>
<td>15.10 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3 D</td>
<td>10.11 C</td>
<td>15.11 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.4 A</td>
<td>10.12 A</td>
<td>15.12 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5 A, B</td>
<td>10.13 C</td>
<td>15.13 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6 C</td>
<td>10.14 B</td>
<td>15.14 B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7 D</td>
<td></td>
<td>15.15 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pronouns and determiners</td>
<td>15.16 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11.1 A</td>
<td>15.17 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11.2 B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11.3 D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11.4 B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11.5 B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11.6 C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11.7 A, C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11.8 C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11.9 D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11.10 A, C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11.11 B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Phrasal verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16.1 B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16.2 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16.3 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16.4 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16.5 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16.6 B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16.7 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16.8 A, D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16.9 B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

The numbers in the index are unit numbers, not page numbers.

a/an 69-72

a/an and the 72, 73A

a little a fete 87E

a/an with quite and pretty 104B

such a/an 102

able (be able to) 26

about

adjective + about 130, 131B

verb + about 133-134

accurate (of) 62B, 135A

active and passive 42

adjectives 98-101

adjectives + to ... 65-66

the + adjective 76B

adjectives ending in -ing and -ed 98

order of adjectives 99

adjectives after verbs 99C

adjectives and adverbs 100-101

comparatives 103-107

suppletives 108

adjectives + preposition 130-131

admit (+ -ing) 53, 56A

advantage (off/in/into) 60A, 129B

adverbs

adjectives and adverbs 100-101

comparatives 105B

position of adverbs with the verb (always, also etc.) 110

advice (uncountable noun) 70B

advise (+ to ... and -ing) 53C

afford (+ to ...) 54A, 56A

afraid (of) 131A

I'm afraid not 51D

afraid to do and afraid of doing 66A

after

after + present simple / present perfect 25A-B

after + -ing 60B, 68C

look after 133D

ago 12B

agree (+ to ...) 54A, 56A

all 88, 90

all and all the 75B, 88B

all of 88

all and both 89E

all, every and whole 90

position of all 110C

alleged 54A

alleged (is alleged ...) 45A

allow (+ to ... and -ing) 55C, 66D

already 111D

already with the present perfect "C

position of already 110

also (position of also) 110

although 113

always

I always do and I'm always doing 3B

position of always 110

amazed

amazed + to ... 65C

amazed at/by 130C

American English Appendix 7

an see a

angry (about/with/for) 130B

annoyed (about/with/for) 130B

answer

an answer to something 129D

to answer a question (no preposition) 132B

any 69C, 85-86

any and some 85

anybody/anyone/anything/ anywhere 85-86

not ... any 86

any and no 86C

any (of) 88

any and either 89E

any + comparatives 106B

any more / any longer 111B

apologise (to somebody for) 62, 132A, 135B

apostrophe (in short forms)

Appendix 5

apostrophe s' (s) 81, 83A

appear (+ to ...) 54B

apply (for) 133C

approve (of + -ing) 62A, 135A

aren't (question tag) 52D

arrange (+ to ...) 54A, 56A

arrive (at/in) 126C

articles (a/an/the) 69-78

at 69-72

at and the 72, 73A

the 72-78

school / the school etc. 74

children / the children etc. 75

the with names 77-78

as 107, 116-118

as soon as 25A-B

as ... as (in comparative sentences) 107

as long as 115B

as (= at the same time as) 116A

as and when 116

as (= because) 116B

as and like 117

as if / as though 118

ashamed (of) 131A

ask

ask in passive sentences 44A

ask (somebody) to do something 48D, 55A

ask how/what + to ... 54D

ask somebody (no preposition) 132B

ask (somebody) for 133C

astonished

astonished + to ... 65C

astonished at/by 130C

at

at (time) 121

at the end and in the end 122B

at (position) 123-5

at the age of ... 127B

adjectives + at 130C, 131C

verbs + at 132

attitude (towards) 129D

auxiliary verbs (see also modal verbs)

in questions 49A-B

in short answers etc. 51

in question tags 52

avoid (+ -ing) 53, 56A

aware (of) 131B

away (verb + away) 137, 145

back

inflation the back 124D

verb + back 145

bad (at) 131C

baggage (uncountable noun) 70B

because (of) 113B-C

bed (in bed / to bed) 74C, 124A, 126A

been to 8A, 126B

been to and gone to 7D

before

before + present simple 25A

before + -ing 60B

begin (+ -ing or to ...) 56C

beginning (at the beginning) 122B

being (he is and he is being) 4C

believe (in) 136A

believed (it is believed ...) 45A

better 105C

bad better 35A-B

between (noun + between) 129E

blame 135B

bored

bored and boring 98

bored with 130C

born (I was born ...) 44C

both (of) 89

both and 89D

both and all 89E

position of both 110C

bother (+ -ing or to ...) 56C

bottom (at the bottom) 124C

bound (bound to do) 65E

bread (uncountable) 70B

break

break into 136B

break down 137A, 142D

break up 144D

busy (busy doing something) 63C

by 120, 128

by after the passive 42B, 128C

by (+ -ing) 60B

by myself / myself etc. 83

by (the time) 120

by and until 120B

by chance / by post etc. 128A

by car / by bus etc. 128B

a play by Shakespeare etc. 128C

adjective + by 130C

can 26

can I you ... ? 37

can and other modal verbs

Appendix 4

can't (cannot) 26, 28

can't help 57C

capable (of) 131B
leave
leave for 133C.
leave something out 138C.
less 107A.
let
let somebody do something 55D.
let down 142D.
like (verb)
like doing / to do 58.
would like 37E, 55A, 58B–C.
like (preposition/conjunction)
like as and if 117.
like as and if 117.
likely (+ to ... 63E, 84B.
listen (to) 132A.
little 69C, 87.
little and a little 87D–E.
little (of) 88.
a little + comparative 106A.
live (on) 135D.
long
as long as 115B.
no longer / not ... any longer 111B.
look
you look and you're looking 4E.
look forward to 60C, 62A, 137B.
look + adjective 99C, 100B.
look as if 118.
look at 132C.
look after 133D.
look up 144D.
look back on 145C.
lot (a lot / lots) 87B–C.
quite a lot 104B.
a lot + comparative 106A.
love
love doing / to do 58.
would love 55A, 58B–C.
be / fall in love with 127A.
luck (uncountable noun) 70B.
luggage (uncountable noun) 70B.
make
make somebody do something 55D.
make up 143E, 144A.
manage (+ to ... 26D, 54A, 56A.
many (and much) 69C, 87.
many (of) 88.
marr ... 131C.
may 29–30.
may as well 30D.
may I ... 37B–C.
may and other modal verbs 118.
mean (adjective – mean of someone to do something / be mean to someone) 65B.
means (noun) 79B.
might 29–30.
might in if sentences 30B, 38C, 40D.
might as well 30D.
might and other modal verbs 118.
mean (adjective – mean of someone to do something / be mean to someone) 65B.
minds (noun) 79B.
might 29–30.
might in if sentences 30B, 38C, 40D.
might as well 30D.
might and other modal verbs 118.
mind ( + -ing) 53, 56A, 58A–B.
do you mind if ... 37C.
mine / yours etc. (a friend of mine / yours) 83A.
modes (will, can, must etc.) 21–22, 26–37, Appendix 4.
more
more in comparatives 105.
not ... any more 111B.
most
most + noun 75A.
most (of) 88.
most in superlatives 108.
much (and many) 69C, 87.
much (of) 88.
much + comparative 106A.
must
must and can't 28.
must and have to 31.
mustn't 31C, 32A.
must and should 33A.
must and other modal verbs 118.
must and other modal verbs 118.
myself / yourself etc. (reflexive pronouns) 82.
by myself / by yourself etc. 83C.
names with and without the 77–78.
nationality words with the 76C.
necessary
necessary to do and necessary to do 57B.
a necessity for 129A.
needy 32.
needy and needn't 32A.
needy and have done (and didn't need to do) 32D.
needy and other modal verbs 118.
American English Appendix 7.
negative
present simple 2C.
past simple 3C.
negative questions 49D.
no, none and any 86.
negative short forms Appendix 5.
neither (of) 89.
neither am I, neither do I etc. 51C.
neither ... nor 89D.
neither and none 89E.
ever
never with the present perfect 8A.
position of never 110.
news (uncountable noun) 70B, 79B.
nice (nice of someone to do something / be nice to someone) 65B, 130A.
no
no and none (of) 86A, 88.
no and any 86.
nobody / no one / nothing / nowhere 86B.
no with comparatives 106B.
no longer 111B.
none
none (of) and no 86A, 88.
none and neither 89E.
nor
nor am I, nor do I etc. 51C.
nor am I, nor do I etc. 51C.
nor ... nor 89D.
nouns
countable and uncountable 69–70.
singular and plural 69, 71, 79.
noun + noun (compound nouns) 80.
of
of and's 81.
all of / none of / most of etc. 88, 96B.
both of / neither of / either of 89, 96B.
a friend of mine / yours etc. 83A.
often after a superlative 108E.
noun + of 129B.
abstract + of 130A, 131A–B.
verb + of 133B, 134, 135A.
off (verb + off) 137, 140–141.
offer
offer in passive sentences 44A.
offer + to ... 54A, 56A.
on
on (time) 121.
on time and in time 122A.
on (position) 123–125.
on a bus / on a train etc. 125E.
on (other uses) 127C–D.
additive + on 131C.
verb + on 133D, 136E, 137.
140–141.
one another 82C.
only (position of only) 110.
ought to 33D.
ought and other modal verbs 118.
ought and other modal verbs 118.
American English Appendix 7.
out
out of 126E.
verb + out 137–139.
out and out of 138A.
own
my own house / your own car 83B.
my own / your own etc. 83C.
paper (countable and uncountable) 70A.
participle clauses ( -ing and -ed clauses) 68, 97.
passive 42–44.
passive and active 42A.
by after the passive 42B.
simple tenses 42C.
tobe done / cleaned etc. (infinitive) 43A–B.
perfect tenses 43C.
continuous tenses 43D.
being done 44B.
get 44D.
it is said that 45A.
past (see also past continuous, past perfect and past simple) 38–40.
past after if and when 38–40.
past after I'd rather 59D.
past after it's time 35C.
past after as if 118D.
present and past tenses Appendix 2.
past continuous (I was doing) 6.
past continuous and past simple 6C–D.
past continuous and used to 18E.
past continuous passive 43D.
threaten (+ to ...) 54A, 56A
throw
  throw to/at 132D
  throw away 137C, 145B
till see until
time
  it's the first time I've ... 8C
  it's time ... 35C
  countable or uncountable noun 70A
  on time and in time 122A
tired
  tired and tiring 98
  tired of 131B
to + infinitive (to be / to do etc.) see infinitive
to 126
to + -ing 60C
  noun + to 129D
  adjective + to 130A, 131C
  verb + to 132, 136D
too and enough 103
top (at the top) 124C
translate (from into) 136B
trouble (have trouble doing something) 63B
try
  try to ... or -ing 57A
  try out 139C
  try on 140C
turn
  turn out 139
  turn on/off 137C, 140A
  turn up 142A, 143E
  turn down 142
two-word verbs see phrasal verbs
typical of (of) 131B
uncountable nouns 69-70
understand (be able to + ...) 54D
university (university / the university) 74B
unless 115A
until (or till)
  until + present simple / present perfect 25A-B
  until and by 120B
up (verb + up) 137, 142-144
upset (about) 130B
use (it's no use + -ing) 63A
used
  used to do 18
  be/get used to 61
  I am used to doing and I used to do 18F, 61D
usually (position of usually) 110
verbs see also present, past, future, passive etc.
verbs not used in continuous tenses 4A, 6E, 10C, 16F, 17A
list of irregular verbs
  Appendix 1.4
  present and past tenses
  Appendix 2
  verbs + -ing and verbs + to ...
    (infinitive) 33-35
verbs + preposition 62, 132-136
phrasal verbs (break down / get on etc.) 137-145
wait (for) 133C
want (+ to ...) 55A, 66D
warn
  warn someone (not) to do something 55B
  warn someone of/about something 134F
was/were 5D
  was/were -ing (past continuous) 6
  was/were going to 20D
  was/were able to 26D
  was and were in if sentences 39C
waste (waste time/money) 63C
weather (uncountable noun) 70B
we'll 101A
were (used with I'll/he'll/she'll) 39C,
  118D
what
  what in questions 49
  what ... for? 64C
  What ... ! (exclamations) 71A-B
  what and that (relative clauses) 92C, 93D
  what and which (relative clauses) 96C
when
  when + present simple / present perfect 25
  when and if 25D, 38D
  when + -ing 68B
  even when 112D
  even and as 116
  where (in relative clauses) 94C, 95B
whether 50
which
  which in questions 49
  which in relative clauses 92-93, 95-96
  all/none/some of which 96B
while
  while + present simple / present perfect 25A
  while + -ing 68B
  while and during 119B
who
  who in questions 49
  who in relative clauses 92-96
  who and whose in relative clauses 94A
  who and whom in relative clauses 94B
whole
  whole 90D-E
  on the whole 127D
whom
  in questions 49C
  in relative clauses 94B, 96A-B
  all/none/some of whom 96B
whose
  (in relative clauses) 94A, 95B
why
  why isn't/didn't (etc.) ... ? 49D
  why in relative clauses 94E
will 21-22
  will you? 21C-D, 37A
  will and shall 21D, 22D
  will and going to 23
  will be doing (future continuous) 24
  will have done (future perfect) 24
  will in if and when sentences 25, 115C
  will and would 36B, Appendix 4
  will in the passive 43A
  Don't ..., will you? 52D
  will and other future forms
    Appendix 3
  will and other modal verbs
    Appendix 4
wish 41
  I wish I knew etc. 39, 41
  I wish I'd known etc. 40C, 41
  wish and hope 41A
  wish ... would 41D
with
  noun + with 129E
  adjective + with 130B-C, 131C
  verb + with 136C
without (+ -ing) 60B
won't (= will not) 21-22
word order
  have something done 46
  questions 49
  negative questions 49D
  embedded questions (Do you know what ... ?) 50A
  reported questions 50B
  order of adjectives 99
  verb and object together 109A
  place and time 109B
  position of adverbs with the verb (also, always etc.) 110
  word order with phrasal verbs (turn on the light, turn it on etc.) 137C
work
  uncountable noun 70B, 74C
  work out 139B
  worry (about) 130B
  worst 105C
  worst 108B
  worth (it's worth + -ing) 63A
would 36
  would and will 36B
  would you ... ? 37A
  would you like? I'd like 37E
  would in if sentences 38-40
  wish ... would 41D
  would like/love/hate/prefer + to ...
    55A, 58B-C
  would prefer 58B, 59B
  would rather 59C-D
  would and other modal verbs
    Appendix 4
write
  write to 132A
  write down 142D
yet
  yet and still 111C
  yet + present perfect 7C
English Grammar in Use
With answers and CD-ROM · Third Edition
A self-study reference and practice book for intermediate students

English Grammar in Use Third Edition is a fully updated version of the classic grammar title.

This new edition:
- offers the same easy to use format: on each left-hand page a grammar point is explained and on the right-hand page there are exercises to check understanding
- is ideal for self-study. The study guide helps students identify the most useful language points to study
- has nine completely new units, including eight new units on phrasal verbs to cover this important area more thoroughly
- has a wealth of additional exercises for extra contrastive practice
- is in full colour.

The exciting new CD-ROM offers additional practice material covering all the language taught in the book. The CD-ROM includes:
- hundreds of practice exercises
- practice guides for key language areas of the book
- customised tests targeting specific language areas
- audio recordings of all main exercises
- listen, repeat and record function
- built-in dictionary with full definitions of all key vocabulary
- a link to Cambridge Dictionaries online.

Software developed by Clarity Language Consultants Ltd

Also available: English Grammar in Use Supplementary Exercises New Edition with answers
Cambridge Learner's Dictionary

Cambridge UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org